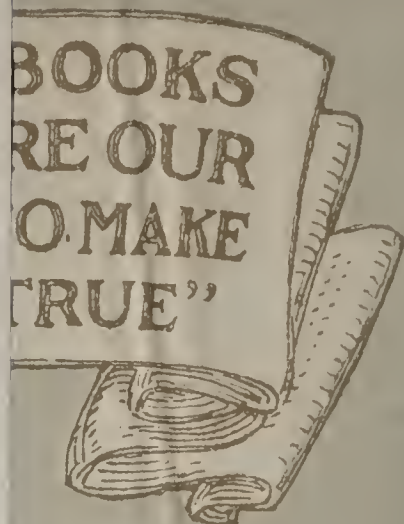


PICTURED KNOWLEDGE





Class AG 105

Book P 64

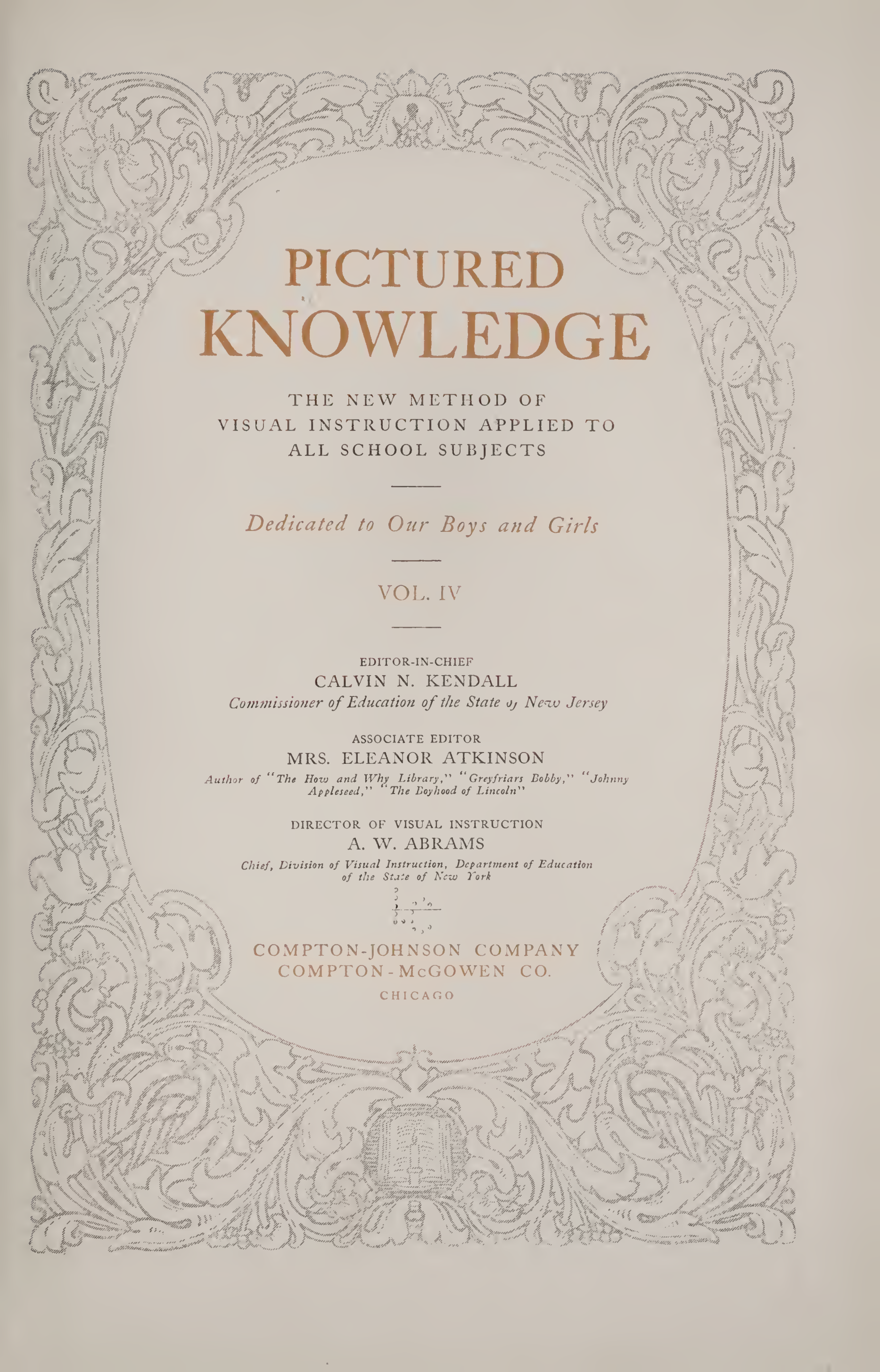
Copyright N^o 1919

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.





· FROM MY LIBRARY ·
Book Number —

A decorative border of stylized floral and leaf patterns surrounds the central text.

PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

THE NEW METHOD OF
VISUAL INSTRUCTION APPLIED TO
ALL SCHOOL SUBJECTS

Dedicated to Our Boys and Girls

VOL. IV

EDITOR-IN-CHIEF

CALVIN N. KENDALL

Commissioner of Education of the State of New Jersey

ASSOCIATE EDITOR

MRS. ELEANOR ATKINSON

Author of "The How and Why Library," "Greyfriars Bobby," "Johnny Appleseed," "The Boyhood of Lincoln"

DIRECTOR OF VISUAL INSTRUCTION

A. W. ABRAMS

*Chief, Division of Visual Instruction, Department of Education
of the State of New York*

3
1 3 3
—
3 3 3
3 3 3

COMPTON-JOHNSON COMPANY
COMPTON-McGOWEN CO.

CHICAGO

AG 105

P 64

1919

PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

Copyright, 1916, by F. E. Compton & Company

Copyright, 1917, by F. E. Compton & Company

Copyright, 1919, by F. E. Compton & Company



OCT 29 1919

©CL A 536370

The Pageant of History

DO you like to go to the "movies"? A needless question to ask, for who is there that is not thrilled by the glowing human pageantry of the moving picture! These artificial representations, however, are thin and bare compared with the marvelous pageants of history, for the real world exceeds infinitely the resources of the moving picture studio.

The beginnings of our history lose themselves in the mysteries of an impenetrable antiquity. Its scenes and episodes are as varied as the figures of a kaleidoscope. Our national life is projected against a background of Old World history, wherein we see the old Jewish patriarchs with their flocks and herds, the keen-eyed Greek and the stately Roman, the uncouth Goth and the horrid Hun, the rough impetuous Middle Ages, and the rich and varied life of the modern world. Out of this we have come, and in its shifting scenes we find the roots of our institutions and civilization.

The writers of the chapters which follow will trace for you the first dawning of the New World upon the astonished gaze of the Old, and its unfolding through the explorations of Columbus, Cabot, and the host of hardy and adventurous seamen and explorers who made heroic those early days. From a mere fringe of English settlements along the Atlantic coast, you will see develop the thirteen colonies, soon transformed by revolution into the United States, and cemented into a nation by common sacrifices and the leadership of statesmen and soldiers like Washington, Jefferson and Hamilton. Still "westward the course of empire takes its way," and the thirteen states expand into the forty-eight of today, stretching from the Atlantic to the Pacific, from beyond the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico. Within this region you will see enacted some of the most stirring dramas of history—our second war with Great Britain, the Mexican War, and the War of Secession which preserved the Union, and forever ended human slavery. Inventions transform our industries, quicken our transportation, and enrich our country, so that it becomes one of the strongest and most powerful in the world, ready and willing to do its part in making the whole world "safe for democracy." Statesmen and orators also contribute to the development of those political ideals engendered by the founders, and with the growth in material prosperity there comes a parallel growth in political ideals and the machinery of government.

A wonderful spectacle and a fascinating record! It should be an inspiration to every boy and girl whose forefathers contributed to the making of this mighty history, or have fled from tyranny, oppression, and poverty in the Old World to profit by the boundless opportunities of the New.

Samuel B. Steadley

The Eskimo Boy's "Shot Gun"



In order to be reasonably sure to get something to eat, most of the time, when he got to be a man, one of the first things an Indian boy had to learn was how to hunt. This picture shows how Eskimo boys got birds for food, by throwing at them a bunch of small ivory balls which they could use over and over again, because they were fastened to thongs. Being tied together at one end, these little balls would spread out so that they covered more space and were more likely to hit the bird, acting in this respect much like a shot gun as compared with a rifle.

STORIES OF AMERICAN HISTORY THE INDIANS

How the Red Man Lived Before the White Man Came



In the Big Chief's House

Here we are looking into the house or tepee of a chief. It reminds us something of the hall of one of the great barons of the Middle Ages, with its groups of shields and weapons. On the right you see the buffalo head-dress used for the buffalo dance. Among the spears leaning against the wall are some poles with scalps attached which were used during special ceremonies. The bones you see lying about the floor were probably thrown down by the Indians while eating, and immediately appropriated by the dogs. Even the fine lords and ladies of the Middle Ages, you remember, when at table, threw the bones on the floor. Hanging from the post is a willow basket used in fishing, and below, a hand-decorated paddle, used by Indians in canoeing. On the floor are a mortar and pestle for grinding corn and another for grinding colored earth with which the Indian painted himself. You can also see wooden bowls and Indian pottery. The chief is apparently holding a council with other members of the tribe and the pipe is being passed.

OUR histories begin by saying that before Columbus, America was inhabited by Indians. But in the crowding events of the settlement of our continent, there is room to speak of them only as they affected the lives of white colonists. So they appear to us as painted savages on the warpath. This image is true, but incomplete. Indians had to make a living, and under much harder

conditions than white men. So you may be sure they had many other absorbing interests and activities beside fighting.

Again, most of us think of all Indians, simply as "Indians"; as if they were all alike

Think a moment and you will see that this could not be so. White people are not all alike. Many nations came to America from the Old World; English,

French, Spanish, Dutch, and others. Some were tall and fair, some small and dark. They differed in manners and customs, education, natural ability, dispositions and ideals; and they differed so very much in language that they could not un-

was in small boats and canoes. Tribes and even nations were isolated.

The Different Types of Indians

While the Indians all belonged to the red-skinned, semi-barbarous race, and were at the Stone Age in development when the white man

Fishing and Photography



When the Indians went out to spear fish in the winter, they put hoods over their heads while watching for the fish through the ice, very much as the photographer covers his head when taking your picture, and for a similar reason. By shutting out the light they were able to see the fish more clearly. You see the Indian in the foreground is just taking his fish off the hook. These hoods didn't fit close around the head but were held up by sticks. To attract the fish, the fishermen had a stone image of a fish on the end of a pole which they thrust down into the water.

derstand each other. The Indian nations of America varied as widely, and in similar ways. There was, indeed, more reason why they should vary. Europe was thickly settled, and travel and trade were easy and constant, so that people acquired habits and knowledge from one another. But in all North America there were no more than a half-million people, separated by large areas of heavily forested mountains, deserts and sterile coasts. There were no horses for rapid travel and only the Eskimos and some Canadian forest tribes had trained dogs. All land journeys were made on foot, and water travel

came, they differed in nearly everything else. On the basis of languages there were one hundred and twenty nations, and within a nation there were as many dialects, often, as there were scattered tribes. Even those close enough to fight and trade, differed in appearance, in disposition, in intelligence, in their skill as hunters and in the arts and crafts. The degree of progress was determined by character, but the direction of this progress, by climate and natural feature belts. Within a given region all tribes would have to learn the same things and use the same materials.

Many Nations and Tongues

This is to be seen most plainly in the Eskimos. Their land was that broad, northern end of our continent, a five-thousand-mile belt of frozen, treeless plains, that stretches from Greenland to Alaska. Uninhabitable by white men or by any other Indians, it has for unknown ages been occupied by small scattered bands of hardy Eskimos. They form a real nation, distinct from all other primitive peoples of America, and may, indeed, have a different origin. It is thought they may have crossed to Alaska from the Arctic shores of Siberia. A small people, the men are seldom more than five feet high. While they have the straight, coarse black hair and high cheek

*Cleverness
of the
Eskimos*

snow, sea and land animals, a little driftwood that floated to their desolate shores from blown-down trees and wrecked ships, the ledges of

stone and fields of moss and stunted bushes that were uncovered in the brief summers, and packs of wolfish dogs. Yet what wonders they have accomplished. Some think them the

cleverest of all American tribes. With the least material, and under the hardest conditions they have done most.

They build a warm, half-buried igloo, framed up with drift timbers and whale ribs, and covered with turf. Lacking these, they build equally well with snow blocks, so cut and fitted that the walls rise spirally and close with a key-block in a perfectly arched, round dome. The animals they kill furnish their food and clothing, summer tent, boat and sledge cover-

ing, and dog harness. Out of the bones they make the frames of their boats and sledges, the handles of tools, shafts of harpoons and spears, their snow-saws for building their houses, and skin-dressing knives. The sinews are made into thread and cord, and the fat gives them light and fire.

Explorers say that the Eskimos' stove-lamp, while extremely simple, is the greatest of all Indian inventions. It is made of a slab of soapstone, of which there are long worked

The Indian Warrior and His Striped "Uniform"



This is the kind of military costume an Indian put on when he was ready for the warpath. The painted designs on an Indian's body usually indicated that he belonged to a certain society; for the Indians had fraternities just as college boys do. Sometimes, however, the designs were symbols of some dream he had had, telling him that he was going to distinguish himself in battle, and he wore them to remind the dream spirits of the success they had promised so they wouldn't forget him in the day of trial.

quarries. Three feet long and half as wide, it is a clam-shell shaped tray with an upturned rim. When this shallow vessel is set up on a block, filled with seal oil and fitted

sling-shot ivory balls on strings, for killing birds, that are his own inventions. He can make good snow-shoes of whalebone and strips of sealskin, and a fire-drill of bone and

Why the Indians Struck the Post



When the Indians were about to go on the warpath they made it a point to work up as much enthusiasm as possible, and the ceremony called, "Striking the Post," was part of this preparation. The post was painted red, symbolic of war, and the musicians of the tribe, sitting on the ground, sang songs of war-like deeds while others beat on the drums and shook rattles. If you had been at one of these performances, after this had gone on some little time, you would have heard a sharp yell. This would mean that some warrior felt moved to get up and recite his exploits. The music would immediately stop and he would have the most profound attention while, dressed in his bravest feathers and paint, he would step out with his club or lance and strike the post to illustrate what he meant to do to the enemy. When the warrior finished his story of what he had done and what he meant to do, the whole crowd of warriors would join in yells of victory and defiance. Then the music would be resumed until another warrior took the stage. This ceremony lasted for several hours. The early Greeks had war dances similar to those of our American Indians and no hero in Homer showed more fire in words and acts.

with wicks of dry, twisted moss, it warms a big igloo for several families, cooks the food and gives the light of several kerosene lamps.

The Eskimo also makes a harpoon with which he can kill seal, walrus, whales and polar bears. The long, narrow blade of chipped flint is set in a slot in a wood, bone or ivory tusk shaft, and securely fastened with fish glue and sinews. He has the smaller, ordinary Indian spear for killing land animals; and a spring dart and a cluster of

*His Many
Other
Inventions*

sinew. The squaws make needles of fish bones, and household vessels and baskets of tusks, whalebones and split roots. The rib-framed, skin-covered kayak is a true canoe that, in workmanship and usefulness, is second only to the birch-bark canoe of the Great Lakes.

When he has open water, as on the west coast of Alaska, the Eskimo makes the umiak. This is a square-bowed, row and sailboat, big enough for thirty people. It is covered with seal skins and the sail, fitted to a twelve-foot mast, is made

Carrying Away the Wounded



The Indians used to carry the wounded from the battlefield much as wounded soldiers are carried on stretchers today. The litter was made of two poles lashed together, with a blanket fastened to them. It was carried partly with the hands and partly by the supports you see across the men's shoulders. Indians would carry a wounded comrade miles and miles in this way when they were retreating from an enemy.

"In the Trenches," Among the Aztecs



This looks a good deal like one of the trenches on the battlefields of the European War. Although it is a fortification instead of an entrenchment, it is constructed on much the same principle as the trenches with its in-and-out angles, called in military language, "salients and re-entrants."

A Luxurious Indian Water Craft



Here we have quite a luxurious way of traveling employed by the Indians. Boats like this were called balzas by the whites, after a Spanish word. The Indians had the balza under another name before the white man came. With the balza the Indians could undertake voyages that were not possible with a canoe. Notice how the balza is supplied with a comparatively smooth floor, a place of shelter and a place for keeping a fire and cooking the meals to be served in the "dining room," which was under that grass-covered roof. Notice the pilot, and how the keel is fastened to the raft, projections being thrust between the logs and held with wooden pins.

of seal intestines, split into ribbons and sewed with sinews.

The Dawn of the Fine Arts

And the Eskimo is an artist. He ornaments his favorite tools. On the top of his harpoon and spear he carves little heads, claws and tusks in ivory. The work is crude, but it is a striking example of the deep instinct for art in the human mind. There emerges this sense of beauty, in spite of the stark world around him.

Every Indian tribe in America had some artistic ability—in carving, engraving, modeling, embroidery, painting or picture-writing. The most advanced tribes had several of these arts; some only one, but that highly developed. The North Pacific Coast Indians, who lived immediately south of the Alaskan Eskimos, were expert sculptors of

wood. The mountainous shores were covered with cedar, fir, hemlock and other straight-grained trees that were easily worked. With stone axes and chisels they felled trees, split them into planks and built good timber houses. And they made canoes of hollowed and spread cedar logs, with sharp prows for bucking ice. They covered everything they made with carvings.

Before their doors they set up totem poles from twenty to fifty feet high that, in grotesque human masks and the figures of birds and beasts, set forth the historic emblems of a family. The carving was in bold relief and was colored black, red and yellow, with clay pigments. Totem poles were made by no other Indians, but similar sculpturing in stone was done by the Aztecs and Mayas of Mexico; and the geometric designs appear on the baskets, blankets,

*Family
Coats
of Arms*

*Various
Forms
of Art*

Gathering the Rice Crop



While the Indians had gardens and farms in a small way, they depended as much as possible on the free gifts of nature for their food. Here you see the Indian women gathering wild rice which was found in the shallow waters of regions and lakes in the upper Mississippi region. It ripened in September. Usually two or three women worked together. One took the bow and the other the stern of a moderately sized hunting canoe, previously cleaned and made perfectly water-proof and dry. Pushing the canoe into the wild rice field, they bent the stalks in handfuls over the side and beat out the grain with paddles. Besides being served as we serve rice, it was roasted. Children were particularly fond of it in this form and the hunters carried a supply with them. It was put in bags of vegetable fibre and kept throughout the winter.

wampum belts and pottery of distant tribes. Together with certain root-words found in all Indian languages, these point to a common origin for the most widely separated and dissimilar tribes.

Toboggans, Snowshoes, and Canoes

To find other Indians as clever as the Eskimos you must go down to the Great Lakes. The forest tribes of Central Canada made just two good things—the flat-bottomed toboggan sled and the snowshoe. As the snowshoe was used in all the colder parts of America, you should know how it was made. The frame was a slender, split sapling, of some light, tough wood that could be bent

*How the
Snowshoes
Were Made*

to an oval, with the ends bound together in a point at the back. Braces across the middle served as a foot rest. The entire space was filled in, like a tennis racket, with a netting of rawhide. With such snowshoes securely tied on, hunters could skim over frozen lakes and streams, across prairies, through open woodlands and up and down hills. They could outrun wolf-packs and overtake deer, buffalo, moose and caribou.

The snowshoe and birch-bark canoe were possessed by all the tribes of Southern Canada and Northeastern United States. East of the Mississippi from the St. Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico was one of the two most populous regions of America. Game, fish, nuts and ber-

ries were abundant, and crops of corn, beans, pumpkins and tobacco could be grown in the fertile soil; and there were the best of waterways for travel. Here the Indian

dians for neighbors. The Iroquois, known as the "Six Nations," occupied New York State, between the Hudson and Lake Erie.

Like the Algonquins, they had

How the Women Guarded the Corn Fields



Here is another example illustrating the interesting variety of things the Indian women had to do. They are "shooing" the birds out of the corn fields by beating on pans and shouting and waving pieces of cloth. Birds, you may be sure, were very thick in those days. The boys and girls also helped and enjoyed the work hugely. In the spring the children also helped to plant the corn. Mother, although she never studied the art of teaching, was very clever at keeping them interested and showing them how. The work was done in the spirit of gaiety and frolic. Whenever a little papoose missed the hill in which he should have planted corn, mother and the other children laughed at him and he laughed too, but he took particular care not to do it again you may be very sure. Who would think of the wild Indians having little kindergarten schools of their own like that.

reached his finest physical development. He was tall, lean, copper-colored, with bold features and proud bearing. The braves were a race of hunters, fishers, tool and weapon makers, and fighters; the squaws skilful at farming and the handicrafts.

The Three Great Nations East of the Mississippi

East of the Mississippi were three great nations. The numerous tribes of the Algonquins were scattered along the St. Lawrence River, from New England to Minnesota and southward to the Ohio. A peaceable people, if unmolested, they had the ill fortune to have the Iroquois In-

farms and the best of hunting and fishing grounds. Every year they stored quantities of food in their tribal "long houses" that were fortified with stockades. Their trade with Atlantic Coast Indians, exchanging dried meat, skins, arrow-heads and tobacco for salt, wampum shell beads, dried clams and oysters was highly developed; and so was their political organization. A true, strong confederacy, they had a trained army, and leaders skilled in war and statecraft. Naturally ferocious, they raided villages from Montreal to the Mississippi. The Algonquins fled before them to refuges along the upper lakes.

*Government
and
Commerce*

THE INDIANS

In a Dakota Village



The Dakotas had two kind. of houses. One was the cone-shaped wigwam which could easily be taken down and moved, and which was used when the tribes were moving in search of game. The other kind of house, shown here, made up their permanent villages. The houses in a village like this were covered with bark, usually from the elm tree. The framework for the walls and roof was made of saplings fastened by withes or the sinews of the buffalo. On this the bark was laid and secured by a framework of saplings resting on it.

How the Chippewas Built Their Bee-Hive Huts



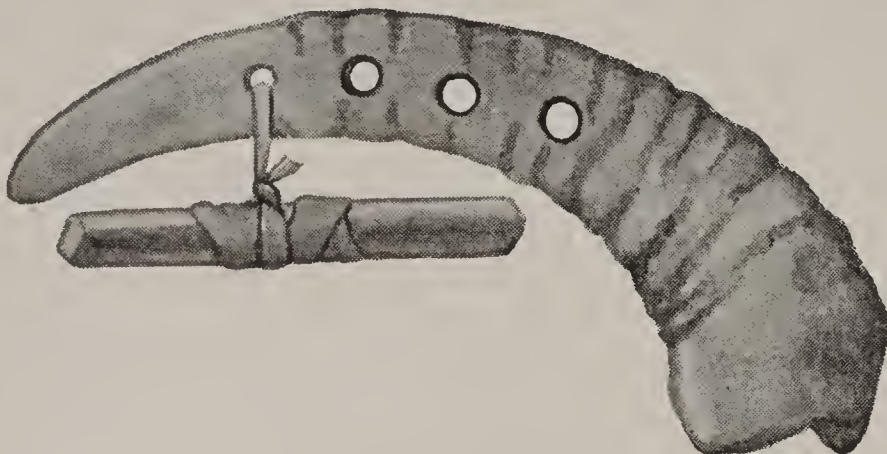
This picture not only shows you how the Chippewa's hut looked when you got up close to it, but also how these huts were built. The shape is very much the same as that of the Eskimo ice hut. You notice who is doing all the work, don't you,—the women; while the two plumed warriors are sitting on the ground enjoying their pipes and either discussing international affairs among the tribes or remarking what a fine day it is.

The Algonquins could fight, run away, gather a host of warriors and return because they made the most and the best canoes in America, for they possessed the land of the yellow birch tree. For gunwale, ribs and stiffening strips they used the same light, tough, bendable wood that was used in snow-shoe and hunting-bow. The

frame was lashed together with deer tendons. Over it was stretched the cover of birch bark, sewed with sinews, and with holes and seams filled with pitch and spruce gum. The sides were often decorated with painted figures or porcupine quill embroidery. As Longfellow says in *Hiawatha*: the birch-bark canoe lay on the water "like a yellow leaf in autumn." In these frail boats Indians made voyages of hundreds of miles, crossing wide lakes and twisting through foaming rapids. There were no birch trees in the South. The Natchez Indians of the lower Mississippi, and the Florida or Mobile tribes of the Gulf Coast could make nothing bet-

ter than the pirogue. The pirogue was a clumsy, hollowed cypress log which they pushed along with poles on every sluggish stream.

The Arrow Straightener



The Indian straightened the shafts of his arrows with a piece of horn like this. It had holes of different sizes for different arrows. Through one of these holes, however, was a string to which was tied a cross stake held to the back of the hand by a string between two fingers, so that it would not slip while in use.

The northern Indians of the forests and prairies made the best bows and arrows. Several skilled crafts went into the making of them. Certain light, tough, flexible wood had to be found, sea-

soned and shaped for the bow. Only a rod of service tree, a reed or cane would do for the arrow shaft, and this was straightened by heating and drawing repeatedly through a hole in horn or stone. The toughest deer sinew was used for a string. Feathers carefully selected and adjusted to the shaft gave lightness and speed. Each tribe had its expert workmen who could chip flint into perfect arrow-heads—plain for hunting, barbed for war. A few tribes around Lake Superior and in Mexico hammered copper nuggets into arrow-heads. The weapon was made in several sizes, suited to different purposes. The forest Indian's bow was short for ease in



Stone Ax



Wooden Dipper
Stone Hand Mill



Spear Head

managing under trees. The prairie hunter had a long, strong bow, with an arrow-head like a double edged knife-blade, for killing the buffalo.

There were small bows for boys to practice with. In the war weapon the arrow-head was often steeped in poison and set horizontally to the bow, to strike between the ribs of an enemy. The hunting arrow-head was set vertically.

The fire-drill, too, whether twirled between the palms, or with a bow or string, was a skilfully made tool, with its rigid shaft, rough stone point, and pitted fire-board where, by friction, dust was heated to sparks in a few seconds. And there were stone spear-points, chisels, knife-blades, axes, and tomahawks of obsidian, a glass-like volcanic rock that could be brought to perfect shape and edge only by long and patient chipping and grinding. The chief source of obsidian was the cliffs of Yellowstone Park, so there must have been trading between the eastern Indians and the Shoshones of the northern Rockies. It is known that the Algonquin tribes went to the head of Lake Superior in their canoes and had dealings with the Dakotans, Sioux and Mandans to the west. They had, besides, to make the stone or wood planting stick,—a pointed spade—hoes of deer and buffalo shoulder blades, skin-scraping knives of clam

shells, needles of fish bones and thorns, and stone and wooden troughs and mortars for pounding corn. Life in the American wilder-

ness was complicated and toilsome for both braves and squaws.

The Algonquin tribes built the big, domed wigwam, like a circus tent. Often fifty feet in diameter, it sheltered several families. The frame of saplings was covered with bark or with grass



Grinding the meal.

mats woven by squaws. Mats divided into family compartments around a central fire. The Iroquois Indians built the better, square-sided "long house" of timber and bark, often inclosing a village in a stockade of posts. Each village had its council house, quite one hundred feet long, where all the warriors could gather. In the South, where canes and willows covered every river bottom, the house walls were often woven in basket work over a frame of timbers, and plastered with clay. Out on the prairies, where wood was scarce, the Omahas set up the tent tepee of poles and buffalo hides. On the grassy plains hunting journeys were long, and the tepee could be carried on drags and set up anywhere. In the deserts of the Southwest, where cool shelter was needed from burning suns, the thick-walled house of adobe, or of stone was built.

*Long Houses
of the
Iroquois*

Indians Playing Ball, Everybody to Bat



When the Indians played ball, everybody went to bat at once armed with those crooked sticks. This is the game we now know as Lacrosse. It was played in the winter when the hunts were over, or in the summer when the game was unfit to kill. The opposing sides often came from two different villages, so you see they even had the beginnings of a league. The game began midway between two goals. At the start one of the older men of the tribe threw the ball into the air and the players all endeavored to catch it on their bats. The one who caught it threw it in the direction of the goal of the opposite party and if caught by one of the same side it was carried on in the same direction; if by one of the other side, of course, it was started back toward the opposite goal. The one who caught it had the right before throwing it to run as far as he could until overtaken by one of the other party. Then he must throw it. You see it was a kind of combination of baseball, basket ball and tennis.

Indian Women Playing Plum Stones



Men, women, and children among the Indians played what the Dakotas called Kun-tah-soo, "Game of the Plum Stones." Either plum stones or pebbles were used and each stone was marked differently and had a different value. One stone would have on it the picture of a turtle, for example, another a sparrow-hawk, and so on. The sparrow-hawk ranked high and if two sparrow-hawks were turned up in a single throw, that alone won the game. The stones were either thrown in a little pit in the ground or shaken in a wooden bowl and thrown out on a robe. That is the way the women are playing it here. The bowls were often ornamented with figures similar to those on the stones. This was to bring good luck. Of course, if it brought as much good luck to one player as it did to the other, these "good lucks" would cancel each other, wouldn't they? It seems the Indians didn't think of that.

THE INDIANS

Indians on Their Travels



"Every-once-in-a-while" was moving day among the Indians. If you are fond of traveling, perhaps this is one of the things about being an Indian you might have enjoyed, for the Indian's life was one of almost perpetual travel. He traveled with the change of season, moving south in winter and north in summer. He traveled in pursuit of game. If he had bad luck in hunting or fishing, or there had been a good deal of death or sickness in the tribe, or some chief had a bad dream, down came the wigwam, the family belongings were strapped to the simple "moving van" such as you see attached to the horses in the picture, the head of the family mounted the horse, and his wife trudged behind, carrying things for which there wasn't room on the "moving van." As the head of the family used to expose his life in battle and endure hunger and cold in his long and often fruitless tramps for game, it was considered fair that his wife should do the larger part of the other heavy work. And no matter whether they had much or little they never complained.

Arts of the Tanner, Weaver and Potter

Whenever deer were plentiful all tribes had the art of dressing skins. The hair was loosened by soaking the hides in lime water. Then hair and flesh sides were scraped clean with clam shells. When stretched, dried and rubbed full of oil the skins were as soft as cloth, and looked like the pretty yellow cham-
Various Uses of Leather ois skins you buy in a drug store. They were made into shirts, petti-coats, leggings and moccasins, and were decorated with cut fringes and embroidery of colored porcupine quills. It formed the foundation of the war bonnet of eagle feathers, the arrow-case and the wampum belt.

Basket and mat weaving, of grasses, reeds, fiber plants, palm leaves

and flexible bark, was a universal art. The Algonquins of the upper lakes and the southwestern desert tribes still make baskets that are prized for their workmanship and beauty. When the strong, coarse

Pottery and Baskets baskets were filled in with pitch they were used for water jars.

When coated with clay they became cooking pots, for the clay hardened in the fire. Basket weaving led to both cloth weaving and pottery. The Navajos still call their earthenware cooking pots "mud baskets." But good pottery was made only by a settled, advanced people. The Algonquins and Iroquois were both great travelers, making annual journeys to distant hunting grounds, and were often on the warpath.

**Indian Pottery**

Pottery is heavy and easily broken. If very good it is too valuable to be left behind. So they never took much pains with their pottery.

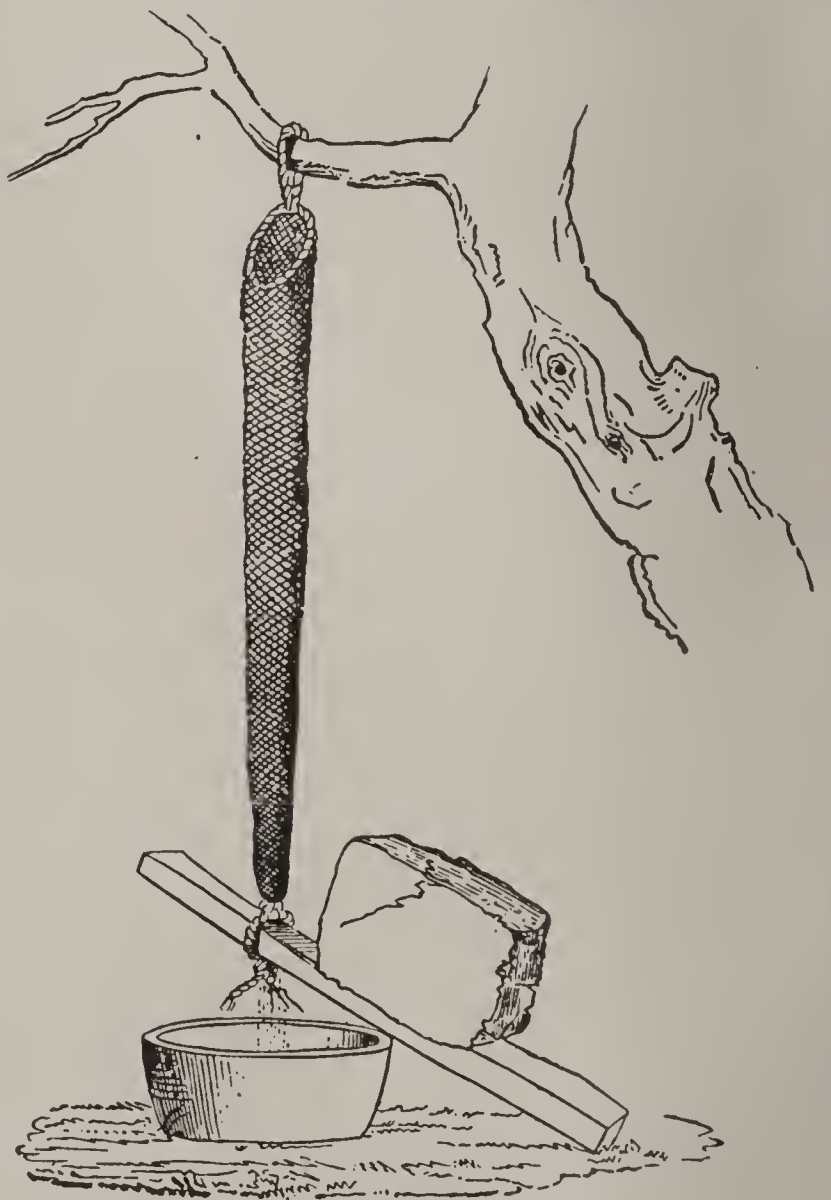
The Vanished Mound Builders

Around the Great Lakes there were, at some remote time, tribes that were more settled. They built the mounds of Ohio and Wisconsin and left fine pottery behind them. Every trace of their buildings is gone, but their houses and fortifications were probably of timber. Most of the mound builders must have perished, but it is thought that a few reached the lower Mississippi Valley for, when found by white explorers, the Natchez Indians were building on elevations and artificial mounds in the flood bottoms of the great river. And they were making pottery similar to that found in northern mounds. They shaped their vessels by coiling slender ropes of clay, turning their work on trays and smoothing it neatly inside and out. Only a soft, unglazed ware, burned in the open because they had no furnaces, it was variously and artistically shaped and decorated with engraving and low relief modeling.

Indians of the South and Southwest

The Natchez Indians spun cotton and hemp and wove coarse

cloth on rude looms. And they made beautiful feather mantles, covering webs of net, on both sides, with overlapping swan and duck feathers. Such work was one of the arts of the Aztecs of Mexico. The Natchez claimed to have come from the Southwest, and they may, indeed, have been the remnant of an old and large migration that reached the Great Lakes and built the mounds. All over the continent there were such shiftings of the population. The wanderings of the Shawnees, an Algonquin tribe, in historic times, from the Suwanee River, Florida, where

A Yepiti Grape Juice Factory

Suppose you lived in the woods where there were plenty of wild grapes and you wanted to save some of their delicious juice for winter, how would you go about it? Do you think you would figure out this ingenious way of doing it, practiced by the Yepiti Indians? They cut slips of thin cane, plaited them into a coarse basket-like tube closed at one end. Then in this tube they put the grapes and hung it from a limb, fastened a stick of wood to the lower end, as you see, put a heavy stone upon the stick and the grape juice factory began to operate! The juice was caught in a big bowl made of clay and stored in jars.

The Spirits and the Doctor-Prophets



The Indians, of course, didn't know anything about microbes, those queer little things that get into the blood and cause the spread of disease, but they did believe that diseases were spread by all sorts of invisible evil spirits, and it was the business of their doctor-prophets to chase them away with the help of good spirits. Here you see one of these professional gentlemen at his work. He is calling to the good spirits, North, South, East, and West, and you see them in the air coming to his aid. The owl hasn't come yet, but he will, for turning to the North, the Prophet has cried, "Holo, koko, koko, kisagasweigo," which means "Owl, thou art invited to smoke." The people you see sitting on the ground have replied for the owl, "Ho, ho, ho," which means "Yes, yes, yes." The turtle was supposed to be the interpreter between man and other creatures.

they got their name, to the banks of the Delaware and then westward into Ohio, would fill a book. Indians emigrated as well as white people.

Certainly the Natchez Indians of Mississippi were superior to all their neighbors; their language was foreign, their political organization, higher, and they had the sun-worship and the arts of pottery and weaving that we do not find again until we near the Mexican border. In what is now New Mexico and

Arizona, were the building tribes of the Pueblos, Zunis, Moquis and Navajos.

The Navajos wove every kind of fiber—wild flax, yucca, the bark of sage brush, cotton which they cultivated, milk weed, the hair of jack rabbits and the wool of mountain sheep. Their looms were rude affairs—just two posts set up in the ground with cross pieces lashed to them. On these they wove their soft, thick blankets and rugs, with

Weavers
and
Builders

PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

Indian Doctor Preparing His Medicine



The Indians relied on two things to cure them of wounds and sickness. One was magic, the other medicine. Here you see an Indian doctor mixing his medicine by the help of magic. He is stirring up a mixture in a vessel while he shakes a rattle and recites certain magic words. The sound of the rattle, which was a gourd with pebbles in it, was supposed to make the medicine work better.

On the Long Voyage



Primitive peoples, like the Indians, did not draw any sharp distinction between sickness, sleep, and death. In case of sickness they thought the good spirits had left the body, and the prophets and medicine men used to do things like those shown in the picture of the prophet's lodge, to bring them back. When a warrior ceased to breathe, it was believed that his spirit had gone into another world and that he would need there the same things he did in life. So they buried his weapons with him and brought food to his burial place. This picture shows how the Chinook Indians on the Pacific Coast buried their dead in canoes, because they thought they would need these canoes in the other world. Attached to the canoe, you see vessels containing food. The female relatives have come to visit with the dead just as if they were still alive.

The Feast of Mandamin



This is what you might call Thanksgiving Day among the Indians. It represents a scene in the land of the Dakotas. When the first ears of green corn were ripe, they gathered in one of their houses, had a feast of roasting ears, and offered prayer and thanks to the great spirit whom they acknowledged as the source of all good gifts. Corn was the principal grain food of the Indians and one of the most famous chiefs of the Iroquois was known as Corn Planter because it was his policy to have large fields in cultivation so that his people could not only meet their daily wants, but were better prepared than other tribes for war because of their large corn supply.

designs in black, white and red on the natural gray ground. They and the Zunis wove the same figures into their beautiful baskets.

Fortress Homes of the Cliff Dwellers

The Pueblos were noted as builders and potters. The desert furnished a dry, powdered clay for brick making, and the crumbling cliffs, slabs of sandstone. All Indian shelters were community houses with a central fire. So the Pueblos built a number of rooms adjoining, arranged in a semicircle or strung along a cliff for better defense. The roofs being flat the houses were piled on top of each other, wherever the space was limited. The upper rooms were reached by ladders, and

the village became a fortress. Except in their location the cliff-dwellings are much like other villages of the Pueblos. The mound builders, no doubt, built as extensively, but of timber which decayed in the rains and snows of centuries, while the brick and stone work of the cliff-dwellers was preserved by the dry air of the desert.

From this region all the arts of weaving, pottery and building increased steadily in quantity and quality southward into Mexico and

Culture Central America, the cul-
Center of the tural center of the conti-
Continent nent in pre-Columbian
days. And to these arts was add-
ed metal working in gold, silver
and copper, sculpturing in stone,

modeling in stucco, paper making and the development of picture-writing into characters that approached an alphabet. In pottery and terra cotta, the Aztecs of Mexico and Mayas of Yucatan made vases with necks, jugs with handles, and bowls with feet; funeral urns, water pipes, and statuary figures. And they ornamented their work by pinching, engraving, painting, relief modeling, and inlaying of colored clays. They built cities, temples and palaces of adobe and stone, set in mortar and covered with stucco and carvings. They wove many grades of cloth, made a wadded armor, coated cloth with rubber, and worked the metals into weapons, ornaments, house trimmings and furniture.

The Artists in Stone

The best architects and sculptors in stone were the Mayas of Yucatan. They built on artificial mounds such as we find in Wisconsin and

among the Natchez Indians of Mississippi. The roofs and openings of their ruins still show the pointed arch. The walls are thick and covered with

The Sign of the Red Hand



This is just what it looks like—a human hand. The Maya Indians of Yucatan smeared their hands with red paint and then printed them on the stones of their temples. This red hand was intended as a symbol, the seal, of the No Hock Yum, the great Master, or Lord. "I shall never forget," says Professor Thompson, of Harvard University, who supplied this picture of the red hand and the information for readers of Pictured Knowledge, "my first sight of the red hand at Chichen Itza, 'The City of the Sacred Well.' The expedition reached the base of the great edifice, the Nunnery, just as a tempest was about to break. Leaving the rest of the party to unpack the mules and get the things under the safe shelter of the lower chambers, I climbed the shattered stairway to the upper story and got our bearings. As I peered into the chamber entrance in the massive end wall, a bright hued motmot* flew out, hoarsely scolding, a big iguana† clambered clattering up the roof, and a single lurid ray from the half eclipsed sun, glancing through the doorway to the opposite wall illumined, in a quivering panel of light, the outline of the red hand. Then the gathering darkness blotted out the gleaming vision, while all the empty chambers of the structure echoed to the rattling and the crashing of the tempest."

*A tropical bird which looks like a blue jay with a very long tail.

†A large lizzard.

red with carved figures and grotesque masks of men and beasts, a higher development of the carving on totem poles of the rude tribes of British Columbia. Everywhere we find traces and proofs of a common origin of the race. Halls, monoliths, tablets and temples were raised in profusion and variety. The Mayas had only stone tools for carving in stone, but in execution their work has been compared to that of ancient Egypt.

Beginnings of an Alphabet

And these people came very near to forming an alphabet and a written language. Practically all Indian tribes used picture writing to mark springs, trails and camping places, to give warnings and to ward off evil. The Swastika was the universal sign of good luck. They painted family and tribal emblems on their tent cov-

The Red Hands and the Ruined Portal



This is all that is left of a small temple on an island off the coast of Yucatan, which was formerly inhabited by the Mayas. The first thing that catches your eye is that queer kneeling figure, but strangest of all, what are those three things above the figure? They look like the prints of a hand, don't they? The picture on the opposite page tells you what they are.

erings and beaver blankets, and tattooed them on their bodies. The Algonquins recorded journeys, historical events and ceremonial rites in pictographs, worked them into wampum belts, and wrote messages on birch bark. Some tribes kept clan rolls. Many a cliff and canyon wall of the Southwest still shows elaborate scratchings that, no doubt, tell old Indian stories. The Aztecs' writing was purely pictorial; but that of the Mayas was phonetic. Their characters alone represent, not objects but sounds, and were meant to translate speech into writing.

This was a long, upward step, and the people who made it understood its importance. They made parchment of sheep skins, a smooth cotton cloth, and a tough paper of the maguey plant, on which to preserve their writings. They wrote on both sides of long strips of cloth, paper or skin, painting the characters in brilliant colors, then folded the strips into books and covered them with ornamented boards. These

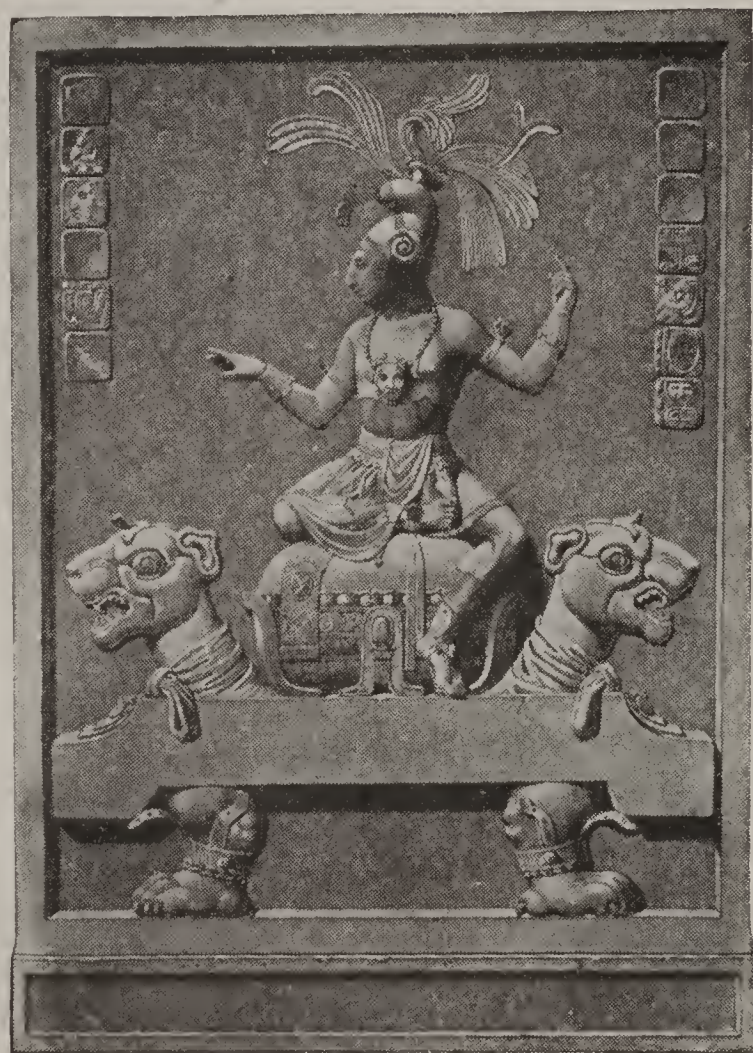
books were often kept in temples, or buried with the priests who wrote them. The Spanish conquerors, considering them works of evil, have confessed that they destroyed great numbers of them.

These books seem to have been texts, calendars and calculations in numerals and in time. All the people south of the Rio Grande to Peru, South America, where dwelt the Incas, were sun-worshippers and learned in astronomy. The most remarkable work of the Aztecs was the calendar stone, now in the museum of Mexico City.

Now the Aztecs conquered the Mayas and learned many of their arts before white men came to America. Both would have risen higher. In another century, perhaps, they

would have mined and smelted iron, developed an alphabet and written the Indian epic of hero stories. In their upward climb they were arrested by the Spanish conquerors who crushed them and the Incas of Peru, destroyed their works, and reduced them to slavery in field and mine. Three hundred years of

The Figure on the Tiger Throne



In the middle of the wall opposite the doorway of one of the Aztec temples, is what remains of a figure, nearly life size, seated on a throne, ending on the right and left in tiger heads and supported by two legs, modelled to represent the feet of the animal. Although only about one-third of the original figure remains, it gives a sufficient clue for students of such things to conceive what the whole figure was like, and this picture shows how it would look if restored, according to the eminent sculptor, Waldeck, who made this restoration. While the style of the restoration is a little too refined to be true to Aztec art, it is said by Professor Holmes of the Smithsonian Institution, who has devoted his life to the study of such matters, to be a very fair representation of what the figure must have originally looked like. Just think of Indians being capable of work like that!

The Ruined Temple of the Sun



The Aztecs and the Mayas, like so many other people in various parts of the world, worshipped the sun. This is what is left of one of their Sun Temples. The roof as you can see, was very thick and it seems strange that it has not caved in long ago from its own weight. So strongly knit, however, was the masonry, that the roofs remained except where the wooden lintels over the doorway have decayed. On top of this is a pigeon-hole affair, called a roof comb, of which you shall learn more later.

A Maya Gentleman in Full Dress

This is a portrait of a Maya gentleman in full dress. Undoubtedly he was some lord; for the lords of the Mayas dressed like that—not all the time, but on great occasions. As they had no portrait painters in those days, his picture was carved in relief on the walls of one of the temples.

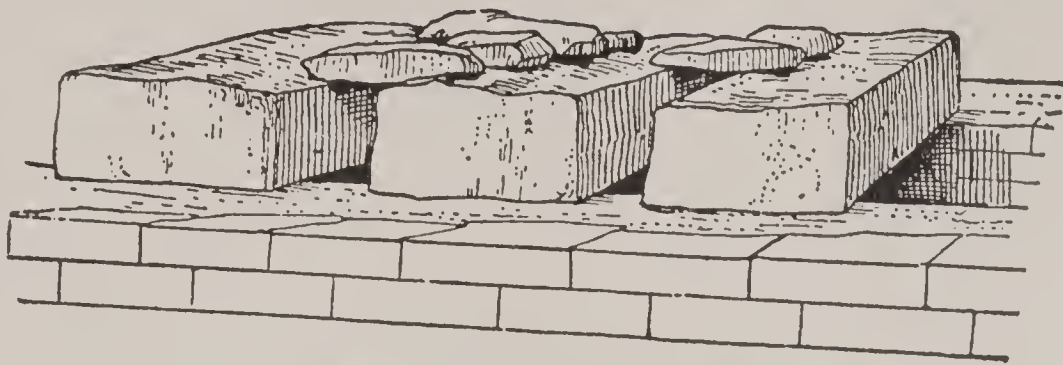
The kings and the lords among the Mayas, as you can see, wore girdles about a hand's breadth with ends falling down in front and behind. The ends of these girdles were ornamented by the Maya women with embroidery and feather work. In the monuments, you will see them covered with the most elaborate designs. The commonest of these designs was a face uglier than a hallowe'en mask, supposed to represent one of their water gods. For the Mayas and the Aztecs had gods for nearly everything in nature—the sun, the moon, the wind, the rain; gods of war, gods that helped them with the corn crop, and so on. See the many strange faces worked into or hanging upon this lord's costume, as distinguished foreigners now-a-days wear medals. But in addition to wearing them as decorations, the Mayas wore these things much as foolish people



wear charms; that is with the idea that if you had them on, the gods they represent would keep a friendly eye on you in case of any trouble in their line; for example, the god of rain would protect you from lightning but he could not help you in war. There was a separate god for that. Look at the funny little idol this lord seems to be drawing along on the ground behind him. No doubt these lords learned to carry such things about with them as gracefully as a European army officer can dance with his sword on at a court ball.

And the feathers they wore! See them? The North American Indians, you know, wore feathers in their hair and often in a long strip down their backs, but you see his lordship here has feather plumes sticking out of him everywhere. These elaborate feather devices were worn by the different classes of the Mayas to indicate their rank, much as army men have different kinds of marks on their uniforms today. Not content with ornaments of the feathers themselves, the Mayas had them fastened in ornamental holders, and the more important lords kept feather artists of their own and these artists ranked high among the skilled workers of the Mayas.

How the Aztecs Built Their Roofs



The Bridges Between Ceiling Stones

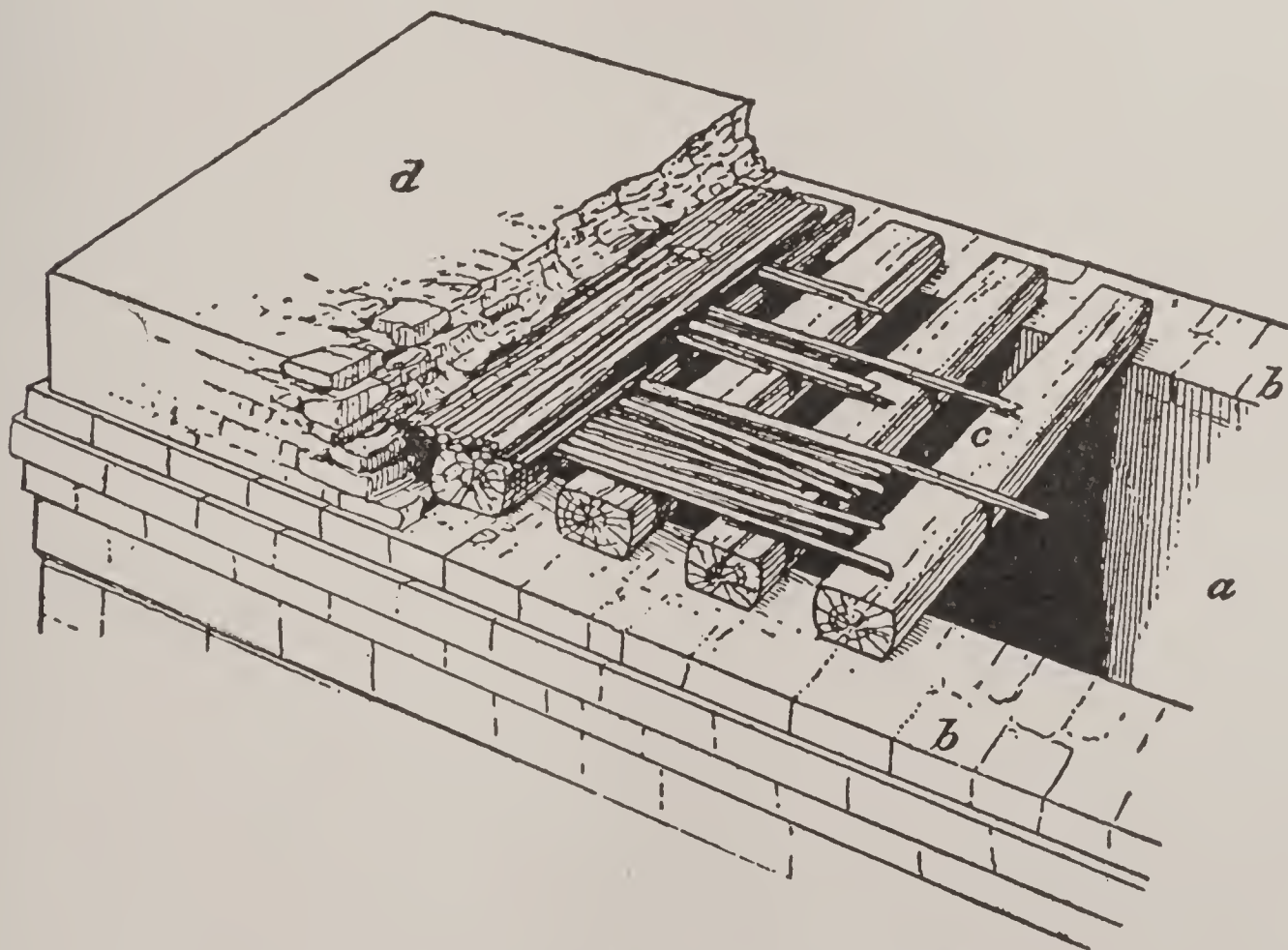
Often among the Aztec ruins, explorers come across stones arranged like this across the big slabs. They are supposed to have been so placed to support the ceiling.

Spanish rule left them degraded, their arts and origin forgotten.

Ruins of a High Civilization

We know how Egypt, Carthage, Greece and Rome in the Old World, rose to power and glory and then fell into ruin. Here in America, too, civilization, or something very

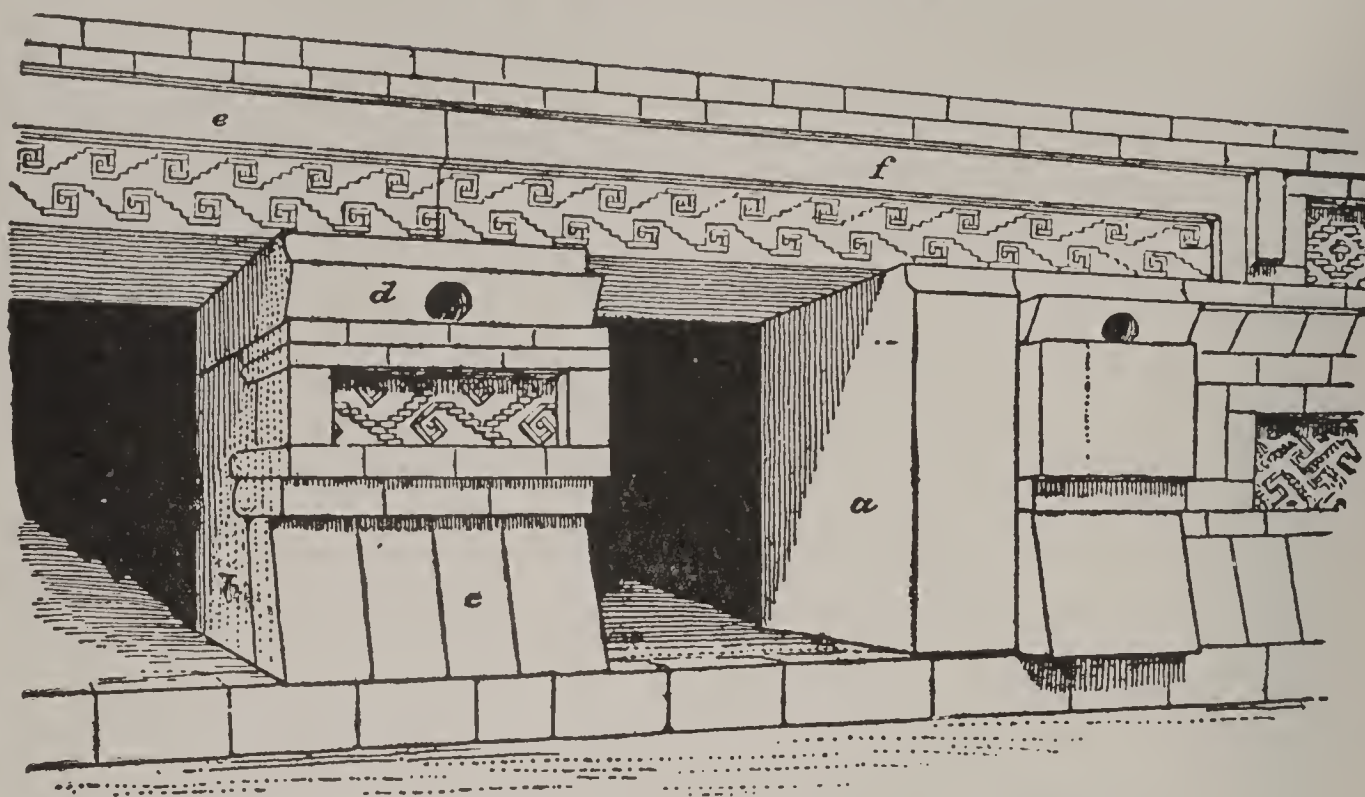
near it, was destroyed. No descendant of the Aztecs, today, could understand the calendar stone. Mayas who guide scientists to the splendid ruins of works built by their ancestors, in the forests of Yucatan, stare at sculptured temples without interest or comprehension.



How the Aztecs Built Their Roofs

This picture shows how the Aztecs built the roofs to their wonderful buildings. (a) shows a chamber space to be covered; (bb) side walls. Across these walls beams, as at (c), were laid and across these at right angles small timbers or canes; across these again at right angles more canes; then above all, (d) a covering of cement and stones with a smooth surface.

One of the Triple Doorways



As a rule the doorways to the Aztec Temples were simply constructed and had the appearance of square holes about seven feet high and six feet wide in the walls. A single doorway was formed by a single lintel from one side to the other and supported the structure above.

In the more pretentious temples, however, the builders took more pains and built more elaborately. Here the doorways were often made double and many times triple, and occupied the center of the fronts of the buildings, which faced upon the courts. In some temples this entire side was made up of a series of doorways.

A favorite method of accomplishing the triple doorways, by one section of the Aztecs, was by the use of large round columns representing feathered serpents, the heads appearing at the bottom. These columns supported the ends of huge lintels, which in turn supported the mass of masonry above.

In another section of the Aztec country, instead of using round columns, massive square pillars were used as you see in the picture above.

This is one-half of a triple doorway, and shows a side pillar and one of the central ones. Each doorway is approximately seven feet high and six feet wide. From these dimensions one can realize how massive are the pillars.

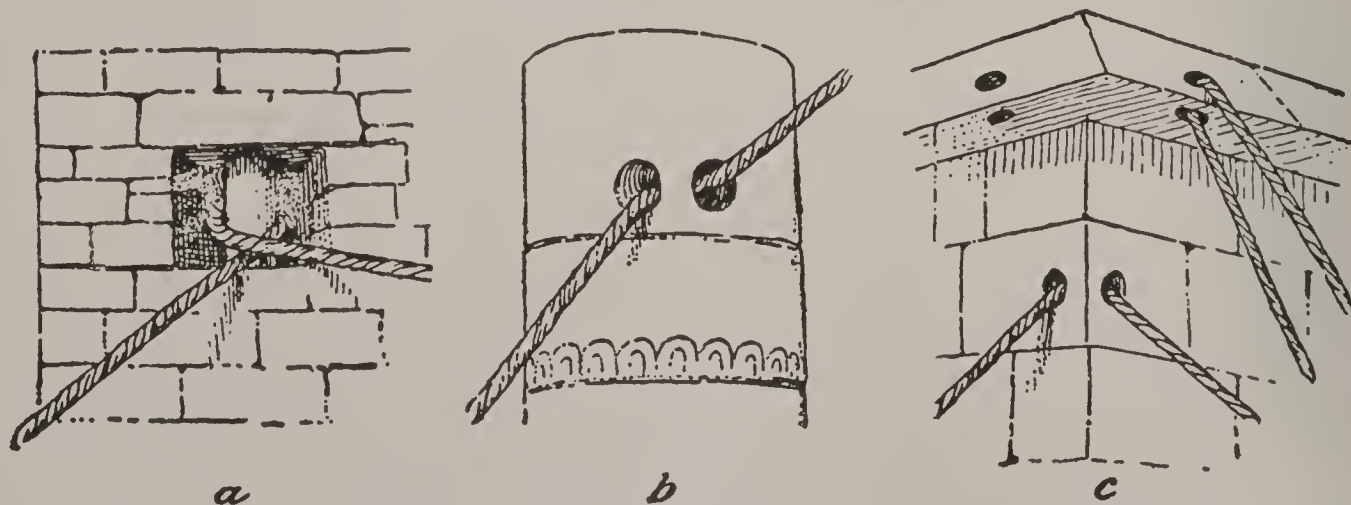
The long lintel here shown is typical of all the doorways, made in three sections neatly fitted together and embellished with a mosaic design.

The pillars, as you can see, were very plain with the exception of a small mosaic design on the face and here almost invariably were found the holes in the capstone into which were secured porch beams.

The most striking features of these doorways were the lintels which were made sometimes upwards of fifty feet long.

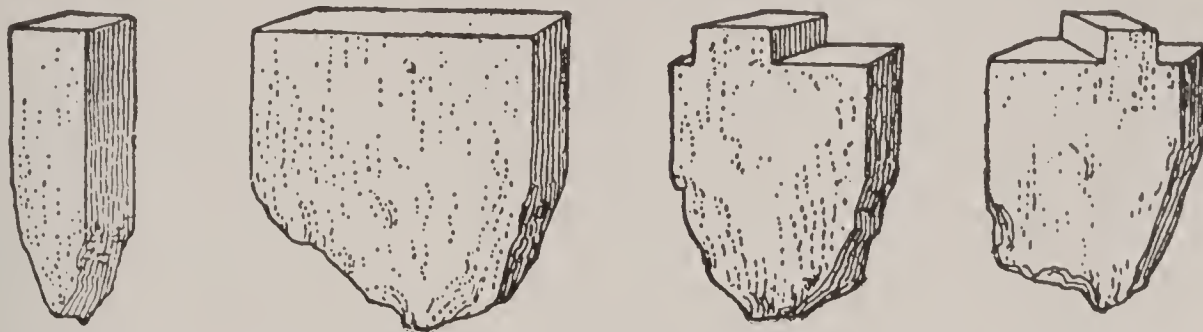
Explanation of above illustration: (a) Lateral jamb stone; (b) and (c) piers separating doorways; (d) capstone for supporting porch or awning beam; (e) part of middle lintel; (f) end lintel.

Cord Holders for Awnings



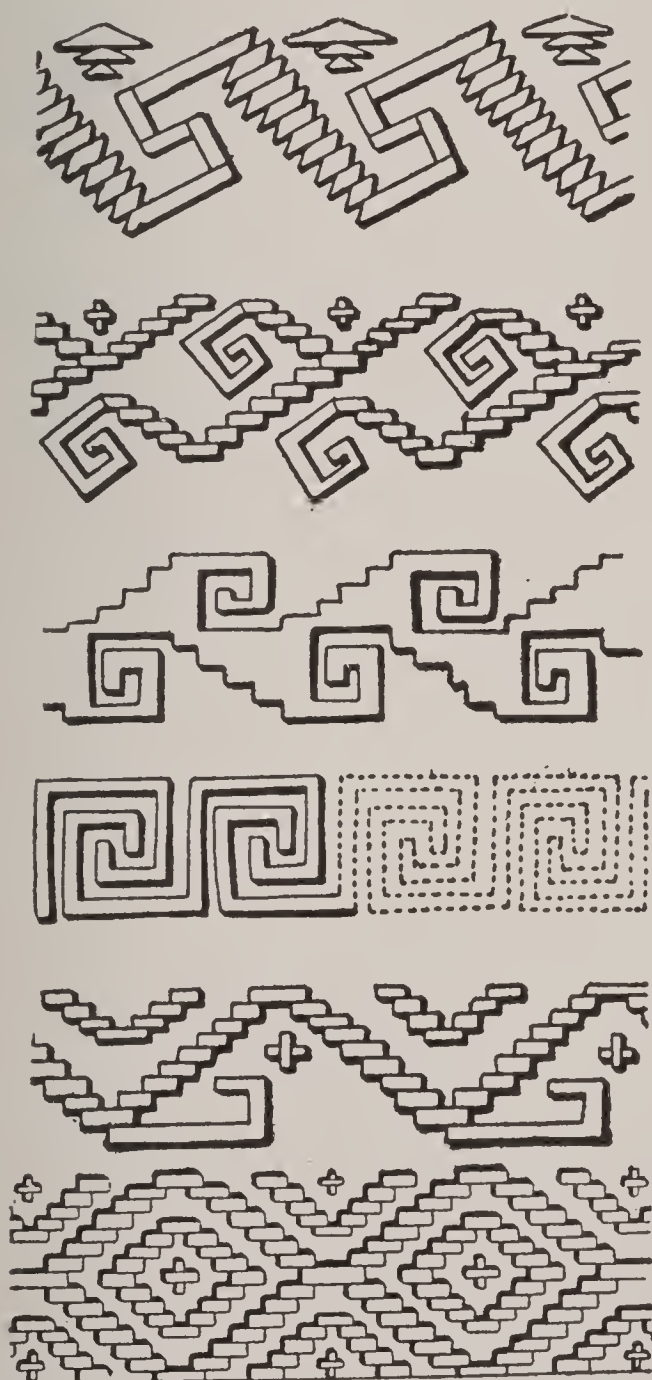
At the sides of the Aztec doorways were sunken cord holders, carved or built into the masonry, for the purpose of holding awnings which could be raised or lowered just as we have them today. (a) Shows one of these built into one of the masonry walls; (b) a cord holder in the back of a column; (c) the cord holders as used in moldings and corners of jambs and walls.

Stones Used by Mosaic Workers

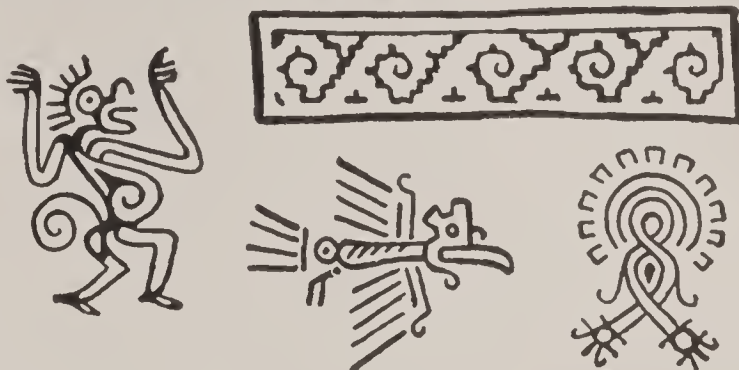


Here you see the different forms of the little stone blocks used by the Aztec mosaic workers. The number used, of course, was very great. A single room in one of their temples contains over 13,000, and all the rooms in a single temple must have contained nearly ten times that number. Think of the enormous amount of labor required to cut and dress these little picture blocks, or rather picture-making blocks; for the Aztec artists in mosaic "composed" pictures with them as you spell words with letters.

Work in Mosaics



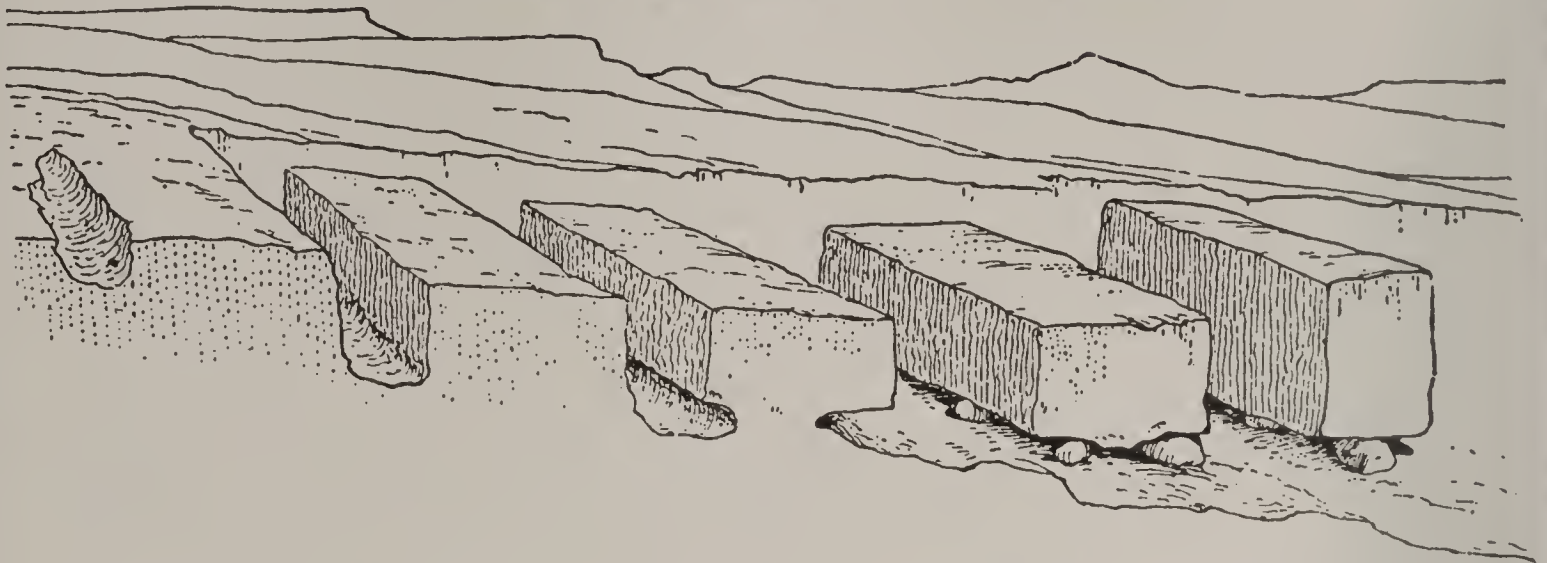
What the Maya Ladies Did to Their Faces



Back in colonial times, you remember, the ladies, when they dressed for a ball or anything like that, used to put little patches of court plaster on their faces. Discs, scars, crescents—just a tiny spot here and there. That's why this plaster is called "court" plaster to this day. The custom originated at court, in England. And these patches really do seem becoming on the faces of the beautiful women of colonial days, as you see them in their portraits, but what would you think of a lady with that queer little monster on her face? You would probably say, "How ugly!" But perhaps that is because we are not Mayas; for the Maya ladies used to put these things on their faces whenever they wanted to look particularly attractive. First they painted their faces a lovely rich yellow; then they stamped on them these patterns in red. The stamps were made of pottery.

The Aztecs did not have a great variety of styles in mosaics, but they used them with great artistic effect, as you see by the designs here reproduced.

How the Stone Slabs "Walked" Out of the Quarry



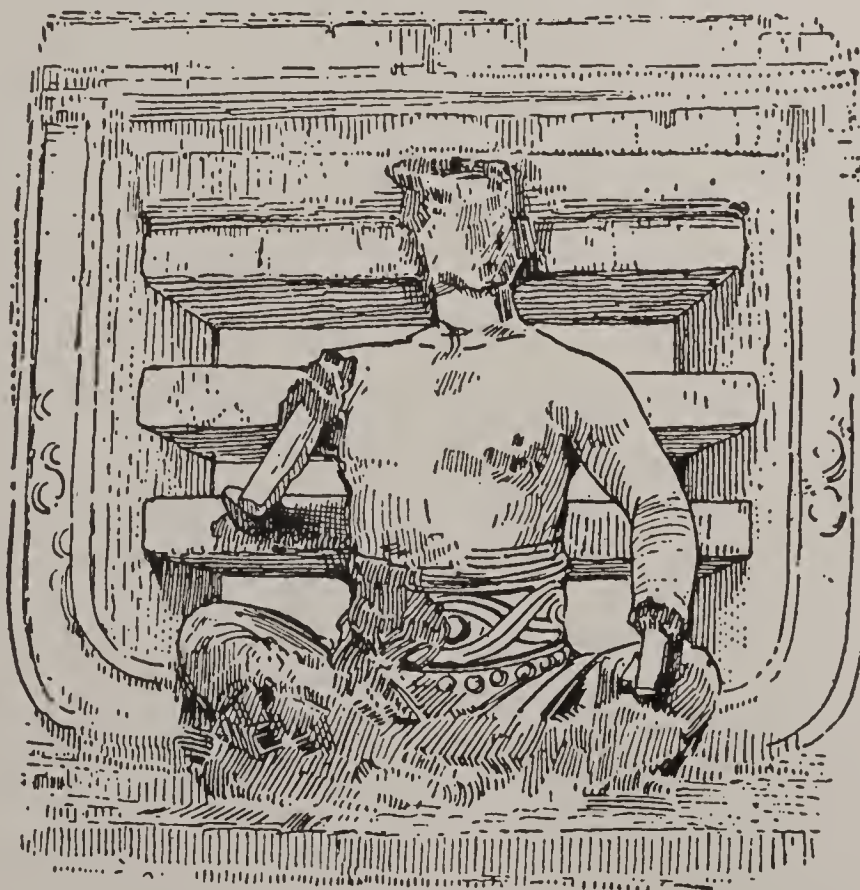
How different are the methods used by the Aztecs in preparing huge blocks of stone for pillars and lintels over doorways in large public buildings and those used today.

With our pneumatic drills to drill holes deep into the rock, and powder for blasting it loose in pieces of the desired size, we do in a few hours what it took the old Aztec stone mason weeks and even months to do.

If you could run a picture, like the one shown above, through a movie camera, you could see a block of stone walk right out of the original mass in the quarry. The picture represents the successive steps by which the Aztecs cut the great slabs of stone for facing their walls, for their great lintels, for pillars, stairways, columns, and so on. It shows how he patiently set to work, laying out the dimensions of his pillar or lintel on the solid rock, sometimes a pillar over thirty feet long and broad and thick accordingly, then hammering patiently away until he had reached the proper depth, when the really hard task began, for, you see, he had to chip it away carefully underneath until only a small ridge was left, then blocking it up at the corners and along the edges with loose stones, he cut out the remaining ridge.

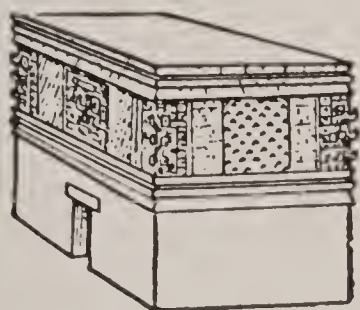
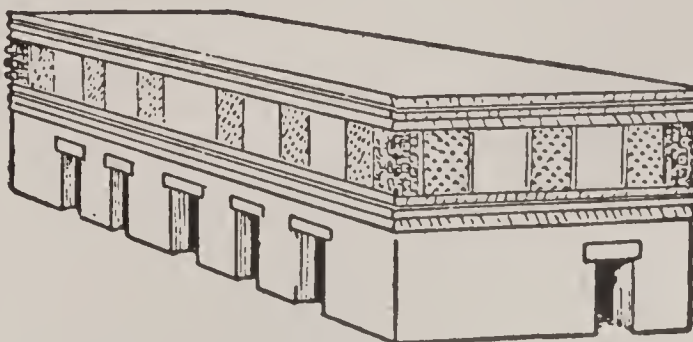
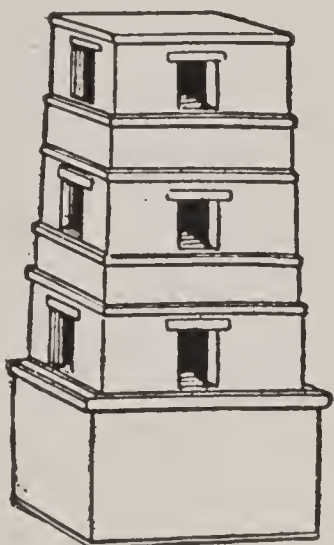
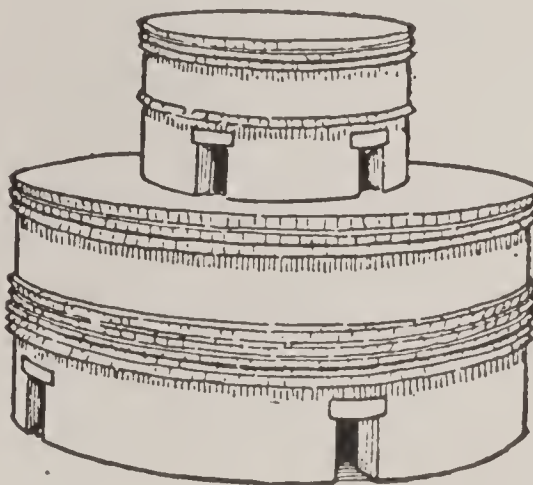
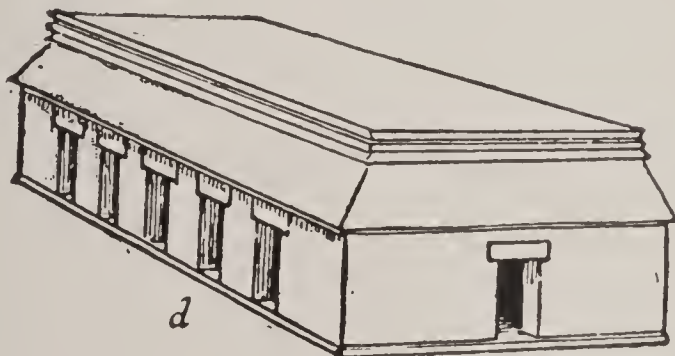
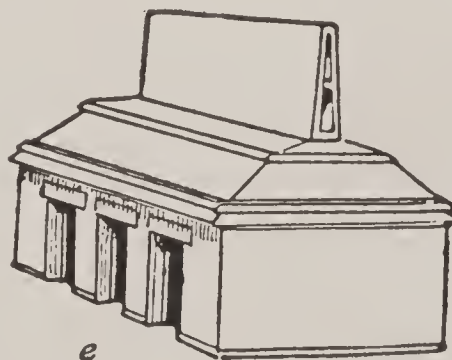
It is hard for us to realize the enormous amount of work this required and the hardships imposed upon the workman, but just imagine yourself lying out on the rough, hard rock in the tropical sun for days and weeks together, always chipping away at the solid rock. We should, no doubt, become very much discouraged in a short time, but the Aztecs were not used to seeing skyscrapers grow out of nothing in a few weeks. They were content to spend their whole lives working on a temple, knowing that they would never see it completed.

The Man of Plaster With Bones of Stone



Here you see how a figure was attached to those combs on the temples and the tombs of Aztec rulers. First they made a skeleton for him out of thin slabs of limestone. These skeletons were attached to the framework of the tombs, then around the skeleton the form was shaped in plaster and allowed to harden. These figures are supposed to have been erected to do honor to the ruler whose remains were laid away in the sanctuary to which they were attached, just as you see statues and busts over the graves of the distinguished dead in Westminster Abbey.

How the Mayas Used "Building Blocks"

*a**b**c**d**e**f*

This page will give you a clear idea of the different styles of architecture employed by the Aztecs and the Mayas. The Aztecs and the Mayas belonged to the same race of highly civilized Indians, the Mayas living in Central America and the Aztecs in the country to the north, including what is now Mexico. At (a) you see a single chamber building—the unit of

construction. The next picture (b), a multiple chamber building, is an assemblage of twelve or fourteen of these units, much as a little boy makes different shaped buildings with one style of building blocks; (c) circular building; (d) building with sloping roof similar to the modern mansard; (e) temple with roof comb; (f) square tower of four stories.

The Cookies and the Spinning Lesson

Fig. 1.



Fig. 2.



Fig. 3.



Fig. 4.



A Vivid Picture Story of Home Life Among the Aztecs

Here is a picture story by an Aztec artist which gives us an increasing insight into Aztec home life and the work of the women. In the first picture mother is handing daughter a spindle of wool and is going to teach her to spin. Back of mother is a "work box" in which the materials and things for spinning are kept. On the upper box sits a spindle with a disk weight attached to increase the momentum when it was twirled. The curl in front of the lips means that mother is talking. Notice the dutiful attitude of daughter. The little round thing just above her head represents a sweet cake which mother has promised to give her if she does her work well.

But, Oh, my! Just see what is happening in the next picture, and notice the expression on mother's mouth. You can see she is put out. Daughter, instead of kneeling down by the spindle box, is shrinking back and yet reaching out for the cake, meaning that she wants the cake first, but mother, you see, sternly points toward the work. She says, "No, little daughter, you must do your spinning lesson first and then you can have the cake." Mother is so vexed that she has stopped fanning herself with the fan which she holds in her right hand. You notice both

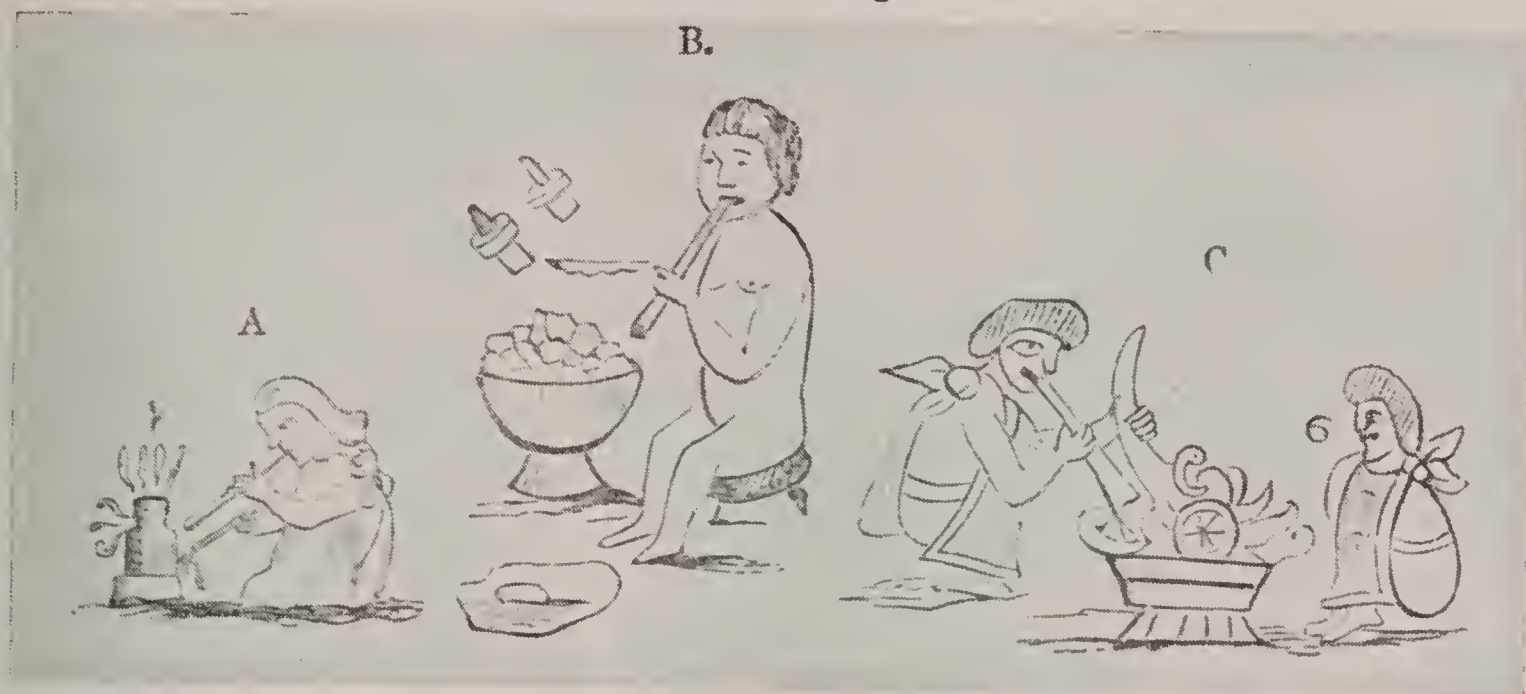
mother and daughter are wearing amulets on their breasts. This is not only for good looks, but for good luck.

But now, as you see in Figure 3, daughter has decided to be a good girl, and kneeling down by the spindle has already commenced to spin the thread. This pleases mother so much that she has quite a different expression on her face and you see she is saying something which pleases the little girl. Notice how she smiles. Can you guess what mother is saying? There it is as plain as day. She says, "Now that you are going to do as Mama says, she intends to give you a cake and a half!"

Figure 4 tells what would have happened to the little girl if she hadn't done as her mother said. She would not have received the cake and a half and she would have been given a whipping. No doubt when she finished her spinning lesson and got her cookie, she thought how much nicer it is to do your work and think how nice it is to get a cookie than it is *not* to do your work and think how nice it would be to get a cookie.

But little son as well as little daughter had home lessons to get in the days of the Aztecs. On the next page is one of the picture stories that tells how a goldsmith taught his son his trade. The letters A

How the Goldsmith Taught His Son



and B show how the blow pipe was used. One kind of a blow pipe had a wide mouth so as to spread the blast for annealing. A pipe with a narrow mouth was used for soldering. In the picture marked C the goldsmith holds in the left hand a pair of pincers made by bending strips of hollow copper. With the pincers he is holding a piece of gold jewelry which he is an-

nealing, in the flames. You see little son is watching all this and the curl in front of his mouth means that he is asking questions while father is explaining things. Among the Aztecs a father could always tell what his son was going to be, because whatever his own trade was, the boy was obliged to follow whether he wanted to or not.

Picture Language of the Indians



This is What the Chippewas Asked

A delegation of Chippewas went to Washington from Wisconsin, carrying with them this picture petition to be presented to the president. They wanted back certain land which they had ceded to the United States. The Chippewas who made up this delegation were represented in the picture by the figures of their clans, just as the Scouts have their clan symbols today. The totem of the chief who led the delegation was a crane. You notice there are lines running from his eye to the eyes of all the other totems that are following him. This means that all of the chiefs in the delegation—the marten, bear, catfish, etc.—look at the whole matter just as the chief does. In the same way all their hearts are connected, which means that they all have the same feeling about it. The line from the crane's eye forward points to Washington and the line leading to No. 8 refers to a group of small rice lakes near a river, marked 9, to which the Indians wanted to be moved.

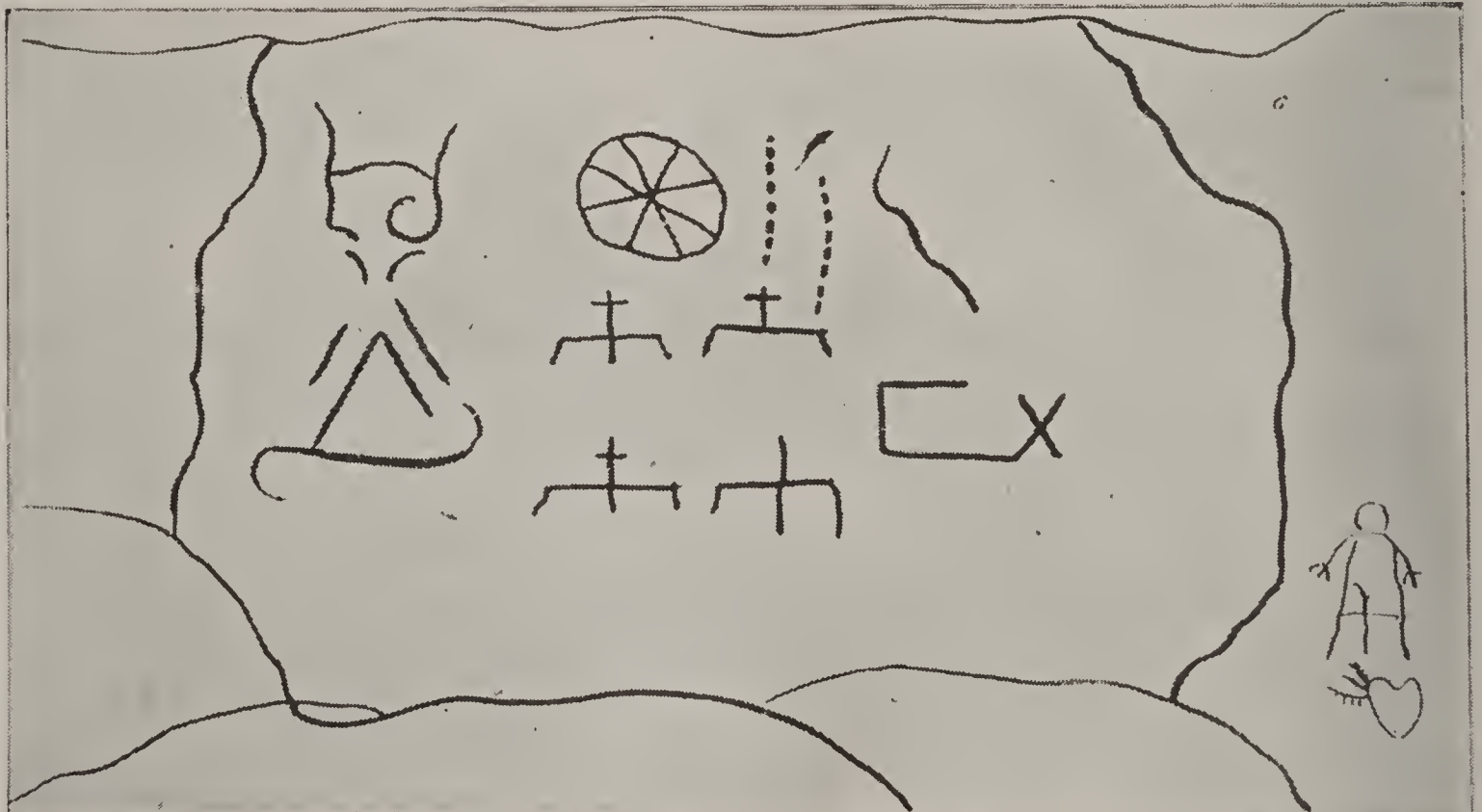
PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

The Bible in Picture Language



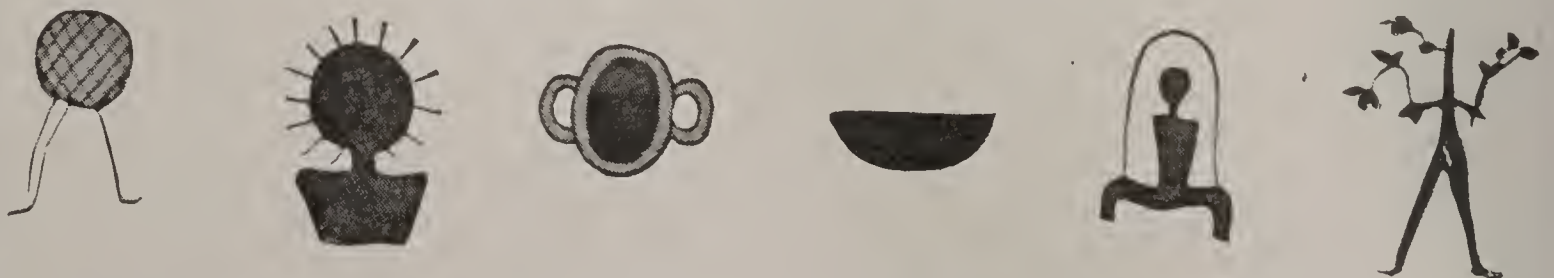
The chapters in the Indian Bibles sometimes had the contents summarized at the beginning just as you have in your Bible, except that for the Indians, the good missionaries used pictures instead of words. If you don't remember what Chapter 30 of Proverbs is about, you can recall from this picture what it says.

The Handwriting on the Walls



This illustrates the kind of picture-writing done by Indians on big rocks and on the stone walls of mountain sides. The little figures in the lower right hand corner tell us of a beloved Prophet of an Indian tribe who has passed away. You see he is wearing the long garment that the Priests wore. Below him is a heart with shrubs sprouting from one of the lobes. This meant that his people carried sweet memories of him in their hearts. The figures with crosses on them are supposed to indicate towns or forts.

From the Indian Picture Dictionary



Here are some additional examples of how much the Indians could tell each other by a very simple little picture. The first picture tells about a man walking by moonlight, the next how man gets light from on high. You see the sun and the sun's rays expressing intelligence. The next picture tells of a man who is eager to learn and listen. No. 4 represents the sea in its big earthen bowl. No. 5 is how father looks just before Christmas; a man with a load of presents. No. 6 an Indian doctor carrying various herbs.

The Arab's Farewell to His Steed

*My beautiful! my beautiful! that standest
meekly by,
With thy proudly-arched and glossy neck,
and dark and fiery eye!
Fret not to roam the desert now with all
thy winged speed:
I may not mount on thee again—thou'rt
sold, my Arab steed!*

*Fret not with that impatient hoof, snuff
not the breezy wind,
The farther that thou fliest now, so far am
I behind.
The stranger hath thy bridle rein—thy
master hath his gold;
Fleet-limbed and beautiful, farewell!—
thou'rt sold, my steed, thou'rt sold.*

*Farewell! Those free, untired limbs full
many a mile must roam,
To reach the chill and wintry sky which
clouds the stranger's home.
Some other hand, less fond, must now thy
corn and bed prepare;
The silky mane I braided once must be
another's care.*

*The morning sun shall dawn again, but
never more with thee
Shall I gallop o'er the desert paths, where
we were wont to be;
Evening shall darken on the earth, and
o'er the sandy plain
Some other steed, with slower step, shall
bear me home again.*

*Yes, thou must go! The wild, free breeze,
the brilliant sun and sky,
Thy master's home—from all of these my
exiled one must fly.
Thy proud dark eye will grow less proud,
thy step become less fleet,
And vainly shalt thou arch thy neck thy
master's hand to meet.*

*Only in sleep shall I behold that dark eye
glancing bright;
Only in sleep shall I hear again that step
so firm and light;
And when I raise my dreaming arm to
check or cheer thy speed,
Then must I, starting, wake to feel—
thou'rt sold, my Arab steed.*

*Ah! rudely then, unseen by me, some cruel
hand may chide,
Till foam-wreaths lie, like crested waves,
along thy panting side;
And the rich blood that's in thee swells in
thy indignant pain,
Till careless eyes, which rest on thee, may
count each starting vein.*

*Will they ill-use thee? If I thought—but
no, it cannot be,
Thou art so swift, yet easy curbed; so
gentle, yet so free;
And yet, if haply, when thou'rt gone, this
lonely heart should yearn,
Can the hand that casts thee from it now
command thee to return?*

*Return!—alas, my Arab steed! what shall
thy master do,
When thou, who wert his all of joy, hast
vanished from his view?
When the dim distance cheats mine eye,
and through the gathering tears
Thy bright form, for a moment, like the
false mirage appears?*

*Slow and unmounted shall I roam, with
weary step alone,
Where with fleet step and joyous bound
thou oft hast borne me on;
And, sitting down by that green well, I'll
pause and sadly think,
" 'Twas here he bowed his glossy neck
when last I saw him drink!"*

*When last I saw thee drink!—away! The
fevered dream is o'er!
I could not live a day and know that we
should meet no more!
They tempted me, my beautiful! for hun-
ger's power is strong—
They tempted me, my beautiful! but I have
loved too long.*

*Who said that I had given thee up? Who
said that thou wert sold?
'Tis false!—'tis false! my Arab steed! I
fling them back their gold!
Thus, thus, I leap upon thy back, and
scour the distant plains!
Away! who overtakes us now may claim
thee for his pains!*

HON. MRS. NORTON

The Santa Maria and the Liner



This is how the flagship of Columbus, the Santa Maria, would look alongside an ocean liner. Even these enormous liners sometimes succumb to the perils of the sea, as when the Titanic was sunk by striking an iceberg. Think then of the boldness of Columbus in putting to sea in that little cockleshell.

The Age of Discovery



The First Discoverers of America

Before they were converted to gentler ways by the Christian missionaries, the fierce, bold Vikings were for many years the terror of Europe. Pirates, raiders, and explorers, they even crossed the Atlantic in their strange boats. These vessels were light yet sturdy. They were driven, as you see, by the wind aided by the strong men at the oars, and were carved with terrible dragons' heads. The sails were square and made of flax, bound at the edges with hide to strengthen them. Often they were gorgeously embroidered, as this one is. This was done by the women. Dragons and serpents were their favorite devices. We know a great deal about these old sea rovers from the custom of burying with a war chief, his vessel, dogs, horses and weapons, in one great mound of earth. Several such mounds have been discovered and the old boats brought to light.

The Vikings' vessels were sometimes 80 feet long, but so shallow that they would float in four feet of water. With this kind of boat—in which your mother would probably consider it unsafe for you to take just a pleasure trip on one of the Great Lakes—the Vikings raided all the coasts of Europe and the Mediterranean, and discovered Iceland, Greenland, and America.

THE greatest events in all human history, the ones which changed and advanced the world most, were the birth of Christ, from which we date time, and the sailing of Columbus from Palos, Spain, nearly fifteen hundred years later. Before Columbus three-fourths of the world was unknown, its nature only dimly suspected, the wide oceans, lonely. Except for the open boats of a few Norse adven-

turers who visited Nova Scotia about the year 1000, no sail had been seen in Mid-Atlantic nor had white men reached its western shores. But within a century after 1492, this ocean swarmed with ships, and two bold navigators—Magellan for Spain, and Sir Francis Drake for England—had plowed their water furrows around the enormous earth, proving that it was in truth a globe.

Your school history tells the brave story of the discovery and

The
Outbreak of
Discovery

exploration of America, and of the adventurous men who were engaged in it. But really to understand what happened here, we should know something of the Old World from which the New was re-peopled. Why, after so many centuries of land-faring, were all the nations of Western Europe suddenly out on this fearful sea?

The chief reason, no doubt, was that the overland route to India, China and Japan had been closed, after Western Europe had become accustomed to the spices, silks, carpets, gold, pearls and other luxuries of the Far East. But religious zeal came second. The revival of Greek learning and the invention of printing, played their part, too. Men ventured again to believe and to say that the earth was round, and that ships might sail around it. And with the mariner's compass and astrolabe, or "star-finder," introduced from China, navigators were no longer afraid to leave the shore. Greed for gold, love of adventure and belief in fanciful tales about distant lands drew many out to these perilous adventures. The urgent need of salt fish, the chances of profitable trade, and envy of the growing wealth and sea-power of Spain, obliged others to enter the great water-race around the globe.

By the age of discovery—and much beside America was discovered—is meant the nearly 200 years from about 1420, when Portugal found the Cape Verde, Madeira and Canary Islands west of Africa, to 1609. Until after Champlain sailed into the St. Lawrence and Hudson went up the Hudson River, very little exploration in the interior of America was done, except by the

Two Centuries of Adventures

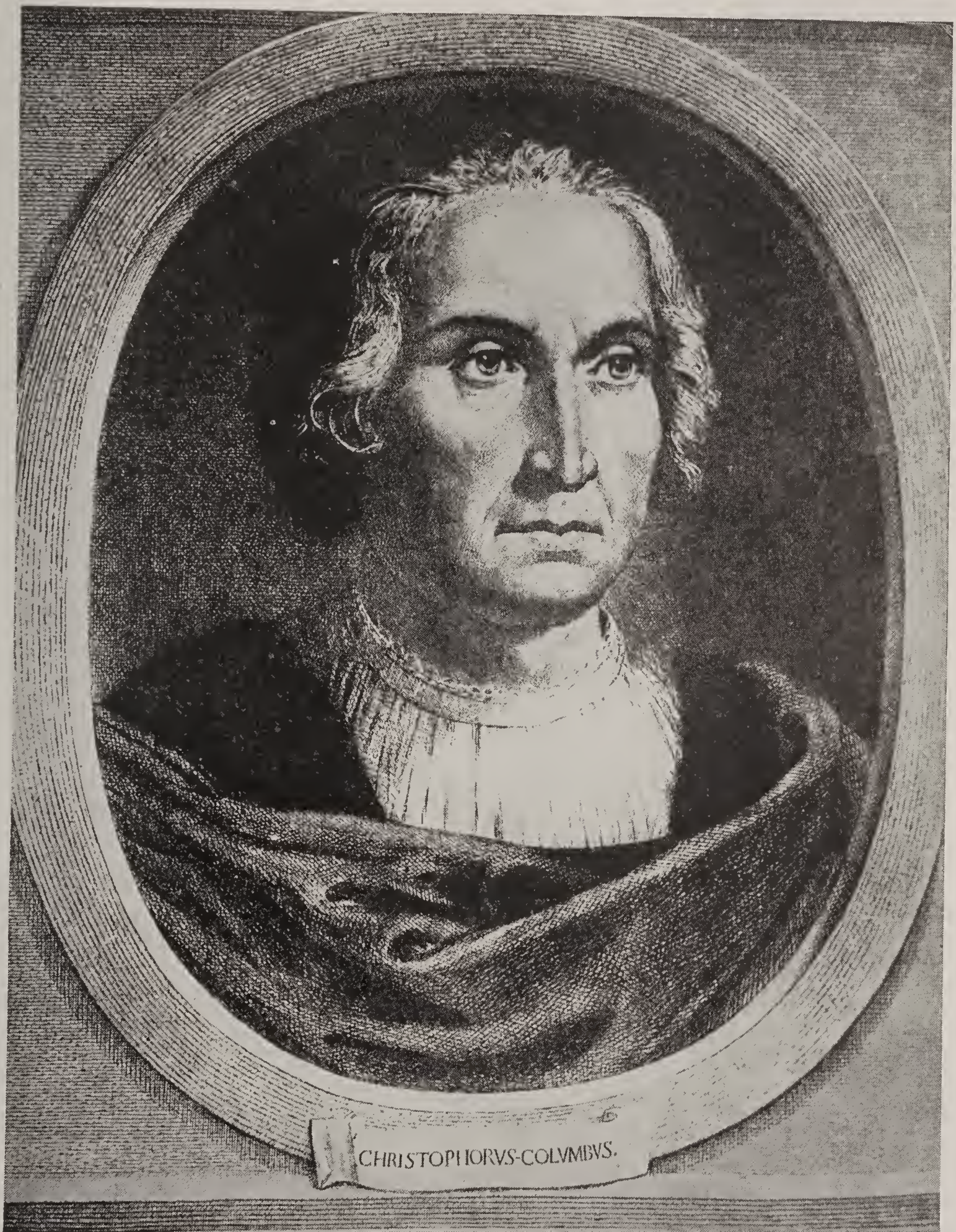
Spanish, working westward from Florida and north and south from Mexico. In the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries the drama was enacted in Europe and on the oceans. The seventeenth century saw new destinies of Old World peoples being worked out in the settlement of America.

The Daring Rovers of the North

To understand the story of Columbus and those who followed him, we shall have to go back six hundred years, to the Norsemen of the ninth and tenth centuries. The men of Denmark and Norway were the pagan sea-rovers and pirates of the time. The island-fringed, mountainous shores of Norway, heavily forested and deeply indented with glacier-carved fiords, faced the North Atlantic. Much of their land cold, steep, barren rocks, or sand and swampy lakes, the Danes and Norse were obliged to build boats and get their living from dark, fog-veiled and stormy seas. So here was the greatest training school for sailors, fighters and adventurers the world has ever seen. Putting boldly out to sea, they rode the gales and hailed the icebergs. The terror of seaport towns and coastwise traders and fishing boats, they raided every coast from England to Italy. Now and then a band settled on some good harbor in England and Northern France and there started other breeds of sea-faring men. It was the Normans, or Northman-French who, in the year 1066, conquered England; and Norman fishermen, who came from France to Newfoundland in such numbers about the year 1500.

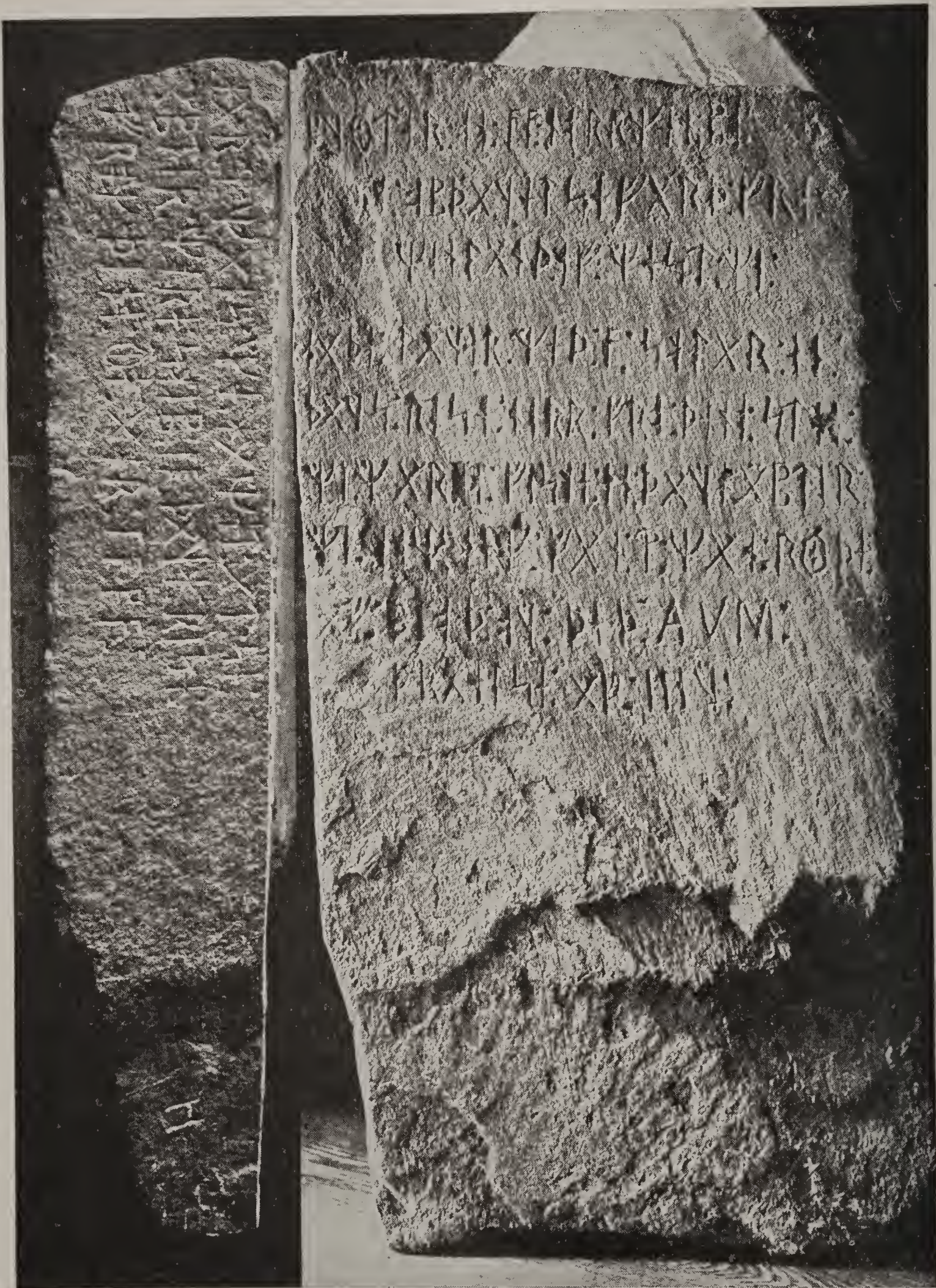
As early as the tenth century, with no compass but sun and stars,

The Face of a Dreamer and a Doer



Genoa is usually accorded the honor of being the birthplace of Columbus by historians of authority. But Spain and Portugal, and other Italian towns besides Genoa, claim him as their son. We are told he had the coloring of a Norseman—sea-blue eyes, auburn hair and a ruddy skin. That he was a handsome man you can see in the picture which this artist has painted. Some recent research workers even claim to have found proof that Columbus was a Portuguese Jew. Dispute as they may as to the facts surrounding the birth and ancestry of Columbus, the fact remains that he was one of the greatest navigators of history, a man of strong, clear faith and determined purpose, of the breed of men who achieve the great things of the earth. Notice the high cheek bones, the powerful nose, the square chin, the stout neck, the high forehead and the big thoughtful eyes—features which express a vigorous personality and a wide vision.

The Stone and Its Story



If you could read the Runic characters on this stone what it would say to you is this:
 "Eight Goths (Swedes) and twenty-two Norwegians upon a journey of discovery from Vinland westward. We had a camp by two skerries one day's journey north from this stone. We were out fishing one day. When we returned home we found ten men red with blood and dead. A. V. M. save us from evil.
 "(We) have ten men by the sea to look after our vessel fourteen days' journey from this island. Year 1362."

How They Explored the Explorers' Stone

Isn't that a queer looking stone? It was found under the roots of a tree on a lonely farm near Kensington, Minnesota, a good many years ago while the farmer was clearing the land for plowing. His two little boys, aged ten and twelve, were looking on. The inscription is in Runic characters, a form of writing used by the Norsemen.

The thought that here is actually a message of history carved in stone by the hands of those brave adventurers who are said to have found America before Columbus came, makes the story of the Norsemen and Vinland seem very real, doesn't it? But what is even more interesting is the story of how a committee of students of history, appointed by the Historical Society of Minnesota—the stone is now in the Society Museum—"explored" the stone itself.

First of all they came to the conclusion that the farmer could not have carved and buried the stone himself, because although a Swede, he was not an educated man, and, so of course, would not know how to write in the language of the fourteenth century. The roots of the tree under which it was found

*What the
Rings Had
to Say*

had grown around the stone and its rings showed that it was about forty years old, so that the stone must have

been there before the farmer bought the place. The investigators couldn't find any skerries "one day's journey north" from the stone. A skerry is a rock or reef standing out by itself in the water. The inscription speaks of "this island," but the stone was found on a hill and not on an island. Down to the time when the tree began growing over the stone, Vinland was supposed to be either Nova Scotia or Massachusetts; and these are a great deal more than fourteen days' journey—as those Norsemen would have had to travel—from the place where the stone was found.

Moreover, although the inscription pretended to have been carved over five hundred years ago, the edges and angles of the chiseling are sharp, whereas if exposed to the weather for only a few years, stone inscriptions begin to decay, as you can see in the marble slabs in any old graveyard.

All this looked pretty bad for the stone, didn't it? But further investigation showed that while there were no rocks standing in the water as described, there were found twenty miles to the North—what would have been a day's journey for the Norsemen—two large

rocks, and the geology of the region shows that these rocks were at one time surrounded by the waters of a lake, and also that the hill on which the stone was found must at one time have been an island.

As to the reference to Vinland, it is said that when the Norsemen came to America, the name was applied to the whole known coast of North America,

*A Little
Deeper into
the Past*

which at that time took in Hudson Bay. So the reference to Vinland as "Fourteen days' Journey" from

the island, would be natural after all. As to the inscription showing so little weathering after 500 years, it was learned that it was found lying face downward, and a stone so protected decays very slowly.

But what is regarded as the most remarkable thing in the whole inscription are the three letters, "A. V. M." This is an abbreviation of the Latin invocation in the Catholic service, "Ave Virgo Maria," but the Scandinavians were all Lutherans. Up to 1362, however, they were Catholics.

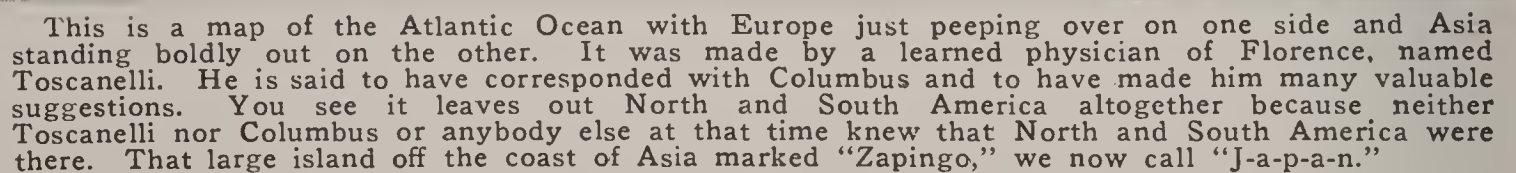
If the inscription was invented as a practical joke, it must have been by some very learned man who knew these things which only a scholar would know. But why did he put it where he would have to wait so long to know whether he fooled anybody or not? In previous hoaxes, such as the discovery of buried "giants," the man who buried them saw to it that they were discovered. Moreover, learned men get their greatest pleasure in searching for the truth and not in playing practical jokes. And the inventor of this inscription would have to be a skilful writer also. You see it would be very easy for a Norseman to tell this brief and simple tragic story. It is easy to tell the truth, but it is very difficult to invent a story that looks like the truth, and particularly to tell it in such a small space.

Yet, although the members of the committee were satisfied that the stone was genuine, several other scholars were

*History
Back of Your
Histories*

not. They insisted that several of the words used in the inscription were not spelled as they were spelled

in the fourteenth century. But, whether the stone is genuine or not, the story of how scientific men explore facts is the most profitable and interesting part of it. It will help you to realize how hard and how carefully students of history work.



Guided by Stars and Ravens

How the Norse Inspired Columbus

What was Columbus doing in Portugal? He was a native of Genoa, Italy, which lay in the very center of the known world. Around

Columbus and the Wise Men of Spain



When Columbus made his daring proposition to reach the East by sailing west, he was referred to a council of the wise men of the realms of Spain. Here we see him, map in hand, proving with great eloquence and enthusiasm that he can accomplish what he promises. The learned men, mostly priests and church officials, are telling him he is a madman and a heretic. One of them is showing him the passage in the Bible that refers to the "four corners of the earth" as proof that the world is flat, not round. Another is holding out the writing of some of the early church fathers, whose crude ideas of science were taken as authority by the people of the Middle Ages. These wise men also said that Columbus could never carry enough provisions to sail around the world, and that even if he did get around on the other side he couldn't get back again without sailing up hill which would be impossible. They laughed at the idea of people walking around with heads pointing down and feet up, because they didn't understand the nature of the laws of gravity.

the Mediterranean Sea had risen and fallen all the ancient empires. In the middle centuries the independent republics of Genoa and Venice were rulers of this sea, sharing between themselves the naval power and commerce, and the overland trade with India and China. The fleets of Venice had gone to Egypt and Asia Minor to meet the camel caravans from Arabia; those of Genoa to the head of the Black Sea, to meet the caravans from the Caspian Sea and the Persian Gulf. For three centuries no Italian navigator had had to seek employment in a foreign land. After 1460 they were numerous and needy in Lisbon, Pa-

los, Antwerp and London. Why this change? Let us see.

You know how white settlers in America gradually pushed the Indians westward? Something like that happened in the Old World before Columbus' day. The people of Western Europe were pushed toward the Atlantic by crowding hordes from Asia. The Westward urge began in China. A great military leader, Genghis Kahn, organized the Mongols into an army that conquered the eastern provinces of China. Under his grandson, Kublai Kahn, this Mongol Empire spread westward to the Caspian Sea.

*The Restless
Westward
Drive*

How Columbus Won the Support of Isabella



After Columbus had been refused a hearing several times and referred to councils which always reported unfavorably upon his scheme, Queen Isabella of Castile finally summoned him to her presence. Here he is talking, with all his eloquence and enthusiasm, of the land he will reach by sailing west. The wise men of the realm are there to listen to him, and a few ladies-in-waiting attend the queen. A scribe or notary is beside Columbus to take down in correct legal fashion his promises and demands, as well as the terms of any agreement that may be made between him and Isabella. Isabella was sole ruler of Castile and Leon, and the wife of King Ferdinand of Aragon, and she was a wise monarch.

See how she has leaned forward, she is so interested, and how thoughtfully she is listening to the glowing words of Columbus. If this strange man really can reach the East Indies by sailing west, what a wealth of trade will pour into her dominions! And there will be new lands to conquer, heathen to convert to Christianity and untold wealth for Spain if what Columbus says is true.

The painter of this picture shows Isabella's jewels being brought and laid out upon the table, to furnish money for the expedition—in accordance with the old story of how she raised the necessary funds. But this story has been proved a mistake. Isabella did not pawn her jewels for Columbus—though she was so eager to help him that she would willingly have done so. Part of her jewels had already been pawned to wage war against the Moors, but as that war proved successful, she was well supplied with money at this time.

The first effect of this was to enrich Venice and Genoa, for Kublai Kahn encouraged trade and travel. Italian princes and merchants took service under him and visited the courts of China and of India. One of these travelers, Marco Polo, wrote such glowing accounts of the wealth and splendor of the East that a kind of fever to see those strange lands and fairy courts ran like an epidemic over Europe.

Then something else happened. In pushing his empire westward, Kublai Kahn had to push the Otto-

Decay of Venice and Genoa man Turks before him into Asia Minor. These fanatic Mohammedans, enemies of all Christian people, then crossed the Dardanelles into

Europe, and after a hundred years captured Constantinople. The trade routes to the East were suddenly closed by Turkish fleets and armies. The ships of Venice and Genoa returned to their docks, many to rot, some to creep timidly out through the Strait of Gibraltar to trade with London and Antwerp. While Greek scholars and artists swarmed into Italy, to add to its learning and build up its arts, Italian merchants, bankers and seamen sought opportunity and employment in every country facing the Atlantic.

The "New Birth" of Europe

This period was, indeed, such an amazing time of intellectual expansion that it was called the Renais-

The Last Farewells at Palos



Just imagine that it is dawn on Friday, August 3, 1492. After long delays and difficulties, the 120 men and three little ships have been gotten together to embark on this mad voyage to the unknown ends of the earth. Everyone but Columbus has dark fears that the expedition never will return. That is why the women weep as they bid the men farewell, and that is why Prior Juan Perez looks sadly at the enthusiastic Columbus as he says good bye. The Prior was a warm friend of Columbus and helped him many times at court, where he had some influence with the queen, and in getting the much needed ships and sailors in Palos, from which the expedition started. The three vessels are riding at anchor in the harbor of Palos on the broad bosom of the red-brown Tinto. The oarsmen are ready to push off, and the Pinzon brothers, captains of the Nina and Pinta, are saying goodbye to their families. The men have all spent long hours in the church every day for weeks, praying and asking forgiveness for their sins. The first ebb tide of the day will soon carry them out to sea and they will sail westward into the unknown, uncharted Atlantic.

The short tunic, long tight hose, and small velvet cap which Columbus wears were much in use at that time. Notice that he wears his sword hung loosely from his belt on the left side. The little boy clinging to his father, Martin Pinzon, wears striped hose. Sometimes these stripes only ran down one leg, while the other one was a solid color. The Prior, you see, is not clean shaven as the priests of today are, but his clothing is much the same in style.

sance or "new birth" of Europe. With the invention of printing there was a revival of literature. And that was followed by the Reformation or religious upheaval in Northern countries, and by a freeing of the spirit in exploration and discovery. All the powers of men were quickened, their vision enlarged. Great events trod on each other's heels. As Venice and Genoa declined, the fleets of five nations—Portugal, Spain, England, The Netherlands and France—rose in size and power and navigated all the uncharted oceans. Disunited Italy's skilled seamen won empire and glory for every land but their own.

Columbus went first to Portugal. One of the smallest and poorest countries of Europe, it had taken the leadership on the sea. Early in the century, Prince Henry had set up a school of navigation and naval design. Religion was his motive. For hundreds of years Spain and Portugal had been overrun by the Moors or Saracens of Morocco. To carry the war into Africa, and prevent the return of the Moslem hordes, Portugal built a fleet and opened the Strait of Gibraltar. Then, growing bold, the Madeiras, Canaries, Cape Verde Islands and the Azores were discovered and set-

*The Rise
of
Portugal*

PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

Columbus Lands in the New World



Columbus has just set his foot on the shores of the little island which he named San Salvador. He is richly clad in honor of the occasion and is accompanied by the brothers Pinzon, bearing the banner of the green cross, and by most of his crew. According to the old account of the event, they all gave thanks to God, kneeling upon the shore and kissed the ground with tears of joy for the great mercy received. Columbus then named the island, San Salvador, and took possession of it for Ferdinand and Isabella.

Columbus Telling of His Discovery



When Columbus returned successful from the voyage which everyone had prophesied would end in ruin, he was loaded with honors and wealth. Here we see him being received in state by Ferdinand and Isabella, who are listening with interest to the story of his adventures. He has brought gold and many implements of Indian manufacture, as well as some of the Indians themselves, to prove the truth of his story. The whole court is gathered here, in one of the big audience halls of the palace at Barcelona, to hear Columbus' account of his discovery.

tled, and Portuguese navigators began to creep down the African coast to lands of dates, ivory and gold. Hearing of the spices of islands

This explains why Columbus failed to get a hearing in Lisbon. Portugal was already putting all her resources into developing a much

The Santa Maria and How She Sailed



© Underwood & Underwood

The famous little vessel of Columbus, the Santa Maria, may be said to have "discovered" America twice; once when it carried Columbus and again in 1893. As part of the celebration of the 400th Anniversary of the first voyage of Columbus, an exact copy of the Santa Maria was built in Spain and sailed across the Atlantic and through the great lakes to Chicago where, moored on the shore at Jackson Park, it was one of the most interesting historic exhibits at the great World's Fair. The trip was made in 36 days, about half the time taken for the voyage of Columbus, but the experienced sailors who made up the crew said that it pitched horribly.

In studying this little vessel, one of the first things that strike us is that it stands so high out of the water and that the masts are so tall for the length of the vessel. This is because the more surface a vessel offers to the wind the faster it will travel—provided, of course, it doesn't capsize. It was necessary to make the masts so high in order to carry the huge sails. That great, high projection at the bow is the forecastle. Almost all of the medieval vessels were built on this plan because all vessels were battleships in those days, liable to be attacked at any moment and this high forecastle furnished a convenient place for men to gather in attacking an enemy vessel. The foresail bears the papal cross and the mainsail the Maltese cross, while the papal cross and the Spanish flag fly from the masts.

far to the east, the Portuguese started for "the bottom of the world." In 1497, six years before Columbus' expedition, they reached the Cape of Good Hope. Then Vasco da Gama sailed around the Cape to India in 1497.

empty treasury of Spain. John Cabot discovered only the bleak shores of Labrador, with its icebergs, polar bears, codfish and eider ducks. His voyage created no desire in England for further exploration. His story

*Dividing Up
the
Big Apple*

safer and more promising line of exploration, mission work and trade. His appeal failed in England. Lying far off on the northwestern corner of Europe, neither king nor country had yet awakened to what was going on. Besides, the English had only small coast-wise and fishing boats. The city of Bristol, however, did build a ship to be manned by a crew of nineteen, for John Cabot, an Italian navigator who had settled in that seaport town. He, too, sailed in 1497. So it happened that three explorers, sailing south, west and northwest, all seeking the same thing—a sea route to the Far East—were on the Atlantic at the same time.

To Portugal and Spain came the good luck. Da Gama brought back a cargo from India that made Lisbon rich, and Columbus opened the way to lands of gold to fill the

John Cabot and His Son Sebastian

was little known for the next sixty years and, after one more voyage, his neglected son Sebastian sought employment in Spain. Besides, all exploration of other nations was forbidden, when the Pope divided the unknown world between Spain and Portugal.

Nothing Left for Others

The English were still loyal to the Church of Rome and would not disobey the Pope. The French were good Catholics, too, but the King of France had the spirit to protest against this unfairness, and to send the Norman fishing fleets of St. Malo to the banks of Newfoundland, where Cabot's ship had plowed through oceans of cod. In 1523 he boldly

sent an Italian navigator, Verrazano, on an exploring expedition. He waylaid a Spanish treasure ship



The idea of sailing west in order to reach the East Indies seems to have occurred to John Cabot about the same time it did to Columbus. And the man who gave England her claim to North America was like Columbus in another respect; he was by birth a Genoese. He moved to England in order to interest the English merchants and king in his project. With the help of Henry VII he made two trips to America and planted the English flag on Canadian soil, thus giving England a claim to the New World which was of great value to her in later years.

Very little is known about the life of John Cabot. He and his son Sebastian are always mentioned together, while Sebastian's other two brothers do not seem to have been so closely associated with their father. Sebastian was a young man in his twenty's at the time of his father's first voyage to America, and probably went with him, though it is not known definitely. After his father's death he led an expedition of his own to South America and achieved considerable fame as a navigator and map-maker. The statue here shows him as a young man, scarcely more than a boy, lovingly pointing out the way to his old father. We can imagine that the Cabots are on their first voyage to America and that Sebastian is enthusiastically urging a venturesome trip into some unexplored river mouth, which the elder Cabot is fearful to undertake. His father is studying the map and thinking over the suggestion with the cautiousness of age.

and explored 2,000 miles of our northeastern coast. Then he was captured and put to death as a pirate. Violent death, disgrace or neglect, was the fate of most of the explorers of all nations in America. Many, indeed, were pirates; and most ships were traders, armed naval vessels and privateers in one. In this wild and lawless time the destiny of nations was decided on the oceans of the world.

France was distracted from further adventures for one hundred years, but stuck to her sober business of bringing fish home from the Grand Banks of Newfoundland for her Friday dinner. But not England. Seeing a profitable business and plenty of adventure in bucca-

neering, they built swift ships with high forecastles, clouds of sails and long-range cannon and

sailed out, alike to explore and to raid the Spanish treasure ships. It was these explorers and pirates, who, in the sixteenth century, opened the sea to England and secured for her the discoveries of the Cabots.

Spain's Undeserved Good Fortune

But in the main, the story of the sixteenth century in America belongs to Spain, although she did little to deserve her good fortune. Unlike little Portugal, she had no interest in the science of navigation, and gave Columbus only a half-hearted hearing, deluding him with false promises. There is nothing more tragic in history than the figure of this poor, discredited genius. A beggar at indifferent courts at fifty-five, ridiculed, gray, broken-hearted, we see him leading his motherless son, Diego, across the lovely landscape of Andalusia, to the monastery of La Rabida to beg the good brothers for food and shelter. And no situation in melodrama seems more wildly improbable than that he should find there a father confessor to Queen Isabella.

Columbus got another hearing because the royal treasury was depleted from long religious war against the Mohammedan Moors of Granada in Southern Spain. There was

The Navigator and the Dreamers money in the India trade, but Portugal had the route about the Cape of Good Hope all but completed, and would not share it. There was hope only in the West. The Spaniards believed ardently in old legends of fabled islands and cities in the sea, in mountains of gold and fountains of youth. So the great navigator got his ships and sailed from Palos, Spain. His greatness lay, not in the fact that he dis-

covered America, for he died in ignorance that he had found a new continent, but in his vision and daring in sailing westward at all.

Other Spanish explorers had only to follow in his path. By 1525 they had explored the coast from Florida around to California, and penetrated the heart of the continents, working westward from Florida and north and south from Mexico. The cross went with the sword into every wilderness they trod. Magellan, a Portuguese in the service of Spain, first circumnavigated the globe, and for quite two hundred years Spanish treasure fleets, convoyed by ships of war, plowed the seas.

England's Collision with Spain

But they were not left unmolested. America was too big for one nation to occupy, the oceans too vast to be defended. The geographical situation of Spain had given the Spaniards the best route, in that day of sailing vessels, in the path of the trade-winds along the Tropic of Cancer, and the lands of gold in the American tropics. Above the Carolinas on the eastern coast their ships never cruised, and all the North Atlantic was left unguarded. Quite unmolested by them, the Norman French, descendants of the old Norse Vikings, fished in ever-growing numbers on the Grand Banks of Newfoundland and even followed schools of whales into the St. Lawrence. And the Spaniards used their flood of gold from Mexico to wage war on the Protestant Netherlands, and to threaten England with naval fleets. When the English broke with the Pope and set up a church of their own, Spain, as defender of the Roman faith, undertook to punish them.

England was too small and poor to make open war on Spain, but her rulers aided and abetted venturesome men in building and arming the biggest and swiftest vessels on the ocean. With all sails spread, these men of Bristol and Plymouth braved the fogs, storms and cross-currents of the North Atlantic, and swooped down like hawks on the Spanish treasure fleets. Many seamen left commerce and fishing to engage in this profitable and patriotic business of piracy. The British bred as bold, picturesque and successful buccaniers and slave-traders as ever sailed the seas. As early as 1563, Sir John Hawkins invaded the Portuguese regions of East Africa, sold Negroes in the West Indies, and brought American Indians to London. Sir Francis Drake was bolder, sinking whole fleets, and burning towns and robbing the mule pack-trains on the Isthmus of Pana-

ma. From a peak there Drake had glimpsed the Pacific—blue, peaceful, shimmering—that had thrilled the Spaniard, Balboa, half a century before, and vowed to God that he would make a “perfect discovery” of that great ocean. In 1580 he returned from his voyage around the world. Some historians call him the British Puck. He had put a girdle around the earth. The first of all English heroes of the sea, he helped to make it possible to lay claim to the lands discovered nearly a hundred years before by the Cabots, now remembered and honored, and to plant English colonies on the North Atlantic seaboard.

The Good Qualities of Magellan



Does this look like a man of stubborn will, great courage and (for his age) a humane disposition? He was all these things and this is Ferdinand Magellan, the first man to sail around the world. He was born a mountaineer, far away from ships and the sea, but he was of noble descent and went as a page to the court of the king when he was only a boy. There he heard the wonderful reports of the great navigators of that age of discovery as they returned from the far ends of the earth. Fired with the zeal to equal their exploits, he embarked upon an expedition around the Cape of Good Hope to the East Indies. Magellan was a small, homely man, with irregular features and an awkward appearance, but his will was tremendous and his mind clear and active. In the midst of the fierce storms and hardships of the passage through the strait that bears his name, Magellan's men besought him to go no farther. He replied, "I will press on if we have to eat the leather of the rigging." And his statement was proved to be literally true, for in the midst of the vast Pacific, when the biscuit had become a mass of wormy powder and the drinking water was so foul that the sailors had to hold their noses in drinking it, they did cut off pieces of the leather rigging, soak them in sea water to soften them and broiled them over the coals.

Unlike most of the explorers for Spain, he was so humane to the natives whom he encountered on the voyage that his men complained because his gentleness didn't give them enough amusement; nor could he be prevailed upon to turn aside from his purpose to look for gold or treasure. He did not live to complete the circumnavigation of the earth, as he was slain by natives in the Philippine Islands in 1521.

Francis Drake was the last and best of a brave and patriotic breed of men who won for England her place on the sea. Before he died on shipboard in the West Indies, the courtly Oxford student, Walter Raleigh, appeared, won the

Magellan Passing Through the Straits



This picture gives you a good idea of how the vessels of Magellan must have looked when they sailed through the straits which bear his name, as the details of the kind of ships in which he is known to have sailed are very carefully worked out. It was considered quite an achievement for the United States to send a fleet of great war vessels through these straits, under Admiral Evans a number of years ago. But several of the battleships of this fleet were of 16,000 tons of burden, while none of Magellan's were more than 130 tons and some were only 60 tons.

Raleigh and "The Drake"



The Terror of the Spanish

Sir Francis Drake's character is easily read in this portrait of him. Not so much the gentleman and courtier as Raleigh, his large eyes look boldly at you, his chin is square and firm. There is not a weak line about his face. And he needed all that boldness and strength in his long voyage around the world, for making such a trip, with the small sailing vessels then in use, and a rich, powerful enemy like Spain to combat, was a very brave thing indeed. But it is to Drake and the men like him that England owes her sea power today, for they broke Spain's cruel rule in the New World and swept her haughty merchantmen off the seas. So greatly did the Spanish fear him that when the great Spanish Armada was sent against the English fleet and its commander, found that the vessel attacking his own ship was commanded by Drake, he struck his colors at once, not even attempting resistance against the gallant Englishman.

fickle favor of Queen Elizabeth, explored, named and claimed for England the coast of Virginia, and left a company of ill-fated colonists on Roanoke Island. He and his dream of colonization were brief, for he was overtaken by the tragic end that awaited most explorers. After fifteen years of unjust imprisonment, he was executed on a charge of treason in 1618. He was soon forgotten, for London, Paris and Ant-



Raleigh, the Courtier, in His Gallant Dress

Sir Walter Raleigh lived in a romantic age of stirring events and took no small part in the shaping of those events. As a youth he had his own fortune to make and, being of an adventurous disposition, he went to court. You all know the story of how, when his clothes represented "a considerable part of his estate," he threw his cloak across a puddle so that the queen might not soil her shoes. It was by such acts as this, and by the charm of his handsome face, strong, tall figure, and ready wit in flattery and vers-making that he won the queen's favor. Raleigh was a court dandy and a very fine gentleman indeed, as well as a writer and explorer, so he was dressed in the very latest fashion you may be sure. What do you think of his collar? The ruff had at that time only recently come into fashion. It began to be used in the first half of the sixteenth century as a little cambric collar with a fancy edge.

werp were thinking of little but finding the northwest passage to China for which the Cabots had searched as far as Hudson's Bay. Portugal held the route around Africa, and Magellan and Drake had proved the length and perils of the voyage around South America. Both were too long for northern countries. England, France and Holland turned their eyes and hopes north-westward.

Wonderful Story of the Dutch

The Dutch had fairly won their right to a share in the exploration of the New World and of trade in the Far East. A smaller country even than Portugal had been, though enriched by industry and trade, only 800,000 sturdy people dwelt on the sterile sands behind the dykes of Holland on the North Sea. There they had fought their long wars for political and religious liberty against the armies of Spain. In the days of English privateering they decided that their enemy was to be defeated only on the sea. Declaring honorable war, the Dutch, too, raided the treasure ships and brought home gold to pay and feed their little armies. When able to hold their own on the sea the Dutch stoutly disputed the division of the world and started out definitely to find a route of their own.

What this little nation did in the last quarter of the sixteenth century is altogether incredible. The Dutch first sent ships northeast, trying to round Norway and Russia. Some of their ship-wrecked crews spent

winters on Nova Zembla and Spitzbergen. Shakespeare speaks of these earliest of arctic explorers in his reference to "icicles hanging on a Dutchman's beard." They cared

A "Type" Picture of Henry Hudson



This is not a true picture of Henry Hudson, for, so far as we know, that brave explorer never had his portrait painted. It is the picture of some unknown man who probably resembled Hudson, and so the picture came to be called a portrait of Henry Hudson and as such has come down to us. Hudson's name is written a good many times on the map of our continent, though he didn't actually discover the regions that are named for him. He and Champlain both proved about the same time that there is no short route to China across North America, and Hudson's voyages were the beginning of the great fisheries and other trade with the New World.

little for ice, storm or fog, but they were not reckless. When, in Archangel, Russia, they heard of the bitter, endless leagues of Siberia stretching southward around the North Pole, they very sensibly turned back.

Next they tried the southern route. Fighting the Portuguese, tropic storms, the ship diseases of long voyages, and the natives of Java, they brought back cargoes of spices. The orange, white and

blue flag of the Dutch Republic was on every sea.

Not contented with these achievements, they rivaled England and France in efforts to find the Northwest Passage, offering a prize and honors to any navigator of any nation who would discover it. This attracted the attention of an Englishman, Henry Hudson, who entered the Dutch service, and sailed westward in the Half-Moon. This was in

What Hudson Did for the Dutch

Henry Hudson's Last Voyage



Hudson's fourth voyage of exploration, in the service of England, took him into what is now Hudson Bay, where his little vessel, the "Discovery," was frozen in during the winter. When the ice broke up in the spring the ship's provisions were so low that it seemed that all aboard must starve. The men were sick and rebellious, and of course they blamed Henry Hudson for the sufferings they were undergoing. He was still eager to press on in the hope of finding a passage to Asia, but the crew took matters into their own hands. They set him adrift, with eight of the sick-est of their number, in a small, open boat, while they made all possible speed back to England. Here you see Hudson, comforting his small son, who is too sick and weak to sit up alone, and at the same time guiding the rudder of the little boat so that it won't be crushed to pieces by the great ice floes of Hudson Bay. One of the sick men is crouching under a fur robe in the foreground. Notice the clear, sad eyes the artist has given the old explorer; he is doing his feeble best to prevent their destruction, though he can see nothing ahead but death from cold and hunger.

The faithless crew of the "Discovery" fared but little better than the captain whom they deserted. Several of them were killed in a battle with the Eskimos, others died of starvation on the return voyage, and the few who reached England were thrown into prison for their crime.

1609, one hundred and seventeen years after Columbus sailed from Palos, Spain.

The exploration of America was far from being finished, but a new era had opened. In 1600 neither England, France nor Holland held a foot of soil in the Western Hemisphere. With the exception of Brazil, which Portugal held, Spain claimed both continents and was in actual possession of two-thirds of the land. But Northern Europe was determined, if not united. A small colony was established by the Eng-

lish at Jamestown, Virginia, in 1607. In 1609, Champlain entered the St. Lawrence River and planted the golden lilies of France at Montreal; Henry Hudson sailed up the Hudson River for the Dutch, and an Englishman, Captain John Smith, explored the coast of New England. All of these explorers were searching for the Northwest Passage to China. Not one of them dreamed of the extent or riches of the continent, whose water gates they had entered, or that a new age of colonization had opened.



How Columbus Landed at Taunton

The school children of Taunton, Mass., gave a pageant in which they acted out the landing of Columbus. Here we see Columbus approaching the new shore, welcomed by a wondering Indian. He landed, you know, "richly clad and bearing a royal banner of Spain, on Watling Island, called by him Saint Salvador." Notice the "F. Y." on the banner. This stands for Ferdinand and Isabella, for in Spanish, Queen Isabella's name began with a "Y."

De Soto and His Romance



De Soto was a poor young nobleman, who as a retainer in the household of Pedrarias d'Avila, the Governor of a Spanish colony in America, fell in love with Avila's daughter, Isabella. Then Avila fell out with him for he had other plans for Isabella. Having failed to secure the assassination of De Soto he readily consented to his coming to America in the hope that he would be killed or disgraced in the fierce struggles for wealth in the new country. But, instead, as we know, De Soto won fame and fortune in the New World. Isabella waited for him faithfully and when he returned to Spain, fifteen long years afterward—Avila, in the meantime having died—they were married and lived happily in Seville for two years, when De Soto embarked on the expedition for which he is chiefly noted and which cost him his life.

The Spanish Gold Seekers and Their Rule of Ruin

NO time in the history of the human race furnishes a more interesting and instructive study than that of the colonization of America by Spain, France and England. Here, on a continental scale, is illustrated the fact that the destiny of a nation is determined less by its outer circumstances than by the character and ideals of its people. In the settlement of America, Spain had all the advantages of time, location and natural wealth. She preceded France and England in the New World by a century, had the most favorable trade route, and found gold and silver with which to develop her possessions in the rich American tropics. It is true that she came in contact with, and was opposed by the two most civilized and highly organized of Indian

*How Spain
Won Wealth
and Ruin*



**The Spanish Soldier's Iron Hat and
Its Air Holes**

When Cortez led his little force against the great Aztec citadel, he defeated the Aztecs but sacrificed most of his own men. This helmet was lost by one of the Spanish soldiers who died there and was found many years afterward. It is not one of the headpieces worn by mounted knights in full armor, as you see, but probably belonged to a foot soldier who was either a gunner or archer. It is hardly more than a peaked iron hat but it was a good deal of protection to the soldier's head against the heavy wooden or stone weapons of the Indians. Foot soldiers did not wear full suits of mail at any time during the Middle Ages when armor was worn, for it was too heavy for a long march or for quick movement on foot, and it was too costly for a poor man to buy and keep in repair. During the long marches in the hot sun and over the Mexican mountains, the soldiers of Cortez wore no more armor than was absolutely necessary, you may be sure, because it was so uncomfortable. The holes were for ventilation. Imagine wearing a hat like this in the broiling sun!

nations—the Aztecs of Mexico and the Incas of Peru — but she was equipped to conquer them speedily and had no long, harassing Indian wars. So one might reasonably expect to find Spanish colonies the most flourishing and progressive. The reverse is true. They sank steadily into poverty, disorder and ruin as the English colonies rose to prosperity, responsibility and freedom.

Presently we shall discover that American colonies failed or succeeded according to the worth of the ideas upon which they were founded. The Spaniards were gold seekers, caring nothing for the lands of their discovery, except what they could take out of them. The French were adventurers, missionaries and conscious empire builders, the success of their plans depending upon the intelli-

gent co-operation of the mother country, which was not always given. The English alone were self-reliant, home builders and defenders. They depended on themselves.

Greek and Roman Ideas of Colonization

We must remember that to the peoples of Europe of that day, emigration was an experiment. Since the fall of the Roman Empire there had been few large movements of the population, or undeveloped lands open to settlement. So all their ideas of colonies were got from the histories of ancient Greece and Rome. The Greek colony was founded by a band of voluntary exiles like the Pilgrims of the Mayflower. A brave little company of families departed from their old home, taking seeds, tools and cattle with them. They expected to make

*The Loyal
Greek
Colonists*

a living by their own labor, and to govern and defend themselves. Loyal

citizens of Greece, they were ever ready to fight for their parent city, and to her they looked, with a confidence that was seldom abused, for help and protection. On this ideal, a wide community of rich farming lands and commercial cities spread around the islands and shores of the eastern Mediterranean Sea and flourished for a thousand years.

The Roman Empire was built up by conquest. Conquering her colonies by the sword, she held them with garrisons of soldiers, but only until lands could be allotted to Roman citizens, who emigrated with

*How
Europe
Copied Rome*

their families. The Roman colony was not self-governing. It was always ruled by appointment from the capital. In the settlement of America this Roman idea of central-

ized power was held by every court of Europe. The new lands were the property of the Crown, to be given or withheld at the pleasure of the king, and it was his right to appoint the governor. But while this theory of the colony was held in all countries, the practical workings of it differed widely.

In England, where there was a measure of political liberty and a surplus of industrious, independent people, emigration was encouraged, and some colonies were granted charters to govern themselves. Only ill-advised monarchs interfered much with colonial liberties or

*How the
English
Differed*

imposed unpopular governors or unjust taxes.

Thus the English colony was a mixture of the Greek and Roman. It was protected and fostered, and at the same time learned to be self-reliant. The French colony was purely Roman, but lacked strength and definite policy. The Spanish colony was the conquered Roman province at its worst. Captured and ruled by the sword, it was held for three centuries by an army of occupation, while it was systematically parceled out, robbed and oppressed. It existed for no people, but solely to fill the king's treasury. The only redeeming feature was the devotion and self-sacrifice of the missionary monks whose ruined mission villages still dot the landscape of our southwest.

Spanish Men and Methods

Now the early Spanish explorers should be given due credit for their heroism and very great discoveries. They braved dangers and endured hardships such as no English and few French ever faced. And they were not all plumed, mailed and

mounted knights, like Cortez in Mexico, and Pizarro in Peru, leading victorious armies into treasure-filled capitals. Lured on by the hopes of rich rewards from the king, or by phantoms and fables of

lands of gold and fountains of youth, they were cruel and relentless, but they failed miserably as often as they succeeded. Gray-bearded grandees of old Aragon and Castile were captured and tortured by savage tribes. They sank in the poisonous swamps of Florida, and found graves in the tawny flood of the Mississippi. We see them afoot and dying of thirst in the cactus desert of Arizona, freezing in the eternal snows of the Andes, and

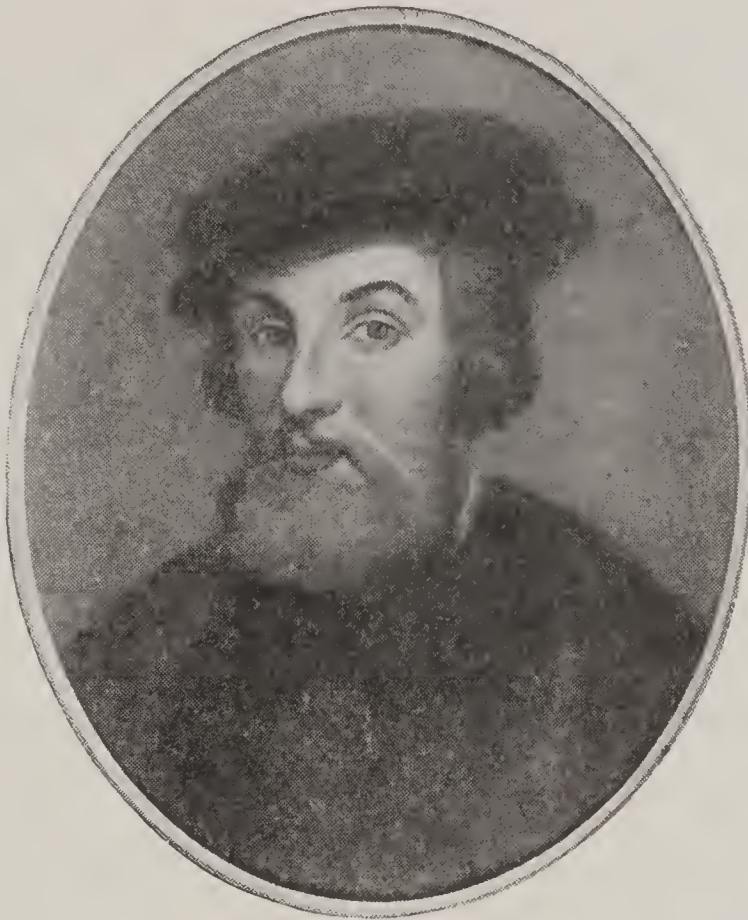
stung to death in the venomous jungles of Panama, which they opened for their treasure-laden pack trains.

It is because of such men as these that Spain was able to explore and occupy all of South America (except Brazil), Central America, Mexico, the southern third of the United States, and the larger islands of the West Indies, within thirty-five years after the first voyage of Columbus. But when the lands were secured, and these early actors were off the

stage, Spain ceased to explore, and spent all her energies in establishing strong military rule, and in draining her American colonies dry.

The rapidity and extent of the Spanish conquest is explained by the

The Conqueror of Mexico



At sixteen, Hernando Cortez chose a life of adventure as his career. He went to Cuba and from there he led an expedition to explore Mexico. The stories of the wealth and power of the Aztec emperors made him determined to conquer them, so he burned the ships which brought his force, in order to teach his soldiers that they must conquer or die. By his cunning and his bravery he succeeded in subduing the whole of Mexico for Spain, though his rule was one long tale of torture and oppression. Great wealth and honor were his for a time, but he died disappointed and neglected by the king whose territory he had so greatly increased.

fact that the precious metals, in varying quantities, mined and unmined, were found nearly everywhere; and each new colony, without help from Spain, furnished the wealth to conquer the next. The island of Hispaniola (Hayti) where Columbus built his first fort of the timber from one of his wrecked ships, alone furnished \$2,000,000 of gold. Cuba outfitted ships to explore Florida and conquer Mexico. Mexico, in turn, sent

fleets to Panama and the Philippines, and Panama furnished men and ships for the expedition against the Incas of Peru. Mexico and Peru poured rivers of silver and brooks of gold across Panama and the Atlantic into the Spanish treasury.

Long before France and England had any foothold on the continent, Spain had built fortified cities at Havana, St. Augustine, Florida, Vera Cruz, Mexico, and Panama,

*Plunder
of the
Treasuries*

and had erected forts, garrisons, prisons, governors' palaces, cathedrals and monasteries in numerous seaports and colonial capitals. Before the middle of the sixteenth century, she had set up nine widely scattered governments, in Peru, Argentina, Chili, New Granada (now Colombia and Panama), Venezuela, Guatemala, Yucatan, Mexico and Cuba, under vice-roys or captains-general, and had complete control of well-established trade routes.

In that time the Spanish planted only one true colony after the English pattern. This was at Santa Fe, New Mexico. This second oldest city in the United States was founded by an American-born Spanish-Mexican, Juan de Onate. Taking 200 soldiers, and as many colonists, men, women and children, with seeds, tools, cattle and sheep, and

*Spain's
Only True
Colony*

a band of missionaries, he built a self-sustaining town and the Church of San Gabriel in our mountain and desert country. Santa Fe is proof that the Spaniards might have been useful colonists had the right classes been permitted to emigrate, and had they not been corrupted by finding too much "easy money." This colony was the model of the later mission

towns of California. Nominally they were under Mexico, but in reality were too far away to be interfered with.

In all her other colonies, Spain kept everything in her own hand—people, lands, revenues, courts, administration, religion and trade. The viceroy or captain-general, was sent out from Spain, and represent-

Cortez in His Iron "Dress Suit"

In the sixteenth century when Cortez and the other Spanish explorers were making their conquests in America, armor had almost outlived its usefulness. But it was still worn on state occasions as a sort of full dress. The portrait opposite shows Cortez in a very handsome suit of dress armor. The ornamental armor of Cortez' day was of thin steel plates inlaid with gold and silver, trimmed with those ridges and engraved in various designs. The short skirt of old-fashioned chain mail which Cortez wears, came into use in the latter part of the fifteenth century. Over this are the *tuilles*, a series of jointed plates that look like hip pads and swing as the warrior walks. The breastplate of this suit is beautifully decorated, and you can see the origin of the modern epaulets worn on officers' uniforms, in the heavily ornamented shoulder plates. The succession of band-like plates on the upper arm, at the elbow and around the neck, allowed the poor overloaded knight some freedom of movement. Cortez' helmet does not protect his face as the earlier and more useful helmets did. Its great crest of feathers is in keeping with the gorgeousness of his armor, and no fully armed knight would have been ready for battle without his steel gauntlets, like those lying on the table beside Cortez.

Why don't we wear armor nowadays? It isn't altogether because bullets have taken the place of arrows and spears in warfare, though of course a knight's armor would not be proof against modern rifles. By the end of the sixteenth century, armies were no longer made up of steel-encased knights, fighting hand to hand, because the medieval custom of fighting in solid, immovable masses changed. Rulers began to organize armies that they could move rapidly from place to place for surprise attacks and quick raids into the enemy's territory. This required long marches and rapid transportation, something that was impossible for the cumbersome, heavily-armed knight who couldn't even get to his feet without help if he had the misfortune to fall down.

ed the royal ruler. He was supported by troops from home, and had the power of life and death. The very first governor appointed, arrested Columbus and sent the great navigator home in chains. Balboa, who discovered the Pacific Ocean from a mountain-top in Panama, was put to death by a viceroy, who was jealous of his growing fame. Spain's best and bravest were betrayed and ruined.

Squeezing the Colonies Dry

No Spanish colony ever cost the mother country a penny. Each one not only paid its own civil and military expenses, but showed a handsome profit for the Crown. To many offices no salary was attached, but appointments were eagerly sought, for the holders were privileged to grow rich on what could be squeezed out of the colony after the royal treasury was satis-

*The System
of
Extortion*

Cortez in His Iron Dress Suit



"In the sixteenth century when Cortez and the other Spanish explorers were making their conquests in America, armor was still worn on state occasions as a sort of full dress."

fied. Lands were allotted to nobles, explorers and colonial officials for service to the Crown. The only exception to this was the lands that were given to religious orders for churches, missions and monasteries.

anything that Spain could produce. The only colonial industries encouraged were the building up of large cattle ranches and mining properties, and for the working of these the owners had the free labor of en-

The Story of the Spanish Conquests



Although this painting, the original of which is in the Capitol at Washington, is called "The Discovery of the Mississippi by De Soto," it is rather a summary of the Spanish conquests in America, than a true picture of the historical event. As a matter of fact, De Soto did not discover the Mississippi. It was first sighted by Penedia who sailed a short distance up stream from its mouth in 1519, while De Soto did not reach the Mississippi in his search for the gold that was not there, until 1541. He was an extremely handsome man and it would be hard to conceive a more striking figure than he represents here in his plumed hat on his white charger.

Before him you see, considerably idealized, the Indian maidens and the Indian men with their weapons at their feet and peace pipes in their hands in token of subjection. Behind him are his soldiers with their armor and their serpent-handled cannon, the culverin. In the foreground is a chest typifying the wealth Spain took from her possessions, and further to the right, the priests blessing the cross about to be elevated in the new land. Such pictures, while they do not represent real historic scenes, are very useful. Fix them in your mind and you will be surprised to see how easily you can recall whole periods of history and their lessons for us.

Spanish farmers and mechanics—the best of all classes for true colonists—were discouraged, and even forbidden to emigrate to America. Spain is not a country of skilled industries, and never had any skilled workmen to spare. Besides, more could be made at home, supplying Toledo swords, armor, Cordovan leather for the trappings of cavalry horses, and even woolen cloth, olive oil and wine, to the colonies, which were not allowed to grow or make

slaved Indians and imported Negroes.

And while men who would have made useful colonists were kept at home, Spain forced her undesirables to emigrate. Criminals and paupers were drafted into colonial armies, or shipped as crews of the "flotas" or treasure fleets. Columbus was given such a crew of rascals for his first voyage, and was threatened with mutiny. Every colony, of

*The Grandees
and the
Jail Birds*

course, had its devoted missionaries, for the Cross went with the sword into every wilderness conquered by Spain. But beside the Brotherhoods we find in all Spanish colonies only the dregs and froth of society — beggars, jailbirds and degraded slaves, and over them the cruel, indolent, greedy and haughty grandees of Spain. So perfect was that organization of tyranny and corruption, so relentless its grip, that it endured for three hundred years; and Cuba freed herself at the end of another century, only with the help of the United States. We can study the colonial system of Spain in the unhappy story of this big, beautiful island near our southeastern shores.

Story of Cuba as a Type

Cuba was discovered by Columbus on his first voyage. A curving bow of land, ninety miles wide and nearly eight hundred long, it had all the appearance of a continent. When he had passed through the fringe

of small islands and coral reefs on its north coast, he was struck by the grandeur of its airy mountains and long

Balboa the Adventurer



Vasco Nuñez de Balboa was a typical adventurer. Soon after coming to the West Indies he involved himself so heavily in debt because of his recklessness, that he had to flee the country in order to avoid arrest, so, taking with him only his armor, he hid himself in a cask of provisions, and was loaded on board a vessel embarked upon an exploring expedition to Central America. He soon rose to be first in command and was counted the strongest lance and the surest shot in the company. Prodigal, generous, and good-natured, he was loved by his men and had more success in dealing with the Indians than any other Spaniard of the period, except De Soto. Under his command the spoils of war were divided equally among all the soldiers, irrespective of rank. It is said Balboa never commanded his men to GO but always asked them to COME with him.

lines of bold headlands. And no less was he impressed with its tropical forests, fertile valleys, many bright streams and broad coastal plains. Certain that this was a part of the mainland of China, he sent envoys to greet the Emperor. But he found here only friendly natives. In Hayti and other neighboring islands there were tribes of cannibal Caribs, but the Koo-bans of Cuba were far advanced and peaceable. They had a simple religious belief, without barbarous ceremonies, lived on fruit,

fish and corn, wove cotton cloth, made baskets, pottery and golden ornaments, and built such good huts of grass, bark and palm leaves, that their model is still used by the Spanish-Cubans of today. Columbus called Cuba the Fortunate Isle. Its misfortunes began with the coming of the Spaniards.

The island was not occupied, however, until Hayti, where a greater quantity of gold was found, had begun to run dry of treasure. By that time the Koo-Bans had become

of gold was also soon exhausted.

Cuba's wealth was in its soil, but the island was permitted to grow only sugar, coffee, cotton and tobacco, which Spain could not produce.

Cortez and the Wreck of the Aztec Gods



During the conquest of Mexico, Cortez and his soldiers were driven from the city of Mexico and forced to flee for their lives. At Otumba a great Aztec army blocked the way. They vastly outnumbered the Spaniards and though the Spaniards had a tremendous advantage in their armor, horses, and cannon, the Indians were getting the better of them when Cortez decided he must capture the Aztec commander in order to save the day. This commander was a royal personage, and was directing the battle from a hilltop, borne in a litter by his nobles. The Aztecs thought their royal family the highest representatives of the gods on earth and worshipped them as such. Cortez succeeded in cutting his way through the mass of warriors surrounding their chieftain. The litter was overturned, and the king and his nobles slain. As the Aztec chief fell, a Spanish soldier seized the sacred standard from his hand and gave it to Cortez who was on horseback. When the Aztecs saw the litter, with its sacred emblems, overturned, and the royal banner captured, they were struck with superstitious terror and fled in all directions. It was this victory which decided the fate of Mexico.

The picture shows Cortez just after receiving the banner from the soldier. In the foreground is the overturned litter, the images of their gods that the Indians carried into battle, and the Indians themselves can be seen fleeing in all directions.

alarmed, for news of Spanish methods had been spread. They resisted, but were speedily conquered, and put under a tribute of gold or cotton. Those who failed to pay were enslaved, or branded as cannibals and put to death. No Indian was ever able to endure slavery. Hard labor, disease and despair reduced the native population so rapidly that it practically disappeared in one generation. Their scanty accumulation

Nobles grew rich on their big plantations, by the use of negro slaves. But all around them fertile lands lay uncultivated. Not only were the working classes of Spain forbidden to emigrate, but all foreigners were refused admission. Trade was re-

stricted by high tariffs and by the government's custom of selling the monopoly of it to one city, first Santiago, then Havana, and

A Monopoly of Robbery

THE SPANISH IN AMERICA

A Muzzle-Loading Cannon



This is the heaviest gun of the sixteenth century in use in the New World and threw a shot of fifteen pounds. It takes its name, culverin, from a French word, meaning serpent, on account of those crooked handles, on the top, with which the gunners tilted up the gun when loading and which are supposed to look like serpents. You see cannon in those days were muzzle-loaders, like the rifles. When first invented, these cannon threw round stones. In a Turkish cannon, a 600-lb. stone shot was used in the siege of Constantinople. In Dover Castle, England, there is still to be seen a culverin which is known as "Queen Elizabeth's Pocket Pistol."

every necessity had to be imported from the mother country. Commerce with foreign lands, and even with neighboring Spanish colonies, was not permitted. Evasion of this law was punishable by confiscation of property and death. All trade was by "flotas" or royal fleets under convoy of Spanish war ships. Vessels of other nations were even denied refuge from storms in Cuban ports.

Some of these regulations were, no doubt, necessary in the sixteenth century. Spain had many enemies who disputed her arrogant claim to the whole western hemisphere. Her "flotas" were attacked on the Atlantic by the English, Dutch and French. And, as all Spanish ships, to and from the Colonies, stopped in the fortified harbor at Havana, Cuba became the storm center of a wild and lawless century on the sea. Her coasts were raided, her towns burned, her slaves captured, and her many fringing islands and snug harbors furnished hiding places

for pirates. But when these dangers no longer threatened, Spain did not relax her grip on Cuba, although all the conditions had changed, and the island could quickly have risen to prosperity.

In spite of all Spain's precautions and restrictions a native-born white population was growing up. Some nobles had chosen to remain; or had left their rich estates to younger sons who married in the island and brought up families. These Spanish-Cubans asked for schools, but were refused any except those kept by religious brotherhoods. None but devotional books were allowed to be imported. The native-born were not permitted to travel abroad, or to send their children to foreign countries to be educated. And, although of pure Spanish stock, they were excluded from office. Rulers from Spain thus formed a privileged caste, a class apart, foreign in feeling and habits, and with no interest in the island. They looked upon the natives as inferiors; on the land as

something alien that existed only to be plundered. In four hundred years there were one hundred and thirty-six captains-general of Cuba, most of whom were greedy politicians who went home rich.

This state of affairs bred exasperation, desperation and contempt of the law in the very people who should have been building up a prosperous country and stable government. Smuggling became a flourishing industry. The Cubans needed the salt-fish, meat and lamp-oil of the English colonies, and the North needed sugar, molasses, tobacco, coffee and cotton. So the sailing vessels of good Puritans and Quakers slipped into island bays and carried on a profitable if dangerous trade. The children of rich planters often "disappeared," returning after being educated in Boston or Philadelphia. Discontent seethed under the surface while the burden grew heavier. Spain was never a manufacturing country and could not supply the growing needs of Cuba. She bought of England, France, Germany and even the United States, and reshipped cargoes to Havana. Many a vessel load made two voyages across the Atlantic, Cuba paying double freight, giving a profit to some Spanish merchant, and then paying high import duties. The cost of every imported necessity was doubled. At times Cuban ports were opened to foreign trade, but extra duties and port and tonnage dues made this unprofitable. Export duties were assessed on all the products of the island. Industry was slowly bled to death.

Throwing Off the Spanish Yoke

Early in the nineteenth century all the Spanish colonies in America

rose in revolution. Taking advantage of the Napoleonic wars in Europe, in which Spain was conquered and her King lost his throne, every colony from Cape Horn to the Rio Grande River threw off the Spanish yoke and formed republics. Cuba and Porto Rico rebelled also, but before they could win their freedom the old line of monarchs was restored in Madrid. From one of the greatest and richest powers in Europe, Spain had sunk to one of the poorest and weakest, but was still strong enough to hold her West Indian islands. Needing money desperately and with four colonies left from which to obtain it, Cuba was squeezed to the last bitter drop.

Beside the old trade restrictions, monopolies and duties, every industry, trade, profession and art was taxed. Real estate paid 12 percent, so that any Cuban who owned his home bought it again of the government every eight years. There were taxes on the farmers' plows and the workmen's tools, on every beef sold in the market, on the surgeon's instruments and the carrier's cart. Every bill, account, check, note, court claim, deed, will, contract and license had its stamp tax. Printed legal forms had to be bought of the government, the price per sheet running from three to forty dollars, according to the money value of the business transaction. Tax collectors, working on commission, were interested in over-valuing everything. This led to bribery and every form of political corruption. All of Cuba's profits and savings were automatically absorbed into the treasury and the official pockets of Spain. There was no capital for business, no revenues for schools, roads, pub-

*Cuba
Still
Enslaved*

lic buildings or for health. Havana and other seaports became pest holes of yellow fever, festering and rotting under the tropic suns.

There were four rebellions in the half century after 1817. In 1868 a ten years' guerrilla warfare was begun that was one long nightmare of massacre, starvation, epidemic diseases and destruction of property. In making peace, Spain promised every reform that was asked for, but she did not keep faith and Cuba staggered up from its devastation to find itself saddled with a war debt of \$300,000,000. Spain had bor-

rowed money on Cuban bonds, with which to subjugate the unhappy islanders. After paying the interest on this debt, and supporting a fleet and army of occupation, and the civil expenses, there was now a deficit. Another hundred million of debt was slowly piled up. In 1890 Cuba owed \$300 for every man, woman and child of its population, counting the recently freed slaves. Then the island was given a little taste of prosperity. For three years Cuba was permitted to buy and sell freely in the United States. Trade immediately, and to her great profit, flowed to this big, rich neighbor, her natural customer. This so alarmed Spain that the gates were again shut.

Cuba's Final Deliverance

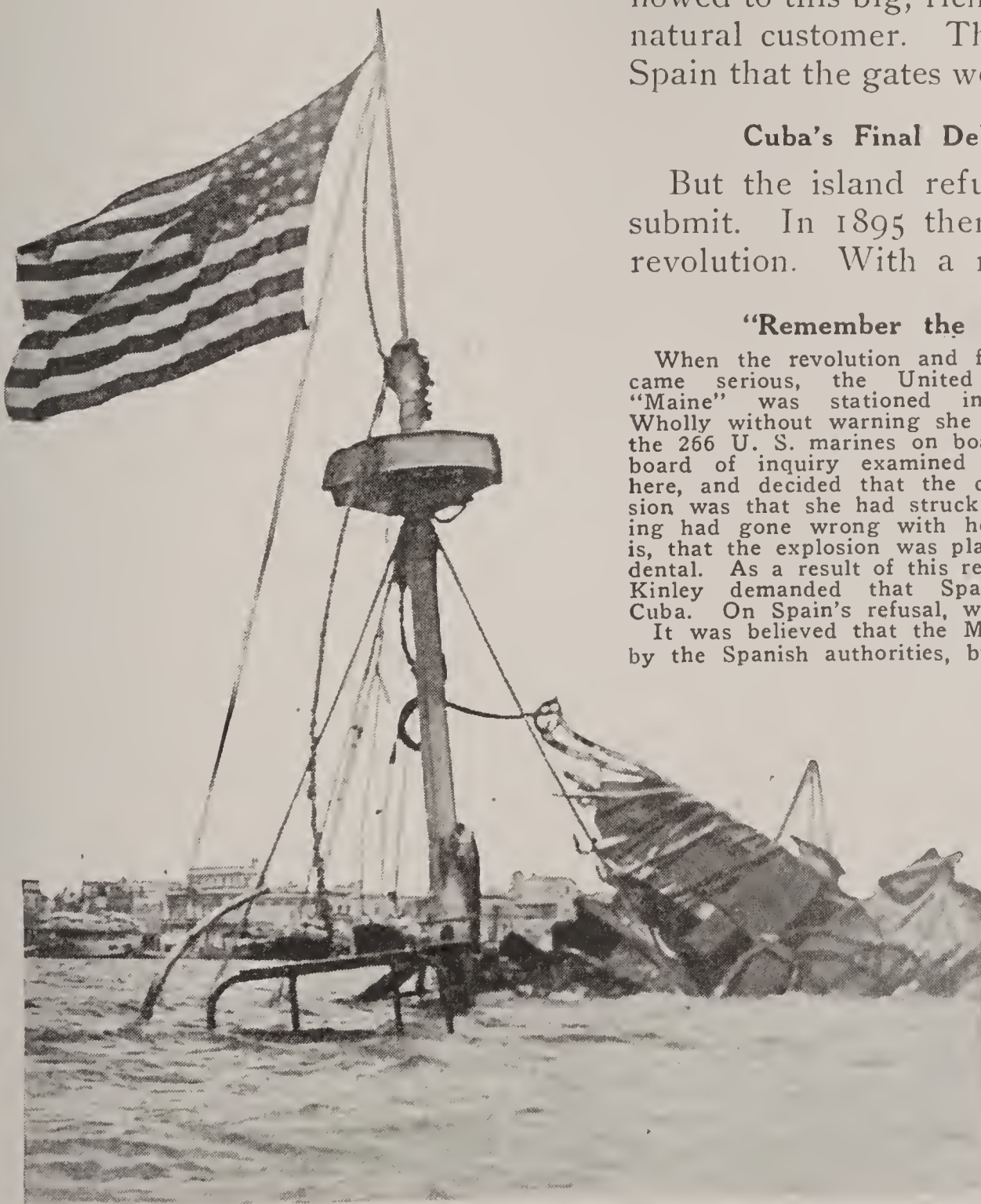
But the island refused longer to submit. In 1895 there was a fresh revolution. With a real leader, in

"Remember the Maine"

When the revolution and famine in Cuba became serious, the United States battleship "Maine" was stationed in Havana harbor. Wholly without warning she was blown up and the 266 U. S. marines on board were killed. A board of inquiry examined the wreck, shown here, and decided that the cause of the explosion was that she had struck a mine, that nothing had gone wrong with her mechanism—that is, that the explosion was planned and not accidental. As a result of this report, President McKinley demanded that Spain withdraw from Cuba. On Spain's refusal, war was declared.

It was believed that the Maine was blown up by the Spanish authorities, but it was also sug-

gested that Cuban revolutionists might have laid the mine, hoping to bring about war between Spain and the United States which would result in freeing Cuba from Spanish rule. There are also those, even in the United States, who think that perhaps the explosion was accidental and was from inside, not outside, the vessel. "Remember the Maine" became the battle cry of the American soldiers.



© Underwood & Underwood

Maximo Gomez, who formed an insurgent government, and whose intelligent plan was to destroy all of Spain's sources of revenue, Cuba was in flames from end to end. The revolutionists soon held all the land outside the garrisoned cities. Unable to cope with this situation, General Weyler, who had won fame, or rather, infamy, as "The Butcher of the Philippines," was sent to Havana as Captain-General. He was not a soldier, and, in any case, had too few troops for the task, but he could at least punish the helpless "pacificoes." On the ground that they were feeding and sheltering the scattered bands of revolutionists, he gathered the old men, women and children of the country into concentration camps in decaying cities. There, to the horror of the world, the population of Cuba began to perish of starvation and epidemic diseases.

This aroused the anger of the people of the United States. We had stood these horrors long enough. By buying Florida and Spanish possessions on the Pacific, annexing Texas after that state had separated from Mexico, and giving the protection of the Monroe Doctrine to new and struggling Spanish-American republics, we had helped drive Spain from the continent. Then eighty years longer we had had this piteous little island neighbor at our doors, pleading for mercy and justice. Now, on threat of interference, our government demanded the recall of General Weyler and the release of the "pacificoes." Then the U. S. Battleship Maine, lying in Havana harbor, was blown up with a loss of 266 United States marines.

*Weyler's
Horrible
Rule*

*Our
War with
Spain*

Congress recognized Cuban independence and declared war on Spain. With the cry: "Remember the Maine," our armies were in the field, our fleets on the sea. Admiral Dewey captured Manila in one short naval battle, and freed the Philippines. Admiral Sampson sank the Spanish fleet at Santiago, and our "rough riders" swarmed up San Juan hill. The war, beginning in April, was over in August.

We had colonies, almost for the first time in our history. We annexed little Porto Rico, to the general satisfaction of its people. The Philippines we undertook to keep and protect until the people could learn to govern and defend themselves. Every government in the world, very likely, thought we intended to annex Cuba. Many Cubans thought so, too, for they had no reason to trust anyone. But we announced our intention to remain only until the island republic could be put on its feet. The Cubans had earned their freedom by four hundred years of oppression and a hundred of struggle.

Within six months the whole country was under American military rule, with General Leonard Wood as governor. The dead were buried, the sick cared for in hospitals, the starving fed, the idle put to work cleaning the cities. Out of Santiago and Havana, four centuries of accumulated filth was dug and destroyed. Water works and sewers were put in, and yellow fever stamped out. Then a police force and health department were organized. Money for all this work was found in customs' offices, official palaces and garrisons. Hospitals and

*What We
Did
for Cuba*

The Hero of Manila Bay



© Harris & Ewing

For his brilliant work, Dewey was made an admiral, the highest office in the American navy, and became the hero of the hour. Here we see him in his admiral's uniform, the most marked feature of which is the epaulet of heavy gold cord on each shoulder. These queer ornaments were at one time worn by all soldiers alike. Later they were confined to officers only, and in the last century their use has been more and more restricted to the navy.

In Honor of the Heroes of Manila Bay



This is the famous Dewey medal ordered by Congress to be struck in honor of the victory won by Dewey in Manila Bay. On one side is his portrait and on the other an American naval gunner stripped for action, seated on a gun. Around the sailor is the inscription, "In Memory of the Victory of Manila Bay, May 1, 1898." Around the relief of Dewey's keen and powerful face, this: "A Gift of the People of the United States to the Officers and Men of the Asiatic Squadron under the Command of Commodore George Dewey." Underneath the inscription is an anchor with the laurel wreath and a single star. The medals were the work of the eminent sculptor, D. C. French.

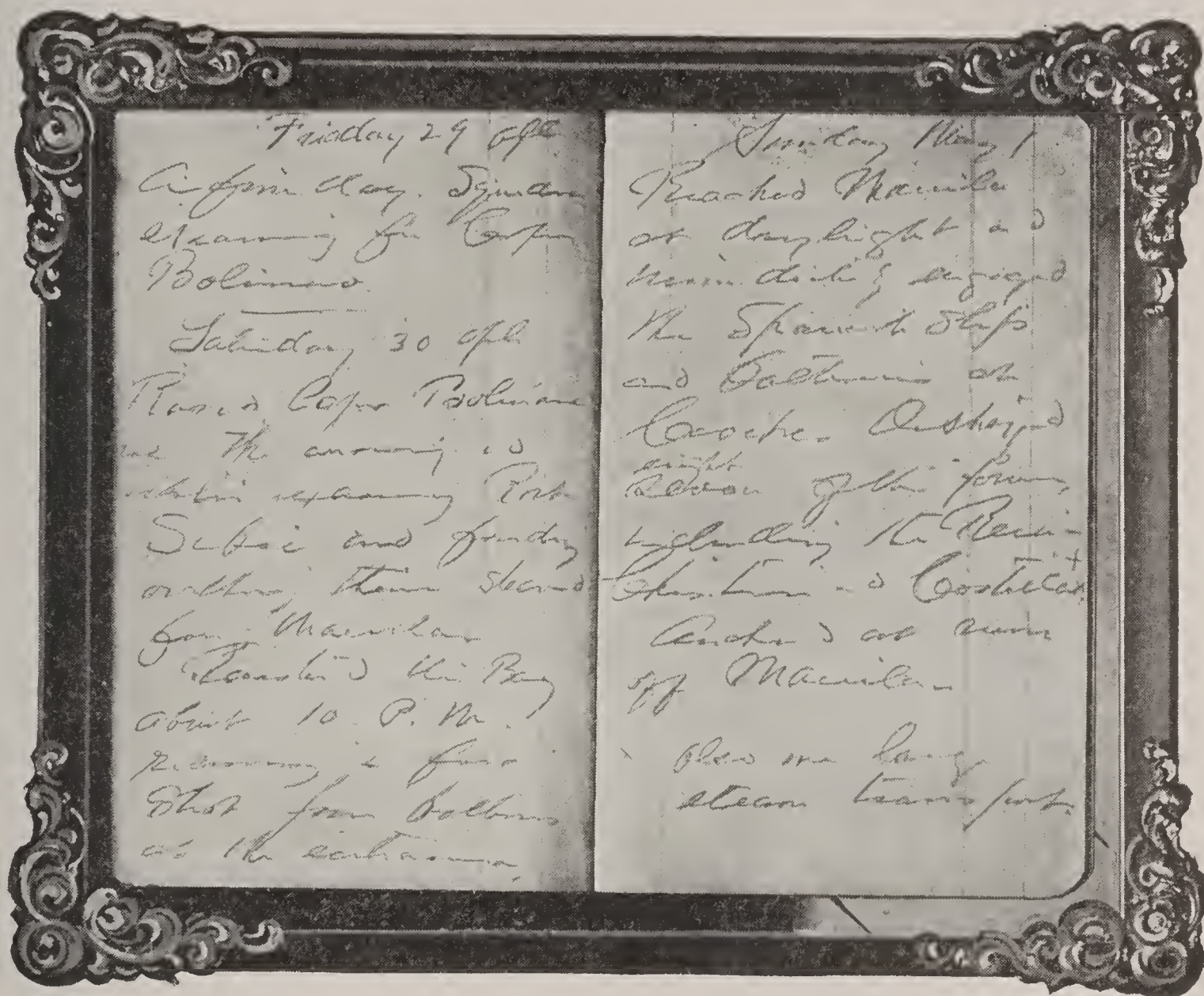
schools were built without extra taxation. People were returned to their farms, with seeds and tools; the press was made free, and the people had the right of free speech and peaceable assembly. The effect was wonderful. Cringing fear held up its head; the ruined took heart and began to build up their businesses; the children, clothed and fed, forgot their misery in clean, bright schools. No laggards there! School was a novelty. "Shining morning faces" were seen on every street. Within four years there were 3,300 public schools in the island, with 143,000 pupils. Civil service was applied to the customs and post office, police, health and fire departments and finances were put into such shape that Cuba could live in self-respecting, progressive ways, build up her industries, and still, in time, with reduced taxes, pay off her debts.

Our motto was "Cuba for the Cubans." A disinterested friend of a ruined and distracted neighbor, we held the island in trusteeship for

two years, leaving it clean, well, on its feet and with a million and a half in its treasury. After seeing these newly enfranchised people through an honest election, with a government of their own choosing installed, the United States withdrew. In 1906, when there were charges of election frauds and threatened revolution, we were obliged to interfere and restore order. Three years later we withdrew our forces again, and the island flag flew over the now peaceful and prosperous little republic.

By its action in Cuba the United States gave the world a new idea of a colony. We rebuked the Roman system of gaining and holding lands by conquest, and improved on the liberal system of the Greeks. Our own country founded on the system of "government by consent of the governed," we drove Spanish armies out, put Cuba in order and then restored her to full freedom. And so, a little more than four hundred years after Columbus, Spain's flag disappeared from our hemisphere.

Such a Big Battle in Such a Little Book!



Dewey was in Hong Kong with the Asiatic fleet when war was declared and he was ordered to destroy the Spanish fleet at Manila. Under "Friday 29 Apr" and "Saturday 30 Apr" he has recorded in his little pocket diary the progress of his squadron toward Manila. At the bottom of the left-hand page, he says: "Entered the Bay (Manila) about 10 P. M., receiving a few shots from batteries at the entrance." The next page reads, "Sunday, May 1. Reached Manila at daylight and immediately engaged the Spanish ships and batteries at Cavite (a village having a battery and arsenal). Destroyed eight of the former, including the Reina Cristina and Castilla.* Anchored at noon off Manila. *Also one large steam transport."

The battle of Manila, which really secured the Philippines for the United

States, though further fighting was necessary before the Americans were in full possession, was won without injury to any of the American vessels and with the loss of only seven men wounded, out of the 1748 Americans engaged. All the Spanish ships were either burned or sunk, and 167 Spaniards were killed and 214 wounded, out of 1875 engaged.

Think of the hero of a great battle, jotting down in three sentences with a pencil the story of how he sank eight men-of-war and a transport. And at first he forgot all about the big transport! That is the way with military men. When they do a big thing they report it in few words. That is why Caesar's Commentaries have that brevity which has made them famous. Every sentence is just packed with important facts and great events.

The Lotus-Eaters

*"Courage!" he said, and pointed toward the land,
"This mounting wave will roll us shoreward soon."
In the afternoon they came unto a land,
In which it seemed always afternoon.
All round the coast the languid air did swoon,
Breathing like one that hath a weary dream.
Full-fac'd above the valley stood the moon;
And like a downward smoke, the slender stream
Along the cliff to fall and pause and fall did seem.*

*A land of streams! some, like a downward smoke,
Slow-dropping veils of thinnest lawn, did go;
And some thro' wavering lights and shadows broke,
Rolling a slumbrous sheet of foam below.
They saw the gleaming river seaward flow
From the inner land; far off, three mountain-tops,
Three silent pinnales of aged snow,
Stood sunset-flushed; and, dew'd with showery drops,
Up-clomb the shadowy pine above the woven copse.
The charmed sunset linger'd low adown
In the red West; thro' mountain clefts the dale
Was seen far inland, and the yellow doren
Border'd with palm, and many a winding vale
And meadow, set with slender galingale:
A land where all things always seemed the same!
And round about the keel with faces pale,
Dark faecs pale against that rosy flame,
The mild-eyed melancholy Lotus-eaters came.
Branches they bore of that enchanted stem,
Laden with flower and fruit, whereof they gave
To each, but who so did receive of them,
And taste, to him the gushing of the wave
Far, far away did seem to mourn and rave
On alien shores; and if his fellow spake,
His voice was thin, as voices from the grave;
And deep-asleep he seem'd, yet all awake,
And music in his ears his beating heart did make.*

*They sat them down upon the yellow sand,
Between the sun and moon upon the shore;
And sweet it was to dream of Fatherland,
Of child, and wife, and slave; but evermore
Most weary seem'd the sea, weary the oar,
Wearied the wandering fields of barren foam.
Then some one said, "We will return no more";
And all at once they sang, "Our island home
Is far beyond the wave; we will no longer roam."*

ALFRED TENNYSON

STORIES OF
AMERICAN HISTORY
THE FRENCH IN AMERICA

The French Dream of Empire



Father Marquette's Headquarters in Chicago in 1674

Did you ever see a more inhospitable and dreary winter landscape? And yet this is how a portion of Chicago looked in the year 1674 at the point of the Chicago River where the devoted missionary spent the winter. He had with him, Joliet, two *coureurs de bois*, and a little band of faithful Pottawattomies whose canoes you see drawn up on the beach and their wigwams clustered about the cabin. The hut is supposed to have been left by a trader in furs who built it and made it his headquarters.

IN the year 1634 a French explorer reached Green Bay, Wisconsin, on the western shore of Lake Michigan, fifteen hundred miles from the ocean. This was fourteen years after the Pilgrims landed at Plymouth. His name was Jean Nicolet. He made the six weeks' journey from Montreal in the birch-bark canoes of Huron Indians. Expecting to find the coast of China over these fresh water "Western Seas," he wore the robe of a Chinese mandarin, embroidered with golden dragons and with brilliant birds and flowers.

As he leaped ashore among the startled Winnebagoes, he fired a pair of dueling pistols in the air.

Thus he was clothed in mystery, splendor and power, as was Spanish Cortez in Mexico. But he had no soldiers with him, nor any hostile intentions. His genuine friendliness, trust and charming manners captured the affections of this savage tribe. For two years he remained with his "*frères sauvages*" (wild brothers) as he called them, adopted their dress and habits, learned their speech and went on voyages with them. Once he was within fifty miles of the "Messassibi, Father of Waters," and he carried news of the Great River back to Montreal.

The whole episode is typical of the French in America. All their fur trappers, explorers, missiona-

ries and empire builders, who, for one hundred and fifty years, passed in a splendid, historic pageantry over our two great inland waterways, from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico, were spectacular and romantic, and endeared themselves to the Indians. They were the first, and long the only ones, to reach the heart of North America.

A glance at any map of the continent will tell you why. In the discovery of the St. Lawrence River by Jacques Cartier, in 1534, the French found the widest water gate on the Atlantic, and possessed a long water highway into the interior, while the English and Dutch colonists, on the Atlantic sea-

*Secret of
French
Discoveries*

fleets continued to come to the Grand Banks, the French made no attempt at colonization until 1609, when Samuel de Champlain arrived at Quebec, to search for the Northwest

Passage to India and China, and to develop the fur trading of the Canadian forests.

The French soon had their settlements in Nova Scotia (then Acadie)

The Discoverer of Canada



Jacques Cartier was the son of humble fisher folk in the French village of St. Malo. This portrait was painted in 1839 from sources which are now lost and is the only authentic picture we have of him. It shows this earliest explorer of the mainland of Canada, on the deck of a ship, looking ahead with a tight-set jaw and searching eyes. His face is firm and strong; it is that of a man of earnest purpose and iron will. Jacques Cartier's clothing shows us the costume worn by a sea captain of 400 years ago. His thick cloak is gathered in at the waist by a belt which supports a sword and also a dirk, the hilt of which can be seen near his right hand. He wears the tufted Breton cap common among the seafaring men of France. He has no ruff and his shirt is finished with only a small ruffle at the neck and wrists, for Jacques Cartier is dressed for action and rough work, not for a state occasion.

on the islands in the Gulf, and along the St. Lawrence between Quebec and Montreal. There are French villages today in Canada and Louisiana that are much like the Grand Pré of Longfellow's *Evangeline*. They consist of a single, long street fronting the river, and with the narrow farms marching in line back to a bluff or belt of woods. Montreal and Quebec had stone forts, log trading posts, water mills and Catholic churches; and there was plenty of social gayety, and all the comforts of

Old France in the cozy dormer-windowed, piazza-fronted log cottages that had their gardens and orchards, and cattle grazing on a common pasture. But the small village farms were not expected to support families. In the winter the men were in the woods with the In-

*Picturesque
French
Life*

dians, hunting and trapping, and bringing their furs into the beaver fair at Montreal in the spring.

The life just suited these Frenchmen, many of whom were blue-eyed, brown-haired descendants of the old Norse sea-rovers. They loved the voyages in frail

canoes, over leagues of wild, uncharted waters; the days of stalking bears and moose in the unbroken forests, and the nights by campfires, when they played the violin for the delighted Indians. They often took squaws for wives, with the blessing of the church. Every one of them wanted to be a hero, and dreamed and talked of doing some brave deed for "la belle France." They soon knew every Algonquin dialect, and were as hardy, as skilled canoeists, snowshoe "wood-runners" and hunters as the Indians.

This is how it happened that, as early as 1625, Jean Nicolet was living with the Hurons on Lake Nipissing. Hearing there of the "Western Sea" and fired by the hope of

reaching China, he got the mandarin's robe of Champlain, made his will, confessed his sins, and started on his perilous voyage to Green Bay.

The French had no choice but to go westward. They were hemmed into the narrow, rocky valley of the

St. Lawrence, on the north by thick woods and Arctic plains, and on the south by the English and Dutch settlements, and by the warlike Iroquois. They had won the enmity of the "Six Nations" in western New York State by allying themselves with the much more numerous, but weak and unorganized Algonquins. They had, besides, poetic imagination. As Champlain stood on the forest-crowned bluff at Quebec, three hundred miles from the ocean, and

watched the St. Lawrence pouring its exhaustless flood out of the wooded wilderness, he realized the colossal scale on which the continent had been planned. He thought that across some distant divide the headwaters of the Great River might be found, and with it a passage to India

The Founder of Quebec



Champlain

Like Captain John Smith and Sir Walter Raleigh, Samuel de Champlain was not only an explorer but he added to the value of his explorations by the interesting books he wrote about them. His VOYAGES give much valuable information about the customs and habits of the Algonquin Indians as well as about the region he explored.

It was Champlain's daring and perseverance that gave the French their foothold in America. But, on the other hand, it was Champlain's alliance with the Algonquins which turned the Iroquois against the French, and so materially aided the English cause in the long conflict for the possession of America, which followed.

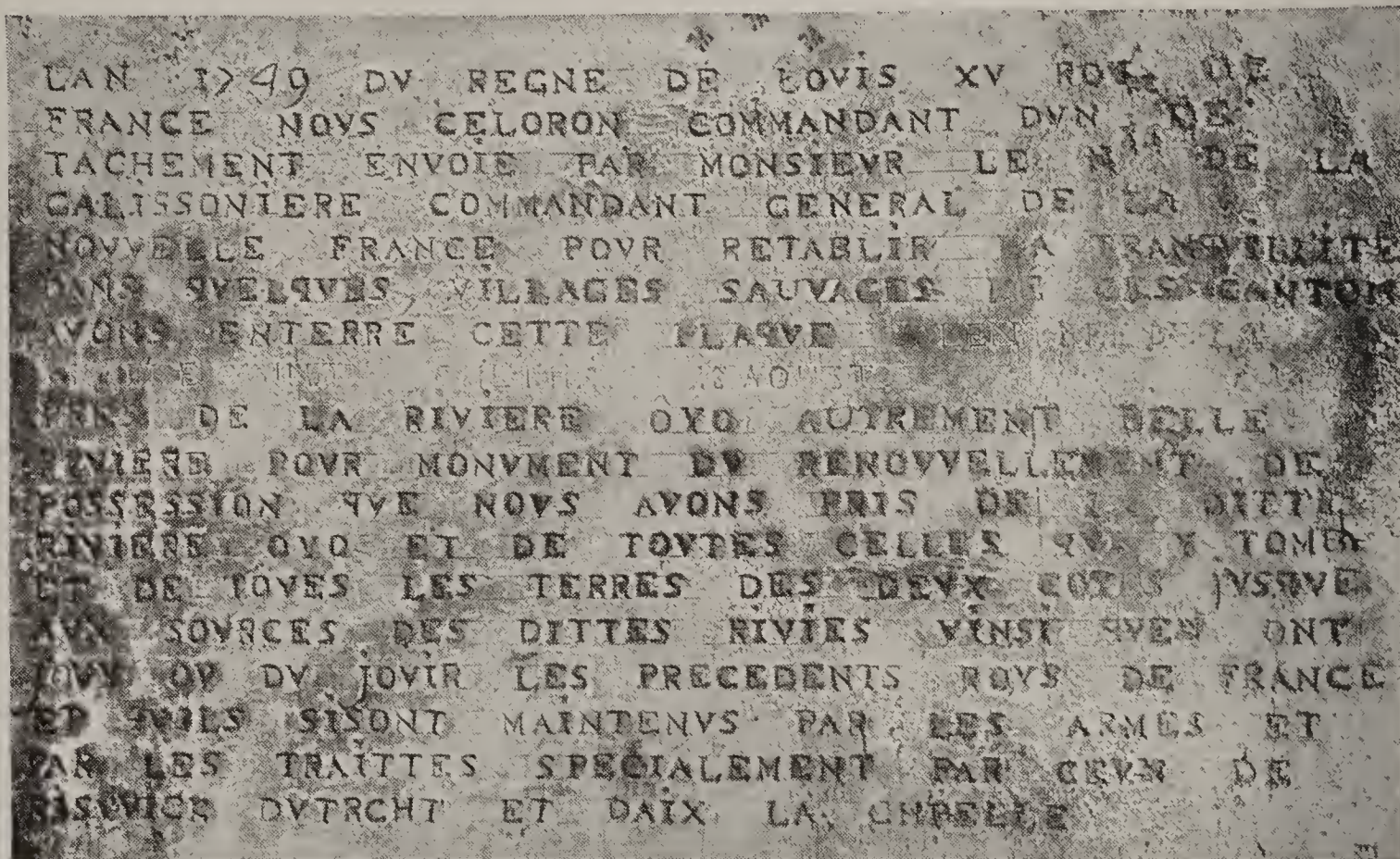
Like most of the French explorers, he was more deeply interested in discovery and in winning converts for the Catholic church than in colonization, though it was almost wholly due to his perseverance and good management that Quebec became a permanent settlement.

and an empire for France. With this end in view he built the fort and trading post at Montreal, just below the rapids, as far as vessels from France could ascend the river.

perior and brought back furs and copper arrow-heads. It was over this route that Nicolet reached Green Bay.

The Mississippi must soon have

Story Told by an Old Lead Flate



If you should ever visit the Museum of the Virginia Historical Society, one of the interesting things they would show you would be this old lead plate. It was buried by French explorers at the foot of a tree and claims for the French King, Louis XV, all the territory drained by the Ohio and the streams entering into it. As you see, it is written in French and the carving was probably done in the soft lead with a hunter's knife. Time and the acids of the soil have eaten away a good many of the words, but it is still legible, and the English of it is:

"In the year 1749, during the reign of Louis XV, King of France, we, Céloron, commander of a detachment sent by Marquis de la Gallissoniere, commander-in-chief of New France, to restore tranquillity in some savage villages of these districts, have buried this plate at the confluence of the Ohio and . . . this . . . near the river Ohio, alias Beautiful River, as a monument of our having taken possession of the said river Ohio and of those that fall into the same, and all the lands on both sides as far as the sources of the said rivers, as well as of those of which preceding kings have enjoyed possession, partly by the force of arms, partly by treaties, especially by those of Ryswick, Utrecht, and Aix-la-Chapelle."

Those queer little figures at the top that look like a flight of ducks are the lilies of France. If you could see the original plate you would notice that it was carefully ruled with a knife point before the words were cut into the lead. Other plates were buried at other points and two of these were found in recent years sticking out from the river bank by boys.

Through these rapids the Algonquin tribes did not go, nor did they often venture on Lake Ontario. That lake was claimed by the Iroquois, and above it there was a thirty-six mile portage to be made around the thundering waters of Niagara. Instead, they paddled up the Ottawa River, and, by many forest-walled water courses, won their way into Lake Huron. Thence they went to the head of Lake Su-

been discovered from the upper lakes but for the fact that the Iroquois Indians waged unceasing war on the Algonquins and their French allies for the next thirty years. They drove the tribes to the upper lakes and shut the French colonists in their forts. In 1660 there were only three settlements and three thousand French in the St. Lawrence valley. Then Adam Daulac, known as

*Dollard's
Test by
Fire*

THE FRENCH IN AMERICA

Champlain's "Gift of God"



© Underwood & Underwood

Three hundred years after Champlain sailed up the St. Lawrence to Quebec for the first time, Quebec celebrated his coming with a grand pageant and many impressive ceremonies. Here is a reconstruction of Champlain's ship, the *Don de Dieu*, manned and equipped as it was in Champlain's time, and surrounded by the canoes of curious Indians. It was one of the most striking features of the Quebec celebration.

"*Don de Dieu*" means gift of God. The vessel was a small one, as you see, to brave the stormy Atlantic. It was 80 feet long and 20 feet wide, with a draft of 12 feet when fully loaded.

General Fraser and His Highlanders at Quebec



The victory of the English over the French at Quebec was in part due to the valor of the Scotch-Highlanders under General Fraser. In the picture the General is pointing to the enemy and calling on his men to charge. You see with what enthusiasm the order is received. General Fraser himself was a Scotchman and entered the British Army at an early age. He served with distinction in Holland and Germany and accompanied General Wolfe to Quebec. He always showed as great skill in conducting a retreat, as in making an attack.

"Dollard," commandant at Montreal, convinced the Iroquois that the French were unconquerable. With seventeen Frenchmen and four Indians in a little log fort on the Ottawa, he held off 700 warriors for days and killed a third of them before he and his little band were overpowered.

All through that generation of warfare, too, French missionaries had been in the woods with every harried band of Algonquins. They lived on roots and berries, slept on the snow, listened for the midnight alarm, comforted dying warriors, and took squaws and papooses to their scattered kindred. In many a wild island and hidden retreat around the upper lakes they gathered bands of starving fugitives, built bark chapels, and set up the portable altars which they managed to bring in safety through every peril. There they lit their tall wax candles, burned incense and used the sacred vestments and communion service, in the darkest hours bringing the mystery, splendor, and consolation of religion to despairing tribes. After the war was over, it was missionaries, such men as Nicolet and the defenders of the little fort on the Ottawa, who carried the cross and the lilies of France down to the gulf of Mexico.

Père Marquette and His Work

Père Marquette, a frail young priest of such zeal and consecration

that white men and red alike looked upon him as a saint from heaven, had a mission among the Hurons at Mackinac, when in 1671, the sover-

The Surrender of Champlain



Champlain, surrounded by his soldiers and the Indians who, you remember, were always friends of the French, is here shown handing his sword to the leader of the British Naval forces, Admiral Kirke. In the background is one of the little Catholic chapels with which the French dotted the wilderness. Kirke, although an Englishman, was born in Dieppe, France, in 1596, where his parents were temporarily located. He was the eldest son of a Scotch merchant. Accompanied by his two brothers, one of whom, Lewis, became the first Military Commandant of Quebec under English rule, he led an expedition of three vessels, in 1627, to break up the French settlements in Canada and Nova Scotia. When he first ordered Champlain to surrender Quebec, the latter concealed his weakness by a defiant answer which so deceived Kirke as to his strength, that Kirke withdrew. When later he attacked the French squadron near Gaspe, capturing all the arms, ammunition and stores intended for Quebec, and again appeared before the town with his squadron, Champlain gave up the struggle.

eighty of France over the Great Lakes was declared at Sault Ste. Marie. Every voyager and Indian stopped at his chapel, in passing, for a blessing. Among them was Louis Joliet, returning from the cop-

per mines empty handed, turned back by the warlike Sioux. Père Marquette told him of a band of Illinois Indians who had made a thirty days' voyage from the south, to beg him

route to Green Bay and down the Fox River they entered the Mississippi at Prairie du Chien, Wisconsin, and floated to the Illinois. The year was young; bluff and prairie

Joliet and Marquette at a Portage



This picture shows Joliet and Marquette at the portage from the Fox to the Wisconsin rivers. Father Marquette, as you can see, was a young man; he was only thirty years old when he died, and his character was as beautiful as his face. His whole life was given up to his religion and to doing good. The man on his left is Louis Joliet. French woodsmen and Indian converts carried their canoes and baggage over the portages; that is to say the places where it is necessary to cross the land to get from one river to another. Notice how the Indian at the right carries the baggage strapped to him. Beyond him is a woodsman bringing in a deer.

to come to their villages on the Illinois, near the "Messassibi," and found a mission. He was awaiting the permission of his superiors in Montreal to carry the Cross to the banks of the Great River.

*Marquette
and
Joliet*

Thus the way southward was opened to the French. Joliet made a swift return to Mackinac, with the joyful news that he had been commissioned to find the Great River, and that Père Marquette was to go with him. To that saintly soul on his forest and wave-girt rocky point, this news was an answer to two years of ceaseless prayer.

These two, with five Indians, set out in a big canoe, armed only with the Cross, the banner of France, and a peace pipe. Going by Nicolet's

and tender woods enchanted them. Marquette's journal reads like a romance. The mission was planted at Utica, Illinois. Then, over streams populous with canoes, bordered by fields bright with corn, they were guided to the Chicago River. Joliet returned to Montreal, losing his records in the rapids of the St. Lawrence by the upsetting of his canoe. Père Marquette went back to Illinois, spent one winter on the Chicago River and died. Mournful Pottawattomies carried his body north, to some disputed point—perhaps to Glen Haven, Michigan; perhaps to lay him under the floor of his chapel at Mackinac. His spirit was long invoked by the Indians to still the tempests on the Great Lakes.

La Salle and His Dream of Empire

Now appeared the greatest man that France sent to the New World. He was Robert Cavelier, Sieur de la Salle, poor, unknown, of middle-

it he sought out Iroquois chiefs in their villages in western New York. He cut green timbers in the woods, mounted cannon on his floating fort, and spread the first sails to the winds

An Encounter With Hostile Indians

The Indians among whom he worked and who knew his saintly character were very devoted to Father Marquette, but the enemies of these Indians were hostile to him. This relief pictures an encounter with the Sioux, one of these hostile tribes. Father Marquette is shown standing, holding the peace pipe. A cross is stuck in his girdle but he has no gun, for the missionaries went unarmed among the Indians. Marquette and some French Canadian woodsmen are in the canoe with Joliet.

class birth—a handicap in those days of privilege for nobles—when he appeared in Canada. But he won a grant of land by his services, and built Fort Frontenac at the foot of Lake Ontario. He was there when Louis Joliet returned from his amazing voyage of discovery, and saw his records before they were lost in the rapids. For years he had dreamed of the great empire in America to be won for France. With the knowledge now gained he went to Paris, aroused the enthusiasm of the French court, and secured a commission from the King to explore, fortify, colonize and trade in the Mississippi Valley.

But he got very little money. He sold his estate on the St. Lawrence for funds to build a sailing vessel at Niagara. For permission to build

of the Great Lakes. It was 1679 when the Griffin dropped anchor in the midst of a hundred canoes at Mackinac, and La Salle went ashore in a scarlet mantle, gold lace, powdered hair and delicate ruffles, to pray at the grave of Père Marquette. No humble petitioner was he, but a man of imperial vision, ambition and resource. To the Indians he was magnificent, for, in triumph or defeat, he trod the wilderness like a king. He had with him but one friend and faithful lieutenant, Henri di Tonty, but the Algonquins gathered around him for protection and helped him set up cannon on Starved Rock—a lordly bluff on the Illinois at Utica, where Marquette had founded his mission. He built another vessel at Peoria, with which to descend the Mississippi.

Misfortune and enmity pursued him. The Griffin, with its rich cargo of furs from Green Bay, was lost on Lake Erie. Count Frontenac, his powerful friend who ruled in

thority over Louisiana. But again he was betrayed. His fleet commander landed the expedition on the coast of Texas, four hundred miles west of the mouth of the Mississippi.

The Final Resting Place of Father Marquette



At the right of this bas-relief is Marquette's principal mission, a little log building at Old Mackinac on the south shore of the straits of Mackinac. Father Marquette died when he was only thirty years old, somewhere on the east shore of Lake Michigan. He was buried where he died, but a few years later the Indians took his body to Mackinac and buried it under the floor of his chapel there. The picture shows the funeral procession approaching Mackinac chapel with a priest in the lead, reading the service, and a little girl by his side swinging the censer.

Montreal, was recalled to France and help was refused by his successor. Obligated to go to Paris for assistance, he found, on his return, that his Indian allies had been scattered by the Iroquois. Again he gathered 20,000 warriors around his fort, while other tribes kept the Chicago portage open. In 1682 he went down the Mississippi to the Gulf and took possession of the valley, which he named Louisiana, in honor of the King of France. He had won an empire, but was discredited, and forbidden even to pay his own expenses out of the profits in the fur trade.

With all his hopes crumbling into dust, he returned to France again, got the ear of the King, ships, money, soldiers, colonists and au-

There he was assassinated by mutineers of his own party.

Continuing La Salle's Work

For the next twenty years Tonty held the Illinois country, built forts and kept the trade route to Montreal open, but in 1700 he gave up the struggle and went down to the Gulf, when d'Iberville from Canada was building forts at Biloxi and Mobile. La Salle lay dead on Trinity River, his work lost. Now France proposed to do that task all over again, by pushing up the river from the new capital of Louisiana at New Orleans.

There were still Frenchmen in Illinois, keeping the lamp of religion and civilization burning in the wilderness. Just as missionaries had led harried bands of Indians to the upper lakes sixty years before, so

now they went with fugitive tribes down to the banks of the Mississippi, between the Missouri and Ohio. For twenty years they were cut off from the world. But, in a land of peace and plenty, they built up the mission town of Kaskaskia, with a stone mill and chapel, wheat fields and herds of cattle. These were there when, in 1788, a fleet of big pirogues, or hollowed cypress log boats, armed with cannon and floating the lilies of France, came up the river with soldiers to build Fort Chartres, about sixty miles below the site of what is now St. Louis.

In some way rumors of fabulous wealth in the Illinois country had reached Paris. A company was chartered to develop the mines of gold, silver and precious stones it was supposed to possess. Fort Chartres was built below St. Louis, and command given to the proudest nobility of France. Colonists were sent out and slaves brought from the West Indies to work the mines, but nothing but lead was discovered, in the Ozarks of Missouri, and at Galena, Illinois.

The soil, however, was rich, and soon the Illinois bottoms were golden with wheat fields. A dozen farming villages, like those on the lower St. Lawrence and above New Orleans, sprang up. The country sent wheat, furs, pork and lead to the Gulf and to the French West Indies, the garrison was kept in the fort and a new trade route over the Ohio was opened to Montreal.

There was trouble with the Chickasaw and Natchez Indians on the lower Mississippi, but by 1750 the Illinois bank was settled for fifty miles. France had taken root in three places in the New World, and connecting and

defending the colonies in Canada, Illinois and Louisiana was a noble line of forts. Louisburg fronted the Ocean on Nova Scotia (Acadie), and Mobile the Gulf of Mexico. Between them were Quebec, Montreal, Frontenac, Niagara, Detroit, Presque Isle (now Erie City), Mackinac, Sault Ste. Marie, Green Bay, St. Joseph, and Fort Chartres below St. Louis.

Robert Cavelier, Sieur de la Salle



This fine picture of La Salle from the painting by Margry, brings out his character to a remarkable degree. Although his family were not nobles, they were wealthy and with great landed estates. You can see he belonged to the French aristocratic type—self-controlled, self-contained and with a calm exterior that hides great pride and ambition. His mind was always hungry for knowledge and achievement. He was very skillful in making other people see things as he saw them. It is said of him also that he was the first self-made man who ever walked on the land which is now occupied by the busy thoroughfares of Chicago—a city of self-made men. The principal financial street of Chicago is named after him, "La Salle" Street.

*Defenses
of New
France*

The Struggle for a Continent

Then the French and Indian war broke out, first between New France in Canada and the colony of Virginia. It was really a struggle for the possession of the continent. Soon the war spread to France and England, involved all their colonies in America, and far off India. It was a world-wide contest between England and France for sea power and colonial dominion. In America the French stood on the defensive in their magnificent chain of forts. To British regulars, and New England and Virginia volunteers, was given the task of cutting through tangled forests, breasting wild floods and climbing mountains, and going

on long voyages at sea to attack the enemy. No one believed that the French could ever be dislodged from their forts.

But the tide of fortune suddenly turned. Louisburg, Frontenac and Fort Duquesne (Pittsburgh) were taken. Quebec was left defenseless; Montreal was cut off from Illinois. By 1760 the British were in Detroit, Mackinac and Vincennes. In India, also, the courage and genius of a young clerk named Robert Clive, caused France to lose a fabulously rich empire. When the war was over England dictated the terms of peace. To Louisiana and Illinois the end came as a clap of thunder. Their forts had never been invested. Now, with a stroke of the pen the rich empire in the valley of the Mississippi was divided between England and Spain.

During all the nine years' war, but one event had, in any way, disturbed the French farmers, artisans, nobles, priests, lead mine operators and slaves, in the Mississippi valley. After the famous expulsion from Acadie (Nova Scotia) whose story is told in *Evangeline*, heart-broken refugees, many separated from kindred and friends, found new homes in every French village from

*The Story
of
Evangeline*

The Spirit of La Salle Expressed in Stone

La Salle was a bold, determined man who had wider visions and bigger dreams than the other Frenchmen in America. This statue expresses the spirit of the explorer in its resolute, determined pose and eyes that seem to be gazing into the future. The pistol and sword tell of the dangerous work La Salle undertook—traversing a vast, trackless region where white men had never before set foot. La Salle's provisions and supplies were stolen and destroyed more than once in his attempts to reach the mouth of the Mississippi, so we see him here in suitable, durable clothing which would last the length of his journey. His coat is of leather, and probably his breeches are of leather too. The long, flaring-topped leggings that he wears were called "sherryvallies," and are also of leather. His pistol and sword are slipped in a wide leather belt or girdle, at just the right point to always be within easy reach of his right hand. This statue is in Lincoln Park, Chicago.



New Orleans to Cahokia, Illinois, opposite the present site of St. Louis. In her search for her lover, Gabriel, Evangeline went up, "past the Ohio's mouth," westward into the wild Ozarks, up the Ohio and Wabash to Detroit and, after the war, around by water to the convent in Philadelphia.

How eloquent that story is of the entire possession by the French of the St. Lawrence and Mississippi valleys; how secure their hold on scores of tribes of Indians. Nowhere would that wandering damoiselle be in danger. In dozens of little chapels she told her beads, and in the graveyard sanctuaries in the shadow of the cross she

*Sat by some nameless grave and
thought that perhaps in its bosom,
He was already at rest, and she
longed to slumber beside him.*

Priest and trader, coureur de bois and friendly Algonquin aided her in her search, watched over her weary footsteps on the wild trails, and carried her in canoes up and down hundreds of miles of waterways. At no later period of pioneer history in that region could a young girl have made such a journey in safety.

It was French people in Illinois

who founded the new trading post at St. Louis. This was in Spanish territory on the west bank of the river; but it was settled by the French, named for the King of France, and an ex-commandant of Fort Chartres was made first governor of Upper Louisiana by the Spanish monarch. Later the country was receded to France, and in 1803 Louisiana was bought by the United States.

The French were thus in America nearly two centuries, furnishing the most heroic and romantic chapter in our history of exploration and colonization. They seem to have vanished, like a dream, but really they are still here. Along the St. Lawrence, in Canada, there are now 2,000,000 French-speaking people, living in their quaint, farm villages: "Such as the peasants of Normandy built in the reigns of the Henrys." In New Orleans, along the lower Mississippi, in St. Louis, and in a few villages in Illinois, are thousands more, and French names are common around the Great Lakes. And on all the waterways traversed by their explorers, missionaries, voyagers and nobles, we find the names of French kings, saints, cities and heroes of the American wilderness.

*Memories
of the
French*

The Legend of the Kaskaskia Ball



Kaskaskia was a backwoods town in the Illinois country held by a few Creoles and Indians under the command of British officers. The British control of the northwest territory was a constant menace to the Americans during our War of Independence. So George Rogers Clark set out with his little force from Virginia, to drive them from the Illinois country in order to put a stop to the Indian outrages, which were encouraged by the British, as well as to gain the territory for the Americans.

The story goes that the gay Creoles of Kaskaskia were having a dance when Clark's little force came up. Everyone in the village, including the English officers and the guards, were said to be making merry when Colonel Clark walked into the rude log cabin that served for a ball-room, accompanied only by his guide and one or two others. He said nothing, but stood with folded arms looking upon the strange scene before him—handsome Creole beauties in ancient ball dresses belonging to their grandmothers in France, dancing with moccasined backwoodsmen to the tune of the lively fiddles scraped by a couple of old Frenchmen on a platform; swarthy Indians and trim English officers mingling with the French inhabitants; while the rude ball-room with its puncheon floor and rough walls resounded with the music and merriment.

Clark was unobserved for a few moments, so the tale runs, then an Indian saw the stern stranger and suspected

who he was, for the people of Kaskaskia had been expecting an attack from the Americans, but since it had not come at once they had forgotten to watch for it. The picture shows the Indian in the background, uttering his war whoop which startles dancers and fiddlers alike. The English officer in the foreground looks very angry. The ladies, naturally, are terrified. Clark's posture is typical of the man—undaunted and determined. The story goes that he calmly bade the people go on with the dance, but to remember that they were now enjoying themselves under the flag of Virginia, not of Great Britain. Before the officers could make any resistance, Clark's men, who were waiting outside, rushed in, alarmed by the Indian's war whoop. The English, of course, were completely overpowered and captured.

The true story of the capture, however, you will find in Clark's Memoirs—how the Americans found the town unguarded and, guided by a friendly Frenchman whom they had captured, went straight to the commander's house and seized him as he was lying in bed, wholly unprepared for an attack. After that the garrison and people, who were at heart friendly to the Americans, surrendered without the firing of a shot.

But the romantic story of the ball serves its purpose in giving us a clearer idea, than any dry account could do, of the nature and customs of the people then living in the Illinois country.

Henry of Navarre

*Now glory to the Lord of hosts, from whom all glories are!
And glory to our Sovereign Liege, King Henry of Navarre!
Now let there be the merry sound of music and of dance,
Through thy corn-fields green, and sunny vines, oh pleasant land of France!
And thou, Rochelle, our own Rochelle, proud city of the waters,
Again let rapture light the eyes of all thy mourning daughters.
As thou wert constant in our ills, be joyous in our joy,
For cold, and stiff, and still are they who wrought thy walls annoy.
Hurrah! hurrah! a single field hath turned the chance of war,
Hurrah! hurrah! for Ivry, and King Henry of Navarre.*

*Oh! how our hearts were beating, when at the dazen of day
We saw the army of the League drawn out in long array;
With all its priest-led citizens, and all its rebel peers,
And Appenzel's stout infantry, and Egmont's Flemish spears.
There rode the brood of false Lorraine, the curses of our land!
And dark Mayenne was in the midst, a truncheon in his hand!
And as we looked on them, we thought of Seine's empurpled flood,
And good Coligni's hoary hair all dabbled with his blood;
And we cried unto the living God, who rules the fate of war,
To fight for his own holy name, and Henry of Navarre.*

*The King is come to marshal us, in all his armor drest,
And he has bound a snow-white plume upon his gallant crest.
He looked upon his people, and a tear was in his eye;
He looked upon the traitors, and his glance was stern and high.
Right graciously he smiled on us, as rolled from wing to wing,
Down all our line, a deafening shout, "God save our Lord, the King!"
"And if my standard-bearer fall, as fall full well he may,
For never saw I promise yet of such a bloody fray,
Press where ye see my white plume shine, amidst the ranks of war,
And be your oriflamme to-day the helmet of Navarre."*

*Hurrah! the foes are moving. Hark to the mingled din
Of fife, and steed, and trump and drum, and roaring culverin!
The fiery Duke is pricking fast across Saint André's plain,
With all the hireling chivalry of Guelders and Almayne.
Now by the lips of those you love, fair gentlemen of France,
Charge for the Golden Lilies now—upon them with the lance!
A thousand spurs are striking deep, a thousand spears in rest,
A thousand knights are pressing close behind the snow-white crest;
And in they burst, and on they rushed, while, like a guiding star,
Amidst the thickest carnage blazed the helmet of Navarre.*

*Now, God be praised, the day is ours! Mayenne hath turned his rein.
D'Aumale hath cried for quarter. The Flemish Count is slain.
Their ranks are breaking like thin clouds before a Biscay gale;
The field is heaped with bleeding steeds, and flags, and cloven mail;
And then, we thought on vengeance, and all along our van,
"Remember St. Bartholomew," was passed from man to man;
But out spake gentle Henry, "No Frenchman is my foe;
Down, down with every foreigner, but let your brethren go."
Oh! was there ever such a knight, in friendship or in war,
As our Sovereign Lord, King Henry, the soldier of Navarre!*

*Ho! maidens of Vienna; Ho! matrons of Lucerne!
Weep, weep, and rend your hair for those who never shall return.
Ho! Philip, send for charity, thy Mexican pistoles,
That Antwerp monks may sing a mass for thy poor spearman's souls!
Ho! gallant nobles of the League, look that your arms be bright!
Ho! burghers of Saint Genevieve, keep watch and ward to-night!
For our God hath crushed the tyrant, our God hath raised the slave,
And mocked the counsel of the wise, and the valor of the brave.
Then glory to his holy name, from whom all glories are;
And glory to our Sovereign Lord, King Henry of Navarre!*

LORD MACAULAY

STORIES OF
AMERICAN HISTORY
THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA

The Homebuilders of the North Atlantic Seaboard



When the Puritans Lived in Their Ship

The Mayflower reached America in the fall of 1620, you remember, but Plymouth, the place decided upon for a permanent settlement, was not found until December 21st, and the Pilgrims did not have houses built on shore so that they could leave the Mayflower for good and all until March 31, 1621. During that long severe winter the Mayflower was home to the women and children who came on shore only during the daytime, while the men were very busy building shelters and defenses for their families.

Here we see a party of men leaving the ship for their work on the land. The Mayflower is encrusted and surrounded with ice, but safely anchored in the protecting harbor of Plymouth. Plymouth beach can be seen in the distance. The Pilgrims chose this place to anchor because the bay was full of crab and lobster and fish. If you have ever visited this bay you will not recognize it from the picture, for today the shores are crowded and busy with shipping and manufactures, not lonely and wooded as in the Pilgrims' time.

WE HAVE seen how the Spanish and French dared everything in the New World, explored far, won vast empires—and lost them. Behind them were no irresistible movements of people to sweep everything before them and possess the continent such as we find in the English colonies. These colonies spread along the North Atlantic seaboard from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to Florida. On this shore broke wave after wave of migra-

tion, not only from England but from every country of northern Europe. In reading the history of the Thirteen Colonies we find our interest centered, not in kings and their policies or in romantic adventurers, but in people, and how they dealt with their strange and terrifying experiences. It will help us to understand the later history of our country to know something of these colonists—their characters, origins, race traits and ideals, and how they

Modest Homes of the Pilgrims



When you visit Plymouth, Massachusetts, today and walk up Leyden Street, you are going over the only street there was in the town at the time shown in this picture—1622. The house at the extreme left was built first. The food of the colonists was stored in this building and everybody ate and slept there while the other modest little houses were being built. Next to it in order are the houses of Brown, Goodman, Brewster, Billington, Allerton, Cooke and Winslow. Governor Bradford lived in the large house across the street. The stockade around it was made of upright, pointed logs and was a defense against the arrows of the Indians, though it wouldn't have been much protection against bullets. The houses were of rough hewn timber with roofs of thatch and windows of oiled paper. The chimneys of the fireplaces, as you see, ran up on the outside, and were of stones held in place with clay. On the hill can be seen the fort which at first was used as a meeting-house. At the mouth of the "very sweet brook" behind the houses, the shallop of the Mayflower is anchored.

were affected by their experiences and neighbors in America.

The Anglicizing of Many Peoples

We are apt to think of all the English colonists as Puritans. But there were few Puritans outside of New England, and even there, were many other sorts of people. Pennsylvania was settled by English Quakers; Maryland by English Catholics; Virginia by English "gentlemen"; Georgia by poor debtors ransomed out of English prisons by a benevolent company. Then, New York and the Jersey shore of the Hudson were colonized by the Dutch; Delaware by the Swedes, and the Carolinas first of all by Huguenots—French

*Melting Pot
of the
Nations*

Puritans. Pennsylvania, the Carolinas and Georgia, when still young colonies, had large migrations of Germans; and into every settlement, from Massachusetts to Virginia, after 1700, poured such numbers of Scotch-Irish that, in many places they outnumbered those of English birth. In the beginning, as it is today, the United States was a "melting pot" of nations, receiving people from many lands. Long before the Revolutionary War these various people had become blended into a new English-speaking nation, quite different from any in the Old World, and were consciously working toward a common destiny, a larger freedom than any of them had ever known.

They all figured in our history, giving us Colonial leaders, Indian fighters, Revolutionary patriots, statesmen, presidents and pioneers.

The Adamses and Benjamin Franklin were of New England Puritan, Washington of Virginia "gentleman" stock. Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, Patrick Henry and Daniel Webster were Scotch-Irish; Van Buren and Roosevelt, New York Dutch. General Francis Marion was a Huguenot. William Penn was an English Quaker with a Dutch mother. Garfield's mother, that brave lady of the backwoods of Ohio, was the daughter of a Huguenot minister. "Dolly" Madison, the most beautiful and gracious of all the mistresses of the White

House, was a Quaker; and one authority says that Priscilla Mullins, the heroine of the pretty story of "The Courtship of Miles Standish," was a French-speaking Belgian. The name sounds English but it may have been corrupted from the French Moulin. The Pilgrims, you know, lived in Holland

eleven years before coming to America. And some of the men married Dutch and Belgian wives which they brought over in the Mayflower.

Rose Standish



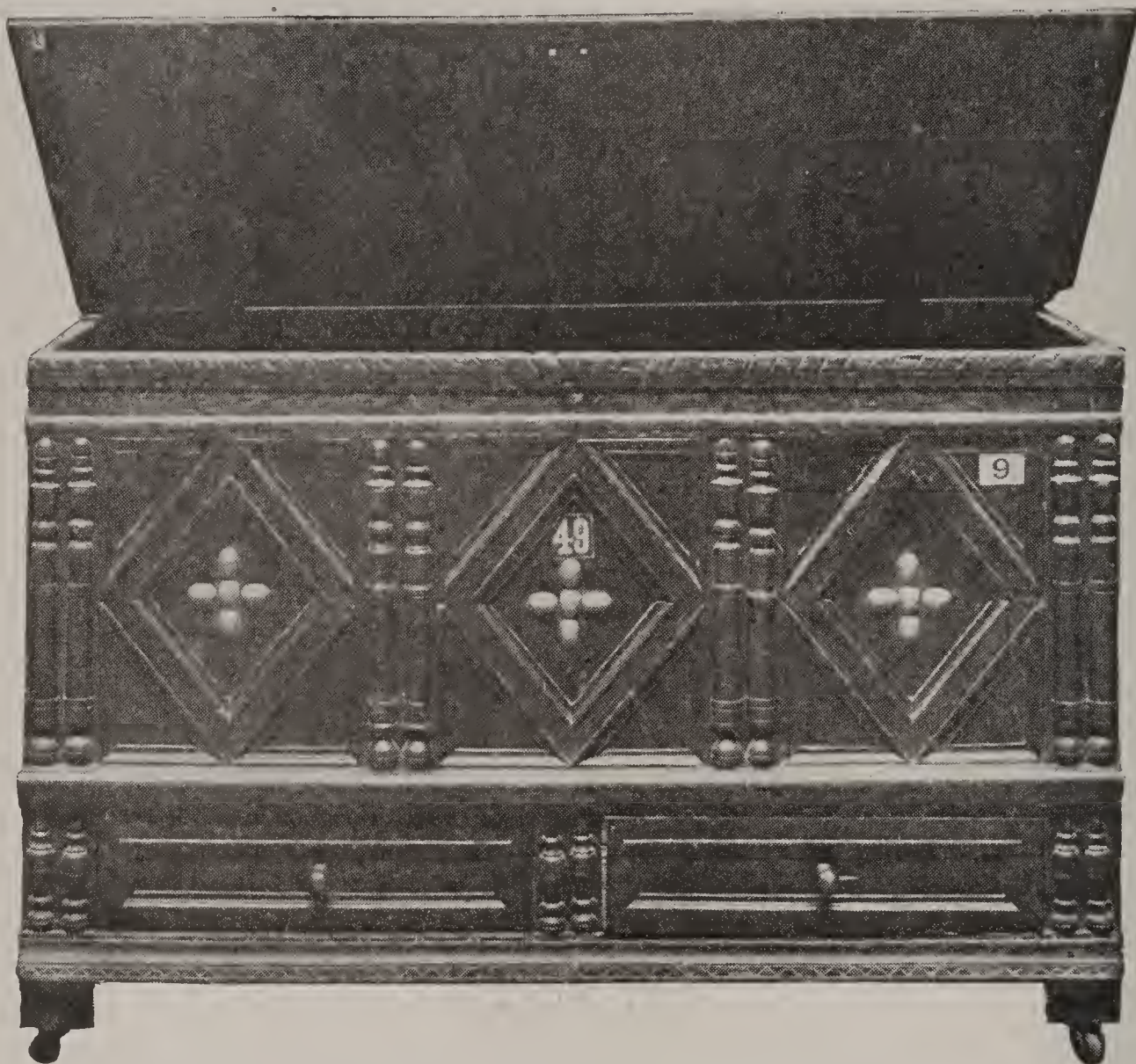
This is Rose Standish, first wife of the famous military leader of Plymouth Colony. After her death Captain Standish married her sister, Barbara. The story of the Courtship of Miles Standish in Longfellow's poems is one of those pretty romances of history that have no foundation in fact.

All these people were as upright and independent as the Puritans, and were marked by the same courage, energy and determination. There was nothing in this wild land of privation and struggle to attract the vicious and weakling. Any but the stoutest hearts would have been daunted by the ten weeks' voyage of the Pilgrims across the stormy North Atlantic. In the pest-hole of a little wooden ship, half the brave company were infected with tuberculosis, and were soon laid away in the forlorn graveyard of

Plymouth. And that experience was not unique. Fully half the first settlers at Jamestown, Virginia, died of malarial fever, and the colony was all but wiped out by famine and hostile Indians.

Yet ship after ship full of brave immigrants came to the bleak and sterile coast of New England, and

Where the Standishes Kept Their "Sunday Best"



Instead of the plain iron and leather affairs we use today to carry our clothes in when we go traveling, Rose Standish packed the family's best garments in this lovely, carved, oak chest when they came over here in the Mayflower. It is in the style known as "Jacobean." Jacobean furniture and architecture were common in England during the reign of James I, in the early part of the 17th century. This style was marked by paneling, geometric designs, and spindle or pillar decoration, all of which you see on this chest. The split spindles, which show that the chest was made in the latter part of the Jacobean period, divide the face of it into panels, which are ornamented with the geometric diamond-shaped design. You will notice by the grain of the wood that the cover is all in one piece. This and the two drawers at the bottom were also common in Jacobean chests. We may be sure that the casters have been added later—that Miles Standish never possessed such convenient little implements for moving his chest about.

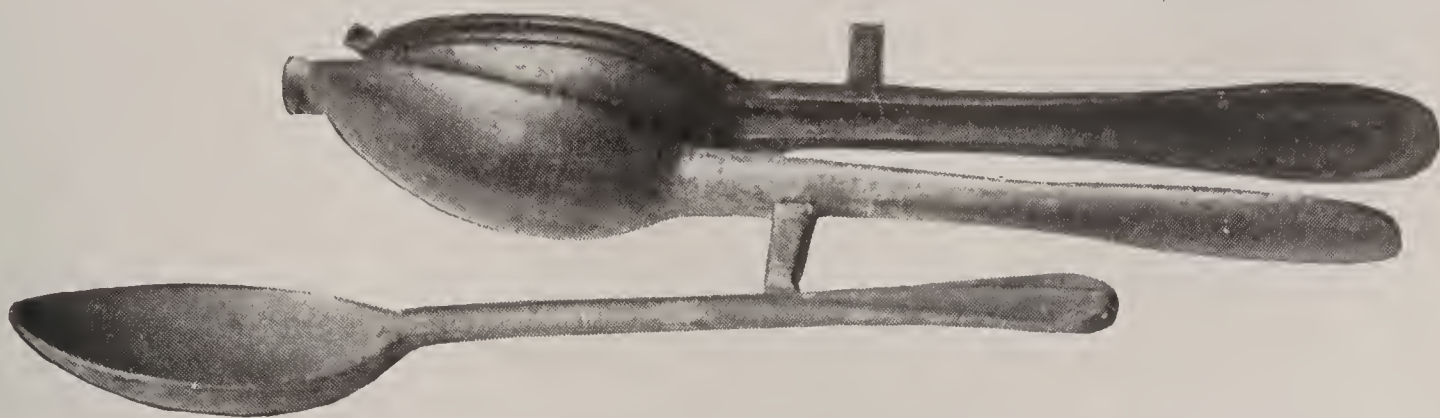
to the low, hot, swampy tide-water belt of the South. Virginia had four thousand inhabitants when Plymouth was settled in 1620, and twenty thousand colonists were landed in Boston and Salem before 1640. All the colonies were settled and the earlier ones became populous, in the seventy-five years between 1607 and 1682.

The Steady Westward March

Unlike the Spanish and French, who returned to Europe oftener than they remained in America,

these immigrants turned their backs definitely on the Old World. Wasting little time in exploration or treasure-seeking, they set about the sober business of building homes and getting their living from the soil, the forest and the sea. Settling on every good harbor and navigable stream, they held fast to every foot of ground won by hardship, toil and danger, and pushed steadily westward. It took them another hundred years to gain the crest of the mountains which walled them on the west from Maine to Georgia.

The Pewter Spoons and the Spoon Molds



Pewter was a variable alloy of tin and lead or brass. It was used by the Romans, and in the Middle Ages, before china and glass became cheap, nearly all dishes and utensils were made from it. At first it was expensive and only the rich could afford it, but by the time of the American colonial period it was found in every kitchen. Yet by that time china and glass were beginning to be used by those who could afford them. Pewter utensils were made by pouring the molten metal into a mold like this spoon mold and pressing it into shape. Notice what a big bowl and straight handle this old pewter spoon has. Like all true antiques, real old pewter ware is rare and very valuable nowadays.

But, twenty years after the Revolution, the seaboard was crowded with three million people, and the surplus population was swarming through all the water gaps into the Mississippi Valley. And they soon bought Louisiana, and sent their explorers through old French and Spanish territory to their new boundary in the Rocky Mountains.

Most of the early colonists to what is now the Atlantic Coast of the United States, came for the same reason as the Pilgrims: for "freedom to worship God" in their own way. They differed widely in their creeds, but all had suffered persecution for their faith.

The Foundations of a Free Land

It was a turbulent time in religious history of Europe. Following the Renaissance, or "New Birth" of literature, art and science in Columbus' day, came the Reformation, when the countries of northern Europe and Switzerland separated from the Roman Catholic

Church and set up Protestant churches of their own. In Catholic France there were a half million

A New Set of Spoons



When mother wanted a new set of spoons in the days of the Home Builders, getting them wasn't quite so simple a matter as it is today. Instead of going to a jewelry store, she sent Johnny into the woods, where he got just the right kind of wood for making wooden spoons. Then, as you see, she helped him make them. As you know, we use wooden spoons in the kitchen today. Ask your mother why.

Huguenots, and thousands of Scotch Presbyterians were colonized in North Ireland, a Catholic country. These were the Scotch-Irish, who kings into exile. And when the Protestants split up into many sects and began to persecute each other, there was no security or peace for

Story of the Sugar Bowl, the Tea Party, and the Prince Who Didn't Know What to Do



If mother had owned that sugar bowl and those sugar tongs in the days of the Home Builders, it would have meant that you were pretty rich and could give tea parties. Only rich people could afford sugar in those days and loaf sugar was the most expensive of all. Those sugar tongs, you notice, are not like the sugar tongs we have today. They were made for cutting off sugar lumps from the sugar loaf.

The ladies of the Colonies used to give their tea parties in the big front room on the second floor and so it was referred to by fashionable people as the "tea room," while those who were not so fashionable called it "the parlor." When mother gave a tea party she presided at the table while the guests were scattered around the room and the servants took them tea, rusks, and cake, and often fruit and wine.

Good manners required that the hostess should keep asking a guest to have more tea, or a helping of anything else, every time a cup or a plate was empty, and it was considered rude for a guest to refuse. This custom used to puzzle foreigners who were not familiar with it and a certain French prince who visited the United States shortly after the Revolution, tells in one of his letters he was invited to dine at the beautiful home of Robert Morris, where he was asked to have his tea cup refilled over and over again. When he had swallowed the twelfth cup, his neighbor, seeing that he was becoming more and more embarrassed, whispered to him that if he had had quite enough he should put his spoon across his cup, or else his hostess would be obliged to go on urging him to drink until the family supply of sugar and tea gave out, or the well went dry.

later emigrated to America in such numbers.

In Europe there were nearly two centuries of religious wars. The kings of Spain and France as "defenders of the faith" of Rome, made war on heretics in their own and other lands. Spain carried the war into her provinces of The Netherlands where dwelt the Dutch and Belgians, and threatened England. Then France took up the quarrel when England drove the Catholic Stuart

anyone. Puritans, Catholics, Church of England people, Scotch and Scotch-Irish Presbyterians, Quakers, and Baptists were each, in turn, driven from the British Isles. Moravians and Mennonites were exiled from Germany, and Huguenots from France. In all Europe there was only one small refuge for the persecuted of all sects. This was The Netherlands, or Dutch Republic. Through that little country, northern Europe, for a hundred and fifty

THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA

Dippers That Grew in the Garden



Manufactured articles were at a premium in the rough, new land and every family made as much of its household equipment as it could. Gourds have tough, woody fruit, suitable for dippers when they are hollowed out as you see them here. Some farms still have an old, open well with one of these queer, home-made dippers hanging above it—and oh, how good the cool, fresh water tastes from it on a hot summer day!

years, drained its best and bravest into the English colonies in America.

Learning Toleration from the Dutch

It was in Holland that the Pilgrims and many other colonists

learned toleration of other peoples' opinions. As long as the little company of the Mayflower was in control in Plymouth, there was freedom of conscience for all Christian sects. So there was in Connecticut and

The Colonists and Their Spice Mills



During the Crusades, Europeans learned to like Eastern spices, and a lively spice trade sprang up between Europe and the Orient. The spices made their long journey across Asia by caravan and then across the Mediterranean on sailing vessels. The journey was so long that the spices were expensive and only the rich people could afford to use them in food, but they were considered very delicious and were in great demand. So we are not surprised to find these spice mills in the kitchen of a wealthy New England merchant, for by the time the English colonies in America were established, spice was being brought from the West Indies as well as around Cape of Good Hope and by the old caravan route from the East. Two of these old spice mills are metal "querns" similar to the stone hand mill for grinding flour, of which we show you a picture elsewhere. The upper part, corresponding to the upper stone of the quern, has projections for cutting and crushing the spice, as you see. The lower part is a true dish or bowl, instead of the flat, hollowed-out stone we see in the quern. The spice mill on the right is similar to our present day kitchen coffee mills.

From the Outfit of the Night Watchman



Here is a hook and two of the kinds of "police whistles" used by night watchmen in colonial times. It was the duty of these night watchmen to go their rounds, all through the night, to call out the hour from time to time and to add the words, "All is well." But sometimes all wasn't well. There were burglars and street fights in those days just as there are today, and when the watchmen wanted help they called for it by swinging one of those rattles round and round. They made a clattering noise that everybody understood. The hook he carried to defend himself, if necessary, and also to lengthen his arm, so to speak, when he wanted to catch a man.

Rhode Island, Quaker Pennsylvania, Dutch New York and English Georgia. The Puritans of Boston and Salem, coming directly from England, denied this principle. Only members of their church were allowed to vote. They persecuted the Quakers and drove out everyone who differed from them. But, in time, the Puritans had to yield to the steady pressure of public opinion. In every colony were people who insisted on liberty of conscience. Old, worn-out notions of European monarchies, tyranny in any form, would not work in America.

The people who came here were tired of being told what to believe and what to do. Besides, they were

obliged to act for themselves. There were problems of existence to be solved at once, of which king and parliament could know nothing. The fullest liberty of action was needed if they were not to perish in the wilds of America. In every colony were people who knew just what to do in setting up an orderly, self-governing community, for they had studied the free institutions of The Netherlands. They had seen the seven Dutch states united into a strong republic, with the separate states and cities managing their own local affairs, and securing peace, justice, toleration and prosperity.

Dutch ideas worked like yeast in all the English colonies. The spirit of independence was in the cabin of

THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA

the Mayflower. Expecting to land in Virginia, the Pilgrims found themselves without authority on Cape Cod. But that did not trouble them. They drew up and signed a proper agreement by which they governed and defended themselves for the next seventy

The First Town Meetings

decided in the Town Meeting. Later the New England colonies had Assemblies, to which each settlement sent delegates. But they still kept

This is a Whole Flour Mill



This is one of the stone hand mills or querns used by the English colonists. Wheat was poured through the hole in the center of the top stone. Two handles were fitted into the holes and the top stone turned upon the lower. The stone was turned back and forth and not round and round. In this way two persons—two of the children, for example—could operate the mill together. The product of this mill was what we today call "whole wheat" flour. Hand mills like this are still in use in out-of-the-way places in Scotland and Ireland.

the town meetings for local questions.

The colonists who went out from Boston to Rhode Island, at first managed their own affairs, and then secured a liberal charter from the king. The people who walked through the woods from Boston to the Connecticut Valley

formed a republic of three settlements and adopted a constitution. All citizens were given the vote, and the monarch's name was not mentioned. The king signed this charter and then, advised that this was dangerous both in method and dec-

The Glassware in Colonial Homes



Glass was first made in the Orient and from there it was brought to Europe. For many years Venice led the world in the production of beautiful glass, and even today, in spite of our improved methods of manufacture, old Venetian glass is considered very choice. But England soon developed a thriving glass industry of her own, and English colonists in America were not content to import their glassware from England but set up glass works of their own. The glass in the picture was made in Massachusetts before the Revolution. Some of it is etched with steel or diamond instruments. It is thick, but clear and colorless. The variously shaped glasses were for different beverages—the smaller ones for the drinking of liquors which were taken in small quantities, the large engraved one for toddies. A toddy stirring rod is stuck in this toddy glass. The long iron rods were flip irons, for "flipping" glasses of liquor—that is, heating them by thrusting in the iron heated red hot in the fire.

trine, demanded that the document be surrendered. You know what happened. The paper was hidden in the hollow of an oak tree to be brought out and used again when the king's plan of uniting all the colonies down to Pennsylvania under a royal governor, had to be abandoned. The people of Boston put Governor Andros in jail and shipped him home because he abolished the Assemblies and levied what taxes he pleased. When Governor Andros was gone, Connecticut and Rhode Island resumed their charters.

Resisting the Charter Governors

Clashes with authority were frequent in every colony, and the office of a royal, proprietary, or company charter governor was seldom a pleasant one. A governor could veto measures and even dismiss Assemblies, but the legislatures could bring him to terms by refusing to vote him a salary. The Dutch of New York, under English rule, refused to pay taxes or elect officers until popular government was restored. South Carolina and Maryland both languished and grew turbulent under tyrannical rule, and were revived only by restoring a larger measure of liberty. In Virginia a serious rebellion against Governor Berkeley was led by Na-

thaniel Bacon. Pennsylvania had a tranquil history because it was founded on the most liberal principles of self-government. Although settled more than sixty years later than Massachusetts and Virginia, Pennsylvania rapidly caught up with them in population and prosperity, and before the Revolution Philadelphia was the largest city in America.

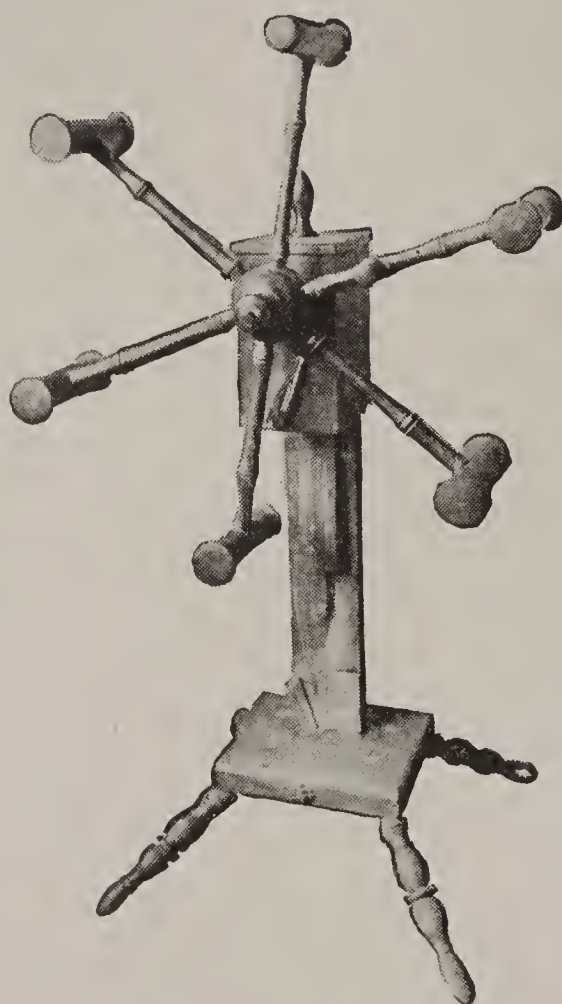
Now there was no conspiracy on the part of the separate colonies in this matter or in any other. Scattered along two thousand miles of seaboard there was, at first, little communication between them, and settled by widely differing people, who had quarreled bitterly in the Old World, they had, or thought they had, few interests in common. Each was isolated in a wilderness of woods and waters, and obliged to

supply its own needs. But common experiences made them all more alike, and created sympathies. Practically all colonists were obliged to cultivate small farms which, for protection and for co-operation in many kinds of work, were cleared around a village of log houses, and a little stockaded fort. And, of course, there was always a church or two.

The Growth of Industries

All the grains and forage crops of Europe were grown, with the In-

A "Clock" That Counted the Skeins



In the days when every housewife spun the yarn which was later woven or knitted into clothing for the family, this device for measuring and keeping track of it was used. It was called a "clock" reel because the number of revolutions of the reel, as the skein was wound, were recorded by that hand pointing to numbers on the circular face.

Priscilla at Her Wheel



Do you remember how John Alden

"Heard, as he drew near the door, the musical voice of Priscilla
Singing the hundredth Psalm, the grand old Puritan anthem,

* * *

Then, as he opened the door, he beheld the form of the maiden
Seated beside her wheel, and the carded wool like a snow-drift
Piled at her knee, her white hands feeding the ravenous spindle,
While with her foot she guided the wheel in its motion.

* * *

She, the Puritan girl, in the solitude of the forest,
Making the humble house and the modest apparel of home-spun
Beautiful with her beauty, and rich with the wealth of her being!"

Longfellow: The Courtship of Miles Standish.

dian plants of corn, potatoes, pumpkins and tobacco. There were soon gardens and orchards and domestic animals. Sheep were imported into New England and Pennsylvania very early; and flax was grown in the North and cotton and hemp in the South. It was not long anywhere before spinning wheel and loom were busy in every cabin. But on every frontier, men and boys long wore the Indian hunting suits of deerskins.

Water and wind mills ground the grain and sawed logs into timbers and lumber, but most of the manufacturing was carried on in the

homes, as was also the case in the Old Country. Until long after the Revolution all the commoner cloths, even heavy sail-cloth, were woven

What Busy

Homes

Were These

on hand looms, dyed and made into garments by the women of each household. Even such mansions as Mount Vernon had its weaving room managed by the mistress. Soap was made of waste fats and lye leached from wood ashes; sea-water was evaporated for salt; stone and oyster shells were burned for lime. Every village had a cooper and a tanner, but barrel staves were split out of white oak in the forest, and boots

How They Printed the Calico Prints



Ages ago the Egyptians printed calico by means of carved wooden blocks like these. The practice was brought to Europe from India in the seventeenth century. Many of the designs used in America in the early days of its settlement came from France and were very artistic indeed. In printing the cloth, it was stretched over a padded table and marked with chalk to indicate where the print block was to be applied. The blocks shown in the picture were dipped in the dye, then pressed on the cloth. The print block was squared with the pattern already printed each time and tapped smartly with a small mallet to make sure that it left a firm clear impression on the cloth.

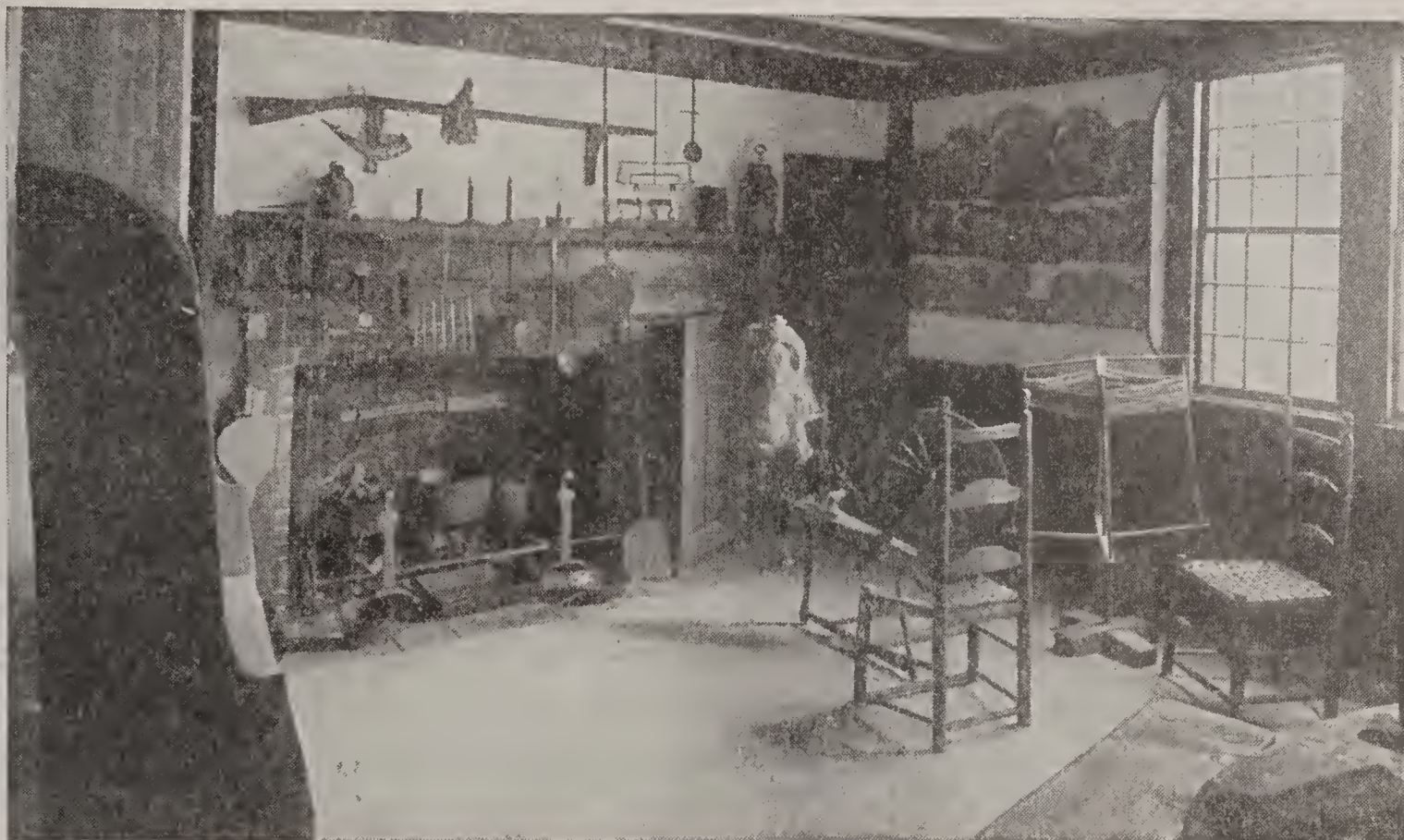


Making Nails by Hand

Whatever they didn't have in colonial days, people made for themselves, provided they needed it badly enough. Here you see a boy in a blacksmith shop, hammering out a nail. Nowadays nails are made from long rods which a machine chops up into proper lengths. They have their heads hammered on them, but this is done by machines that turn out nails at the rate of 1,000 per minute. The perfection of nail-making machinery is due largely to American invention and it was in colonial times when boys got so much "manual training" in the blacksmith shops and elsewhere that they developed the ingenuity that made us the great nation of inventors that we are. The first American patent for nail-making machinery, by the way, was taken out not so very long after the period when the blacksmith's apprentice used to shape them on the anvil.

THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA

In Great Grandmother's Kitchen



An American kitchen of 1750 looks quite different from a modern one, doesn't it? Instead of a gas jet or electric light, the 1750 kitchen was lighted by candles. The lantern on the mantel shelf is made of horn. The "flat irons" are brass shells into which the irons were thrust after having been heated in the coals. Above the flat irons are toasting irons for holding the bread before the fire. What a long handle that frying pan has! You see why, don't you? The blaze was so hot you didn't want to get any nearer to it than necessary. And, besides, frying things spit grease. At the right of the fireplace is a little chamber with a door to it. That is where mother made the spicy cookies and baked the bread. Leaning against the brick is a "peel," a sort of long, flat shovel for putting dishes into the oven and removing them. A bellows for blowing the fire hangs at the left of the fireplace.

In Mrs. Ward's Parlor



The parlor of the seventeenth century house is shown here exactly as it looked when John Ward lived in it, including the costumes of the two girls who are helping to bring the old scenes back to life. Notice the solid, substantial lines of the furniture, quite different from the slender Chippendale and Sheraton which became the vogue in the next century. The table cloth was called a "carpet" in 1684 and is made of hand-woven "woolsey." The open book is "The Whole Duty of Man," published in London in 1684.

The Money of Our Forefathers



Perhaps you have heard the expression, "not worth a continental." It originated at the time when the paper money shown in this picture was in circulation. The Continental Congress issued this paper money and with it paid the soldiers, bought supplies, and met other indebtedness. Of course, pieces of paper issued by any government are not real money but simply promises to pay real money in gold or silver. Somewhat like promissory notes of a private individual. If the war failed, of course the Continental government would cease to exist and these promises would never be redeemed. As there were many times when it looked very much as if Great Britain would succeed in putting down her rebellious colonies, these promissory notes had very little value. The states also issued paper money. By 1779 when the four-shilling bill, which you see on the left, was issued by Massachusetts, it took twenty-eight of these bills to equal four shillings in coin. At that rate you would have needed a handful of them just to pay your street car fare down town. Those coins shown are made of silver and so are real money; that is to say, they have value in themselves.

and shoes for the family were cobbled on a bench in the chimney corner. All New England farmers had a small forge for hammering out nails and bolts from iron bars and they shod their own horses. No "Yankee," or Scotch-Irishman, or German bought anything he could contrive to make. In New England was developed a genius in the handicrafts that led to many useful inventions.

But these activities did not supply all needs. Every colony was obliged to find something to sell so that

they could buy better clothing, furniture and building material abroad; and build churches, schools, roads and bridges. England was exactly like France and Spain in wanting from her colonies only the things which could not be grown or made at home; and to them she wished to sell her surplus manufactures and the luxuries of Europe and the East Indies. Virginia and Maryland found a profitable crop and a steady income in tobacco; the Carolinas in the naval stores of the pine woods—the pitch, tar, turpentine and resin

In the Days of the Spinet



The spinet was one of the favorite musical instruments of the time in our history when men wore wigs and ladies dressed their hair very high. The girl in the picture is not a Colonial maiden but a girl of today. The spinet, as you can see, developed out of the harp and was the beginning of our pianos. The strings were picked with a quill or plectrum which was caused to rise and fall as the keys were struck. The strings referred to were not those which you see in the picture which are simply part of the ornamental design.

so much needed in those days of wooden ships. The Carolinas and Georgia grew rice, indigo, and cotton. In all the southern colonies men of birth, wealth and education bought large plantations on the banks of the navigable rivers, and found an outlet for their ability and energy in developing and managing their landed estates. And in the Hudson River Valley rich Dutch merchants and aristocratic Englishmen colonized large grants of land, or "manors." The Dutch were few in number, and did little farming, devoting their talents to the rich fur trade of the Hudson and Mohawk valleys. In Pennsyl-

How the Preacher Knew When to Stop



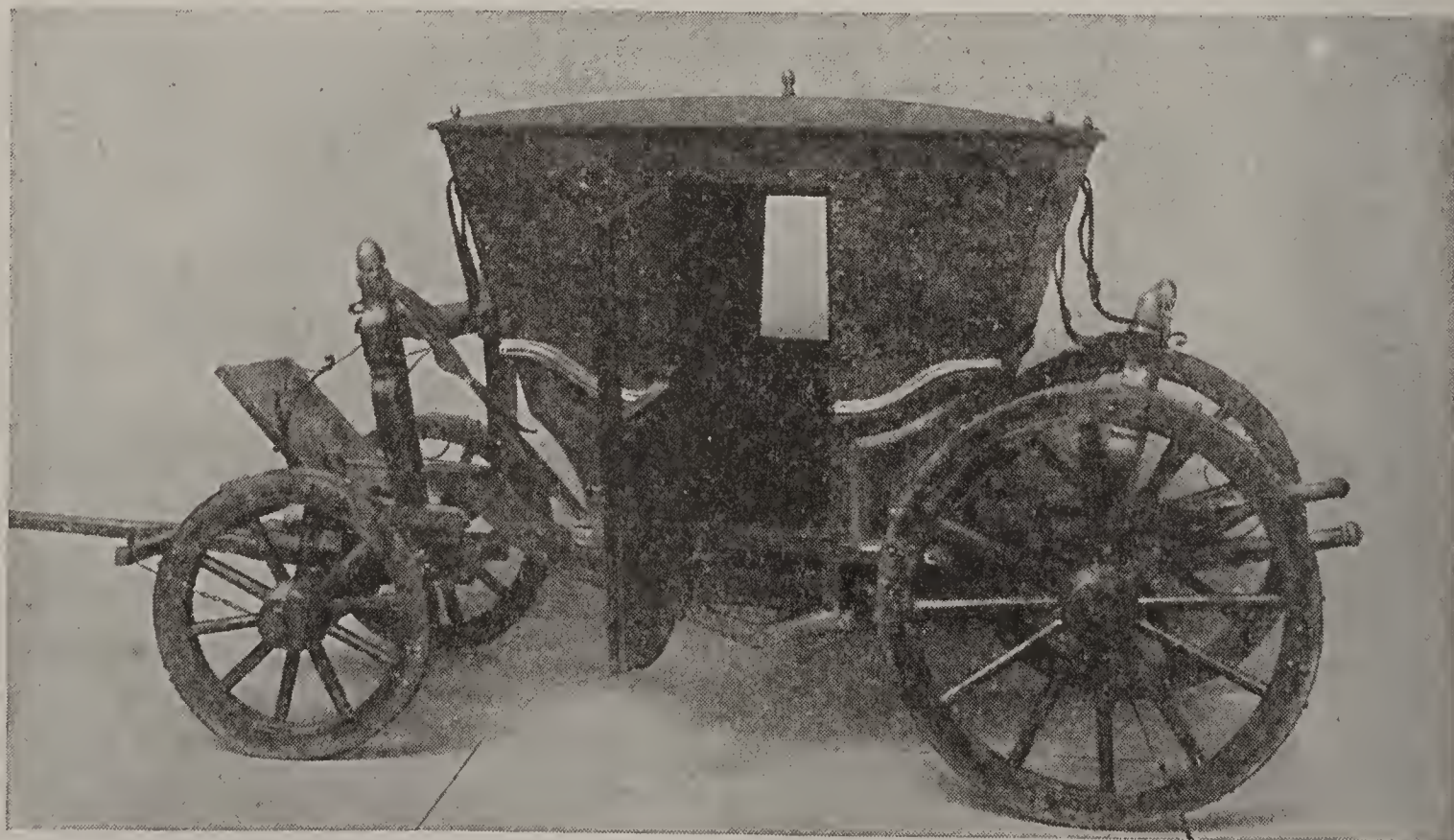
This pulpit glass stood at the right of the minister and told the clerk when the sermon had lasted for two hours. If the sermon was to be four hours long the clerk turned the glass over, but if two hours were all that the minister was to talk, the clerk rapped sharply three times and the minister finished his talk.

vania, the Germans cultivated large farms in the Delaware and Schuylkill valleys, and shipped fine cavalry horses to the English army.

What the New Englanders Did

In New England, however, the climate was too severe, the soil too sterile to make farming on a large scale profitable. Living in villages, they cultivated what was needed at home, and some corn and peas to trade with the Indians for beaver skins. They also made wampum beads of shells, and wove woolen blankets. They built glass and salt works and iron furnaces to supply home needs.

The Family Coach in Penn's Day



This is William Penn's family coach. You may see it among the historic relics in Independence Hall, Philadelphia. It is not so luxurious as were many other coaches in this time, because Penn was a Quaker and did not believe in display.

THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA

Where Virginia Lawmakers Warmed Themselves

Every man, beside his farming, engaged in cod-fishing, whaling in the Arctics, lumbering in the Maine woods, or ship-building. They sold rum, cod-fish, salt meats, whale oil, boards, barrel staves, shoes, straw, fur, and felt hats, all the way from Labrador to the West Indies, and in England and Holland; and they brought back cotton, rice, sugar, molasses, naval stores, indigo, tobacco, and the manufactures of Europe. They also brought Spanish silver dollars from Cuba and melted and re-coined them into pine-tree shillings and sixpences. Many of their ships they sold in London.

The growing trade of these bold New England sailors so alarmed the merchants of the mother country, that the English

Parliament, in which the colonies settled by different breeds of men, had no representation, passed navi- in the first place. More peo-

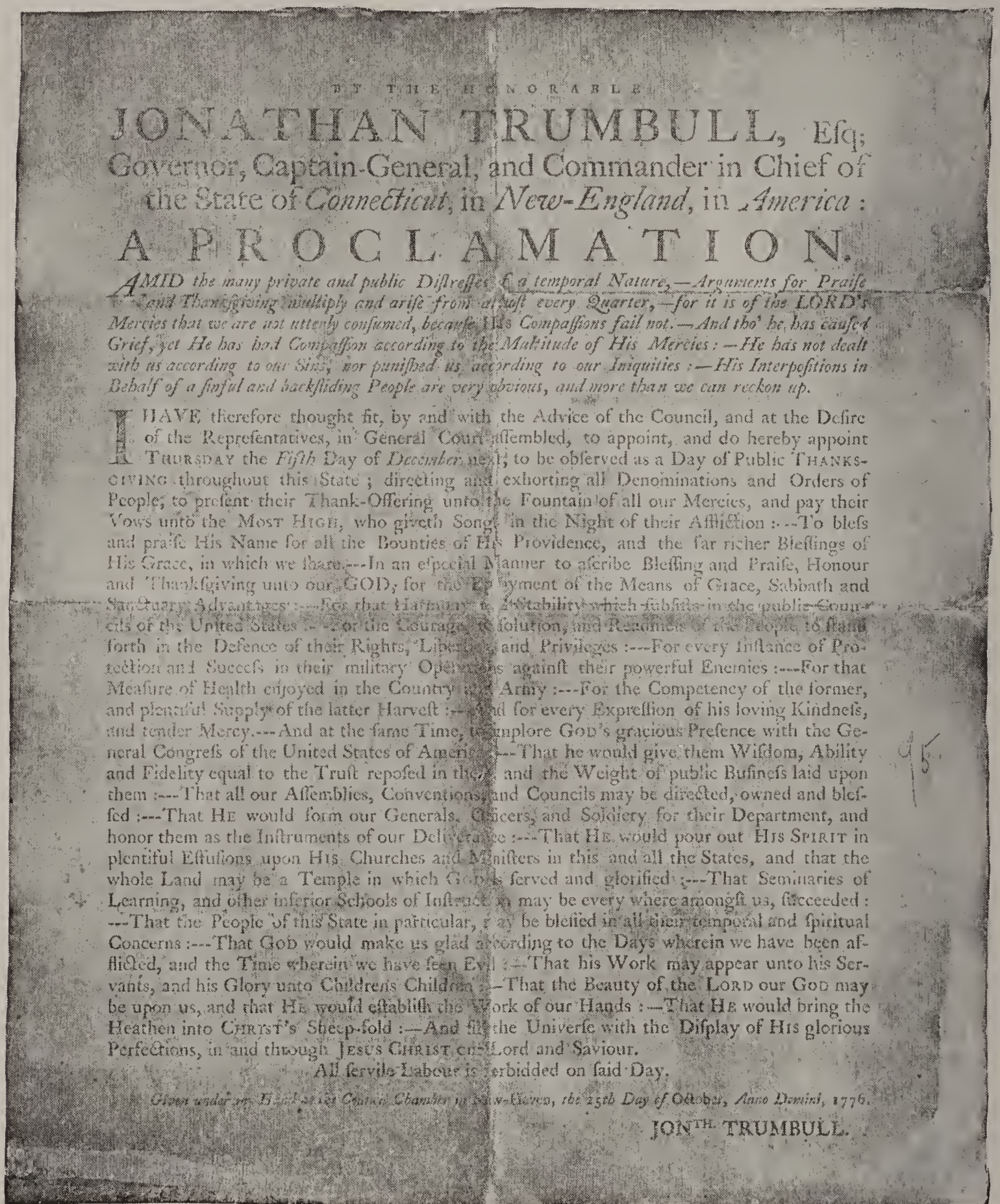


In Colonial days most houses and public buildings were heated by enormous fireplaces in which great logs were burned, letting half the smoke out into the room and half the heat up the chimney. Stoves were rare and very expensive. This stove stood in the Virginia House of Burgesses. It is very highly ornamented, like a modern base-burner. It is a Dutch stove and has a hollow fire box opening into the bridge arrangements on top. The fire rests on iron bars at the bottom, through which the draft enters. This kind of stoves often became red hot and the heated air, passing from them out into the room, was full of poisonous gases, the products of combustion and contact with the heated iron.

gation acts. They required that all foreign goods for the colonies must pass through England, and no foreign vessel could trade with the colonies. This was so unjust that it led to smuggling of goods into and out of West Indian ports. And ships from New England sailed to Africa and engaged in the slave trade. Having to take many risks, to evade English laws and to escape capture and confiscation of cargoes by Barbary pirates and Spanish warships, the "old salts" of New England grew to be the most daring seamen and shrewdest traders on the ocean. Theirs were the naval victories in the wars with the French and their Indian allies.

The colonies of the North and South were

An Old Thanksgiving Proclamation



As you see by this proclamation issued by Governor Trumbull of Connecticut in 1776, Thanksgiving Day was not observed on the last Thursday in November at that time as it usually is today. Plymouth Colony celebrated the first Thanksgiving after the harvest in 1621 and Thanksgiving Days were appointed after this at different times in New England and New York. Congress recommended a Thanksgiving Day yearly during the Revolutionary War, but there was no national appointment of the festival, each State issuing its own proclamation. At first Thanksgiving was observed almost exclusively in New England.

ple of the leisure class, of high birth, wealth and social distinction had gone into the region below Pennsylvania. Into the north-

ern colonies had poured college-bred professional men, skilled workmen, farmers, and merchants. Climate, soil, and industries, made all these

What Colonial Newspapers Were Like



As Usual on the Arrival of Ships from Great Britain we have given you a summary of the most Remarkable Occurrences of Europe, which you may see by our Numbers 817 and 818, the 14th and 21st of December past; when our last Ships from London arrived, to which we refer you. In those Paragraphs under Boston, the more particular Account whereof, we have been giving you since; that no Material Article of the News of Europe should be wanting to those that Encourage this Print; and therefore here follows what came to our hands in the London Gazette since the 20th of October last, to the 24 of November, by Capt. Archibon Sarah Gally, who was beaten off the Coast to Barbadoes.

THE Lord Archbishop of Canterbury and others of the Lords the Bishops being hindered from waiting on his Majesty the next Day after his Arrival, by reason of the Consecration of Dr. Boulter Bishop of Bristol that Day at Lambeth. His Majesty was pleased to appoint them to attend him on Monday last; when his Grace, accompanied by the Bishops of London, Worcester, Salisbury, Norwich, Ely, Chichester, Gloucester, Bangor, Litchfield and Coventry, Carlisle, and Bristol, having congratulated his Majesty on his safe Arrival, and on the Success of his Affairs abroad, did, in the Name of himself and his Brethren, return His Majesty their most humble Thanks for his gracious Favour to the poor Protestants in the Palatinate, and in Poland and Lithuania. The Substance of what his Grace spoke, was as follows:

I am also directed by my Lords the Bishops to return our most humble Acknowledgements to your Majesty for the Protection your Majesty has been pleased to give to our Brethren the Protestants in the Palatinate, and of Poland and Lithuania, persecuted for the Faith of Christ. We are persuaded, that this Royal Charity will draw down innumerable Blessings from Heaven upon the Person of your sacred Majesty and your Affairs.

Advice, caused a Battery to be raised against the Spanish Men of War in the Mole, 4 of the biggest are already sunk, one of 54 Guns, two of 60 and one of 64, and the rest disabled. It is thought they loaded a great many Brass Guns on board them, and were preparing to push out to Sea.

From on Board, &c. October 13. N. S. Yesterday a Ship of 40 Guns was sunk by the Battery.

Genoa, October 17. Letters from Palermo say, that the Spanish Army under the Marquis de Lede is in a very sickly Condition, and the want of every thing.

Berlin, October 17. M. Slippenbach the Prussian Minister has frequent Conferences with the Muscovite Ministers, and offered the King his Masters good Offices jointly with those of His Britannick Majesty, for procuring a Peace.

Copenhagen, October 17. Sir John Norris is expected here with the British Squadron.

Perpignan, October 18. The Marshal Berwick on the 22d Marches with his Army towards Roses, consisting of 75 Squadrons and 40 Battalions.

Whitehall October 18. Capt. Johnson of His Majesty's Ship the Weymouth, Cruising off the Grogue, with the Winchester and Durley Galley, being informed that two Spanish Men of War, one being the Greyhound, the other 26 Guns, and a Spanish Merchant Ship of 300 Tons, were in the Harbour of Ribadeo, and the 16th of September he came before the Harbour Capt. Johnson sent in his Boats and followed with Ships and anchored within Market-shot of the Enemies Ships and Battery of 8 Guns, landed, took it, and demolished it. In the interim, the Men of War blew up, and they took Possession of the Merchant Ship.

Venice, October 20. On the 17th Col. Burges (who had been Commissioned Governor of New England) being appointed Resident by His Britannick Majesty to this State, arrived here to relieve Mr. Cunningham.

Whitehall, October 22. Major Levissier, Aide de Camp to the Lord Viscount Cobham, from Vigo, brought the particular Account of the taking of Vigo in Galicia.

Imagine reading in a newspaper of April 14th about what happened in London on the 20th of last November! In 1720 all the news from Europe was brought across the Atlantic in slow sailing vessels which sometimes took several months to make the voyage. Even the best and biggest newspapers in America came out only three times a week, and consisted of only four small pages. They were printed with blurry type on coarse, brown paper. There was not much news in any of them. A good deal of space was filled up with advertisements for runaway slaves and stray horses. Much space also was given to letters written from distant places to friends of the editor, who, by the way, usually printed his own paper as well as editing it. Instead of short editorials, such as we have today, there were long essays on politics and morals, by prominent men who signed a high-sounding Roman name to their articles. But news of the outside world was so scarce that people welcomed these meager sheets eagerly, even when they were many weeks old.

differences more marked. Slavery, perhaps, was the deciding factor. To be sure there were slaves in every colony—50,000 of them north of Maryland before the Revolution. But the Negro did not thrive in a cold climate, and could not be used profitably in the many complicated tasks of small

farms and shops. The African laborer was used to the greatest advantage on the large plantations of the South, in cultivating single crops, such as tobacco, cotton and rice.

This slave labor made the South rich, and caused a scattering of the population. Men of wealth built up

The Home of the Washingtons



This is the attractive home of the Washingtons at Mount Vernon as it appears today. It stands on a bluff overlooking the Potomac. It is entirely of wood, but the siding, you will notice, is of thick boards and is divided up so as to give it somewhat the appearance of stone work. Mount Vernon gets its name from Admiral Edward Vernon of the British Navy under whom Lawrence, George Washington's half-brother, served. Lawrence owned the house, but provided that at the death of his widow it should pass to George Washington. The house, or villa, as it originally stood, forms the middle portion of the present mansion house, George Washington having built an addition at each end. In 1860 the house, which was showing the effects of time and neglect, was purchased by the Mount Vernon Ladies' Association on behalf of the nation. The purchase price was \$200,000, which included the buildings and 200 acres of the original estate.

The Garden at Mount Vernon

President and Mrs. Washington were people of exquisite taste and, as you see, even the part of the estate devoted to the raising of vegetables for the table was beautifully laid out and cared for. From each end of the mansion at Mount Vernon was a colonnade with a paved walk underneath it, leading through a beautiful lawn with shaded drives along which were trees planted by Franklin, Jefferson, Lafayette and other famous men who were connected with the Revolution.



THE ENGLISH IN AMERICA

In George Washington's Study



This is the study in Washington's home at Mount Vernon as it looks today. On the right you see the tripod, the three-legged stand for his surveying instrument, and near it a globe. Globes became very popular after Columbus discovered America and in 1507 a German map-maker made a globe on which the map was printed in separate pieces or gores and pasted on the globe. You can plainly see the sections in this one.

The Bedroom of Washington



Here we are looking into the bedroom of Washington at Mt. Vernon. The chair near the window on the left is his mother's and one in which she used to sing him to sleep. The old round trunk is of the type that was used in Washington's day and for a good many years afterward.

large landed properties like the ancestral estates of Old England. Every river up to the falls was lined with plantations, each with its private wharf where vessels from Lon-

classics, sent their sons to English universities to be educated, and devoted their leisure to politics. With much property at stake and a keen sense of their personal worth, they

On the Front Porch at Mt. Vernon



Can you imagine any home more delightful than Mt. Vernon must have been when the Washingtons lived in it? This picture represents Washington conversing with Lafayette when the noble Frenchman visited the United States after the Revolution, and was the guest of the nation. Among the trees in the background you see a little summer house and beyond that, the waters of the Potomac. Seated with Mrs. Washington at the table is her daughter, Nellie Custis. That dear little girl leaning her head on grandmother's lap is Martha Parke Custis, and on the ground near the porch is her brother Jack. You see, boylike, he goes in for toy cannons while his little sister prefers the hoop. The two little dogs have evidently heard that toy cannon go off before and are quite interested, but they don't seem to be quite sure whether they had better wait and hear it "bark," or run away. In the household the children were known as "Jack and Patcy." Washington loved both them and their mother dearly as if they were children of his own blood. In the first invoice of goods shipped to him from London after he became their stepfather, he ordered "Ten shillings worth of toys, six little books for children beginning to read, and one fashionably dressed baby to cost ten shillings." The dressed baby was, of course, a doll. For their mother he bought a "Forte Piano," and later at a cost of \$1,000, a very fine harpsichord, and one of his greatest delights was to have her play and sing to him. He was very systematic in everything he did and his ledger shows the cost of constant gifts he made to her. One of these items is, "The Wayworn Traveler," a song for Miss Custis.

don called for the staple crop and unloaded every luxury of living.

*The Southern
Country
Gentry*

Washington was a typical planter, and beautiful Mt. Vernon, his home on the Potomac, a typical plantation. These wealthy proprietors cultivated all the refinements of living, in their houses, dress and lavish entertainments. They rode and danced, read Shakespeare and other British

were natural leaders in public life, both in peace and war. William and Mary College was founded in 1688, but with the population so scattered, primary schools were unknown. Every plantation with children had a governess and a tutor.

In the North everyone worked, and lived close together. The people crowded into farming villages which rapidly grew into towns and

At One of Mrs. Washington's Receptions



Here we are at a reception at the White House when Washington was President. Of course, we will meet here the most distinguished people in the land. As there are so many we will not try to get introductions to all of them, but one of "those present," whom I am sure you will want to know, is Master George Washington Parke Custis. He is that little boy, with the long hair, on the extreme right. He is the grandson of Mrs. Washington and the adopted son of the President. The lady who has her hand on his shoulder is a Mrs. Randolph, and the one who has turned to speak to him is Mrs. Winthrop. Both ladies were prominent in the society of the time. Assisting Mrs. Washington in receiving are Nellie Custis and Mrs. Robert Morris. (Mrs. Morris, you remember, is the lady at whose house the foreign prince was so much embarrassed because he didn't know what to do when she kept urging him to have more tea.) Nellie is standing between Mrs. Morris and Mrs. Washington. Distinguished foreigners were also to be seen at receptions at the White House in those days, just as they are now. For instance, one of the heads you see in the background under the arch is Louis Philippe, who afterward became King of France and reigned for a short time before Napoleon took charge of things. Conversing with Washington, whom you will readily recognize, is the Duke of Kent, who fought on the side of the British during the

Revolution. Possibly they are discussing incidents of their campaigns.

At the left of the raised platform on which Mrs. Washington is standing, is a man in a long gown. That is Jonathan Trumbull. He was Chief Justice of the Superior Court of Connecticut, and it is for this reason that he wears the gown. You notice that John Jay, who stands not far from the platform on the right, wears a similar gown. He was Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States, an office to which Washington appointed him. Washington also thought very highly of the abilities of Jonathan Trumbull and the name "Brother Jonathan," as applied to the United States, is said to have originated from Washington's frequent remark when important matters were to be discussed, "Let us hear what Brother Jonathan has to say."

Looking at the picture, it is hardly necessary to add that those were the days of hoops. The ladies' dresses stood out for two feet on each side and were made of gorgeous brocades and taffetas. The gentlemen wore their hair done up in a cue and their hair was always white, no matter what the natural color may have been, because it was thickly powdered. Their coats had silver buttons engraved with the initials of their names.

The cuffs were loaded with lead; and for the same reason that we put "sinkers" on our fish lines—to make them hang straight.

Martha Washington and Little Maria's Nose

The President set out this day week on a
 tour to the eastward for dear and Major Jackson
 attended him - my dear children have had
 very bad colds but thank God they are getting
 better my love and good wishes attend
 you and all with you - Remember me to
 Mr & Mrs L. Maria has the two child - kiss
 Maria & send her two little handkerchiefs to wipe
 her nose - adieu

I am my dear Loving yours,

most affectionately

M. Washington

Here is a portion of a letter written by Martha Washington to a relative. It sounds very domestic and home-like, and is particularly interesting because it tells about two handkerchiefs that Mrs. Washington made for a little girl and which she sent along with the letter. This reference to the handkerchiefs occurs in the last paragraph which reads in part as follows:

"The President set out this day week on a tour to the eastward. Mr. Lear and Major Jackson attended him. My dear children have had very bad colds but thank God they are getting better. My love and good wishes attend you and all with you.—Kiss Maria. I send her two little handkerchiefs to wipe her nose."

cities. Life was simple and frugal, for no one was rich. Everyone was

Life and Culture in the North deeply religious and society was sober. Here was no horse-racing, card-playing, dancing, hunting country gentry as in Virginia. Husking and quilting bees, shooting matches, athletic sports and the militia "training day" furnished the social pleasures. Reading was confined to the Bible, Milton and books of sermons. Boys went to school. Massachusetts voted taxes to help support schools as early as 1640, and

Harvard College was founded in 1638.

All the New England colonies had their men of classical education. There were one hundred graduates of Cambridge and Oxford among the first generation in Boston. There were large private libraries in every northern colony, and distinguished scholars to use them. Yale, Dartmouth, Brown and Pennsylvania Universities, and King's College (Columbia) were all founded before the French and Indian War. Princeton was started by Scotch-

Irish graduates of Edinburgh and Dublin in a log cabin in 1746. Massachusetts gave us our first and best-loved names in American literature; but it was in Philadelphia that Ben-

days or two weeks, depending on the weather. There were stage-coach lines only between Boston, New York and Philadelphia. A post-office and mail routes had been es-

A Pleasant Way to Travel



To go by stage coach used to be the quickest way to make a long journey, but it was so uncomfortable to be jolted about for several days and nights over the rough roads, that people with plenty of time liked to make their trips by water if they could. This is a flat bottomed canal packet with a dining room and bedrooms for passengers. It is pulled through the water by horses on the tow path at the side. See how the people on top seem to be enjoying the fine weather. The Erie Canal, opened in 1825 between Albany and Buffalo, N. Y., was the first important canal in the United States.

jamin Franklin found the ablest lawyers and doctors, and men to form societies for the discussion of science and philosophy.

The Colonies in 1760

Now let us see what our country was like in 1760, a little over a century and a half after the first settlement. There were probably about 2,000,000 people, all east of the mountains, with the frontier settlements nowhere more than one hundred and fifty miles from the ocean. Massachusetts, Pennsylvania and Virginia were the most populous. Philadelphia had 16,000 people, Boston 20,000, New York 12,000. Charleston was the only city of any size in the South. Roads were few, bridges poor. Most travel was by water, in sailing sloops and schooners along the coast and up the rivers. Any voyage might take two

established, and there were hand printing presses and small weekly newspapers in the larger towns. The English Licensing Act, under which no book, pamphlet or almanac could be printed or sold anywhere without permission from the authorities, expired in 1695, and there was now liberty of the press. Virginia had its first newspaper in 1732, the year George Washington was born. The *Boston News Letter* was founded in 1704, and boasted that its European news, received by sailing vessel, was only two months old. Just think of it!

And yet, somehow, news traveled. Philadelphia was the meeting place for planters from the South, local men of science, and professional men and merchants from New England. And there was one topic of conversation of unfailing interest

*Beginning
of the
Union Idea*

Dancing Out the History Lesson



These two pictures show you how one of the stately colonial dances is reproduced in the school assembly room. If this is not one of the physical exercises in your school, show these pictures and the following directions to your teacher. Such exercises not only bring fresh color to your cheeks but add greatly to the feeling of life and reality in the history lesson.

Children enter in rows, girls at the right, holding skirts daintily with right hands, boys holding girls' left hands high with their right. Boys' left hands behind back.

Touch left heel forward, 1. Touch left toe backward, 2. Change step, or catch step, left, 3-4. Touch right heel forward, 1. Touch right toe backward, 2. Change step, right, 3-4. Drop hands and turn left about, grasp inside hands and repeat in opposite direction, 9-15 counts.

Part II. 16 Measures.

At end of Part I all turn left about and finish facing forward, ready for Part II. Same formation as in Part I. All step left sideward, 1. Step right foot over left, 2. Step left sideward, 3. Step right foot behind left, toes pointed downward, right knee turned outward and bend knees slightly. (This is the dip step), 4. Same thing right, 5-8. Repeat all, 9-16. Repeat Part I, 32 counts in all. Finish, partners facing.

Part III. 8 Measures, Picture Number 1.



Partners join right hands and hold high, girls' left hands holding skirts at side, boys' left behind back. All walk forward 4 steps, partners changing positions. On fourth count turn about and make a slight bow, 1-4. Join left hands and repeat, 5-8. Boys take girls' left hands in their right, still facing each other. Boys step sideward left, girls sideward right, all moving front, 1. Point step front (one foot crossing over the other, toes pointed. With opposite foot), 2. Boys step sideward right, girls sideward left, 3. Point step, 4. All turn about away from partners and make a low bow, girls holding skirts with both hands, boys with right hand across chest, left behind back, 5-8. (See the next Picture.) Repeat all, 16 counts. 32 counts in all.

Part IV. 8 Measures.

Partners face each other and join right hands. Boys walk backward, girls forward. 4 counts (on fourth count make slight dip step). Repeat in opposite direction, 4. Drop hands, all step sideward right and bow low, 1-2. Step to position, heels together, not changing position of hands, 3-4. Repeat to left, 5-6. Step to position, 7-8. Repeat the whole dance.

and importance to all—the Indian Wars. New Englanders on the sea and Virginians on the land, they had fought and died and won victories for seventy years. Involved in all of England's wars, they had defended her colonies unhelped, and had profited nothing from the endless strife, not even winning peace

and security for themselves. Very slowly another principle of the Dutch Republic took root in the colonial mind:

"United we stand, divided we fall."

It was the French and Indian Wars that knit the thirteen colonies into a compact nation of people standing shoulder to shoulder. That will make another story.

How First Graders Built a Pioneer Home



The pupils of the first grade in a Franklin, Indiana, school collected and arranged the material for this pioneer schoolhouse after studying pioneers and their primitive ways of living. The "logs" are dowel rods and the "ground" is a sand table. The forest in the background was sketched in charcoal on cardboard, by children in the upper grades. The rods were notched to fit each other and are held in place with clay. The chimney is of sticks stuck together with clay.

The Pilgrim Fathers

*The breaking waves dashed high
On a stern and rock-bound coast,
And the woods against a stormy sky
Their giant branches tossed.*

*And the heavy night hung dark,
The hills and water o'er,
When a band of exiles moored their bark
On the wild New England shore.*

*Not as the conqueror comes,
They, the true-hearted, came;
Not with the roll of the stirring drums,
And the trumpet that sings of fame;*

*Not as the flying come,
In silence and in fear—
They shook the depths of the desert gloom
With their hymns of lofty cheer.*

*Amidst the storm they sang,
And the stars heard, and the sea;
And the sounding aisles of the dim woods
rang
To the anthem of the free!*

*The ocean-eagle soared
From his nest by the white waves' foam;
And the rocking pines of the forest
roared—
This was their welcome home!*

*There were men with hoary hair
Amidst that pilgrim band;
Why had they come to wither there,
Away from their childhood's land?*

*There was woman's fearless eye,
Lit by her deep love's truth;
There was manhood's brow serenely high,
And the fiery heart of youth.*

*What sought they thus afar?
Bright jewels of the mine?
The wealth of seas, the spoils of war?—
They sought a faith's pure shrine!*

*Ay, call it holy ground,
The soil where first they trod,
They have left unstained what there they
found—
Freedom to worship God.*

FELICIA HEMANS

The Story of Black Hawk



This giant work of art stands on a lofty promontory called "The Eagle's Nest," near Oregon, Illinois, and overlooks the picturesque valley of the Rock River. It is one of the best known works of Lorado Taft. It is known as the Black Hawk Statue, although the face is not a portrait of the famous chief but a composite of the features of the Fox, Sac, Sioux and Mohawk tribes. You notice that this giant wears no feathers, or Indian trappings. He expresses in grand simplicity the stern dignity of an Indian chief and his resentment at the wrongs inflicted upon his race by the white man. As grand chief of the Sacs and Foxes, Black Hawk vigorously opposed to a contract between his people and the United States in 1809 by which, for an annual allowance of only \$1,000, they give up their rights to something like seven hundred square miles of territory along the Mississippi. In 1823 when, lead by Keokuk, a greater part of the Sacs and Foxes emigrated to a government reservation, Black Hawk and a few followers refused to go. He remained on the eastern side of the Mississippi and lived peaceably until the white man confiscated his possessions. With a few followers he then destroyed several white settlements but all were finally driven west of the Mississippi, and Black Hawk and his two sons were captured and imprisoned in Fortress Monroe.

STORIES OF AMERICAN HISTORY

THE INDIAN WARS

The Indian Wars and How They Helped to Bring on the Revolution



Sowing Wheat on the Graves

In the first winter in New England only the hardest of the little band of Pilgrims survived. Quick consumption caused the death of many of them before they reached America, for alternating the foul air of the crowded Mayflower hold in stormy weather with the piercing cold of the northern Atlantic on clear days when they could go on deck, made them particularly susceptible, and the hard life in this country, with no suitable shelter, carried off a great many before the first, long, hard winter was over. Before the end of March nearly one-half of their number had died. They were buried near the sea, on Cole's Hill, and grain was sown above the graves so that the Indians couldn't find them and discover how small was the force of white people left.

The picture shows a Puritan sowing grain over a freshly-made grave as the funeral procession disappears over the hill. Notice how the man in the foreground is dressed. Even at the sad business of a funeral he wore his armor and carried his gun and sword, because the Indians' war whoop might be heard at any moment and it was best to be always prepared.

WHO does not know the thrilling and romantic story of how Captain John Smith was rescued from a cruel death by the Indian Princess Pocahontas? The lady did not marry the hero, who was, indeed, a grizzled veteran of wars in The Netherlands and with the Turks. In due time she was wedded to young John Rolfe in the church at Jamestown and went away to London, to be

*The
Story of
Pocahontas*

made much of by Queen and Court. Because of this marriage, Captain Smith was able to make a treaty of peace with Chief Powhatan, one that was kept for twenty years. Before that, and afterwards, the colonists of Virginia were constantly in danger of attack by the Indians.

Beginning of the Wars

Many of the early uprisings were too small and brief to be called

"wars." Both tribes and colonies were far apart and, with the exception of the Iroquois Nations of Western New York State, the Indians were not organized. Each attack was simply a separate, treacherous raid on a sleeping settlement, led by some warrior of local fame. But by and by, when the white people increased in number and began to crowd the Indians out of their best hunting grounds, the tribes joined forces to resist. Then the French in Canada took advantage of this feeling to organize and arm the Algonquin tribes of the St. Lawrence, and with their help to try to drive the English and Dutch out of America.

To understand these later wars and their very important consequences, we must go back to the early Indian uprisings. We are obliged now to admit that most of them could have been avoided. They were

due to the unfriendly spirit of the English people of certain colonies toward their red neighbors. Every European people who came to America made its own terms with the Indians according to its disposition. The Spaniards killed or enslaved

them. The French lived with their "wild brothers" and won their undying devotion. The English were unlike both Spanish and French, and those of different colonies differed widely from each other. All Englishmen felt their moral and social superiority to the semi-barbarians of the American forest, and the marriage of Pocahontas and John Rolfe was one of the very few unions of the two races. But the people of some colonies were friendly, and fair in their dealings with the Indians, and were met with friendship and faith. In other colonies contempt and

*The English
and
the Indians*



John Smith, Author, Explorer, Adventurer

Captain John Smith set out to see the world for himself when he was a very young man. He went first to fight in the Low Countries, in the Dutch wars against Spain. Leaving there he was robbed, by four adventurers, of everything he possessed. In those days many worthy and even noble gentlemen made a business of piracy, so when John Smith turned pirate and helped capture a Venetian ship whose cargo made him wealthy for awhile, he was not doing anything so very disreputable in the eyes of the world. According to his own story of his life, he next joined the Austrians in their battles with the Turks. There he was captured and sold as a slave to a lady who took pity on him and protected him from some of the hardships and sufferings which fell to the lot of Turkish slaves. Then he stole a horse and rode away into Russia with his slave's iron collar still about his neck. There he found some enemies of the hated Turks who gladly filed away his collar, the mark of his slavery, and he set out for home. He made his way through Germany, France, Spain and Morocco, back to England again, with many thrilling adventures along the way. In England he joined the Jamestown expedition and had much to do with making the first permanent English settlement in Virginia successful. John Smith has been accused of being a boaster, and of making himself the hero of hair-breadth adventures which he never experienced, but we must remember that in the age in which he lived, the habit of bragging was much more common than it is today and a modest man wasn't likely to get all the attention and respect he deserved. And John Smith's adventurous career was remarkable, even for those stirring days.

injustice bred hatred and revenge.

Friendship Between Indians and Englishmen

Had the Indians been so disposed, the Pilgrims could easily have been destroyed, for they were in the sorest straits of poverty and sickness. But Indians aided them, taught them how to plant and cook corn, to hunt and fish and make snow-shoes. And the people of Plymouth invited their red neighbors to share their first Thanksgiving feast. This was long remembered, for hospitality is an Indian virtue. Plymouth colony had no trouble until after the arrival of the Boston and Salem colonists.

In Rhode Island, Roger Williams bought his land, traded fairly and was unmolested by tribes which waged war against Massachusetts and Connecticut. William Penn and the Quakers of Pennsylvania made the famous treaty of peace that was "never sworn to and never broken" until all the colonies and all the tribes became involved in the French and Indian War of 1754. But the Delawares had already learned to trust white men by living as near

neighbors to the fair-dealing Dutch and Swedes for a half century. The Dutch in the Hudson River Valley made a perpetual treaty of peace—the "Covenant of Corlear" with the Iroquois Nations, the most fierce and warlike of all eastern tribes.

Six of the thirteen colonies had no trouble whatever with Indians in their immediate neighborhood. Most of the early "Wars" were in New England and Virginia. Puritan and Cavalier alike felt nothing but disgust and contempt for the red man. They often cheated him in trade, and they thought that a charter from the King gave them a good title to the

whole American wilderness. Indian rights to their forest homes and hunting grounds were ignored. Crowded back and reduced to poverty, many tribes were obliged to fight, or to submit and die miserably.

Raleigh's settlement on Roanoke Island was destroyed and only the good sense of Captain John Smith saved Jamestown. After the long peace, Virginia fought an endless succession of border wars back to

Princess Pocahontas in Her Court Dress



This shows Princess Pocahontas in her court dress as she appeared when she went to London and was presented to the Queen. Although it is painted in the stiff style of the time, you can see that she must have been a beautiful woman. The painting is now in possession of one of her descendants, Col. Frank S. Robertson, of Abingdon, Va. He kindly loaned it for reproduction for the benefit of readers of Pictured Knowledge. In his letter with regard to it, Colonel Robertson says: "This English painting of my distant grandmother, Pocahontas, my father believed to be the only authentic portrait of her extant, and he looked into the subject very thoroughly."

the crest of the Alleghenies. The Puritans in New England had no security until they had conquered the Pequots and Narragansetts, and

looking forward with confidence to peace, began to push back the frontier.

Only eleven years later, however,

How Pocahontas Saved John Smith's Life



Captain John Smith was one of a party of Englishmen who set out to explore the country near their settlement. They were captured by the Indians and all murdered except John Smith. His cleverness and presence of mind saved him again, for he made the Indians afraid of him and they treated him with the superstitious respect accorded to their own medicine men. He was taken on a long march through the country to Powhatan, head chief of the Indians of that region. Captain Smith, in his diary written, like Caesar's Commentaries, in the third person, tells the story of how Pocahontas rescued him from death:

"A long consultation was held; but the conclusion was, two great stones were brought before Powhatan. Then as many as could, laid hands on Smith, dragged him to them, and thereon laid his head, being ready with their clubs to beat out his brains. Pocahontas, the king's daughter, when no entreaty could prevail, got Smith's head in her arms and laid her own upon his, to save him from death; whereat the Emperor was contented he should live to make his hatchets and her bells, beads and copper, for they thought him as well trained for all occupations as themselves."

The truth of this story has been doubted, especially since John Smith is known to have loved romance to such an extent that he sometimes exaggerated the romantic side of his adventures far beyond the actual facts in the case. But this story is credited by as great authority as John Fiske, who says that this event was not at all romantic from the Indians' point of view, but was an everyday occurrence. Smith had killed some Indian warriors and consequently, according to their custom, he must pay the blood-debt with his life or be adopted into the tribe. At first it was decided to kill him, but Pocahontas wanted him adopted because she had taken a little girl's fancy to the pale-faced stranger—she was only thirteen years old at the time, and though little Indian girls grow up more quickly than white girls, she was still a good deal of a spoiled child. When her father refused, she ran out and laid hold of him, as any spoiled girl will try to seize what she wants to possess. This time she was successful and Powhatan agreed that John Smith should be adopted as a member of the tribe. It was one of the Indians' customs to adopt a captive instead of killing him if some member of the tribe insisted on it. This picture is fairly authentic. The saving of Smith's life occurred in one end of an Indian long house, as shown here—one entrance to the house is at the left of the picture. Pocahontas is shown as older than thirteen, perhaps, and she is shown as warding the Indians away instead of protecting Smith as he describes, but the Indians are well represented, and the two stones are there, with John Smith's head upon them.

ended the career of the famous chief, "King Philip," in a swamp. By 1678 local tribes were wiped out or broken up, and New England,

all the northern colonies, from New Hampshire to New Jersey, were attacked by French and Indians from Canada. This was a part of the

first of the royal wars between England and France in the Old World and of their colonies in the New. In Europe they were known by different names, but in America simply

and Indian royal wars had their roots in the past, in both Europe and America. France sought to force back upon the English people the Stuart kings whom they had driven

The Wedding of Pocahontas



Pocahontas aided the English settlers in Virginia in many ways besides saving Captain John Smith's life. Her marriage with John Rolfe helped to keep the Indians under Chief Powhatan, her father, friendly to the English. She was baptized a Christian, assuming the name of Rebecca, and was then married in the church at Jamestown, April, 1614, with Governor Dale looking on. He is sitting at the left near the minister, with a group of soldiers behind him. The church is decked with vines and flowers and filled with a goodly company of spectators. Pocahontas is wearing a queer combination of English and Indian clothing—Indian moccasins, bracelets and peacock feathers in her hair, while her other garments were undoubtedly woven by some English housewife who perhaps gave them to Pocahontas for a wedding present. The picture shows the ceremony at the moment when Rolfe, with his right hand upraised, is taking the marriage oath, while Pocahontas demurely droops her head.

as King William's, Queen Anne's and King George's wars. Beginning in 1689, they ran, with long intervals of peace to 1748. In 1754 they were followed by the French and Indian War which, starting in the colonies, spread to Europe. That war ended in the loss of her American colonies to France and, finally led to the Revolution and the independence of the English colonies.

This is the best time in American history to study the deep-lying and remote causes of all wars, their far-reaching effects, and their permanent influence on the characters and destinies of a people. These French

into exile, and the two governments took opposite sides in the wars of Frederick the Great of Prussia upon Austria. Their rivalries were made all the keener by the rich prizes of North America and India to be won by the victor. None of the colonists, of any

Family Feuds Among the Nations

nation, had broken with their past. They were all loyal subjects of their kings, and thought it their duty to defend and to add to their monarch's possessions. So, although hundreds of miles of trackless forests, wild rivers and mountains, and stormy coasts lay between the settlements on

the St. Lawrence and the seaboard, English and French colonists fought valiantly in three long wars that were not their own. Peace was signed each time, in Europe, without consulting them, and no territory changed hands because of colonial victories.

with the desperation of despair. They hated and feared the English who were allied with the powerful Iroquois, and gladly joined in every war against them.

History sometimes turns on very small events. The Iroquois might not have made friends with the

Why John Smith Broke His Pistol



This deadly-looking weapon once belonged to Captain John Smith. You notice the hammer has been broken, and this is how it happened: Once when Captain Smith was captured by Indians, the Indians brought him his pistol and commanded him to fire it off. Firearms were new to them, of course, and John Smith knew very well that they wanted to learn how to shoot the pistol, and would then keep it to use against the colonists. The habit of quick thinking which had helped him out so often in the past came to his rescue this time and he fumbled with the lock of the pistol, breaking it as you see. Then, of course, it would not go off and he couldn't show the Indians how it worked.

Pistols had only been in use about forty years in Captain Smith's time, and they were long, heavy affairs, you see, quite different from the modern revolvers used in the army. Some of them were very beautifully carved and mounted with silver. The carving on the wooden butt of Smith's pistol is half obliterated by dents and scratches, and the iron barrel is badly scarred.

Fanning the Embers of Ancient Wars

Now as to the part played by the Indians in the mighty struggle for the continent, that lasted three-quarters of a century. When white men came to America, an ancient enmity already existed between the small but highly organized Iroquois Nations who occupied New York State between the Hudson River and Lake Erie, and the numerous but weak tribes of Algonquins who were scattered along the St. Lawrence from New Brunswick to Lake Superior. The Algonquins, all but conquered, were sadly in need of help when the French arrived at Quebec in 1609. They immediately collected around the French forts and, for the next hundred and sixty years, fought for their faithful friends and protectors

Dutch so readily, when they appeared on the Hudson, had they not previously had a little skirmish with the French. The French explorer, Champlain, with Algonquin guides, went south from the St. Lawrence, discovered Lake Champlain, and started across the narrow divide to the valley of the Hudson. There in the woods, near Ticonderoga, they met a band of Mohawk hunters. This was one of the Iroquois Nations, and the Algonquins were trespassers. In the fight which followed Champlain had an easy victory, for he killed a few Mohawks and scared the rest half to death with his guns. The Iroquois had never seen guns before. But the Algonquins fled. Knowing that all the Iroquois would soon be on the warpath they hurried

*The French
and the
Algonquins*

*A Little
Battle with
Large Results*

Champlain back to Canada, to build forts and mount cannon at Quebec and Montreal.

Small as it was, that was one of the decisive battles of American history. When the Dutch soon after appeared at Albany, the Iroquois eagerly filled the holds of their vessels with beaver skins in return for guns with which to punish the Algonquins and their French allies. They succeeded in shutting the French up in their three fortified towns for thirty years, and in chasing the Algonquins to hiding places on the upper lakes. The Iroquois made a treaty of peace and friendship with the Dutch, and when New Netherland was captured by the British and named New York, this treaty was transferred to the English. King and colonists were very careful indeed to keep faith with the powerful Iroquois, and the Six Nations were allies of England until the end of the War of 1812.

This English alliance with the

Iroquois no doubt decided the ownership of the continent. In colonial days the Hudson River Valley was never thickly peopled or strongly de-

fended. If the French and their hordes of Algonquin warriors could have captured it, they would probably have split the English colonies, taken New England from the rear and then moved down on Virginia.

This was the plan of conquest of Count Frontenac, who was twice sent to Montreal as Governor of New France. A brilliant and daring leader, he sent Joliet, Marquette and La Salle to explore the Mississippi and lay claim to Louisiana. When King William's War broke out in 1689, his fly-

ing columns of French and Indians poured down the Connecticut River and Lake Champlain and ravaged the frontier from Maine to the Delaware. They burned Haverhill, Deerfield and Schenectady, but they were never able to break through

Why Young William Penn Doesn't Look Like a Quaker



William Penn doesn't look like a Quaker here, does he—in armor and a fine flowing neckcloth? But then he is quite young, you say, and perhaps this picture was painted before he turned Quaker. You are right, for this picture was painted when he was only twenty-two years old and is the only one we have of him made during his lifetime, though after his death several portraits of him were painted from the descriptions of him by people who knew him. This picture shows him in the costume of a Royalist army officer. We all know how he gave up the idea of being a statesman and courtier in order to preach the Quaker teachings, and how he finally led a band of the peace-loving, simple Quaker folk to a new home in America, but it was only after a struggle with his family that he accomplished it.

The Penns came from a fine old English family, prominent at court. Admiral Penn, William's father, intended his son to be a statesman, so when he came home from making war on the Dutch, and found William turning Quaker, he was very much displeased. He sent the young man to the court of the Duke of Ormond, viceroy of Ireland and a friend of his, in the hope that he would abandon his Quaker ideas, in the gay life there. Penn joined a local Royalist military organization and took a prominent part in the merry life about him for a time. It was then that this picture was painted.

The Plan of Count Frontenac

Penn's Treaty with the Indians



The picture was painted by Benjamin West. You know his story, don't you? He was a little Quaker boy and he first showed his talent by painting a picture of his baby sister smiling in her sleep. He was only seven then. His colors were made from berries, and his brush was made of hairs borrowed from the cat's tail.

In his painting of "The Death of Wolfe," he led the way toward the modern idea of accuracy in pictures of historic scenes by showing the figures in the uniforms they actually wore, instead of the classical draperies you see in the pictures of other artists of those days. Yet this picture of Penn's treaty is not accurate. For instance, Penn is represented as an elderly man, say of fifty or sixty, while in reality he was only thirty-eight at the time. And the conference took place soon after the Quakers landed. They had not yet had time to build the houses you see in the background. The Quaker movement was in its infancy at the time of this treaty, and the typical Quaker dress in which the artist clothes Penn and his followers was not introduced until thirty years later.

the wall of Iroquois warriors which stretched from Albany to Lake Erie.

In the three royal wars the northern colonies bore the brunt of the fighting. New York became the battleground on land, and New England sailors three times carried the British flag almost to Quebec. This was not fair, for the southern colonies were thus protected at no trouble or expense to themselves. Besides, had they all joined forces early they might have put an end to French and Indian attacks which, later, imperiled them all. One of

*Failure to
Learn from
History* the early Dutch govern-
ors of New York who
had seen how, by unit-
ing, the seven states of the Dutch
Republic had driven out the armies

of Spain and won peace and independence, urged all the English colonies to unite, and prove the practical wisdom of the Dutch motto: "In union is strength." The New England colonies co-operated to put down the Pequots and Narragansetts, and they joined forces with New York in the royal wars. But the thirteen separate and widely differing colonial governments could not, at that time, be got to act together.

Threatened by a Common Peril

It was not until after the close of King George's War in 1748 that all were threatened by a common peril. Although no territory had changed hands, the French had, for a half

"The Apostle to the Indians"



John Eliot was a Puritan who came to this country because he couldn't preach what he believed in England. He was the man who began the work of converting the Indians to Christianity. In order to be able to preach to them, he spent a great deal of time acquiring their language, which, as it had never been written down, had to be learned verbally from the Indians themselves. And then, whenever he found a party of them who were willing to listen to him, he seized the opportunity of telling them about the gospel. Meeting these Indians in the depths of the woods—God's first temple—he began exhorting them with all the eloquence at his command. See how eager and earnest he looks as he tells the half-naked savages the message of the Scriptures. And what a contrast their lean, brown bodies and fierce eyes make to the gentle figure of the spiritual Puritan preacher. They are true Indians, you see, not Europeans with dark skins as some historical artists paint them.

This picture, by H. O. Walker, is a mural, or wall, painting in Memorial Hall, Boston State House. Its shape, square at the bottom and arched at the top, makes it just fit the space under an archway between two pillars. Many of the world's greatest pictures have been painted for this purpose, especially some of the work of the early Italian masters, which adorn the great medieval cathedrals.

century, been slowly gaining the advantage. In 1669 they had built a fort at Mobile on the Gulf of Mexico. Soon afterwards they were at New Orleans. Then, by fort-building, missions, trading posts, farming and lead-mining settlements, they pushed up the Mississippi almost to

*Strategem
of the
French*

St. Louis. They held the upper lakes at Mackinac and Sault Ste. Marie; but, with northern Illinois and Wisconsin held by hostile Indians, communication between New France and Louisiana was over Lake Erie, the Wabash River and the lower Ohio. Their long chain of forts

were placed on sites so well chosen that great cities stand on most of them today.

But this line of fortified waterways was a thousand miles back from the Atlantic seaboard, so no attention was paid to all this activity of the French in the heart of America. But it was a different matter altogether when the French decided to make a new route by leaving Lake Erie at Presque Isle (Erie City) and dropping down the Allegheny River to the headwaters of the Ohio. This

brought them immediately behind Pennsylvania and Virginia. With no Iroquois warriors to bar the way, they would be able to attack the middle colonies from the rear. They had actually explored the Ohio Valley to the Miami River, taken formal possession of the country, and built forts at Presque Isle and on the Allegheny before the English colonies discovered what was going on.

Virginia was wild with anger and alarm. The Ohio Valley was included in her original sea-to-sea charter, and the Ohio Company, formed by Governor Dinwiddie, Lawrence Washington and other wealthy Virginia planters, had a

The Threatened Wall on the West

further title to the land by purchase of the Iroquois Indians who had conquered the native tribes. Many sturdy Scotch-Irish settlers had pushed up the Potomac, and were

The Puritan Maidens and the Indians



This picture shows a Puritan maiden teaching an Indian girl how to spin. If you wonder why they happen to be outdoors, with grass under their feet and trees behind them, the answer is that this is from a school pageant given in the suburbs of Boston to illustrate early New England history. The Puritan women, in these kindly relations with their dark-skinned neighbors, really taught two lessons, one related to the household arts and the other human relationships; for if the men folks had been as thoughtful in their treatment of the Indians as the Puritan women were, the continual conflict between the white man and the red might have been avoided.

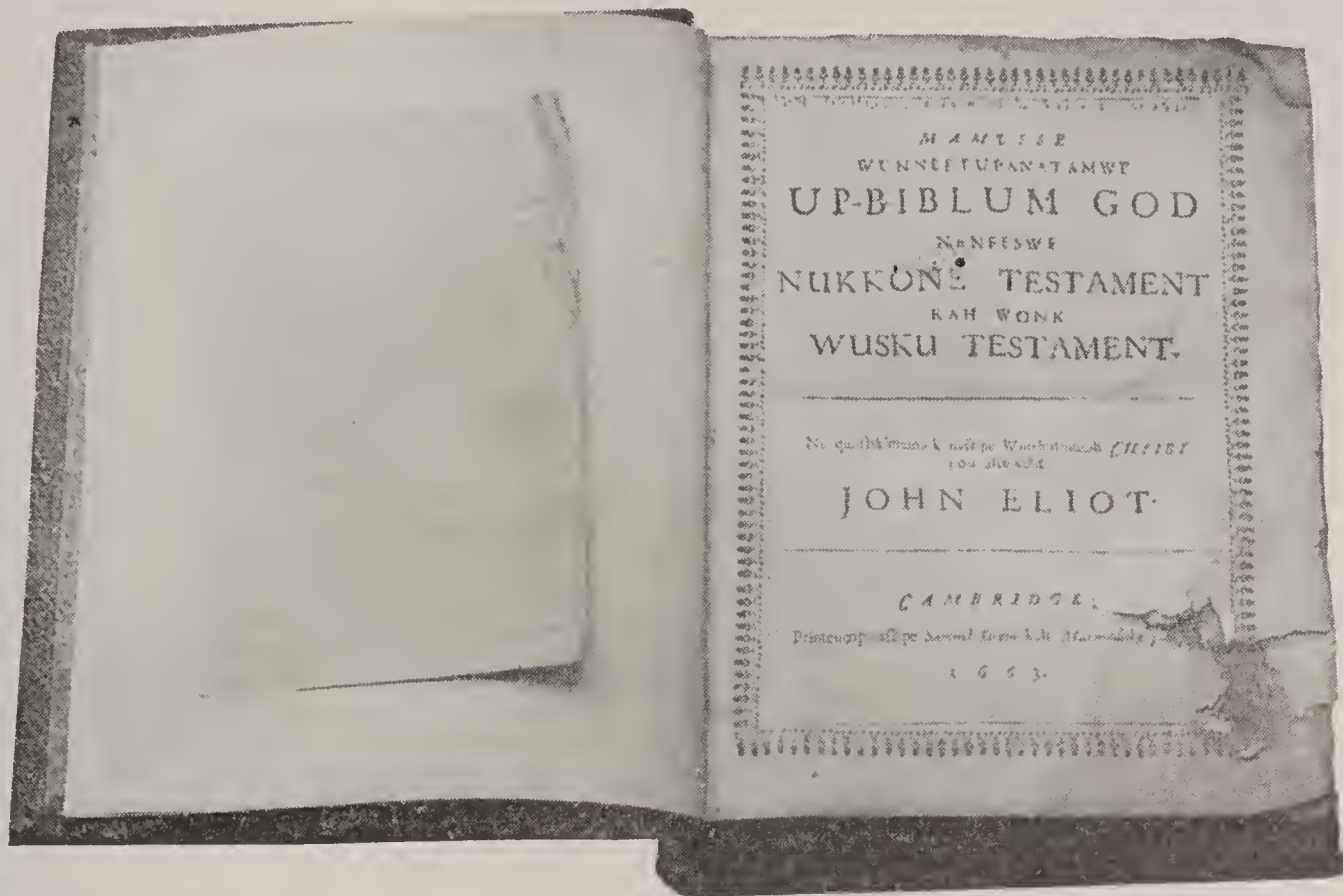
half of these colonists. Massachusetts, Connecticut, Carolina and Georgia were also concerned, for they too had sea-to-sea charters, and Quaker and German Pennsylvania saw with alarm, her long peace threatened from the rear.

Sounding the Alarm

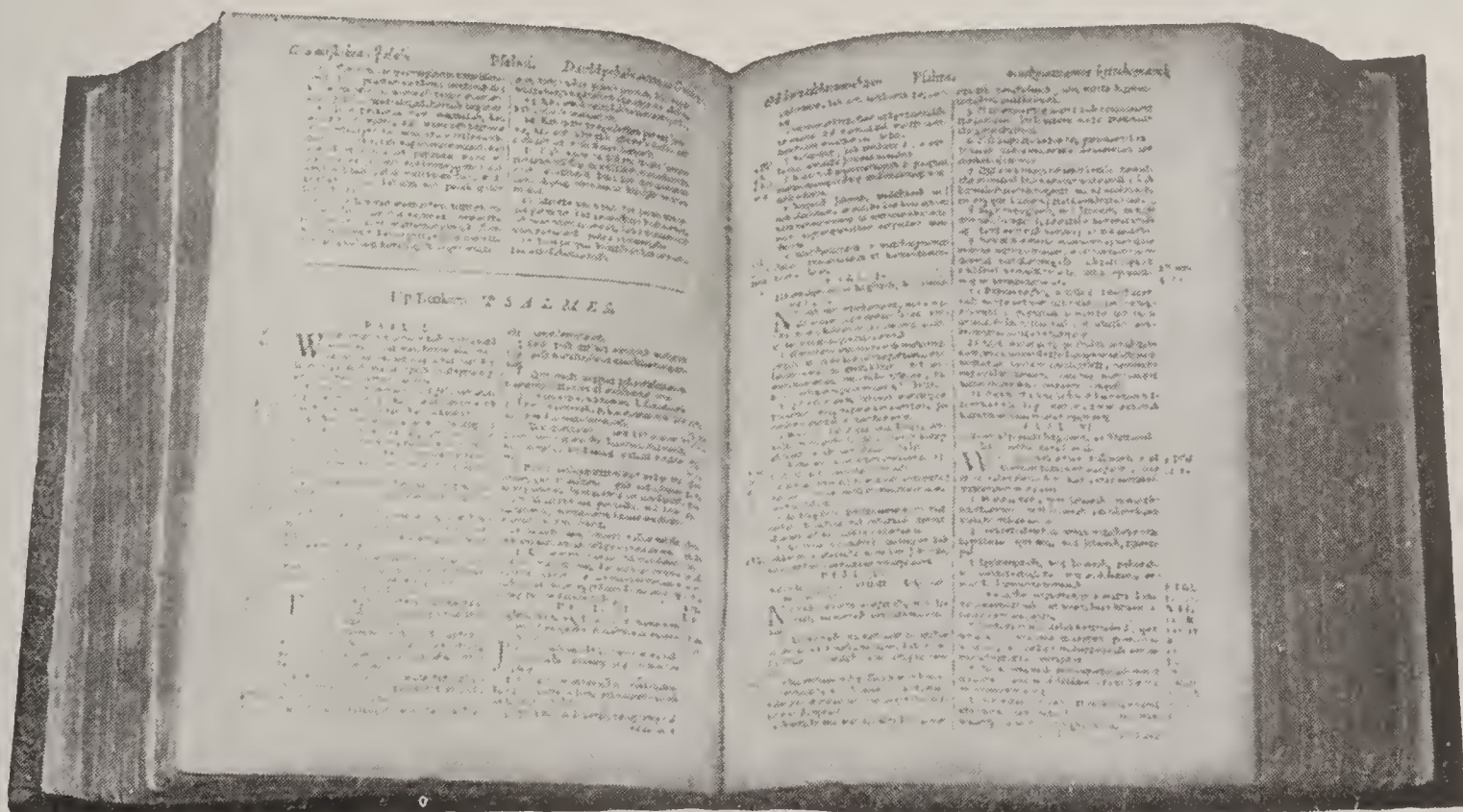
The call of all the colonies to unite in self-defense was first heard in 1754. The Iroquois Nations, ever on the watch for their English allies, sounded a warning. Benjamin Franklin, as editor of the *Philadelphia Gazette*, printed a crude cartoon of a snake cut in several pieces, with the motto: "Join or

Franklin's "Join or Die"

The First Bible Printed in America



The first Bible published in this country was John Eliot's translation of the gospel into the Indian tongue. It took him over ten years to accomplish this task for the words of the Indian language had never been reduced to writing, so besides learning the language, John Eliot had



to decide upon the letters which correctly expressed each sound. The title-page of this Bible is shown at the top. Literally translated, it reads, "The Whole Holy His-Bible, God, both Old Testament and Also New Testament. This turned by the-servant-of-Christ who is called John Eliot. Cambridge. Printed by Samuel Green and Marmaduke Johnson, 1663."

die." The first colonial convention ever held in America was called to meet in Albany. Seven colonies and the Iroquois Nations were represented. Here the terms "Congress" and

was chosen for this important and dangerous mission; but boys had to grow up early in those days of pressing needs and public duties. Since sixteen Washington had been in the

The Treaty with King Philip



This painting, the original of which hangs in Faneuil Hall, Boston, is by W. S. Savory, and commemorates a treaty made with the famous King Philip, chief Sachem of the Wampanoags, in what is known as "The Old Church" in Taunton, Mass., April 10, 1671. Treaties are usually made at the end of wars, but this treaty was made before King Philip's War began. Rumors had frequently reached the magistrates of Plymouth colony that Philip was meditating mischief. The men of Plymouth accordingly planned to attack him first, but as they could not get the other colonies to act with them, they decided to try persuasion, and so arranged a meeting with Philip at Taunton. The chief came with a number of his followers, said he was sorry for his past offenses, and signed the treaty in which he promised that his people should give up all fire-arms. It is now seen that this was a very unwise move on the part of the men of Plymouth, because it was an agreement that could not be enforced, and was a symptom of fear which had a bad effect on the Indians. At the end of three years from the day of the treaty, the Indians began a series of massacres which were a part of the horrible war that lasted until 1678.

"Continental Policy" were first used, no one dreaming of the stirring events to come that were to enlarge the meaning of those words.

Virginia failed to send a delegate. Perhaps she was too busy. Not waiting for "union," or for permission from London, this colony took matters into her own hands. Governor Dinwiddie sent George Washington with a letter to the commander of Fort Le Boeuf on the Allegheny, demanding that the French return to Canada.

It was a youth of twenty-one who

woods and mountains surveying wild land, living in the open, learning

The Youth Named Washington woodcraft and using Indians for guides. All the colonies had just

such young men on their frontiers, of good birth and education, training in the colonial militia, used to hardships, resourceful and experienced in Indian fighting. At nineteen Washington was a major in the Virginia militia.

Many of the earliest colonial leaders, Raleigh, Captain John Smith, Miles Standish, Stuyvesant and Van

A
B R I E F H I S T O R Y
O F T H E
W V A R R

With the *INDIANS* in
N E V V - E N G L A N D.

(From *June* 24, 1675. when the first English-man was murdered by the Indians, to *August* 12. 1676. when *Philip*, aliàs *Metacomet*, the principal Author and Beginner of the Warr, was slain.)

Wherein the Grounds, Beginning, and Progress of the Warr, is summarily expressed.

TOGETHER WITH A SERIOUS
E X H O R T A T I O N

to the Inhabitants of that Land,

By *INCREASE MATHER*, Teacher of a Church of Christ, in *Boston* in *New-England*.

Levit. 26. 25. *I will bring a Sword upon you, that shall avenge the quarrel of the Covenant.*

Psal. 107. 43. *Whoso is wise and will observe these things, even they shall understand the Loving-kindness of the Lord.*

Jer. 12. 15. *Did not thy Father doe Judgment and Justice, and it was well with him?*

Segnius irritant animos demissa per aures,
Quàm quæ sunt oculis commissa fidelibus. Horat.
Lege Historiam ne fias Historia. Cic.

B O S T O N, Printed and Sold by *John Foster* over
against the Sign of the *Dove*. 1 6 7 6.

This picture of the title page of Increase Mather's history of King Philip's War, tells its own story so well that little need be added. You will notice for yourself the peculiar spelling, the quaint type with its s's so much like the f's and the two V's used for a W in the larger letters, because the printing offices had a very small supply of types in those days.

Corlear, had served as officers in the army of the Dutch Republic, the wonder and admiration of Europe since its organization by Prince Maurice, and thousands of colonists of every nation had served there as private soldiers. The sons and grandsons of these first colonists never lost an opportunity to learn military tactics of any Dutch veteran who emigrated to America. Washington had Jacob Van Braam for a tutor. Of him he learned military engineering and strategy. And to these Old World scientific methods he added a knowledge of Indian fighting.

So it was as a commissioned officer, in the company of Christopher Gist, a famous frontiersman, that the young Virginian made the wild journey of three hundred miles, in mid-winter, to find the French in the wooded wilderness of north-western Pennsylvania. He brought back the refusal of the French to withdraw, and a little later led a colonial force up the Potomac to build Fort Necessity.

The War and Its Results

Your school text book gives a very full account of the campaigns and battles of the long war that followed. The French remained in their

forts and left it to colonials and British regulars to climb mountains, break through trackless forests ambushed by Indians, breast wild floods and navigate stormy coasts. In America the war ended with the fall of Quebec and Montreal, but, spreading to the Old World, and involving Spain as an ally of France, peace was not signed until 1763. And just as in the three royal wars that had gone before, the terms of peace were decided by

The Most Famous of All Indians



This is the most famous Indian America ever produced and he deserves his fame, so far as talent is concerned, for it was Pontiac who organized and directed the largest and most powerful combination of Indians in history. It is always difficult to get a number of different nations to work together, even among civilized people, with rapid means of communication as we have them today. Think then what skill in persuading and managing men this red orator, warrior, and statesman must have had to bring about that great combination known as "Pontiac's Conspiracy." It was an achievement so great that an entire work, "The Conspiracy of Pontiac," by Francis Parkman, has been devoted to it.

kings in Europe, without consulting the interests of the colonists. Yet, with very little help colonial troops had won Canada and Florida for Great Britain, and they had still another Indian war to fight before they could win their way across the Appalachians.

From the Alleghenies back to the east bank of the Mississippi River, was also ceded to England,

but this vast region was unconquered. From Mobile to Illinois no blow had been struck at any French fort. On orders from Paris the garrisons marched out, but French settlers, missionaries and fur traders remained in their villages, and from the Lakes to the Gulf the country swarmed with Algonquins and other tribes, who were unreconciled to this change of ownership and who burned to restore the country to their beloved friends, the French.

The Conspiracy of the Great Pontiac

Peace was no sooner signed than an Indian leader appeared in the person of Pontiac, Chief of the Ottawas, near Detroit.

Convinced that the English, having driven out the French, intended next to exterminate the red men, Pontiac set about the gigantic task of organizing all the tribes west of the mountains. The most gifted of all forest statesmen, Pontiac had a well-thought-out plan, and an eloquence that gathered every tribe from the Lakes to the Gulf under his banner.

He even won over the Natchez Indians, and the Senecas, one of the Iroquois Nations, who had always been enemies of the French.

He held the entire Mississippi Valley, and, within six months, had recaptured a number of the old French forts on the Great Lakes. The British garrisons and colonial troops got them back again and scattered the tribes, and Pontiac in the end was obliged to make a peace of unconditional submission (1765). Three years later he was brutally murdered by a drunken Indian.

England's Betrayal of Her Colonies

In 1763 the government in England issued a proclamation forbidding the

colonists to settle in any of the territory from the crest of the Alleghenies to the Mississippi River. The purpose was to keep this vast region for the Indians, in order to increase the profitable fur trade and also to prevent the colonists from becoming too strong and independent.

Do you see what that meant?

A Famous Indian Orator



Here you meet Sagoyewatha, chief of the Wolf tribe of the Senecas. Beside being a warrior he was famous as an orator. During the Revolution his people were aroused by his eloquence to fight for the British, but in the war of 1812 they fought with the Americans and from that time forward he was a friend. He was known as Red Jacket because toward the close of the Revolution, a British officer gave him a richly-embroidered, scarlet jacket of which he was very proud. He was then a young man and probably cared more for fine clothes than he did at the age when this picture was made of him. You notice on his breast he has a large medal. This was given to him by President Washington on the conclusion of peace with the Six Nations to which the Seneca's belonged. The figures were those of a white man and Indian clasping hands and beneath it were the names, "George Washington" and "Red Jacket."

England had secured the interests of her traders at the expense and to the peril of her own large and growing colonies, which now numbered two million people. Virginia had begun the war, and all the colonies had fought for nine years in defense of their sea-to-sea charters granted by English kings, and to secure themselves against attack. They had paid their own expenses, voting taxes and maintaining colonial militia. They had helped defeat and drive out the French, won half the continent for England, and all but broken the power of the Algonquins. Now, by this proclamation, their rights were denied, and the Indians firmly entrenched in their rear. More effectually than before, they were shut in on the narrow seaboard, forbidden to colonize or trade beyond the mountains.

Baffled and angry, the colonies seethed with discontent. In union they had found strength, proved their worth and power, and gained a spirit of independence. With France gone they need never again be involved in the quarrels of European kings. Against the Indians they had

always defended themselves, and would continue to do so. They had had no hand in making this proclamation and there was little disposition to submit to its unjust and even dangerous terms.

Black Hawk in American Dress



As a young man, Black Hawk was a fierce and sometimes cruel savage, in spite of the benevolent, kindly expression in his eyes as we see him here, an old man. He gained great influence over his people by his absolute honesty, his eloquence and great personal bravery. He was 5 feet 4 inches tall, had a full, rather large mouth, a high Roman nose, piercing, thoughtful eyes with very scanty eyebrows, and a high forehead which, as a young man, seemed higher still because he plucked out the hair almost to the top of his head, leaving only a scalp lock. This picture of him was painted when he was sent East as a captive to Fortress Monroe, and shows him in American dress and without the scalp lock. Notice the tattoo on his ear.

Further Acts of Injustice

Your history tells you how the English parliament next proceeded to pass trade laws for the colonies which seemed as tyrannous and blighting as those of Spain in Spanish America; to quarter an army of 10,000 British regulars on colonies that had no need of them, and, for the first time, to levy stamp duties and internal taxes for imperial purposes.

All these measures were bitterly resented and defied, and some of them were so impossible of enforcement that they were revoked. Any one of these things, alone, could probably have been dealt with without revolution. Taken together they seemed a denial of those rights as Englishmen, for which their forefathers had fought from Magna Charta to the Bill of Rights.

Emigration had begun to flow westward even before the war, for Massachusetts, Virginia and

eastern Pennsylvania were becoming crowded. Hardy English, German and Scotch-Irish emigrants had slowly fought their way to the mountain crest. Living the hard life of the frontier, remote from towns and courts, and obliged to rely upon themselves, they cared no more for a royal proclamation than for the bark of the timber

The Irresistible Westward Tide

wolf at their cabin doors in the wilderness. At the end of the war settlers began to pour down the Ohio into Kentucky, and through the Cumberland Gap into Tennessee. Wheeling, West Virginia, was founded in 1769, and in the same year Daniel Boone reached Kentucky. He soon had a fort at Boonesboro, and George Rogers Clark had another outpost at Harrodsburg. Every foot in the "dark and bloody ground" of Kentucky was won through horrid massacres, burnings, sieges and treacherous ambushes. And it became increasingly clear that the Indians were furnished arms at the British forts and trading posts at Detroit and Pittsburgh.

The Iroquois Six Nations, too, long allies of the English colonists, were learning to look upon their white neighbors with contempt and suspicion, and to the British government for friendship. They had been confirmed in their ownership of west-

ern New York colony by treaty with England; their spokesman was the Indian agent, Sir William Johnson, and their trade was transferred from Albany to Fort Niagara. By treaties, taking over the immensely profitable fur trade of the interior built up by the French, and by payment in arms, *England the Enemy of Her Colonies* the mother country won over all the Indians—Algonquins, Iroquois and Gulf tribes—in the eastern half of the United States. Thus, with incredible stupidity, and for her own temporary profit, she practically aided and abetted savage warfare against her own loyal colonists. Under an unintelligent king and a corrupt government in London, England had come to the same vicious view of her colonies as Spain, not as an empire, to be fostered and developed, but as an alien land and subject people, to be exploited.

But the people of the English colonies were not helpless and they did not propose to be submissive. It was in 1765, the year peace was signed with Pontiac and a British regiment marched across Illinois to Fort Chartres on the Mississippi, that Patrick Henry, voicing the resentment at England's latest acts of tyranny, raised the cry of revolution in the House of Burgesses of Virginia: "Taxation without representation is tyranny."

If You Had Been Otis What Would You Have Said?

The heavy duty laid by the English on all sugar and molasses imported from other than British possessions, worked a great hardship on the colonists. Think of trying to live without sugar and molasses! And people just couldn't afford them with the duty added.

As a result smuggling became common. To catch the smugglers, the customs officers took out search warrants. But here was the trouble: to secure the warrants it was necessary to state what goods they were searching for and the place to be searched. This gave the smugglers warning and they removed the goods. What the officers wanted was a general warrant, called a "writ of assistance," that would enable them to enter anybody's house or place of business at any time and examine any suspected goods. This sounds so reasonable, from the British standpoint, that we may well wonder what argument the colonists could offer against it. You could hardly expect to prevent violations of law if you first had to notify the violator so that he could hide all evidences of what he had been up to. But now, listen, and you will hear what a strong argument Otis is offering in this famous speech of his:

"This writ of assistance," he says, "is the worst instrument of arbitrary power, the most destructive of English liberty that

was ever found in an English law book. By this writ, officers may enter our homes when they please, break locks, bars, and everything in their way; and whether they break, through malice or revenge, no man, no court, can inquire." To prove this he goes on to cite, among others, the instance of a judge who called a customs officer before him to answer a charge of swearing on the Sabbath day. As soon as the judge had finished talking, the customs officer said, "Now I will show you a little of *my* power. I command you to permit me to search your house for uncustomed goods"; and went on to search the house from garret to cellar.

Otis defends his conduct in resigning his position as Advocate General, in which he would have been obliged to appear as a lawyer for the English Government. "Let the consequences be what they will," he says, "I am determined to proceed. The only principles of public conduct that are worthy of a gentleman or a man are to sacrifice estate, ease, health, and even life to the sacred call of his country. I do not say that when brought to the test I shall be invincible. I pray God," he adds, "I may never be brought to the melancholy trial, but if ever I should, it will then be known how far I can reduce to practice, principles which I know to be founded in truth."

Leaders of the Revolution



"This writ of assistance," he says, "is the worst instrument of arbitrary power, the most destructive of English liberty that was ever found in an English law book. By this writ officers may enter our homes when they please, break locks, bars, and everything in their way; and whether they break, through malice or revenge, no man, no court, can inquire."

IF you have read the articles on our government you know how many men, working in well-organized departments, it takes to attend to the business of the United States even in times of peace. During war there is a great deal more to do. What do you think would happen if there were no central authority to direct the defense of the country—if each of the forty-eight states was a little nation in itself? They would be about as easy to conquer as it was to break the separated sticks of the bundle in the fable. "In union there is strength." You know that from the teamwork necessary to win a football game.

But that was exactly the situation in the English colonies during the Revolutionary War. Under the same conditions Napoleon conquered, one by one, the several hundred separate states and free cities of Germany. And yet, the Americans won that war. You

think you know why. The colonies did unite and establish the Continental Congress to act for all. Yes, but that body of wise and patriotic men was simply advisory. It had no authority to vote taxes, coin or borrow money to carry on the war, and it had no power to compel any colony to furnish a single soldier or a single dollar. Each of the thirteen colonies de-

*Days of the
Ununited
States*

An English Cartoon of the Tea Tax Tempest



This Revolutionary cartoon was published in 1783 in London. It is called "The Tea Tax Tempest or Old Time with His Magick Lan-Thorn." Father Time, leaning on the world, is throwing a picture on the screen and is described as saying to the spectators, "There you see the little Hot Spit Fire Teapot that has done all The Mischief. There you see the Old British Lion basking before the American Bon Fire (the Revolution), whilst the French Cock is blowing up a storm About his ears to Destroy him and his young Whelps. There you see Miss America grasping at the Cap of Liberty. There you see The British forces, beyoked and cramped, flying before the Congress Men. There you see the thirteen Stripes and Rattlesnake (another American emblem) exalted. There you see the Stamped Paper Helping to make the Pot Boil."

cided for itself just what it could and should do. Washington, as Commander-in-Chief of the army, had fourteen masters and was obliged to beg each of them for men and supplies.

We won that war chiefly through good luck. We had three advantages to offset this fundamental weakness. First, after 1778, England was also at war with France, and could not spare her best officers and enough troops to put down rebellion in her colonies. Second, we should not forget the timely help in soldiers, warships and money from France, without which there would

have been no victory at Yorktown. But most important of all, perhaps, was the surprising number of men of very great ability and devoted patriotism who appeared and took the leadership. Wherever there was work to be done there was just the man to do it.

These leaders came from everywhere and in the nick of time—from the office, the plantation, the pulpit, the assembly hall, the counting house, the ship deck, the schoolroom of every colony. Dropping their private businesses and risking home, family, fortune, even life it-

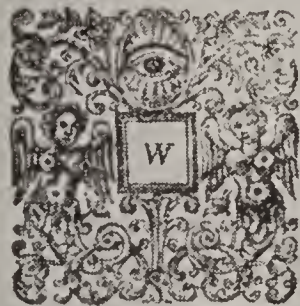
*A Time
of Great
Leaders*

King George and the "Rebels"



By the KING, A PROCLAMATION, For suppressing Rebellion and Sedition.

G E O R G E R.



HEREAS many of Our Subjects in divers Parts of Our Colonies and Plantations in *North America*, misled by dangerous and ill-designing Men, and forgetting the Allegiance which they owe to the Power that has protected and sustained them, after various disorderly Acts committed in Disturbance of the Publick Peace, to the Obstruction of lawful Commerce, and to the Oppression of Our loyal Subjects carrying on the same, have at length proceeded to an open and avowed Rebellion, by arraying themselves in hostile Manner to withstand the Execution of the Law, and traitorously preparing, ordering, and levying War against Us. And whereas there is Reason to apprehend that such Rebellion hath been much promoted and encouraged by the traitorous Correspondence, Counsels, and Comfort of divers wicked and desperate Persons within this Realm: To the End therefore that none of Our Subjects may neglect or violate their Duty through Ignorance thereof, or through any Doubt of the Protection which the Law will afford to their Loyalty and Zeal; We have thought fit, by and with the Advice of Our Privy Council, to issue this Our Royal Proclamation, hereby declaring that not only all Our Officers Civil and Military are obliged to exert their utmost Endeavours to suppress such Rebellion, and to bring the Traitors to Justice; but that all Our Subjects of this Realm and the Dominions thereunto belonging are bound by Law to be aiding and assisting in the Suppression of such Rebellion, and to disclose and make known all traitorous Conspiracies and Attempts against Us, Our Crown and Dignity; And We do accordingly strictly charge and command all Our Officers as well Civil as Military, and all other Our obedient and loyal Subjects, to use their utmost Endeavours to withstand and suppress such Rebellion, and to disclose and make known all Treasons and traitorous Conspiracies which they shall know to be against Us, Our Crown and Dignity; and for that Purpose, that they transmit to One of Our Principal Secretaries of State, or other proper Officer, due and full Information of all Persons who shall be found carrying on Correspondence with, or in any Manner or Degree aiding or abetting the Persons now in open Arms and Rebellion against Our Government within any of Our Colonies and Plantations in *North America*, in order to bring to condign Punishment the Authors, Perpetrators, and Abettors of such traitorous Designs.

Given at Our Court at St. James's, the Twenty-third Day of *August*, One thousand seven hundred and seventy-five, in the Fifteenth Year of Our Reign.

God save the King.

L O N D O N:

Printed by *Charles Eyre* and *William Strahan*, Printers to the King's most Excellent Majesty. 1775.

If you had been a small boy in the time of the Revolution, you would have seen proclamations like this with the royal coat-of-arms above them posted about in public places. As you see by the date at the bottom, it was issued on the 23rd of August. The colonies had not yet declared their independence, but the war which won their independence was already under way. The battle of Lexington had been fought in the previous May and the battle of Bunker Hill, in June. But the prospect of winning in the war against the most powerful empire in the world was more than doubtful, and the king hoped, as you see by the wording of this proclamation, to draw away from the colonists the support of all who were lukewarm in their resistance or selfish enough to consult their own safety in preference to the interests of their country.

The Battle-Torn Flag and the Story of the Thirteen Stripes



This is the only one of the flags carried in the Revolution that has come down to us. It was the flag of the Third Maryland Regiment, and can be seen today in the flag room at the Capitol in Annapolis. The holes were made by bullets.

No one knows who designed our flag—one of the most striking and original in pattern of all the flags in the world—but it has been suggested that it was derived from the crest of the Washington family which consisted of red stars and bars on a white ground. When the Revolution began there were almost as many flags as there were colonies, and it was not until 1777 that Congress adopted the flag shown here as the national emblem. Then for forty years a new stripe as well as a new star was added for every state that came into the Union. But finally, when the flag showed twenty stripes and twenty stars, Congress decreed that we return to the original thirteen stripes, thus recognizing the fact that we began our life as a nation with thirteen states; but it was decided to keep on adding a new star for every new state. How many stars does our flag have now?

self, they gave every thought, every hour of time, every dollar, every talent they possessed to the sacred cause of human liberty. Your his-

tory tells you of the battles of the Revolution, so we will tell you of the heroic, devoted, and gifted men whose wise leadership won the war.

Patrick Henry, the Orator

BEFORE any great human conflict there is apt to appear an inspired public speaker to clarify the thought of the time and to inflame a whole people into action. Preceding the Civil War Lincoln put the moral issue of the day into burning speech. So, ten years before the Revolution, immediately after the passage of the Stamp Act by the British Parliament, Patrick Henry aroused the determined resistance of the colonies with his eloquence. His "Taxation without representation is tyranny," was based solidly on English principles, and was unanswerable.

The first one of the four American political orators of the first rank, classed with Lincoln, Webster and Clay, Patrick Henry was unknown outside Virginia before he made his first speech in the Virginia House of Burgesses. A young lawyer of Scotch parentage and classical education, he had failed at farming and storekeeping before winning success at the bar. He was only twenty-nine and had been a silent member of the House of Burgesses just nine days when he rose quietly to

*Patrick
Henry's Im-
mortal Speech*

Where the Revolution Began



The picture shows a group of the minute men at the Battle of Lexington, and from it you can judge how disorderly their formation was and how they were dressed—just as they came from work, with no attempt at a uniform. At the left of the picture, two men are loading their muskets which are the old-fashioned muzzle-loading kind, of course. And notice the powder horn which each man carries, slung over his shoulder.

offer a series of resolutions defining the rights of a colony, and to declare that the recent Stamp Act was a denial of English guarantees of liberty. Burning with indignation, as were many of his listeners, he cried: "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I his Cromwell, and George III——"

"Treason! Treason!" came from many parts of the hall. The speaker turned pale, but, leaning over his desk, he went on firmly to men on their feet and shocked to dead silence: "and George III may well profit by their example. If *this* be treason, make the most of it. Taxation without representation is tyranny."

A shout went up. This was a bold, brave man. He had put the secret thought of all into words, risking ruin in defense of the liberty of all. It would be base and cowardly to desert him. He inflamed

not only Virginia but all the colonies to resistance, and that Stamp Act was repealed. For the next ten years of oppression, disorders and efforts to avoid war, Henry was the eloquent spokesman of the rights and the defiance of the colonies. His genius as an orator has been attested by every eminent man of the time. His power lay not only in his happy phrases and eloquent delivery, but in his sincerity. Like Lincoln, he said nothing that he did not passionately believe to be true. A profound thinker, a man of great executive ability and energy, and of spotless character, it has been said of him that his talents would have put him at the head of Rome in her days of glory.

For, behind his words was a man of solid deeds and sober service. In the midst of revolution he organized the colony of Virginia and served as its first governor for five

years. He was a leader in the movement for independence, and, by sending George Rogers Clark to capture the British forts northwest of the Ohio, he helped to secure the Mississippi River as our western boundary. Sacrificing a

private practice to public duty he was constantly in some drudging, ill-paid or unpaid, office for twenty-six years. He died comparatively poor, in 1791, two years after George Washington was inaugurated President of the United States.

Benjamin Franklin, the Diplomat

NONE of the colonies wanted war, or dreamed of separating from the mother country. For ten long years they tried to secure justice and keep the peace. To this service was devoted the most gifted and admired American ever sent to represent our country in European capitals. It is accepted by historians that, where Franklin failed, no one else could possibly have succeeded.

Born in Boston in 1706 of Puritan parents and intended for the pulpit, there was no money for his education, so he was apprenticed to the printing trade. An unruly boy, sarcastic, disputatious, vain and resenting control, he ended by running away from home. At seventeen he found himself in Philadelphia, with one dollar, a trade, plenty of self-confidence and a sudden conviction that he had very serious faults of character. He promptly turned over a new leaf, and was ever afterwards noted for his patience and good manners. By twenty-three he was the foremost journalist in the colonies. His weekly *Pennsylvania Gazette* still lives in *The Many-Sided Franklin*. *The Saturday Evening Post*. His wise and witty "Poor Richard's Almanac" was known in every frontier cabin. With incredible rapidity he accumulated wealth and learning. He studied the French, Spanish and Latin languages and literature, was deeply read in philosophy, and experi-

mented in science and invention. He kept the earliest weather records and made important discoveries in electricity.

Big and little things alike interested him. He organized police and fire departments, introduced street lighting and paving, built an academy of science, and collected books for a circulating library. A patriot of civil life, nothing was done without consulting Dr. Franklin. In 1757 he was sent to London by Pennsylvania to get more help for the colonies in the French and Indian War. He went again in 1764 when the first rumor of the intended Stamp Act reached America. A year later he was representing all the colonies. For the next ten years, with unfailing patience and urbanity, he presented the American view that the colonies were and must be self-governing. His wit and humor, his honesty, practical common sense, moral courage, very profound learning and open-mindedness made him famous. A self-educated man, he was given degrees by Oxford and Edinburgh Universities.

On the outbreak of the war he returned from England to help frame the Declaration of Independence. He gave the Continental Congress \$20,000 out of his own pocket, and then went to Paris to win the friendship of France. There he represented only poor and struggling rebel col-

His Great Work in France

Franklin at the Court of France



Franklin was sent to France right after the signing of the Declaration of Independence and did a great deal in behalf of our new republic. France was especially sympathetic, because England was at that time her traditional enemy, and because liberty and republicanism were the topics of the day, at court and among the common people. (It was not long after our own Revolution, you remember, that the great French Revolution began, affecting every nation in Europe.) In the picture we see the great ladies of the French court vying with each other to do honor to the simple American citizen in his plain clothes, which are so different from those of the other men present. Notice how he is the center of interest for everyone in the room. The gorgeous hangings and furniture, the rich dresses with their huge skirts, and the elaborate powdered coiffures of both men and women are typical of the French court of Louis XVI.

Franklin's clothes were usually a somber brown, instead of the gaily colored, richly embroidered things that were fashionable. But so popular was this wise old man that others copied him. Gentlemen began to wear "Franklin" hats, and ladies had gloves, shoes, and dresses of "Franklin" brown.

onies, but prince and peasant and the world of learning were at his feet. He was the first great commoner representing a sovereign people. His simple dress became the fashion; his portrait was in palace and cottage; shopkeepers rushed to their doors to see him pass by. We are proud to think that, in mind, character, democratic manner and versatile genius he has become the typical American. In fifteen months he had signed the Treaty of Alliance, got warships and soldiers and an enormous loan of money on almost no security.

When, in 1785, he returned home he had spent nearly thirty years abroad in the service of America. Nearly eighty years of age, he

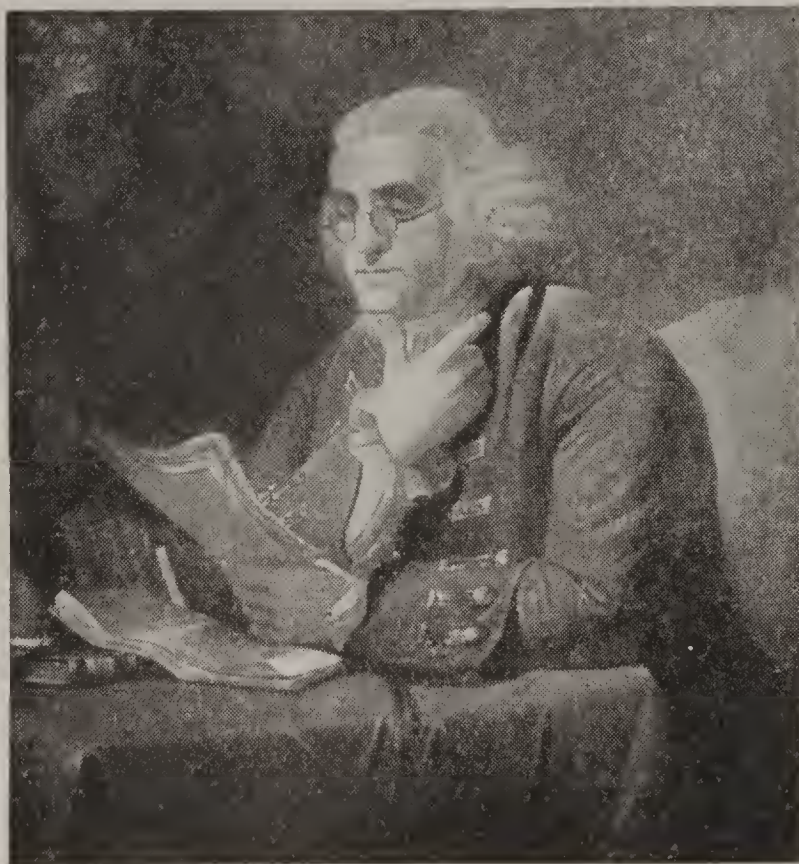
begged for rest. But he helped frame the Constitution, and established the United States Postal Service. In 1790 he helped to form the first society to abolish slavery. This brings him into touch with Lincoln's work of seventy years later. Indeed, Franklin is the one man of early American history who projects himself into the present. Our every improvement would delight him. Were he living now men would "consult Dr. Franklin" in the fields of science, philosophy, literature, and public service. No one feared to go to him for he listened with deference to the humblest, and respected their opinions. This, no less than his wisdom, was the secret of his immense influence. Every vain, ar-

guing, bump-tious boy who finds himself unpopular should read

This is one of the best portraits of Dr. Franklin ever taken. It is known as "The Thumb Portrait." You can see why. Dr. Franklin is here shown in his library looking over some manuscript. This attitude was very common with him when absorbed. The portrait was painted by David Martin in 1767 and is now owned by Henry William Biddle of Philadelphia.

His books were one of his chief sources of happiness throughout his long and useful life. It is said that he had the largest and best private collection in America. In the use of his library, he showed the same ingenuity as in other things. For instance he had a long artificial arm and hand for taking down and putting up books on high shelves. Under the seat of a reclining chair he had steps made, so

Franklin's Happy Hours in His Library



Franklin's autobiography and, as Franklin did, mend his manners.

that when he wanted to reach books on high shelves, he simply turned up the seat and climbed the steps. His great arm chair with rockers had a large fan over it with which he fanned himself and kept off the flies by a slight motion of his foot while reading. That was before the days of screens, remember.

In his last illness, when able to be out of bed, he passed nearly all his time in the library reading and writing. When the boys were playing and were very noisy in the lot in front of his room, he would open the window and call to them, "Boys, boys, can't you play without making so much noise? I am reading and it disturbs me very much." The servants in his family testify that he never used a harsh or hasty word to any one.

Washington, the Commander-in-Chief

FOR the highest military leadership the colonies had just one man—Washington. It is fortunate that they had the good sense to know it. Patriots there were, able officers and a few brilliant generals, but no one else worthy of such honor and confidence. Frederick the Great called Washington one of the greatest military geniuses that ever lived. And this was not because of the battles he won. General Gates won the decisive victory at Saratoga; Generals Marion and Greene cleared the South of British troops and drove them into the trap at Yorktown. Washington was defeated at Long Island and at Brandywine.

His genius lay in avoiding battle; in shutting the enemy up in Boston and New York; in escapes, surprise attacks, as at Trenton and Princeton, in strategy, engineering, swift decision, and in keeping an army to-

gether for eight long years ready for the finishing stroke at Yorktown. He not only had fourteen masters in the several colonies and the Continental Congress, but he had to contend with dissension, treason, failure of men and supplies and short and irregular terms of enlistment by which his armies were scarcely trained before they began to melt away. The record was crowned by the terrible winter at Valley Forge—the misery of his men; the delays of a fugitive Congress; the treachery and plots which encompassed him, the growing weariness of the long, slow, indecisive war. It is there, in the darkest hours, that we see him going into the woods to pray for help. He did all by sheer force and nobility of character. Like Lincoln, the man himself was infinitely greater than

any and all the things recorded of him.

To understand him you should read the story of his mother and his boyhood in this book. As a boy his elder brother, Lawrence, got him an appointment as a midddy in the British Navy, but his widowed mother refused to let him go to sea.

"But," insisted Lawrence, "George has it in him to be a great commander."

"He must first learn to command himself," she said, dryly. Like herself he had a hot, imperious temper.

You can learn there how this wise mother trained him in self-control. At twenty-one such was his reputation for trustworthiness and discre-

His First Victory Over Himself tion that he was chosen to carry a message to the French on the Allegheny. And at the end of the war he was too confused to speak when the Virginia House of Burgesses voted thanks to him for distinguished military services. The Governor said:

"Sit down, Colonel Washington. Your modesty equals your valor, and that is beyond question."

And beyond question, no other man was thought of, when the Revolution began, to command the army of 17,000 untrained, ill-equipped

troops gathered at Boston. Still modest, he doubted his fitness for the task. But he did not hesitate an instant, although, one of the richest

A Drum Beat Heard Around the World



This old drum has played a very important part in the history of liberty in America, and so throughout the world. It helped to inspire the colonists to make their heroic defense at the battle of Bunker Hill and now has an honored place among the historic relics in the collection of the Ancient and Honorable Artillery Company of Boston.

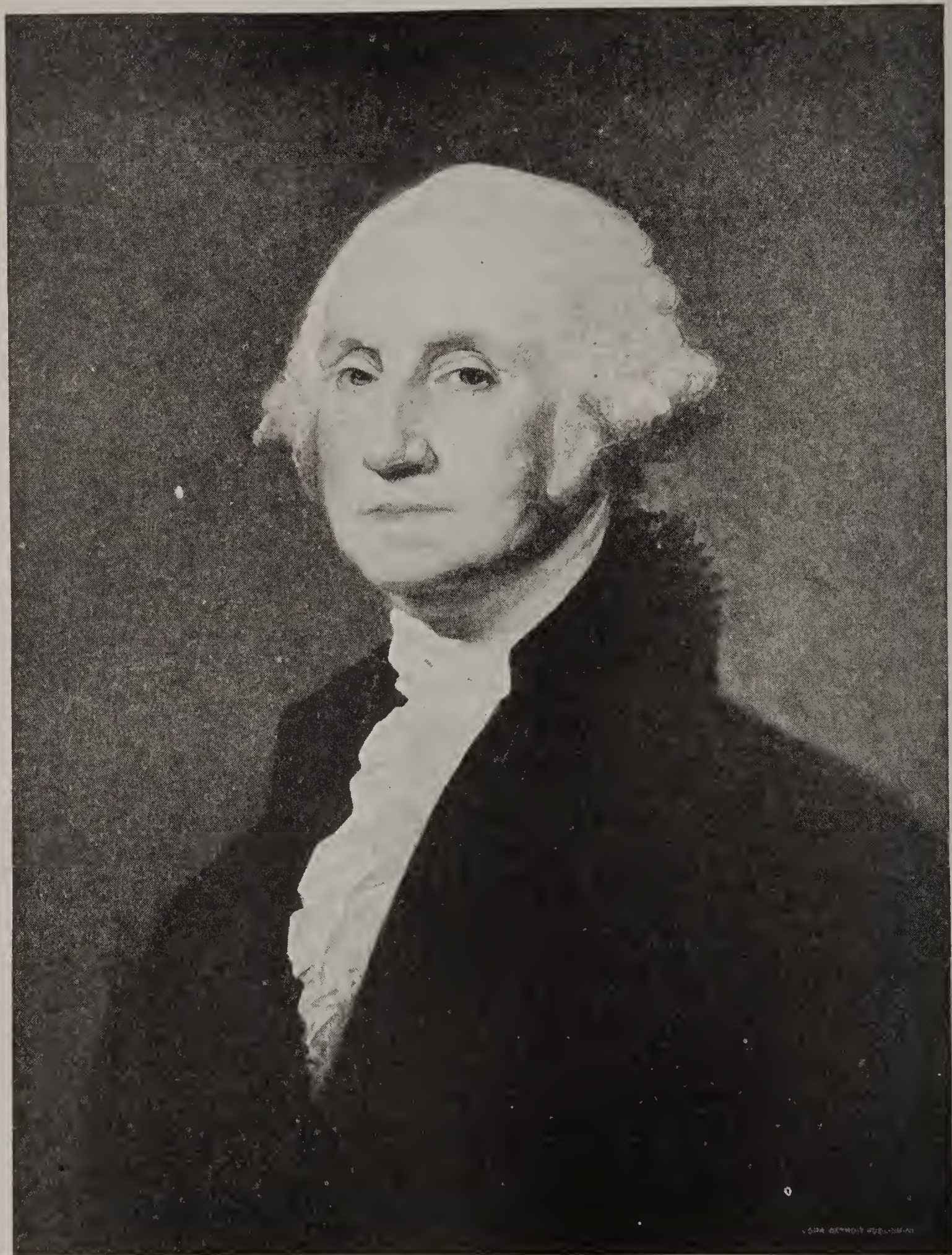
of planters; he risked his own and his wife's estates. And if the Revolution had failed, he would certainly have been executed, and probably along with him, Franklin and other leaders. He served without pay and spent \$70,000, the income from Mt. Vernon, to meet his own expenses. He thought nothing of rewards or honors, but only of duty well

done. In perfect patience he bided his time for the swift surprise march and blow at Yorktown.

The King Who Refused a Crown

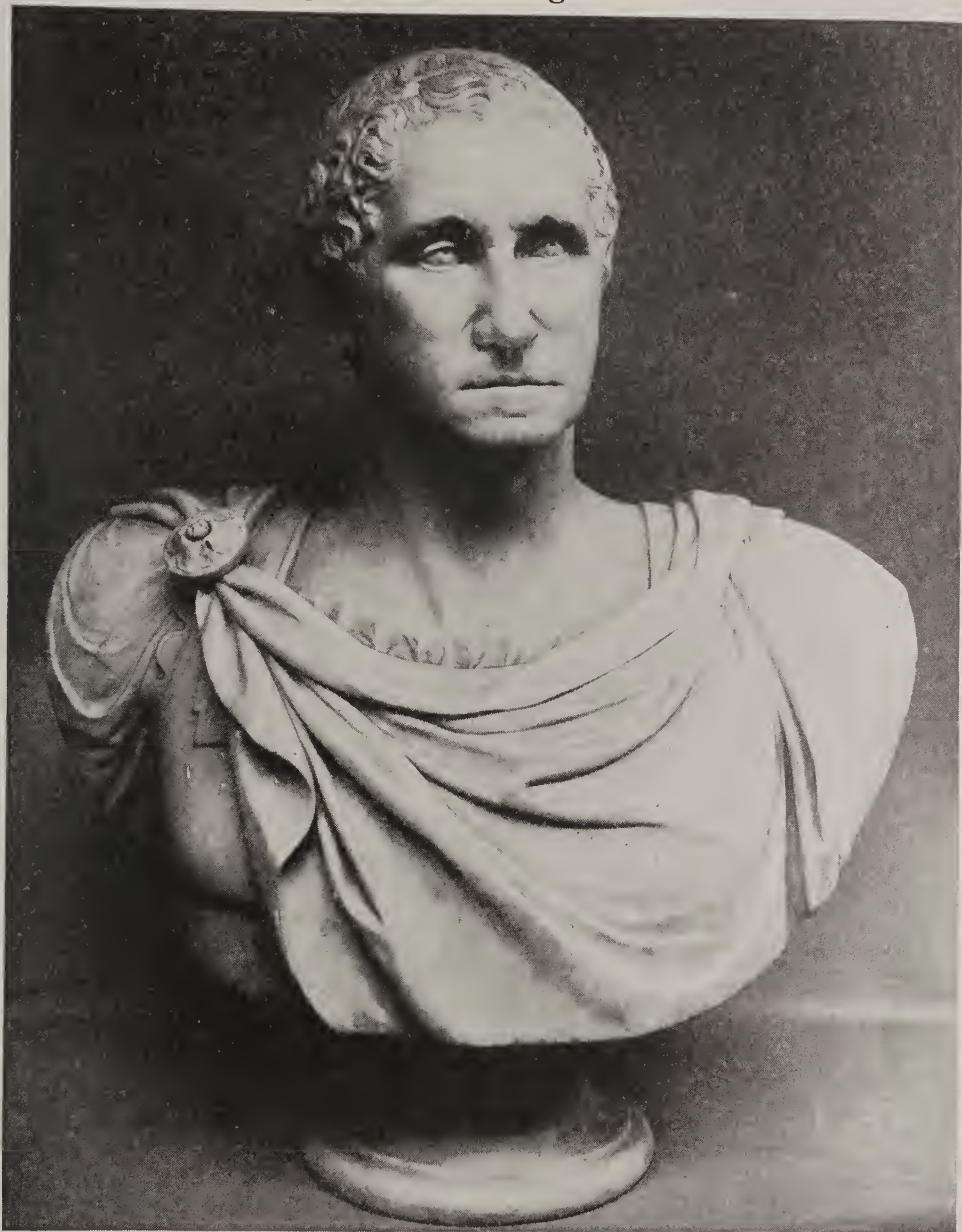
At the end of the war he was the court of last appeal in the six years' work of framing and adopting the Constitution. His canonization began long before his death. He could have made this country a monarchy and worn a crown. And in appearance he was every inch a king. Six feet two in height, his eyes were blue, his hair red-brown, his complexion ruddy, his aspect one of the greatest dignity and nobility. His manner was controlled, his speech brief and well-considered. Enormous weight was attached to his few words. His farewell address is one

Washington as He Was



This is the famous Stuart portrait of Washington, sometimes called the "Athenaeum Washington," because it originally belonged to the Boston Athenaeum. It is now in the Boston Museum of Fine Arts. Here is the same Washington, the same firm mouth and chin, the same imperious nose as in the bust by the Italian artist, but how different the expression! Here we have the man as he really was, the man who commanded himself as well as others; who was willing to sacrifice and suffer all for his country's sake in the long struggle of the war, to which we owe the fact that we have this great, free country; who won at last by the nobility of his character no less than by the strength of his intellect, and who, in his darkest hours, went into the woods to ask the help of God. "Like Lincoln, the man himself was infinitely greater than any and all things recorded of him."

Washington as He Might Have Been



This bust of Washington in the Metropolitan Museum of New York, to which we are indebted for the excellent reproduction, has a remarkable interest in the fact that it shows the great man, not as he was but as he might have been. It is the work of the Italian sculptor, Ceracchi, who came to this country during Washington's administration and made marble portraits of several of our famous men. Perhaps it was because the artist himself was of Roman blood that he unconsciously brought out in such a striking way, the sterner aspects of Washington's character. The classic toga, is, of course, a mere artistic convention, but the face is not that of a man who would sacrifice and endure all for the good of others, as Washington did. It is the face of a Roman conqueror; a military dictator, as Washington could easily have been, had not the noble character which went with his strong face, made him choose to be the Father of his Country.

None of the Roman tyrants who ruled the world with an iron hand ever had a more imperious will, and Frederick the Great, as this history story tells us, ranked him among the greatest of military leaders; but Washington chose to use all his strength of mind and will to serve and not to enslave his country.

The First Salute to the Stars and Stripes



This picture was painted by the American artist, Edward Moran, and shows us the rolling, pitching Ranger, John Paul Jones's first ship, rigged for foul weather, being saluted by the guns of a French flagship.

Before John Paul Jones got the famous Bonhomme Richard from the French government, he had this little, badly equipped vessel, the Ranger, with which he scoured the seas and became the terror of the English. In February, 1788, he came upon a small squadron of the French fleet near the coast of France. The Ranger was gaily flying the stars and stripes which had just recently been adopted as the American national emblem. John Paul Jones sent a messenger to the commander of the French squadron, asking if he would return a salute from the American guns. (Saluting a ship means recognizing the flag it carries, you know. By most nations American fighting vessels were considered pirates and hence unworthy of recognition.) The French commander, of course, was friendly to the American cause as France was also at war with England. He replied that he would return John Paul Jones's salute, so the thirteen little guns of the Ranger fired their heaviest charge in greeting to the Frenchmen. The picture shows the big French flagship in the background at the left, answering with her heavier guns. At this moment John Paul Jones was remarking to his officers, "We hardly know what this means, gentlemen. I believe that we are at the christening of the greatest nation that was ever born into the world."

of the treasured utterances of history. The office of President was cut to the measure of his lofty character. That is why but one other man—Lincoln—has seemed quite to fill the

place. John Richard Green, the English historian, has said of him: "Washington is the noblest figure that ever stood in the forefront of a nation's life."

The Father of the American Navy

AMONG the first men to offer their services in the Revolution was one of the naval geniuses of the world's history. As John Paul he had been born in the little port of Kirkbean, Scotland, twenty-eight years before, the son of a poor fisherman. At fourteen, tall, strong, and as skilled in handling a boat as any man, he shipped as a sailor in a vessel in the Virginia tobacco trade. Thus he came to America, and saw his elder

brother William, who had been adopted by a distant kinsman and rich planter named Jones. Adoption was offered young John, but this he refused, for he loved the hard, adventurous life of the sea.

At seventeen he was a captain, and at twenty-five knew as much of seamanship as any admiral in His Majesty's navy. Besides he had educated himself, on shipboard, in languages, history, philosophy and

polite literature, and in every port he had cultivated the society of leading men. Then, by the death of Mr. Jones, and of his brother, John Paul fell heir to the estate of three thousand acres of tobacco land on the Rappahannock, a mansion, hundreds of slaves, and the name of Jones. Virginia society welcomed him for his handsome person, fine mind and courtly manners. But the life of ease and social pleasure was very little to his liking. At the outbreak of the Revolution he put his estate in the hands of trustees and offered his services to the Continental Congress, to help build up a navy.

It was he, chiefly, who induced each colony to build a warship, and to buy and outfit trading vessels. As lieutenant on one of eight cruisers soon assembled at Philadelphia, he raised the pine tree and rattlesnake flag. Then, in the first American man-of-war to put out to sea, he slipped down the Delaware and began his spectacular career of raiding British commerce. In the course of the war America lost twenty-four of its thirty naval vessels, but they sank or captured one hundred and two ships of the enemy, and no other commander was so bold or successful as John Paul Jones.

Crossing the Atlantic in the *Ranger*, and entering the Irish Sea, he destroyed ships, burned a seaport, and took an armed schooner as a prize to France. In the *Bonhomme Richard* he captured the *Serapis* in one of the most brilliant of naval victories. Lashing his sinking ship to the enemy he boarded it and then cut his own vessel

loose. For this he was made a Chevalier of France. America could only vote him thanks and a gold medal. The young republic had no navy and no money to build one. The title of admiral would have been but an empty honor.

Conscious of his genius, loving his hard-earned fame, he could be content with no other employment. For a time he served as an admiral in the Russian navy. But his heart was with people struggling for liberty. At the beginning of the French Revolution he hastened to Paris to offer his services. There he died in 1792, a week after being offered the command of the navy of the new French Republic. Only forty-five when he died, Napoleon deplored his untimely end, saying that, had he lived France would have had an admiral worthy to meet Nelson.

He did not end his days in poverty and neglect, as was so long believed, for he had sold his Virginia plantation for \$50,000, and lived on the income of good investments. And he had, in Paris, his circle of devoted friends. His body was placed in a lead coffin to be shipped to America, but in the confused days of *The Terror* it was hurried into an unmarked grave. The coffin was found in 1905, and brought home in a United States warship. With all the honors of an admiral, John Paul Jones was laid away in the grounds of the Naval Academy at Annapolis. After a strange, adventurous, wandering life:

"Home is our sailor, home from the sea."

The Author of the Immortal Declaration

Among the spectators in the Virginia House of Burgesses, when Patrick Henry made his first fiery speech, was the twenty-year-old son of a planter, who was in Williamsburg, the capital, studying law. When an old man, and one risen to loftier fame than the orator of the Revolution, Thomas Jefferson loved to speak of that thrilling memory. He often said: "Patrick Henry was the greatest orator who ever lived."

Possibly that speech was the turning point in his own career. A few years later he was himself in the House of Burgesses, and had written a pamphlet on "The Rights of America" that made him known outside of Virginia. He entered the public service with the same tireless zeal that had won him the title of "the hardest student ever in William and Mary College." There he had often studied fifteen hours a day. On the very day that Washington took command of the army at Cambridge, Jefferson took his seat in the Continental Congress. Earnest, diligent, prompt, explicit, decisive in committee work, he very quickly became one of the leaders, although he was but thirty-two.

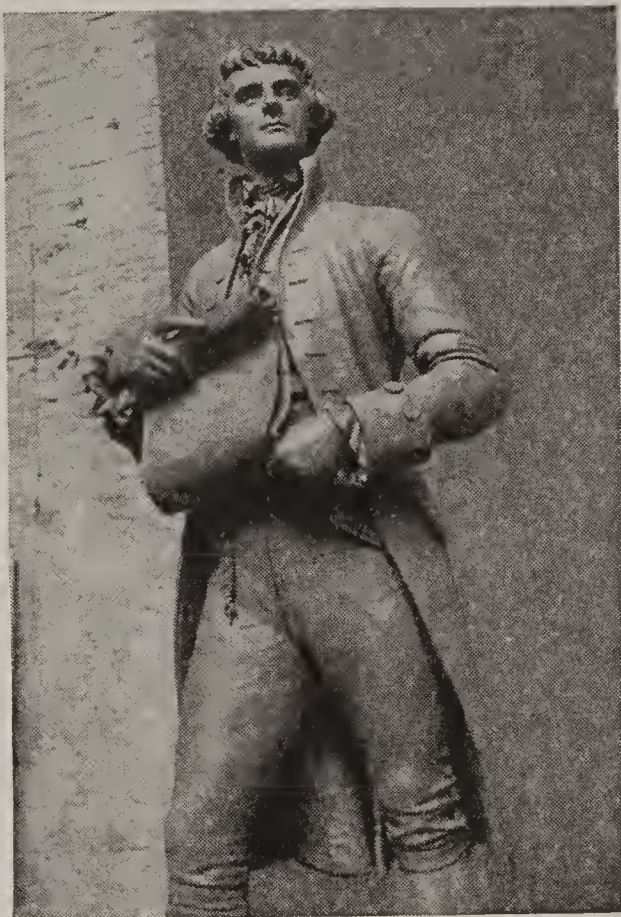
In person Jefferson, like Washington, was over six feet tall, and very erect. His features were deli-

cate, his eyes a bright hazel, his hair auburn, his complexion ruddy. He had an air of distinction, but his manners were so simple and democratic that he was popular with all

classes. In birth, fortune, intellect and social connections he was an aristocrat, but he was a life-long apostle of democracy. His natural sympathies and his political principles were summed up in his immortal phrase: "All men are created free and equal." Even in the White House he would have no ceremony which smacked of kings and royal courts. "Jeffersonian simplicity" has become one of the small coins of speech.

Jefferson was one of a committee of five, which included Franklin and John Adams, to draft the Declaration of Independence, but such was his gift for putting things clearly and vigorously in writing, that he was left to work it out alone. Very few changes were made in his wording. It is, without doubt, the most noted and influential political document ever written. In its clear and fundamental treatment, in its eloquent declaration of the rights of man, it clarified, developed and united the thought and spirit of the colonists, dismembered an empire, destroyed age-old privileges, found-

Reading the Declaration



In our story of the origin of the great political parties is another portrait of Jefferson, painted when he was fifty-seven years old. Compare it with this statue which represents him as reading the Declaration of Independence. "In person, Jefferson, like Washington, was over six feet tall and very erect."

ed a new nation on principles of liberty and equality, and furnished a model for every people since who have struggled for the right of self-government.

Living until 1826, more than a quarter of a century after Washington and Franklin passed from the stage, Jefferson was long the most distinguished man in America, and known as "The Sage of Monticello." He succeeded Franklin as Minister to France, served in Washington's Cabinet, and was twice elected Presi-

dent. He purchased Louisiana and sent explorers overland to the Pacific. But all other services he counted as nothing beside the immortal Declaration. On the plain granite shaft which marks his resting place on his old estate at Monticello is cut the simple inscription:

THOMAS JEFFERSON
AUTHOR OF
THE DECLARATION OF
INDEPENDENCE.

Robert Morris, the Financier

SEVERAL times in the course of the Revolutionary War Washington's army almost went to pieces for lack of money to feed, clothe and pay the soldiers. The Continental Congress had no power to levy taxes, coin or borrow money. It did issue bills of credit to pay for supplies, loan office certificates, promissory notes and lottery tickets, all of which were so worthless that the phrase "not worth a Continental" still lives. France loaned us money on practically no security, and guaranteed a loan from Holland. Each colony issued its own money, chiefly paper notes, which had little or no value, and most of the colonies failed or were really unable to pay their share of the general expenses.

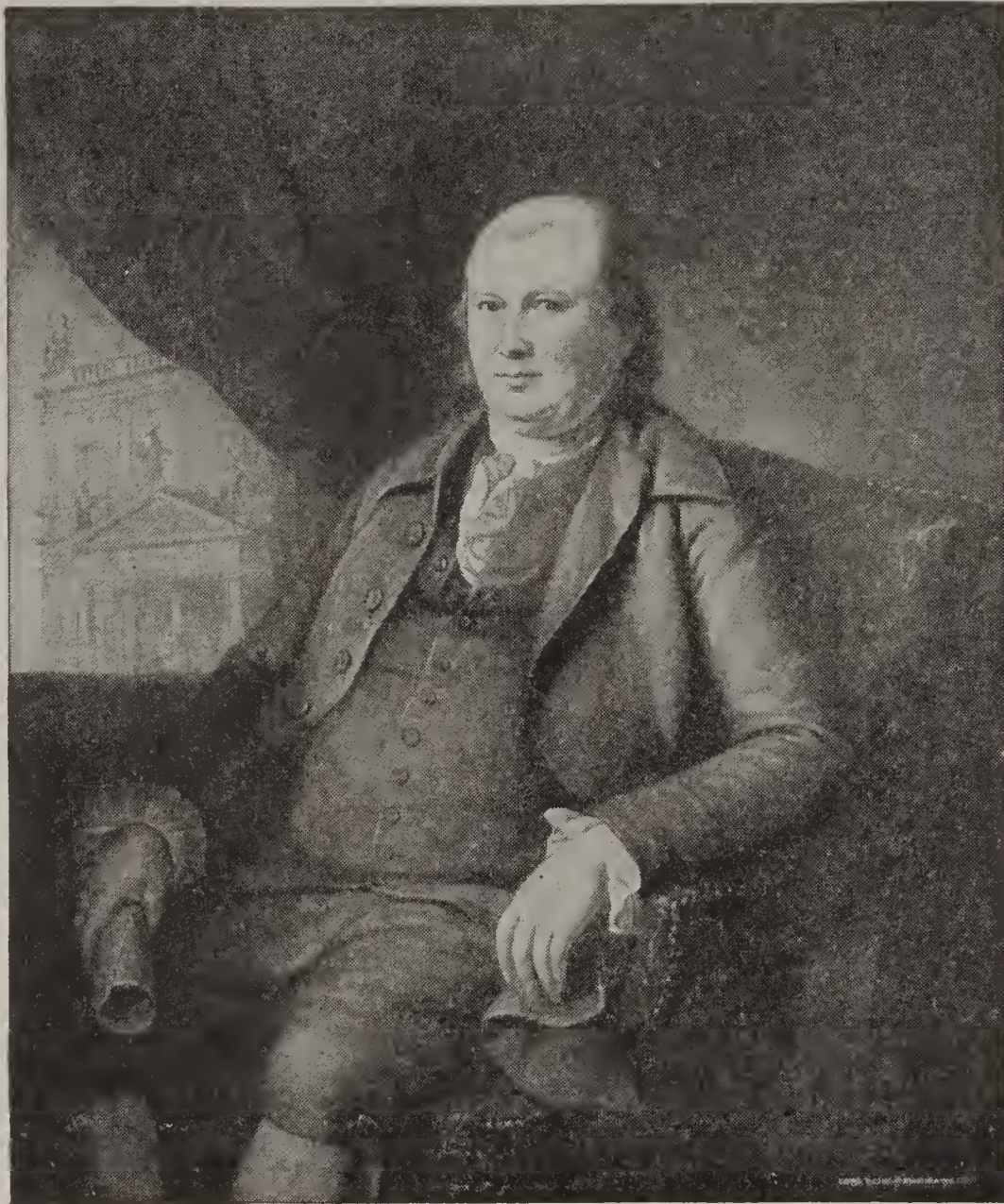
The office of financial manager for the Continental Congress was entrusted to Robert Morris, of Philadelphia. An English immigrant boy of thirty years before, he had risen to wealth and influence in banking, and was one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. And not a soldier in the field defended his country with greater zeal, or was willing to sacrifice more in

the cause than this colonial financier. Often, in emergencies, he supplied Washington's army from his own pocket. On two occasions he saved the Revolution from failure by his timely help.

Every history tells you how, on Christmas night, 1777, Washington crossed the Delaware, and captured a thousand Hessians at Trenton. His army, starving and freezing and leaving their bloody footprints in the snow, had been hard to keep together in that terrible winter at Valley Forge. The time for which many had enlisted would expire on New Year's Day, but these men were anxious to remain in the ranks if they could be assured of supplies. In this extremity Washington appealed to Robert Morris. The banker, roused from his bed at dawn of a bitter New Year's morning, went from house to house begging money. Before noon he sent \$50,000 to Washington, who, two days later, attacked Princeton, escaped a British trap, and camped for the winter on the hills of Morristown.

Again, in 1781, Robert Morris borrowed the enormous sum of

Robert Morris, the Financier



This portrait of Robert Morris is one of the most famous of our historic pictures. It is the work of Peale. The original is in the Pennsylvania Academy of Fine Arts. It shows Morris seated in a richly upholstered leather chair, at a window overlooking the United States Treasury. As a matter of fact, his residence did not overlook the Treasury, but a picture of it is shown merely as a symbol to express the country's indebtedness to him for his management of the national finances during the Revolutionary period.

\$1,400,000 on his own notes, to finance the march and siege of Yorktown. Had this sum not been repaid him, he would have been ruined in the day of victory for the country. After the war he was long prominent in private business and

the public service, but he finally lost his fortune by speculating in western lands. Washington, Franklin and other powerful friends, who could have helped him, were dead, so he lay in prison for debt for four years, and died in poverty in 1806.

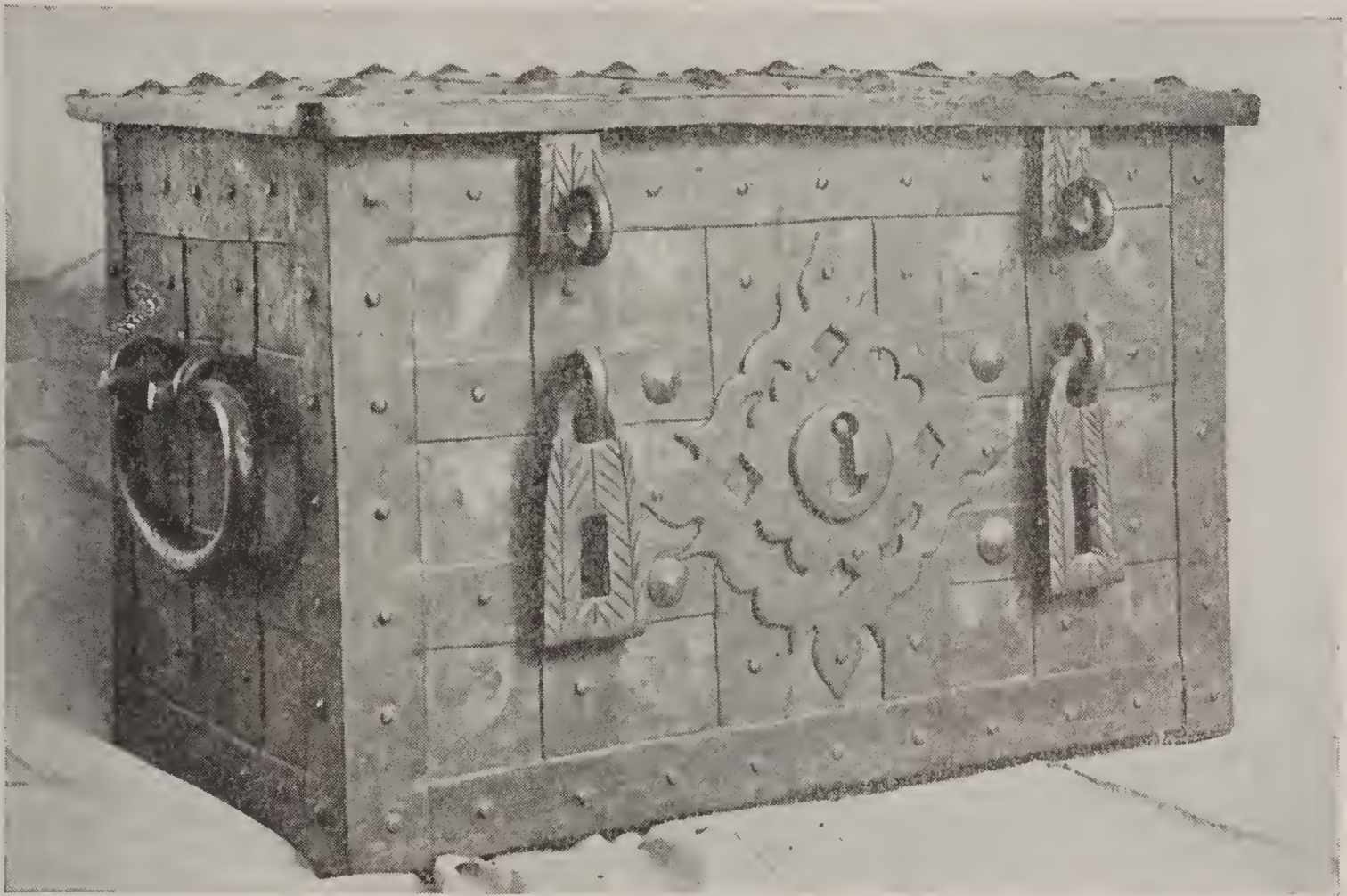
George Rogers Clark, the Frontier Fighter

DO you remember that at the close of the French and Indian and Pontiac's war, about 1769, Daniel Boone and other frontiersmen, crossed the mountains, and fought for a foothold in "the dark and

bloody ground" of Kentucky and Tennessee?

The ablest of these men was George Rogers Clark, who built a fort at Harrodsburg. On hearing the news of Lexington, he organized

The Good Fortune We Owe to this Chest



We owe a great deal to this old chest, for this was the savings bank of Robert Morris; and it was largely owing to the fact that he risked his personal fortune to pay the wages of the soldiers in the American Revolution, and to meet other expenses, that the cause of America and Liberty won the day. After having done all this, he finally lost his fortune and was even confined in prison for debt, according to the cruel laws of those times, during the last years of his life. This is something to remember when we are called upon to make sacrifices for our country and to perform services for the public good.

This chest you can see in the Historical Society of Pennsylvania. It is about three feet long and two feet high. Such chests were made by the carpenter and the locksmith. The iron clasps were fastened upward through those two eyes which, like all the other iron work, were wrought, and through these eyes were put heavy padlocks; so you see it would take almost as much time to open this old chest as it does the modern combination safe lock.

You will notice that they did not forget the ornamental part of the chest. Not only are the clasps ornamented, but in the squares between the hands on the front are pictures of birds and tulips. This was, perhaps, done by a Dutchman; you know Holland is the land of tulips.

Kentucky into a county of the new state of Virginia, and got himself elected to the Assembly. In the capital at Williamsburg, he met again an old friend and neighbor in Governor Patrick Henry. To him he unfolded an ambitious plan. Since the Indian War the old French forts northwest of the Ohio had been held by British garrisons, and there, too, were the trading posts at which Indians were being supplied with arms and incited to fall upon the undefended frontiers of the seaboard colonies. Clark proposed to capture these forts and break up this traffic. Governor Henry approved of his

plan, but could give him little aid.

But Clark was determined. Gathering 180 backwoodsmen at Pittsburgh, he built boats and floated down the Ohio. At Corn Island, opposite Louisville, other "long knives," as the pioneers were called by the Indians, joined him. Leaving

The Surprise at Kaskaskia the boats at the mouth of the Ohio, the little force marched north across the wooded swamps and prairies to Kaskaskia, Illinois, the old French capital, where the British had built Fort Gage on the low bluff. This was taken by surprise attack. The French villagers welcomed the Ken-

tuckians, for the French alliance had been announced. Lafayette was fighting with Washington, and loyalty to the American rebels meant loyalty to Old France.

the Mississippi River as the western boundary of the United States at the close of the war. Virginia made this pioneer soldier, who won and held for her all for which the colony

From the Doctor's Medicine Chest



All these things are from the medicine chest of Dr. Solomon Drowne, a distinguished physician, who served his country in a professional capacity during the Revolutionary War. The long object on the right with straps around it, is a set of splints used in binding broken limbs. The little white jar contains healing ointment. To the left of it is a pair of scales for weighing medicine. In front of the scales you see the little square weights. The small round object to the left of the weights is a bone trepanned from the skull of a soldier of the Revolution. On the left is a case containing surgical instruments. The round box, with numerous compartments, to the left contained various kinds of bugs ground to powder in a mortar with a pestle, and used for plasters and other purposes.

There were no medical schools in those days, and young men who wanted to be doctors served as apprentices to established physicians. They ground the powders, mixed the pills, rode with the doctor on his rounds, and held the horses while he visited the patients and got a chance to ask him questions as they went from house to house. When not engaged in other duties, the young medical student swept the office, dusted the bottles and shelves, kept the skeletons properly wired, and answered the night bell.

The French now joined these pioneer forces, and, after a dreadful march across frozen swamps and streams in mid-winter, Clark captured Vincennes, Indiana. Civil rule was soon established by Virginia, which organized five big states of today into the County of Illinois. It was these daring adventures, perilous marches and brilliant military feats of Clark's which won

had fought in the long French and Indian War, a brigadier-general, and gave him 8,000 acres of land near the Ohio River in Indiana. That sounds magnificent, on paper, but the country was unsettled. As poor as any other backwoodsman of that early day, General Clark lived and died on his wild, ducal estate. But his name was written indelibly in our nation's history.

Nathan Hale, the Martyr-Patriot

ANY man who loves his country, and who serves it with unselfishness and zeal in any way that he can, whether in camp or court, legislative hall or counting house, is a patriot. But, best of all, the world understands and loves the self-sacrifice of the soldier. And when the soldier is a youth of brilliant promise, who goes voluntarily, on a secret and dangerous military mission, and suffers nobly the shameful death of a spy, his memory is held in special reverence. Such a hero was Nathan Hale.

He came of the best Puritan ancestry, of the family which gave us Dr. Edward Everett Hale, author of "The Man Without a Country." News of the battle of Lexington found him, a recent graduate from Yale, teaching school in the village of New London, Connecticut, to earn money to continue his studies for the ministry. He was much admired for his mental and moral gifts, his handsome person, and for his prowess in all clean, athletic sports. Fifty years afterwards his pupils described their twenty-year-old schoolmaster of that smiling April morning. His eyes were a clear, dark blue, his color ruddy with health, his bearing manly, his face lighted with fine intelligence. For any child or animal in trouble his sympathy was quick, his help generous and kind.

The town crier passed the school, ringing his bell and calling out the dreadful news of battle. As the people thronged into the streets, the schoolmaster stood up to his full six feet of beautiful and serious young manhood. In a voice described as low, sweet and musical, he said:

*The Teacher
and His
Country*

"School is dismissed. The time has come for men to fight, that you children may know the blessings of peace and liberty." In the town meeting he said: "Let us march at once, and never lay down our arms until we have won independence for our bleeding country."

As a lieutenant he joined Washington's forces at Cambridge. In the siege of Boston he rose to a captaincy in the famous Connecticut Rangers. It was certain that he would rise to the highest rank when the army followed the British to New York. There it was necessary for Washington to learn the size and disposition of General Howe's forces, and his plan of campaign. As this was information which only a man of superior intelligence could possibly get, he called for a volunteer from the younger officers. There was a painful moment of suspense, for the bravest shrink from the dangers of the spy. If caught he dies the death reserved for the lowest criminals, by hanging from the scaffold. Everyone's hat came off, including that of the Commander-in-Chief's, in grave salute, when Captain Nathan Hale stepped forward, head high, face pale, but quite resolute, and offered himself for this dangerous duty.

Discarding his uniform and disguising himself as a royalist schoolmaster, he boldly entered the British camp. He made observations, notes, and drawings of fortifications, and got away unsuspected. But, while waiting at a tavern on the shore for a boat that was to meet him, he was recognized by a royalist kinsman, betrayed and trapped on a British gunboat. Taken before General

Signing the Preliminary Treaty at Paris



Before the final treaty was signed which ended the Revolutionary War, preliminary articles were signed at Paris. England was represented by Richard Oswald, a British diplomat, and the colonies by John Adams, Henry Laurens, John Jay, and Benjamin Franklin. The preliminary treaty was signed on November 30, 1782, and the final treaty which was identical with the first, on September 3, 1783.

Howe, his papers were found, or a part of them, for it is known that he had managed to get much information to Washington. He was hanged at sunrise the next morning.

It was in an orchard, at Market Street and East Broadway, near where the statue of him stands to-day. He was denied a chaplain and a Bible, and his letters to his sister and to his betrothed—sweet Alice Ripley—were destroyed before his eyes, so that “the American rebels may never know they had a man who could die with such firmness.” His open grave was at his feet. A royalist rabble jeered at him, as he faced the sun and breathed the odor of ripening apples, for it was late in September. A life of love, usefulness and high honors was closing

for him at twenty-one. Yet, when asked if he had anything to say, he said: “I regret that I have but one life to lose for my country.”

This legend is carved on the pedestal of the statue erected to him in New York City by the Sons of the Revolution. Children, many of them foreign immigrants, just learning to read, trace the letters and ask the corner policeman for the story. So he is still the schoolmaster, the inspiring teacher of patriotism. Another statue of him is in Hartford; and a granite memorial in Coventry, Connecticut, where he was born. And on the campus at Yale, where his name heads the list of honored graduates, rises the William Ordway Partridge statue in bronze. The face is uplifted, luminous with high re-

The Heroic Young School Master



This is the statue of Nathan Hale which stands in City Hall Park, New York City. As we look at the upright bearing and noble face of this young man of twenty-three, the words of the story of his heroism comes to us with particular force. He is here represented as he stood upon the scaffold, his feet tied together, his arms bound to his side. Below the laurel wreath which surrounds a brief statement of the circumstances of his death, are his last words: "I regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

solve, the foot advanced from the pedestal, as if eager to be off on some sacred duty. Every one looking at him, thinks: "Where is he going?"

The sculptor answers: "To his death on the scaffold. This is the way an American patriot should be willing to die."

Warren's Address to the American Soldiers

*Stand! The ground's your own, my braves!
Will ye give it up to slaves?
Will ye look for greener graves?
Hope ye mercy still?
What's the mercy despots feel?
Hear it in that battle-peal!
Read it on your bristling steel!
Ask it—ye who will.*

*Fear ye foes who kill for hire?
Will ye to your homes retire?
Look behind you! they're afire!
And, before you, see
Who have done it!—From the vale
On they come! And will ye quail?—
Leaden rain and iron hail
Let their welcome be!*

*In God of Battles trust!
Die we may,—and die we must;
But, O, where can dust to dust
Be consigned so well,
As where Heaven its dews shall shed
On the martyred patriot's bed,
And the rocks shall raise their head
Of his deeds to tell!*

JOHN PIERPONT.

The Making of a Great Nation



Daniel Boone and His Rifle

From boyhood Daniel Boone loved the woods, and no wonder, for all healthy boys love the woods and there were so many woods to love in those days! His moccasins as well as his shirt were usually of buckskin, although sometimes he made them of elk and in the winter of buffalo hide with the hair turned inward. His sandy hair was long and ragged, his cap was made of the fur of a wild cat, a raccoon, or an otter. In stories in which Boone figures as hero—and what boy doesn't know a lot of them—he is described as tall and angular with a "dark and piercing eye." As a matter of fact, he was not very tall,—about 5 feet 8 inches—he was heavy set, and his eyes were mild blue. Although he knew so much about the woods and the wild folks of the woods—the two legged and the four legged—he never learned much about spelling and for a long time there stood a tree in the forest on which was this autograph of the great frontiersman: "D. Boone cilled a Bar near this tree, year 1760."

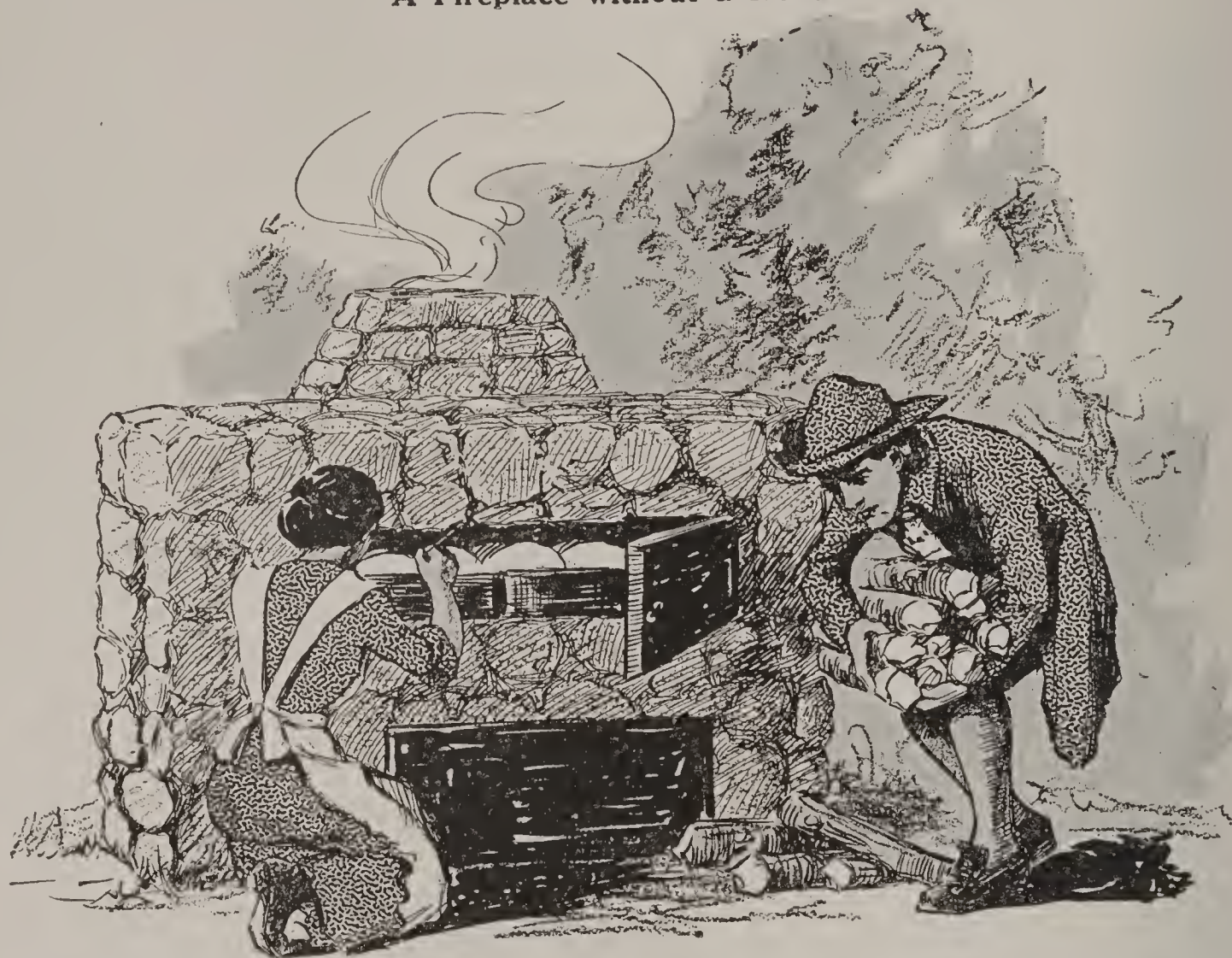
AT the close of the Revolutionary War, the thirteen states formed from the old seaboard colonies, had won the region south of the Great Lakes, and the Ohio Valley clear to the Mississippi River. Spain owned Flor-

ida, the entire Gulf Coast, all the territory west of the Mississippi, then known as Louisiana, and claimed the eastern bank of the river up to Vicksburg. It was the middle of the century before, by purchase, treaty or war, with

France, Spain, Mexico, and Great Britain, we straightened our northern and southern boundaries and secured the heart of the continent,

of human daring and endurance is a century long, and every Middle and Far Western state furnishes a thrilling chapter. You should read your

A Fireplace without a House



This outdoor oven used by the American pioneers was you see a combination of the idea of the old-fashioned fireplace and the modern kitchen stove. Ovens like this were built outside the house. They were very convenient for boiling and baking in hot weather and you can see how much better it would be to do the washing outdoors than to do it in the kitchen. And these outdoor ovens had another advantage. They could be built before the log cabin was finished so that the whole family and the men neighbors who were helping with the building of the cabin could have better meals while the new home was going up.

from the Lakes to the Gulf and from ocean to ocean.

But in America people have never waited for formal treaties. Into every part of this vast country of forest, prairie, desert, mountain and distant coast, men from all the older,

*Romance in
Your State's
Story*

settled regions penetrated before we owned it.

It was not soldiers, but heroic pioneers—pathfinders, Indian fighters, soil tillers, trail openers, gold seekers, cattle raisers, state makers and railroad builders who really explored, conquered, peopled and developed our land. This story

own. Here we can tell you only of large movements of population, and name a few typical men and events of national importance.

Life on the Frontier

At least twenty years before the Revolution, men had pushed up the rivers of the Atlantic seaboard to the crest of the Alleghenies. Washington was in the mountains of Virginia by 1748, surveying wild land bought by wealthy planters. And wherever game became scarce and land dear, poor people moved westward. On

*The Life
of a
Pioneer*

the frontier boys grew up strong, brave, inured to hardship and danger, and as skilled in hunting and the wood-crafts as Indians. With a hunting knife and a gun, the pioneer could sustain life; and with an ax, a plow, a horse or pair of oxen they could move their families, and soon have

Chester Harding, the artist, made a trip to the Missouri frontier where Daniel Boone was living in 1819, to paint this portrait of the famous old man. Daniel Boone was then eighty-five and lived with one of his sons, mending broken rifles and powder horns, going on occasional hunting expeditions and recounting, for the delight of his neighbors, the adventures of his youth. Mr. Harding found

him alone in a small cabin, part of an old blockhouse, cooking his dinner. He was lying on his bunk near the fire, with a long strip of venison wound around the ramrod of his gun which he was slowly turning before the brisk blaze.

Daniel Boone is described as about 5 feet 8 inches tall, very broad and powerful though lean, with blue eyes and a wide, thin-lipped mouth. People who saw him for the first time as an old man were surprised at the gentleness and simplicity of a man who had seen so much bloodshed, and who had played so large a part in the history of his country. When Mr. Harding asked him if he had ever been lost on any of his long

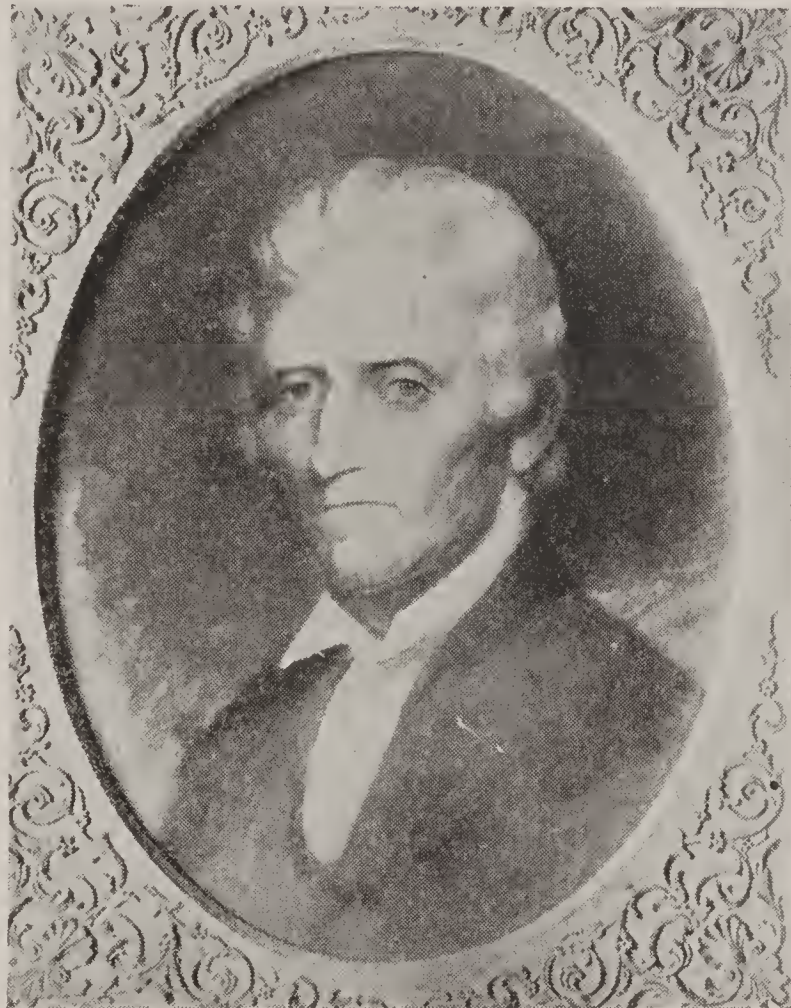
cabins and clearings in any wilderness.

Such a man was Daniel Boone, who, in 1769, broke through Cumberland Gap, the only pass through the mountains south of the Potomac, into the hunter's paradise of Kentucky and Tennessee. The news spread quickly and others followed. Dwellers in the rough mountain valleys had never seen such rolling meadows of bluegrass, laced with bright streams and shaded by enor-

mous trees. The country was a wild park, teeming with game animals, but it had to be fought for, for it was the favorite hunting ground of many

Algonquin and Gulf tribes. The white people were obliged, just as in New England and Virginia a century and a half before, to settle in villages

Daniel Boone at Eighty-Five



journeys through the woods without a compass, he replied, "No, I can't say as I ever was lost, but I was bewildered once for three days." When his wife died in 1813 he made his coffin and kept it under his bed, with careful instructions to his children that he be buried in it and laid by his wife's side. He died while the convention to draw up a constitution for the new state of Missouri was

in session. When the news reached them, the convention adjourned for the day and the delegates wore crepe on their arms for three weeks in respect to his memory. During his long life on the American frontier he had been first the subject of George II of England, then of George III, a citizen of the United States, the adopted son and citizen of a tribe of Shawnee Indians, the subject of Charles IV of Spain (when the Louisiana Territory belonged to Spain), then of Napoleon (when the territory was ceded to the French), and finally a citizen of the United States again after Jefferson made the Louisiana Purchase.

around crude stockaded forts.

They lived in the rudest of log cabins. Floors were of split-logs; doors, tables and stools of hewn planks; beds of poles, laced with rawhide and spread with pine boughs, husks, and deerskins. Chimneys were of sticks plastered with clay. Often only corn, flax, and the Indian vegetables were grown. Domestic animals could not be kept, on account of timber wolves. The housewife had a few kettles, an out-

door oven, a trough or hollowed stump for pounding hominy. The dishes were wooden bowls and gourds. It was with the greatest difficulty that spinning wheels and

Boone, the Typical Frontiersman

Now Boone was no braver or more resourceful than hundreds of other men, and in military genius and public service he was not to be compared

The Growth of Our Country



© Munn & Co.

Courtesy of Scientific American

This map shows how the territory of the thirteen original states was expanded into the great United States of today. To the original thirteen states was added in 1803 the vast territory covered by the Louisiana Purchase. Then came the cession of Florida by Spain in 1819. Next, Texas was added in 1845, the title to Oregon territory was established in 1846, the territory indicated ceded by Mexico in 1848 and five years later came the Gadsden Purchase.

looms were brought over the mountains. Women, as well as men, had to know how to shoot, mold bullets and dress all kinds of game.

Much more than any colonists of old along the Atlantic, these backwoodsmen were beset by perils and privations. The Mississippi was closed to navigation until the United States bought Louisiana in 1803. Furs had to be carried on pack horses over the mountains, and very little beside the necessary guns and ammunition could be brought back. Travelers were often ambushed, so men journeyed in company, posted sentinels, and tied their food pouches and moccasins to their gun stocks.

with George Rogers Clark. His fame rests on the fact that in the midst of dangers in which most men

The Fame of Daniel Boone made early and violent exits from the stage of life, he lived unharmed

for more than eighty years. From the mountains to the Missouri, he blazed the way for three generations of settlers. A true backwoodsman, he was unhappy in towns. Whenever population got too thick he always moved west "for elbow room and game for his trusty rifle." Born on the frontier of Pennsylvania in 1735, three years after Washington—Lincoln was ten years old when Boone died at the age of eighty-six

—he was an intrepid hunter to the last, and he was visited by explorers, hunters, emigrants, and by artists, several of whom made long, wild journeys to paint his noble head. Wholly unlettered, he was a man of keen intelligence, unblemished character and the gentle manners of his Quaker ancestry. Next to Robinson Crusoe, Boone is the boys' hero. His romantic biography is more crowded with stirring adventure than any dime novel.

Kentucky and Tennessee grew so rapidly in population that they were admitted as states in 1792 and 1796, while the first white settlement was not made at Marietta, on the north bank of the Ohio, until 1788. To this point came a pilgrim band of Puritans from the seaport towns of New England. Officers of the Revolution secured a grant of land from Congress, and the government built a fort to protect them. They had money to finance the venture. So they crossed the mountains from Philadelphia in a train of good Conestoga wagons, whose boat-shaped bodies could be lifted from the wheels and poled across streams. In these they carried their families, household goods, tools, seeds and weapons. Military supplies, even small cannon, were sent up the Potomac. Among these emigrants were skilled workmen of every trade. Building the "Second Mayflower" at Fort Pitt, now Pittsburgh, they floated down the Ohio.

The Three Streams of Migration

Migration moved to this new region in three great streams, from Albany through central New York, across the mountains of Pennsylvania and up the valley of the

Potomac. These are the routes followed by railroads of today—the New York Central, Pennsylvania Central and the Baltimore and Ohio. All the roads used by emigrants from the Atlantic to the Pacific were old Indian trails. The paths worn to deep ruts in the soil by moccasined feet and unshod ponies, were widened to wagon roads, and then graded for railroad beds. Rivers were bridged at ancient fords.

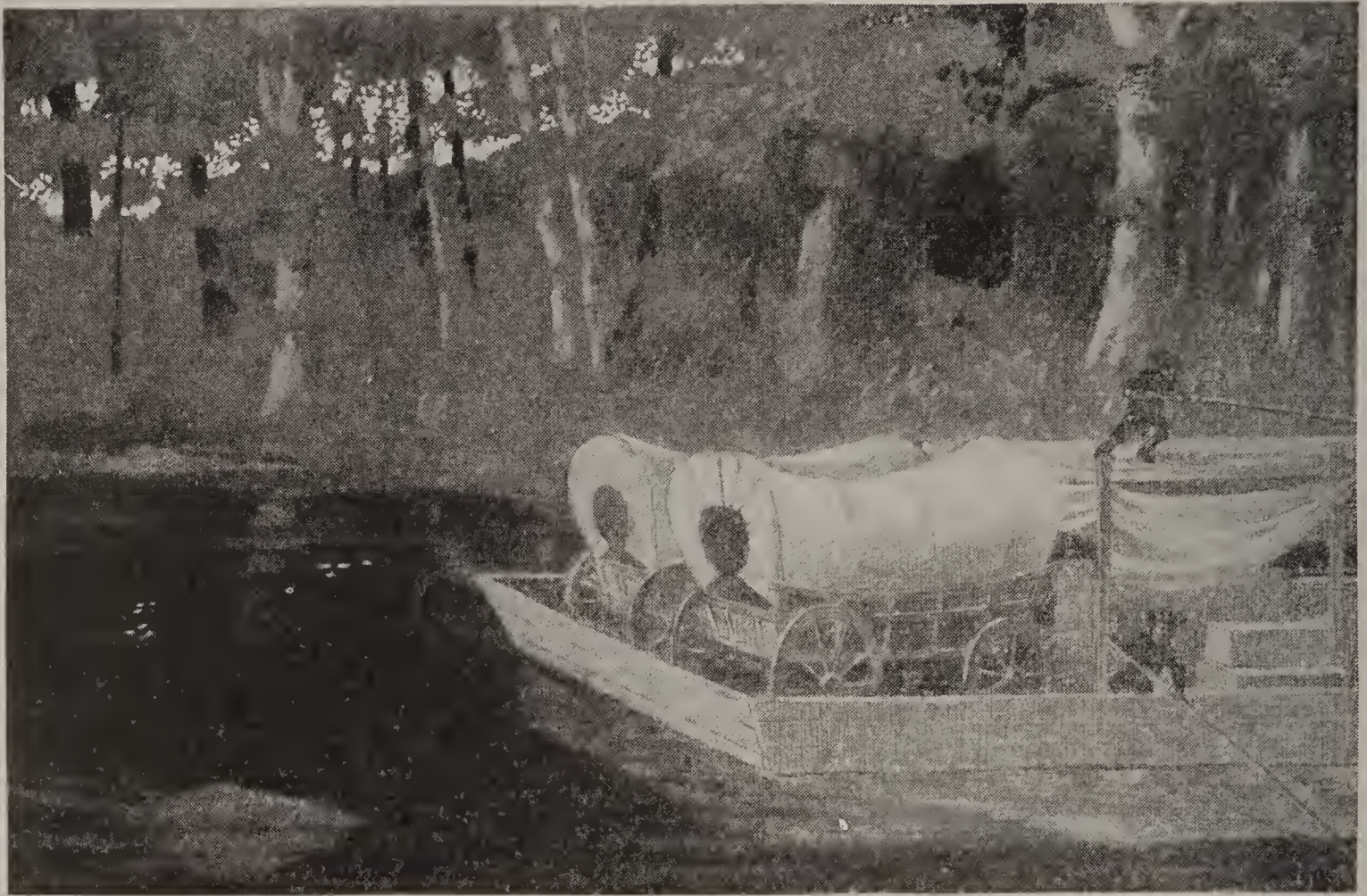
Standing as it did at the head waters of the Ohio, all roads met at Pittsburgh, which for quite half a century was the gateway to the West. By 1800 the town had 1,500 people, most of whom were engaged in boat building, ferrying and outfitting emigrants. Upon the high water of spring, a procession of flatboats moved down the flood to towns on both banks of the Ohio. These were not backwoodsmen. Hard times, following the Revolution, had ruined many of the oldest and best families in America, and they made a new start in the West, where land was cheap. Planters from the southern tidewater laid out new plantations in Kentucky and Tennessee. Into the region north of the Ohio were attracted eastern men of college education, professional training, and business experience, for public lands in the Northwest Territory had, for the first time in history, been set aside for the support of the public schools.

Flatboats were peculiar to the waterways of the Middle West. Twelve feet wide and forty long, with high sides and partially roofed over, they could be steered down stream with a broad oar and tied to trees at night. Flour, pork and lumber were thus floated to New Orleans; and each

*Settlers Who
Weren't
Woodsmen*

*How
Marietta
Began*

"Prairie Schooners" Taking a Boat Ride



Here our artist shows how the "prairie schooners" looked when they were being carried down the Ohio River in one of those flat boats, the lumber in which was afterwards used in building houses. The "pilot" on the roof worked the rudder to steer it. When they came to a sharp bend or a shallow, one of the men would use a long pole to keep the boat from running aground.

carried two families, with all their goods, seeds, tools, weapons and domestic animals. And when a destination was reached, a boat was broken up and the planks used to build houses, stores and shops. Town after town sprang up along the Ohio, and up to the head of navigation on the tributary streams. Wherever canoes, rowed by Frenchmen—for Gallipolis was settled by refugees from the French Revolution—or pirogues poled by Kentucky Negroes, could go, carrying gunpowder and salt, the woodsman's ax and hunter's rifle were heard in the forested hills of Ohio.

This region, too, had to be fought for. The coming of white men had always meant the cutting down of forests, destruction of game and the crowding back of the Indians. The red tribes, alarmed by this invasion,

attacked the boats, killed many people and burned clearings and settlements. They waged *Five Years of War* savage war for five years before they were beaten back, and the southeastern two-thirds of Ohio was secured for white settlers. There were a half million people in the three states west of the mountains when Ohio was admitted to the Union in 1803.

A Year of Great Events

This was a historic year. It was the date of the Louisiana Purchase, and of the building of Fort Dearborn, at the mouth of the Chicago River. A site having been secured by treaty with the tribes of the Northwest, officers were ordered to proceed from the old garrison at Detroit. The officers and their families went around by sailing vessel,

EXPANSION PERIOD

Where Chicago was Born



This picture which is one of a series of paintings on the walls of the Central Trust Company of Illinois, in Chicago, may be said to be the birthplace of the great city. It was near this spot that Fort Dearborn stood, and the fort was the nucleus around which first the settlement and then the city grew. The dwelling you see is where John Kinzie, the first Chicago settler, lived.

The First Railroad Station in Chicago



What is now the Northwestern railroad system was begun in Chicago in 1849 with the building of ten miles of road across the swamp to the Desplaines River. On the return trip in November of that year, the first carload of wheat was brought to Chicago. There was then simply a shed for passengers at Kinzie and Halsted streets. The next year the city council granted permission to run the road east to Canal and then to Wells Street and the building you see here was put up. In the rear you see the schooners on the Chicago River near which this building stood. In course of time it was succeeded by a big brick station and this in turn by the magnificent structure, with its marble pillars, occupying a whole block and costing many millions of dollars, which takes care of the Chicago traffic on this great railroad system today.

How Clark Chose a Monument that Nature Built



When the Lewis and Clark Expedition reached this sandstone cliff on the Yellowstone River, Captain Clark named it Pompey's Pillar. Here is the account of it that appeared in the government's official story of the expedition.

"Captain Clark landed to examine a very remarkable rock situated in an extensive bottom on the right. . . . It is nearly 400 paces in circumference, 200 feet high and accessible only from the northeast, the other sides being a perpendicular cliff of light-colored rock. The soil on top is five or six feet deep, of good quality and covered with short grass. The Indians have carved the figures of animals and other objects on the sides of the rock and on the top are raised two piles of stones. After enjoying the prospect from this rock, Captain Clark descended and continued his course."

The two piles of stone and the carved figures are gone now but the character and general appearance of the rock is unchanged.

the first one on Lake Michigan since La Salle's ill-fated *Griffin* of 1673. The company of soldiers, guided by French voyageurs, cut their way across southern Michigan and around the lake shore, through three hundred miles of woods, swamp, gullies of streams and billowing sand dunes. Long known as the Great Sauk Trail, then as the Detroit and Chicago Post Road, this is now the route of the Michigan Central railroad.

Thus was reopened, at Chicago, the old portage of the French explorers. The nearest posts were at Fort Wayne and Vincennes. Furs, the only commodity of the country, were sent to Mackinac, whence supplies came up from Detroit. Three hundred miles to the southwest lay the trading post of St. Louis, and the old French mission town, Kaskaskia.

St. Louis, settled in Spanish territory by the French in 1765, had one thousand people—French, Spanish, Indian and Negro—all engaged in the fur trade and river commerce, for it had always had an outlet through New Orleans. There was great excitement in the straggling frontier town in the spring of 1804. Louisiana Territory had been purchased from France the year before, and Meriwether Lewis, private secretary to President Jefferson, and Captain William Clark, brother of the famous George Rogers Clark, were sent to explore it. The extent, character and value of Louisiana were entirely unknown. No one knew the length, dangers or difficulties of that journey. Grave-faced people, who never expected to see these brave, adventurous men again, stood on the banks of the "Big

Muddy" and watched them embark in boats.

Guided by the "Bird Woman"

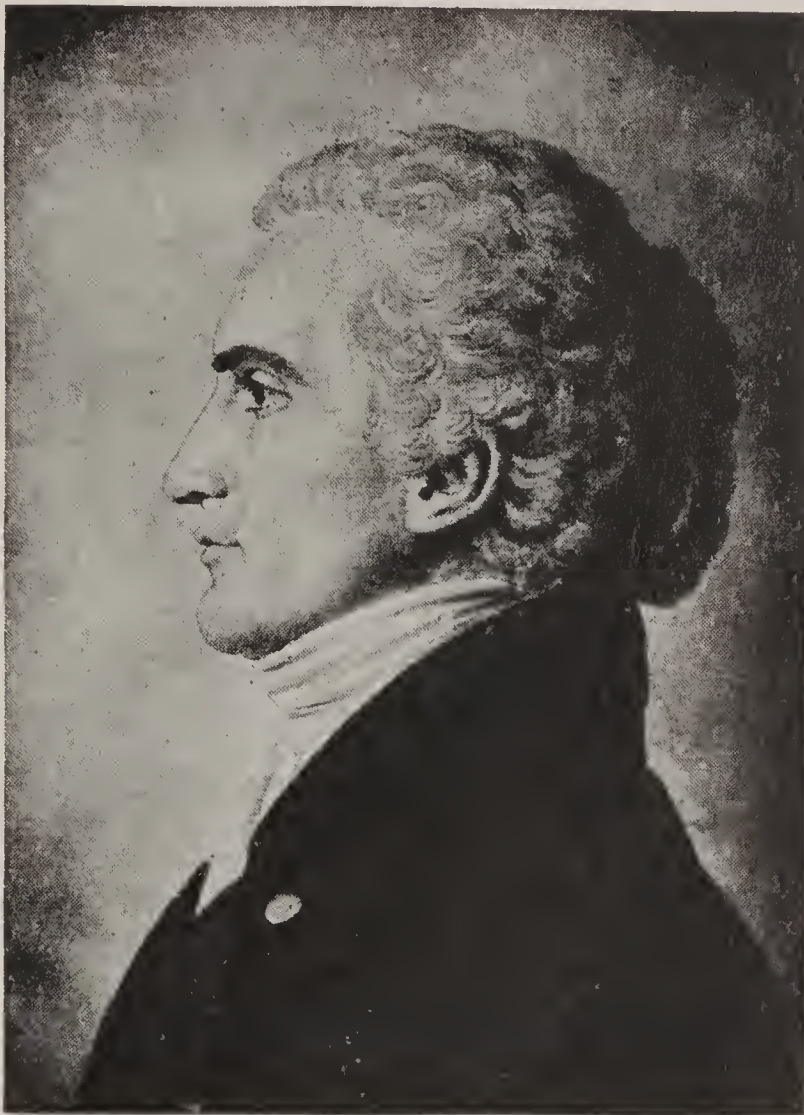
This was not cheering advice, but the intrepid explorers went on. As it happened, the Missouri turned

far west of Sioux territory—instead of running through it, as Boone supposed—and, late in the autumn, Lewis and Clark reached a village of friendly Mandan Indians on the present site of Bismarck, North Dakota. They spent the winter there on the plains; and there they found a guide over the mountains in the person of a young Indian woman, who had been stolen from her home in the Shoshone Valley of Idaho by Sioux warriors, and then sold as a wife to Chabaneau, a French trapper.

Altogether there were thirty, carefully chosen men: nine backwoods-men from Kentucky, fourteen soldiers, two French Canadian voyageurs, an Indian interpreter, a hunter from the plains and a negro servant, besides the leaders. The party stopped for some days with Daniel Boone, who, at seventy years of age, was living on an estate of 8,000 acres in the Osage country. This had been given to him by Spain, on condition that he and his thirty children and grandchildren should keep the Indians of the district in order. His hunting trips ranged to Nebraska and Kansas. This veteran of the wilds, who had never feared anything, advised the explorers to turn back.

"White men," he said "cannot pass through the country of the savage Sioux." In fact, these Indians were not conquered until our centennial year of 1876, and that after the massacre of Custer's heroic little army.

Jefferson's Tribute to Meriwether Lewis

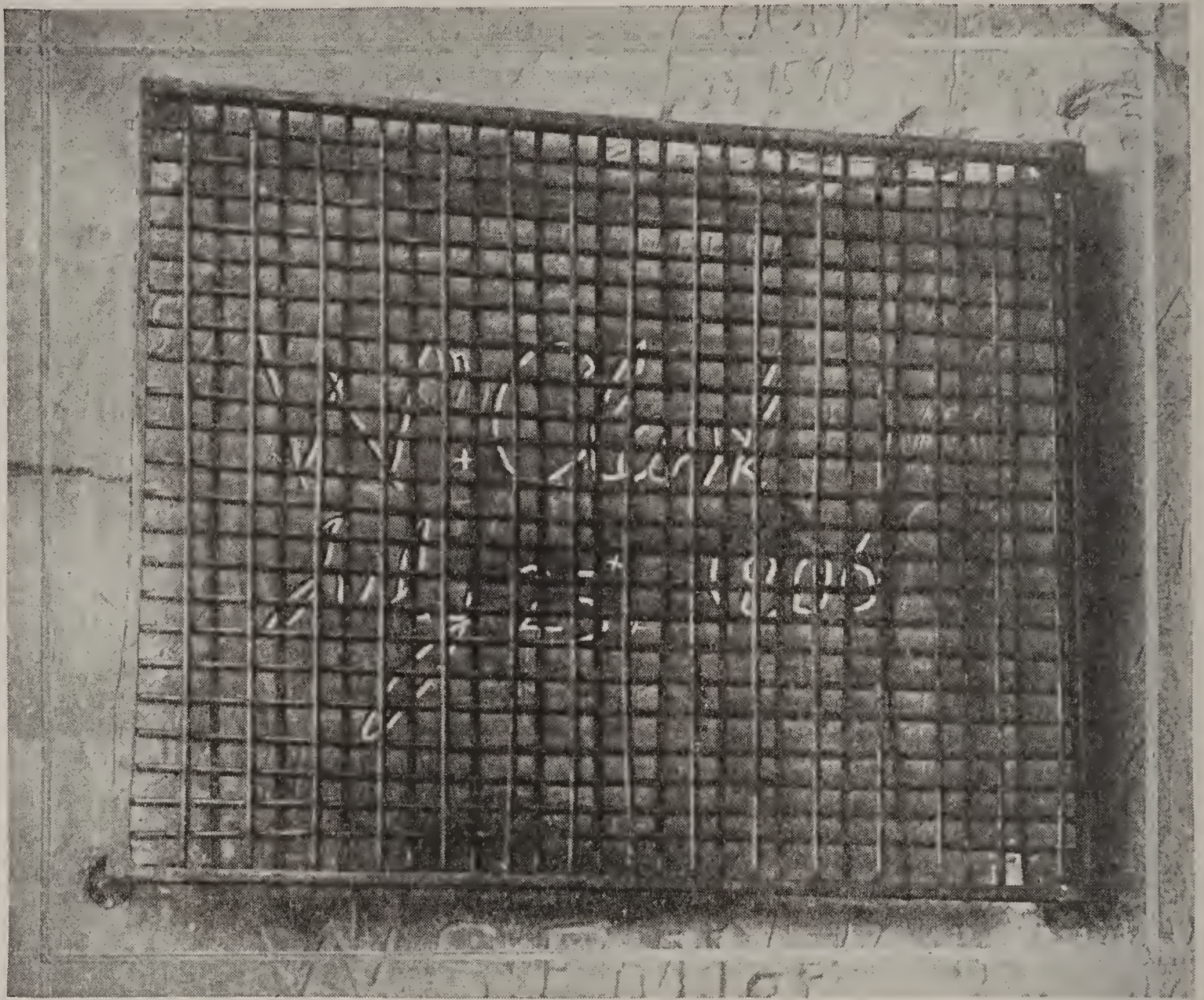


Meriwether Lewis was a handsome man, with clear, regular features and fine eyes. He is wearing a powdered wig here, with the pigtail looped up in the back—the same fashion that little girls sometimes adopt in the summertime when their braids feel hot on their necks. President Jefferson picked Meriwether Lewis to lead the important expedition into the newly bought Louisiana territory, because of his fitness for such a task. He said of him, in the preface to the first published account of the trip: "His courage was undaunted, his firmness and perseverance yielded to nothing but impossibilities. A rigid disciplinarian, yet tender as a father of those committed to his charge; honest, disinterested, liberal, with a sound understanding, and a scrupulous fidelity to truth."

None but such men, for Clark was of the same caliber, could have pushed through to the Pacific.

Light of foot, merry of heart, and with a singing voice which carried the old French chansons taught her by her affectionate husband, she was called the Bird Woman. Longing to see her old home, and knowing the trails, where to find food in the barrens and water in the lava desert, she begged

The Great Explorer's Autograph on the Rock



Captain Clark was the first white man to visit Pompey's Pillar, and his signature on it can be read today. In his notebook for July 25, 1806, he wrote, "I marked my name and the month and year on the rock." You can trace the work of foolish people who have scratched their names in the soft sandstone all around and even over the mark left by William Clark. The Northern Pacific Railroad passes near Pompey's Pillar so one of the officials had this grating put up to protect it.

the privilege of guiding the explorers.

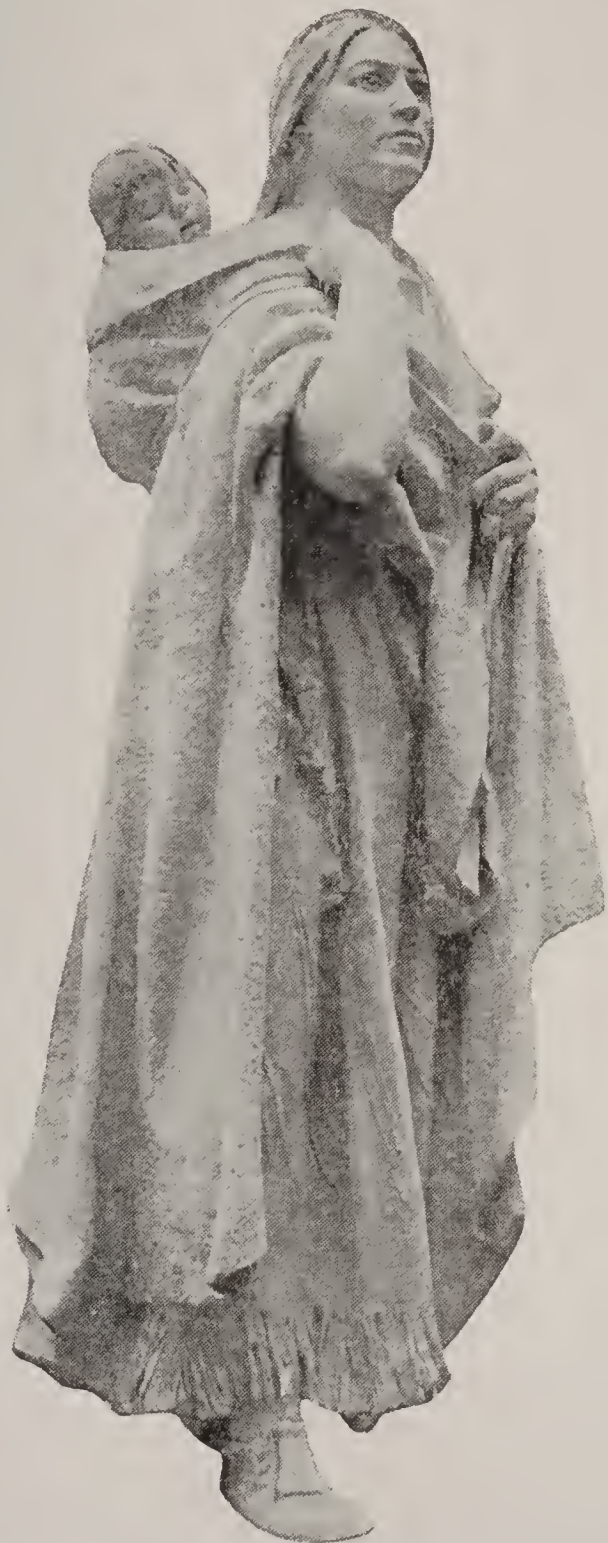
She marched and rowed and swam streams with the men, caught fish, shot game, loaded canoes, set up tents, cooked, and kept the whole party in moccasins, and all the long, rough way she carried her papoose on her back. After passing the Great Falls of the Missouri, Bird Woman found the South Fork of the river. Then, straight as an arrow, she made for the Shoshone Trail, and found the tepees and grazing ponies of the Indian village in the valley. There new guides led the explorers to the Columbia, down

which they paddled to the Pacific. They had been given up for dead when they returned to St. Louis late in 1806.

Their stories of vast, grassy plains, covered with herds of deer and buffalo, the lofty mountains, beautiful falls, and the fertile valleys, wooded slopes and mild climate of the coast, fired the imagination of the country. Such a party today would have had a geologist along, and would certainly have found gold and silver, to start a rush to the remotest boundaries of old Louisiana. But it was long before any attempt

*The Plains
Called a
Desert*

was made to settle the Far West. Other and less favorable reports were brought in. In 1806-7 Zebulon Pike went west from St. Louis, and discovered Pike's Peak in Colorado. He and later frontiersmen gave dismal accounts of the plains from Texas to Canada. Perhaps they went in a dry season, when the prairies were burned brown, and deserted by herds and hunters. Certainly they caused this great grain and cattle country to be long marked on the maps: "The Great American Desert." It was thought by most people to be as barren and forbidding as the Sahara.



Then the Wave of Emigration

But, indeed, until after the War of 1812, when many Indian tribes were moved west of the Mississippi, the Middle West could make no further progress. After 1815 a new flood of people poured over the Ohio, thousands and tens of thousands, where there had been hundreds before.

All the old trails through the woods, widened to wagon roads, swarmed with travel. Land in Kentucky, laid out in great plantations, and tilled by slaves, as in Virginia, had become dear. So, many poor folks, like the Lincolns, crossed the Ohio into southern Indiana and Illinois where land was cheap.

Story of the Lincoln Family

The Lincoln family were typical emigrants from the South, at this period. Piling everything they possessed of any value on two pack-horses, they just "lit out fur Indianny," as Lincoln's cousin, Dennis Hanks, once said. A raft was built of logs lashed together, to cross the Ohio. "Abe toted a gun and kept it dry. He was only seven years old, but proud as a turkey cock" to be of use on that hard moving day.

Camping in an open-faced pole shack for a year, the family lived

The Bird Woman and Her Papoose

Sacagawea, the Bird Woman of the Shoshone Valley, guided Lewis and Clark over the vast stretches of western wilderness. This statue of her was made by Leonard Crunelle for the Panama Pacific Exposition in San Francisco, and is now in the Art Institute, Chicago. See how the sculptor has shown Sacagawea standing straight and tall, ready to step lightly forward, with head high and brows slightly frowning in the effort to see something in the distance that has caught her sharp Indian eyes. Savages, you know, have much keener eyesight than we have, and they can follow a trail through the wilderness which we shouldn't be able to see at all. This papoose on his mother's back watched her pick out such a trail when he was too young to walk, and no doubt became very expert at it himself. And during all that long journey Sacagawea "marched, and rowed, and swam with the men, caught fish, shot game, loaded canoes, set up tents, cooked, and kept the whole party in moccasins."

The Pioneer Buffet Car



This shows the prairie schooner as fitted up by the more enterprising emigrants who went to California in the gold rush; a "buffet car" and "diner." When the emigrants went into camp, that curtain with the round hole in the center of it was rolled back, the end board lowered, the stove set on it and the pipe run through the roof as you see in the next picture. On the walls hang the kitchen utensils, including the big washpan. On one side is the home-made broom for keeping the floor swept, and in the forward part of the wagon are the beds which were occupied when the family stopped for the night.

like Indians, on game, fish, wild berries and pounded corn. The boys learned to trap rabbits, to find honey in the bee trees, to go on coon hunts, and to make moccasins of birch or slippery elm bark, with hickory soles tied on, and even a "little feller" could "drap corn fur pappy" among the stumps of the clearing. The new cabin was scarcely up before the mother died of milk sickness, for the one cow had been poisoned by weeds. The little nine year old boy whittled pegs for his father to put together the

rough, whipsawed boards of his mother's coffin. "The misery in that little, green log cabin in the woods" when Nancy Hanks Lincoln died! The little sister Sarah cried all winter, and, to console her, the boys found a baby coon for a pet. Abe studied Webster's spelling book, and wrote with charred wood on the wooden shovel. Books and schools were "sceercer than wild cats in that neck o' the woods."

Fourteen years later, in 1830, the whole family connection "lit out fur Illinois." This time they had ox wagons. It took them two weeks to cut through the

The Buffet Car in Camp

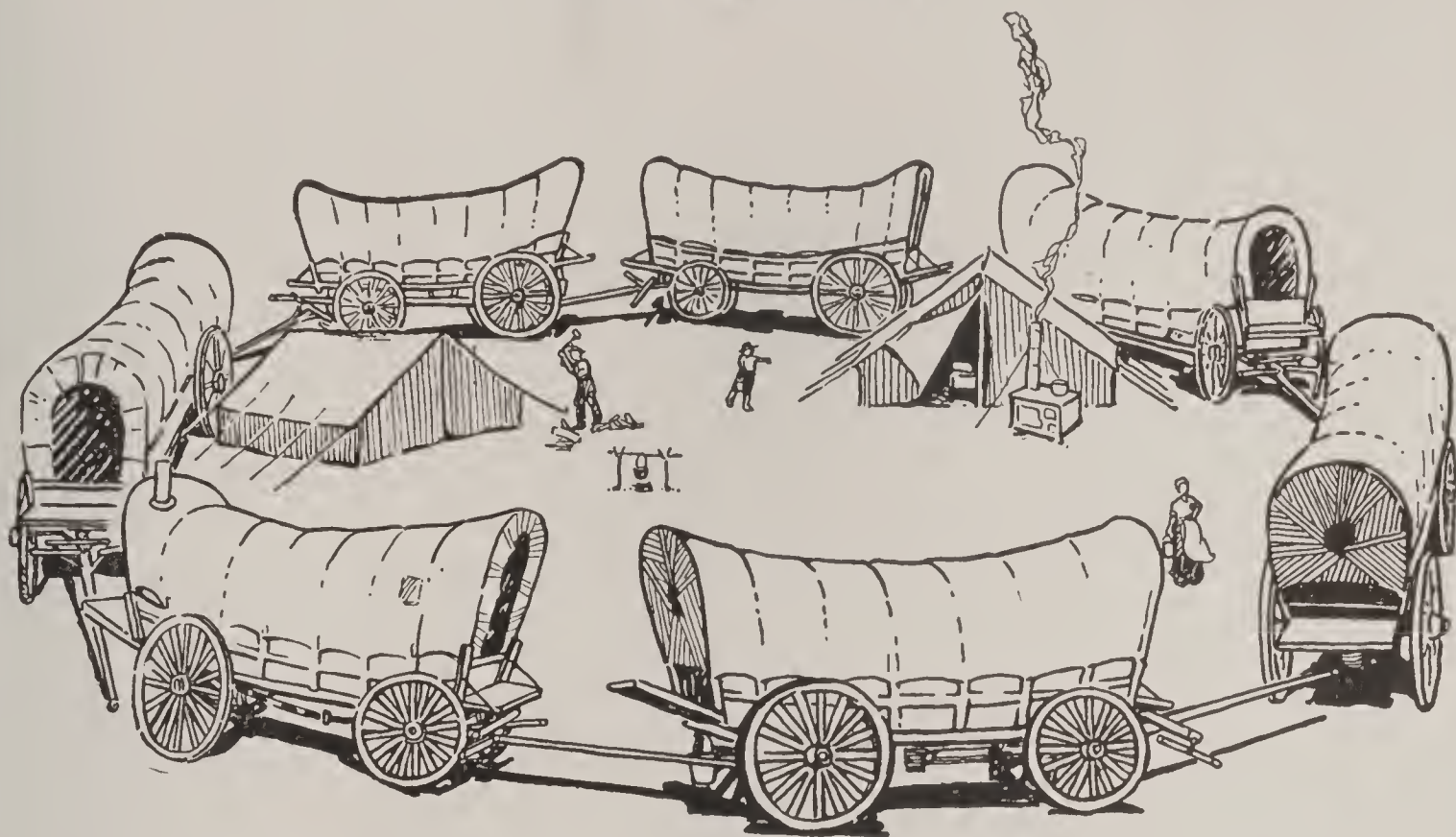


This picture shows one of the ways in which the stove was used when in camp. It was set on a platform at the rear of "Prairie Schooner" with the pipe sticking through a hole made for it in the canvas covering. On the ground is the traveling pantry. Little son is splitting wood to "keep the home fires burning" and mother is just putting something good in the oven—perhaps a cake. What do you say? Certainly it is too thick for a pie, although it may have been a game pie, to be sure.

woods, raft across the Wabash, and pry wheels and even steers out of swamps with fence rails, "Abe crackin' a good-natured joke every time he cracked the whip." He

carriers brought newspapers from the East and cities on the Ohio; and three hundred men of every nationality in the country, traded and voted in the town.

The Fortress on Wheels



The versatile old prairie schooner might remind us of what Shakespeare said of man; in its time it played many parts. Here an emigrant train is made to play it's a fortress. All the wagons are arranged in a circle. At night the tongue of each wagon was attached to that in front so as to make it more difficult for hostile Indians in case of attack. This arrangement made a kind of fortified town, where the men could screen themselves and take aim at the approaching redskins.

helped put up the new cabin on the Sangamon, and split rails and fenced a clearing for corn. Then he "left home for good," at twenty-one.

Times were improving. The village of Salem, twenty miles above Springfield, in which he spent the next twenty years and studied law, was a northern outpost of the settled

Advantages He Found in Salem part of Illinois. But it had a mill, a tavern, all the crafts shops, stores supplied with goods by wagon freight from St. Louis, a good school house, and a school master who could teach Lincoln grammar and help him with surveying. In the state capital he found law books, and men willing to lend them to a poor, ambitious student. Star route mail

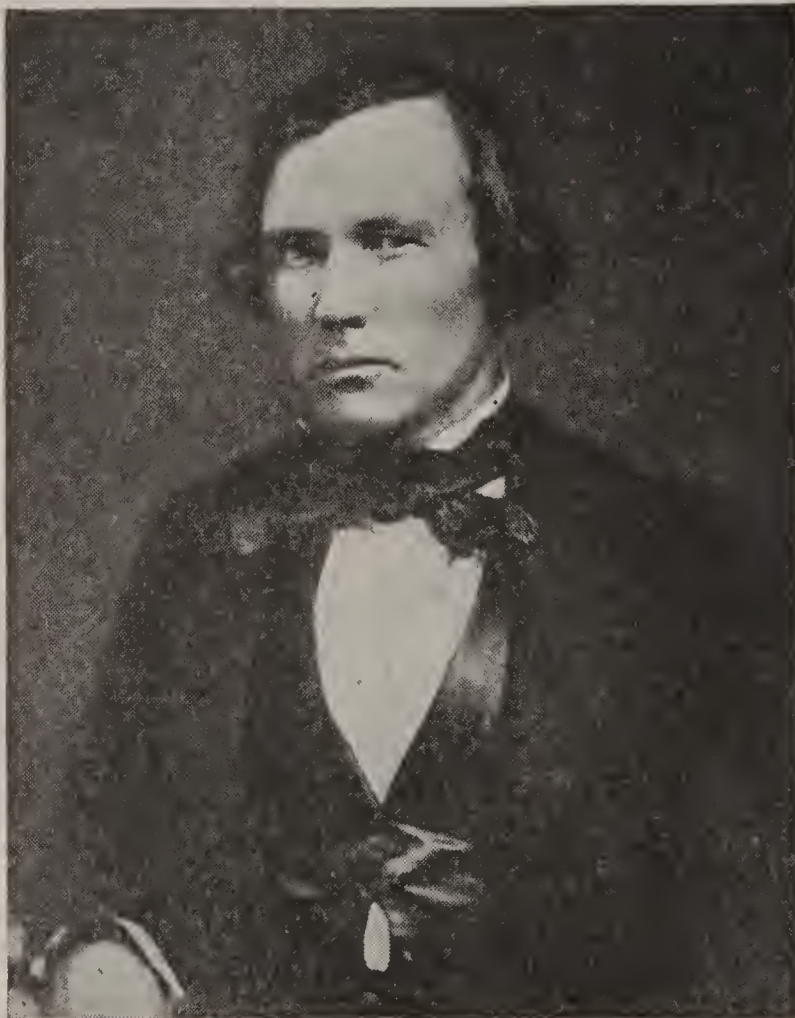
Growth of the Middle West

The Middle West grew fast in population and power. With the admission of Missouri to the Union, in 1821, statehood crossed the Mississippi. In 1825 the Marquis de Lafayette went down the Ohio to St. Louis in a steamboat. In the thirties, Jackson, of Tennessee, was in the White House, and Henry Clay, of Kentucky, was shaping national policies in Congress with his oratory. It is hard to realize now that at this time, when the Ohio Valley was thickly peopled, and travel and trade had become easy and rapid, the region around the Great Lakes could not be settled at all until the Erie Canal was opened from Albany to Buffalo.

This 363-mile "ditch," completed in 1825, gave an all-water route from New York City to the head of Lake Michigan. This made New York instead of Philadelphia, the front door to America, and Chicago superseded Pittsburgh as the gateway to the West. Emigration moving out over Lake Erie, rapidly filled up northern

Kit Carson was as famous in his day as Daniel Boone had been half a century before. This picture was made from an old daguerreotype of him and shows us the frontier guide and Indian fighter, not in the buckskins in which he won his fame, but as a correct gentleman in the fine garments of the latest fashion, for he was a man of the world as well as a frontiersman. We are told that Christopher Carson would have been a scholar had he not loved the wild frontier life so well. He spoke Spanish and was master of innumerable Indian dialects. That he had a kindly, intelligent, handsome face you can see here. The Assistant Surgeon of the United States Army who was with him when he died, has described him as

Kit Carson the "Gentleman" Frontiersman



vania began the most difficult task of all—a four hundred-mile highway over the mountains, that was part canal, part horsepower railroad. The West, not to be outdone, planned

the National Road, to continue the Cumberland Road through the capitals of Ohio, Indiana and Illinois to the Mississippi. Every mile of this was crowd-

a small man—only 5 feet 6 inches tall—weighing about 160 pounds. His eyes were dark gray and his hair, light brown streaked with gray. He had a large head and a high, broad forehead. His frame, though small, was broad and compact and he was very active.

He was called the "beau of the mountains," for his horse wore a silver-trimmed harness and he himself rode the wilderness trails in the dashing costume of a Mexican rancher. Kit Carson was more greatly feared and respected than any other single trapper in the West, and with one or two companions he could put to flight a party of Indians on the warpath more quickly than could a whole company of regulars.

Ohio and Indiana and southern Michigan, and then rolled like a flood over the prairies and hills behind Chicago and Milwaukee, when, after a short war, the last Indians were removed beyond the Mississippi.

The Day of Road Making and Canals

This was the beginning of a feverish era of canal digging and road making. Massachusetts opened a stage coach road from Boston to Albany. The government completed the Cumberland Road up the Potomac Valley to Wheeling. Pennsyl-

ed with travel, as fast as it was finished. There was a continuous procession of stage coaches, private carriages, men on horseback, families in caravans, mountains of freight on four-horse wagons, farm wagons loaded with produce, pedestrians with packs on their backs, droves of horses, cattle and sheep. All the world and his wife and children, goods and animals seemed to be moving west.

Lake Erie was connected with the Ohio and the Wabash with canals, and Lake Michigan with the Illinois River. Canal boats, pulled by horses

On the Santa Fe Trail



Goods used to be carried like this on the backs of mules as well as in wagons over the Santa Fe Trail, which had so much to do with the development of our great West. The Santa Fe trail began in St. Louis, ran across Missouri and Arkansas, turned south to El Paso and then continued west by the Gila River to Los Angeles and San Francisco.

trotting on the tow path, made four miles an hour. Little Jimmie Garfield, and many another poor and ambitious boy of the backwoods, drove horses along the tow paths of these early canals. And every center of population was the starting point for stage coaches. In the middle thirties the Detroit-Chicago Post Road, three hundred miles long, was opened through woods, sloughs, gullies and sand dunes.

Many projected canals and turnpike roads were never finished. Before they could even be begun, the era of railroad building opened. Strap rails had, for years, been used for horse cars. On these roads loco-

Then Came the Railroads motives that looked like fire engines were tried. It was long, however, before they could be used on steep grades, or before sufficient power was developed to pull heavy loads. And every road was stopped on the banks of such rivers as the Hudson,

Delaware, Potomac, Ohio and Mississippi, which no one dreamed, as yet, of bridging. Everything had to be ferried over streams of any great width or depth. It was 1848 before the first ten miles of railroad were run out across the swamps west of Chicago. But the very first train found a cargo of wheat waiting at the Desplaines River. When this North Western Railroad was pushed out to Galena on the Mississippi, it was possible to ship lumber from the pineries of Michigan and Wisconsin to build houses for settlers on the prairies of Iowa.

Fremont and the "Wild West"

Up to the middle of the century the country west of eastern Kansas and the Missouri River was still a wilderness. It was not wholly unknown, however, nor entirely uninhabited. It had its hunters and trappers, and there were forts and trading posts at Omaha and Leaven-

The Great March



This picture by E. H. Blashfield, called simply "Westward," hangs in the Iowa state capitol at Des Moines. western plains in the fashion you see represented here. The roadside was strewn with the bones of their out across the vast prairies, but the spirit of civilization, carrying books, free government and a knowledge work, hardship and suffering. See if you can find all these things and others represented in Blashfield's paint-

worth. In some strange way the old Spanish mission town, mining and ranching center of Santa Fe, had been kept alive for two and a half centuries. Hearing that it was ill-supplied from Mexico, the merchants of St. Louis reopened the Indian trail, now followed by the Santa Fe railroad, and shipped goods regularly by way of mule pack-train. This was in 1822. The Santa Fe Trail had been traveled thus for twenty years when General Fremont began his exploration of our western highlands, and won the name of "The Pathfinder." Taking Kit Carson for a guide, he tramped from Missouri to California and from the Columbia to the Rio Grande.

Going up the North Platte River, he found the South Pass through the Rockies. Thence by way of the Snake and Columbia Rivers he reached the northwest coast, by a shorter and easier route than that of Lewis and Clark forty years before. Pack trains were soon going over this Oregon Trail, to supply the fur-trading posts. Over this and the branching trail through Salt Lake, the present route of the Union Pacific Road, and the older Santa Fe Trail extended through Pueblo and Navajo villages, three thin streams of migration began to flow to Oregon and California. In southern California Fremont had found many old Spanish mission settle-

to the Westward



Iowa was settled by emigrants from the East who marched the weary miles between their old homes and the oxen and horses that died on the way. They left the cornfields and settlements behind them when they set out. Agriculture went with them. They were strong, fearless and sturdy, and their women were used to roughing.

ments, irrigated farms and sheep ranches. Emigrants from the East were growing wheat in the Sacramento Valley when the close of the Mexican War gave to the United States all the land north of the Rio Grande and back to the Pacific Ocean.

California and Its Gold

With the discovery of gold in California in 1848, that trickling stream of travel became a torrent, which leaped across 1,500 miles of buffalo plains, jagged mountains, cactus-strewn desert, and towering glacier-capped ranges to the green valleys and pebble-bedded rivers of the coast.

*The Rush to
the Land of
Fortune*

People went by tens of thousands. Easterners took ship at some Atlantic seaport. In the Middle West steam boats carried gold-seekers to New Orleans. The voyage by sea was around Cape Horn or down to Panama. There, as in old Spanish treasure-fleet days, they crossed the fifty-mile-wide Isthmus by mule pack-train. But many proceeded to Chicago, which then had 20,000 people. There they bought the canvas-covered caravans called "Prairie Schooners," horses or oxen, flour, bacon, beans, blankets, clothing, guns, mining tools, and water barrels, for the two-thousand-mile overland journey. Eighty thousand men, some women and a few chil-

dren passed through Chicago, bound for the gold fields, in the summer of 1849.

In the Geography articles you will find descriptions of the prairie, mountain, desert and coast country, over which passed this historic migration. Many people died on the way. Later comers found their bleaching bones, their broken wagons and the ashes of their camp fires along the trail. But many more did get through all the perils in safety, and mining camps quickly sprang up along the gravelly streams of California. Some found gold and

*Gold that
Grew from
the Soil* grew rich quickly. Many more were disappointed. But very few went back

East. They remained to grow golden wheat, golden oranges, to herd sheep and work the forests. The beautiful coast land had many other sources of wealth besides its precious minerals. California was admitted as a state in 1850, four years after Iowa and eleven years before Kansas.

But much of the travel for the next twenty years was by the primitive methods described. The Salt Lake Trail was extended to Sacramento, and the Santa Fe Trail to Los Angeles. Over these, pack-trains carried freight, and stage coaches carried passengers. Mail was by pony express, fleet riders covering a distance of two thousand miles in ten days. A telegraph line spanned the continent in 1861. And here and there, in every part of the highlands, groups of men appeared. Hunters became prospectors searching for gold. The precious metal was discovered, first in Colorado, then in Nevada and Utah, and silver in Montana, Arizona and many scat-

tered places. Denver sprang up at the foot of the mountain wall, a half-way station for an immense freight business across the plains and central supply depot for the miners.

The Railroads to the Coast

All this development led to the building of the Union Pacific Railroad, a task of engineering, financing and endurance of men which still excites the wonder of the world. And while it was being pushed across mountain and desert, Eads was spanning the Mississippi with a steel-arch bridge, resting on piers, driven through a hundred-foot depth of river mud.

Fourteen years later, in 1883, the Northern Pacific Railroad was completed from Lake Superior to Puget Sound. It was built to reach the mines of the mountain and coast states. But that and the Southern Pacific, Santa Fe and Great Northern roads all opened up new corn and wheat country, and a ranching region at the base of the mountain wall, which stretched from Texas to Canada. The old "Great American Desert" disappeared from the maps.

What a historic march across the continent! Boone reached Kentucky in 1769. In 1869, exactly a hundred years later, the whistle of the locomotive answered the salute of steamers on San Francisco Bay. In the beginning of that century there were not more than 2,000,000 in the thirteen colonies along the Atlantic seaboard. At the end of it there were 40,000,000 between the two oceans, and one-third of these were west of the Alleghenies. In another story you will learn where all these brave, determined people came from.

Fremont, "The Pathfinder"



The mountains are put in the background of John G. Fremont's picture because he was a famous explorer of the Rockies; the cannon tells you that he saw service on many battlefields. He was a major-general in the United States army, as you can see by the two stars on his epaulettes. Fremont was a brave soldier and an unusually good explorer. He also knew how to write interesting descriptions of his expeditions, but he was too fiery and independent to submit to discipline easily, and he lacked the organizing ability necessary for managing campaigns such as were required of him in the Civil War. However, he held many honorable government positions and did his work creditably in them. He was twice nominated for the presidency. On account of his brilliant achievements as an explorer, he came to be known as "The Pathfinder," and received medals from the Royal Geographical Society of London and the Geographical Society of Berlin.

The Fatherland

*Where is the true man's fatherland?
Is it where he by chance is born?
Doth not the yearning spirit scorn
In such scant borders to be spanned?
Oh yes! his fatherland must be
As the blue heaven, wide and free!*

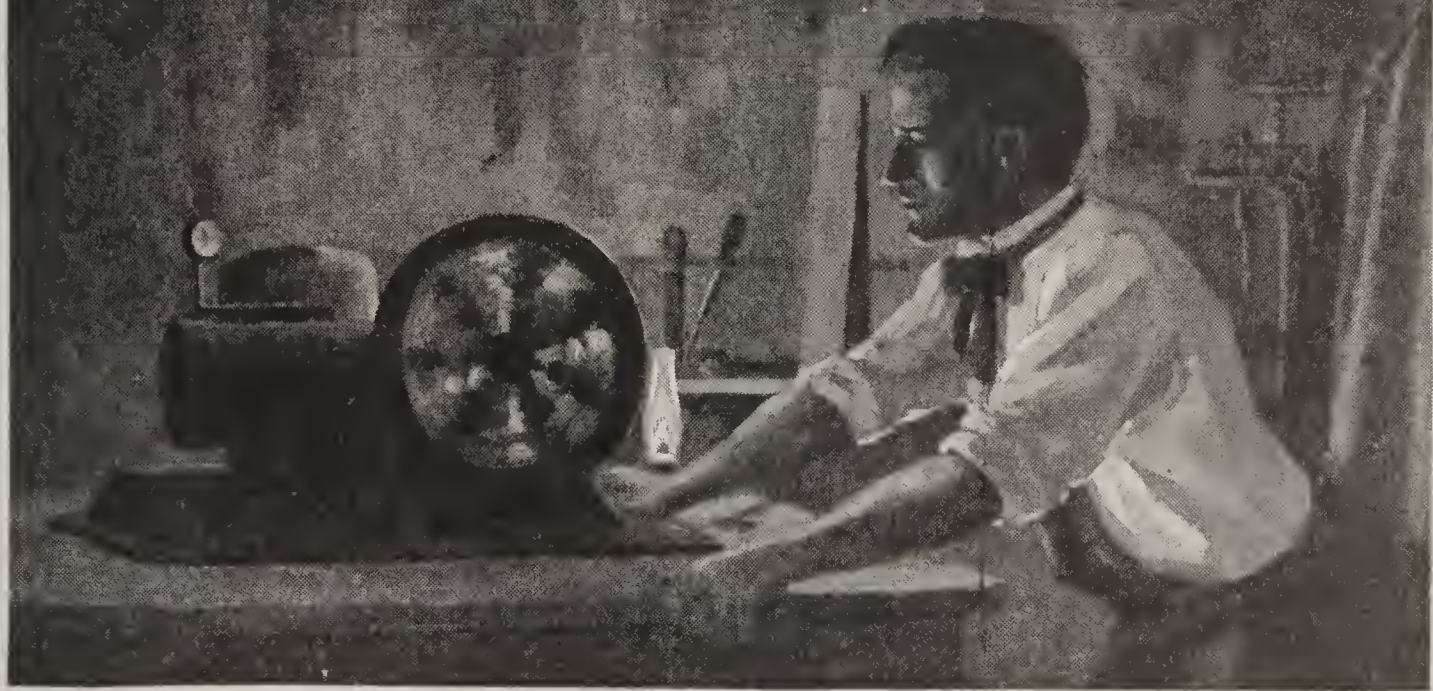
*Is it alone where freedom is,
Where God is God and man is man?
Doth he not claim a broader span
For the soul's love of home than this?
Oh yes! his fatherland must be
As the blue heaven, wide and free!*

*Where'er a human heart doth wear
Joy's myrtle-wreath or sorrow's gyves,
Where'er a human spirit strives
After a life more true and fair,
There is the true man's birthplace grand,
His is the world-wide fatherland!*

*Where'er a single slave doth pine,
Where'er one man may help another—
Thank God for such a birthright, brother—
That spot of earth is thine and mine!
There is the true man's birthplace, grand,
His is a world-wide fatherland!*

JAMES RUSSELL LOWELL

The Golden Age of American Invention



IT is the most wonderful experience, as one grows older and reads more history, to discover that there are long periods of time when little progress is made in any field; and other periods when the stage is filled with remarkable men, and events of immense consequence follow each other in rapid succession.

Such stirring times of great men and shining deeds, that create new heritages for the race, are called "Ages." The Age of Pericles in Greece reached the pinnacle of Art. The Augustan Age of Rome brought government to its highest point of power and glory. The Elizabethan Age was one of inspiration in English literature; and the Age of Discovery of Columbus gave us a

planet for human activities. You can not read of such times without a thrill of pride and joy that men have achieved so much. But here is a curious thing: you can live in such a time without knowing it.

And We Live in a Golden Age

A thousand years from now historians will probably speak of ours as the Age of Invention. Chains have been struck from the hands of labor, and countless tasks given to machines. The industries and population of civilized countries have been multiplied, time and distance conquered by steam and electricity, and all the peoples of the world have become neighbors, concerned about each other's affairs and trading in each other's markets.

"Golden Age" in History

This age is a long one, and every western nation has had a part in it. Indeed, England calls it the Victorian Age of her history, but it be-

capitals of Europe. And I think, too, that it began also in the little farm and village workshops of colonial New England, where every

Harvesting in Bible Days



Here you can see how they used to harvest wheat in Bible days. The old ways of harvesting are still used by small farmers in Egypt, and this reproduction of a painting by the famous French artist, Gerome, called "Treading out the Corn," shows how they did it. "Corn" as used in the Bible means wheat. You will notice the oxen wear blinders, but they are not muzzled. Do you remember that the Bible says: "Thou shalt not muzzle the ox that treadeth out the corn"? Poor dumb beasts, they worked hard and were not to be cheated of their wages. That some of the old Egyptian farmers at least were too stingy to let their oxen help themselves to a little wheat now and then as they were threshing, is shown by the inscription on one of the walls of a tomb along the Nile. This inscription has been freely translated,

"Hi! along! oxen! tread the corn faster,

The chaff for yourselves, the grain for your master."

Now a word about those blinders: These blinders are to keep the ox's mind on his work. Notice also the palm branches hanging from the blinders of the oxen. What do you suppose these are for? You have noticed how the cow tosses back her head to chase away flies that her tail cannot reach, haven't you? Don't you see how such a fly brush as these steady old Egyptians here are wearing, would help out?

The Bible has many references to work in the harvest field. Here are some passages. Look them up and see how interesting they are: Gen. 42:2; Acts 7:12; Deut. 24:19; 1 Cor. 9:9; 1 Tim. 5:18; Judg. 15:5; Job 5:26; Pss. 4:7, 65:9, 13; 72:16; Prov. 11:26; Zech. 9:17; Matt. 12:1; Mark 2:23; Luke 6:1; Mark 4:28; John 12:24; 1 Sam. 12:17; Job 31:40; Pss. 81:16; 147:14; Jer. 12:13; 23:28; Matt. 3:12; Luke 22:31.

gan fifty years before Queen Victoria was born, and is not yet ended. And the United States has the most names on the roll of honor, and the credit of many of the greatest inventions and scientific discoveries.

In our country this age began with Benjamin Franklin, who captured electricity with a kite-string and a bottle, and made scientific experiments that won him fame in the

man and boy was obliged to mend and make his tools, and contrive conveniences of every sort. Franklin found his own sort in the groups of scientists in London, Paris and Edinburgh, who were investigating the properties of electricity and steam. And he was in England when James Watt, the instrument-maker for Glasgow University, im-

*Beginnings of
Our Inven-
tive Age*

proved the stationary steam engine. Hitherto this was used simply to pump water out of deep coal mines. It must long have had only this limited use but for the fact that James Hargreaves soon after invented the spinning jenny and Richard Arkwright the spinning frame. When the steam engine was set to turning the wheels of cotton and woolen mills, all the conditions of the textile industries were changed. Human hands could not compete with machines. This was a hardship at first, for it threatened to leave many hands idle.

Up to about 1765 every sort of work in both the Old World and the New was done in much the same, slow, crude way as it had been done hundreds of years before. Wind still drove all the ships at sea; wind and water turned the wheels of saw and grist-mills, and animals hauled all the heavy loads and carried travelers by land. Manufacturing was done by hand in homes and small shops. Big sailing vessels were put together with the few tools of the smith and carpenter. Spinning wheels, looms, and the turner's and potter's wheels were worked by foot-power.

The Steam Engine and England's Monopoly

The invention of the steam engine, spinning frame, and power loom gave England a monopoly of the cloth market. In order to keep it,

she guarded the secrets of the new inventions jealously. No mill-worker was allowed to emigrate, nor any model or drawing of machines to be taken out of the country. As to foreign lands, this was necessary at a time when there was no protection for patents, as there is today. But it was unjust to the English colonies in America, whose development and prosperity would have

How Eli Saw the Wheels Go Round



Have you ever heard a watch spoken of as a "turnip"? You see from the shape of this one how the word originated. But the most interesting thing about this watch is that it helped to teach Eli Whitney how to invent the cotton gin. Like other boys, he was very much interested in seeing how wheels went round, so one Sunday when the family were at church he took this big silver watch from the peg where it was hanging on the wall. Then with his pocket knife he got it all apart, which was easy enough. Then he put it together in good running order again before the family got back from church—which wasn't easy at all. But that he could do it showed his talent for mechanics and helped start him on the road to invention. He was always making convenient little things for his mother at home and when he grew to be a man, did similar things for his wife. For instance, he made for her a fine bureau with many drawers that were all locked up by locking the top one. Your father probably has a roller-top desk in his office, the drawers of which lock in the same way. He also made many ingenious toys for his children.

added to the wealth of the mother country. It was a bitter thing to see the cotton grown on our Southern plantations carried across the ocean, and brought back as finished goods that could be sold cheaper than the product of the clever and industrious hands of New England women. This was another injustice to add to the many which brought on the Revolutionary War.

After the war the new states felt no scruple about appropriating these new inventions. Men trained in the English mills did manage to slip

How Steam

Helped Bring the Revolution

away to America. In 1790 Samuel Slater came and reconstructed from memory the entire machinery of Arkwright's cotton mills. Before 1800 we had cotton, woolen and carpet factories in operation, had opened coal and iron mines, and were making bar and sheet iron, and nails, sewing thread, pins and many other small articles by machinery.

And now another difficulty arose. The mills used so much cotton that the fiber became scarce. The South could grow larger crops, but there was little profit in growing them so long as the tightly embedded seeds had to be separated from the soft, clinging lint by hand. A slave woman or child could not earn what it cost to keep her at that slow, tedious task. A machine was needed to gin cotton. And who was so likely to be able to make one as a "handy" Yankee?

The Story of Eli Whitney

That is what Mrs. Nathaniel Greene, widow of the Revolutionary War hero, thought one morning, as she sat in the drawing room of her big plantation house on the Savannah River, Georgia. A company of wealthy planters of the neighborhood, out for a horseback ride, had stopped to lunch with her and were talking of the wealth that a cotton-ginning machine would bring to the South. Calling a servant, she sent for a guest of the house, and when a tall, grave student from New England came in, she introduced him.

"Gentlemen, this is my ingenious young Yankee friend, Mr. Whitney. Explain what you require and I am sure he can help you."

A Puritan from a bare farm

How Eli Looked as a Man

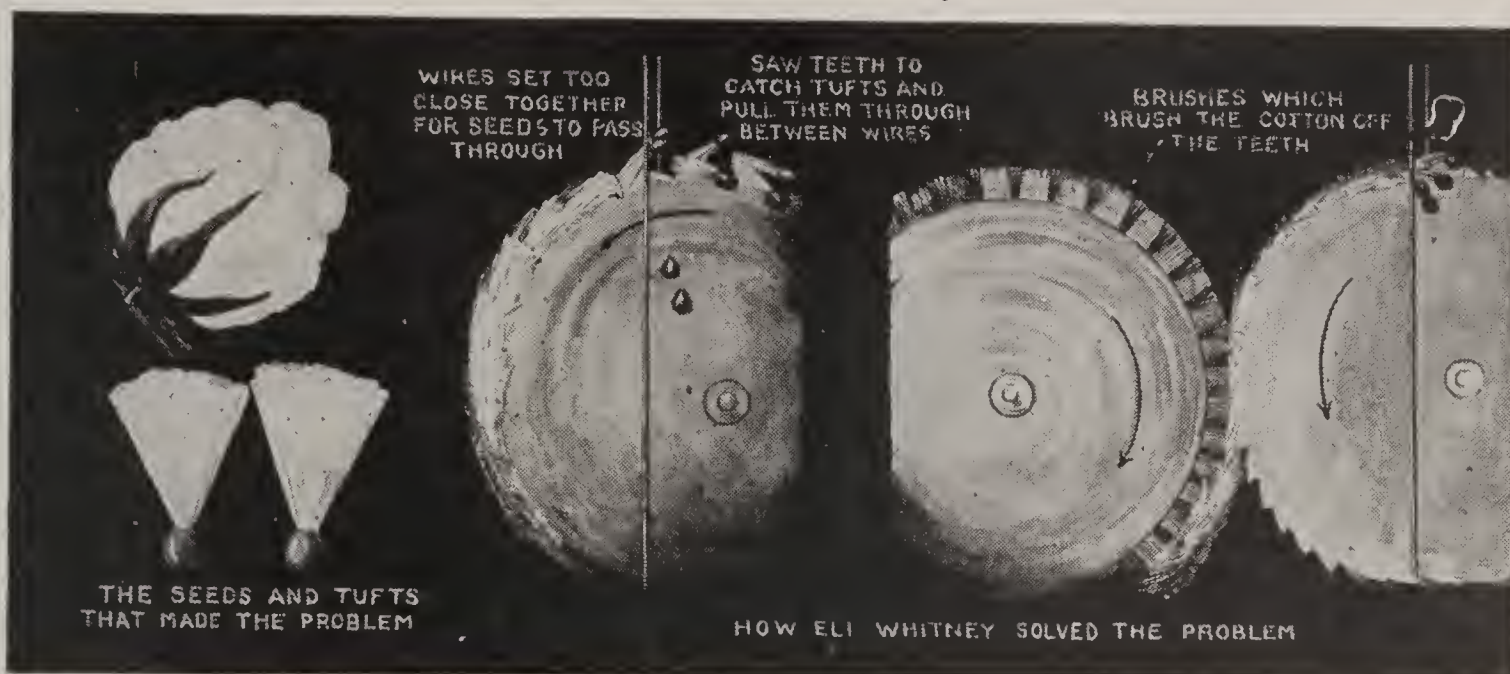


Eli Whitney

Here is the boy who took the watch apart. But now he is a famous man and this is how he looks and how he signs his name. You see he writes a firm, strong hand and with a flourish that students of handwriting say means imagination. Like Robert Fulton, he was tall and fine looking, with hair that curled slightly and like Fulton he usually wore it hanging over his forehead. Like Fulton, also, he had very polished manners and was a social favorite. Though usually dignified and somewhat stately in his manners, he could enjoy a merry frolic with the little folks with whom he was always a great favorite.

among the stony hills of Massachusetts, Eli Whitney had recently been graduated from Yale College. Needing money to fit himself for the bar, he had come south to find employment as a tutor in the family of some wealthy planter. As a boy he was so clever with his hands that the farm workshop had been turned over to him. And he had earned his way through college by mending every disabled clock, gun, spinning wheel, and violin in New Haven. To repay the hospitality of the kind lady who befriended him in the South, he took charge of Mrs. Greene's plantation crafts shops and

The Cotton Seed Puzzle and How Eli Whitney Solved It



This picture shows plainly the workings of Whitney's great but simple invention. On the left is the problem he had to solve—how to pull the seeds off the cotton. After thinking it over he saw that it would amount to the same thing if he pulled the cotton off the seeds. The two other pictures show how he did it. Note in the third picture how the brush-wheel and the toothed-wheel turn toward each other as explained in the description of the original Whitney model; but remember that the brush-wheel turns faster than the toothed-wheel.

made skilled workmen out of negro smiths and carpenters.

Before he was asked to invent the cotton gin he had never examined a cotton boll, but he saw at once that only fingers of some sort could do the work. Why not hundreds of little steel fingers instead of ten large human fingers? On that simple idea he worked out an ingenious machine. It was simply a big rolling-

Invention of the "Iron Fingers" pin, fitted into a box, turned with a crank, and set with rows of steel teeth. Above the roll, and half enclosing it, was fixed a semicircular steel plate with narrow slots through which the teeth slipped as the roll was turned. Cotton dropped from a hopper above into this plate. As the roll was turned the teeth caught the lint and pulled it through the slots. The stripped seeds slid down into an outside box.

This invention involved no great principles of mechanics and physics as did the steam engine, but it was,

and must always be, one of the most useful and valuable of labor-saving inventions. It brought immediate wealth to the South, and raw material to build up the cotton mills of New England. So, with plantations and factories prospering, we are sorry and ashamed that his invention never brought to Mr. Whitney anything but empty honor and years of misfortune. His machine was stolen, his patents infringed, his factory burned. But his creative brain and business genius won him a competence in the manufacture of fire-arms. Like Arkwright in England, Whitney built up a model factory. He set the steam engine to driving machine tools of his own designing, brought labor under the discipline of direction and regular hours, trained ordinary mechanics into expert gunmakers, and standardized his own product. From boyhood to old age his motto was: "Whatever is worth doing, is worth doing well."

Born in 1765, he lived until 1825.

How This "Mechanical Elephant" Sucks

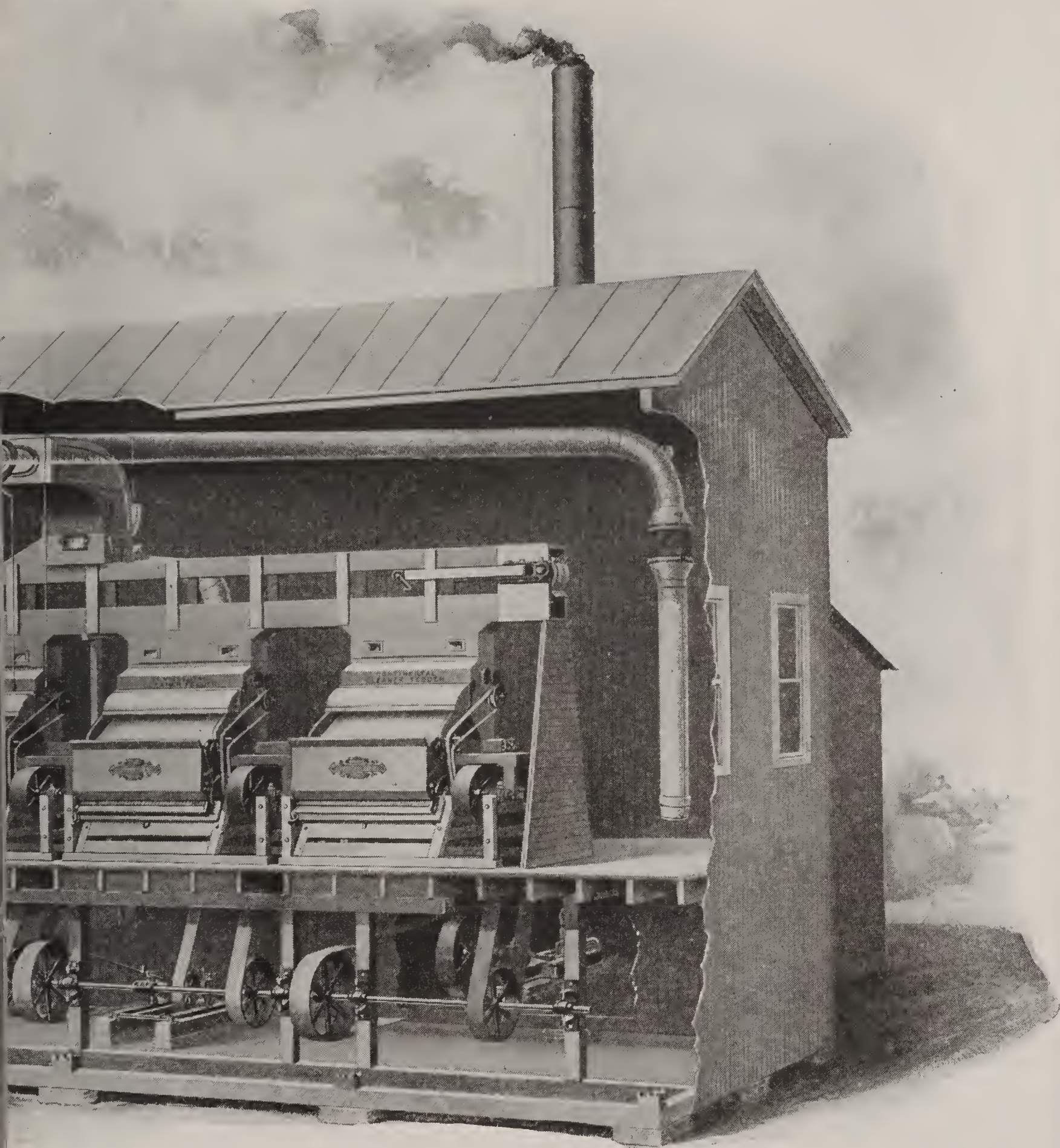


The first gin that Whitney invented simply took the seeds out of the cotton and left all the dead leaves and other dirt to be picked out later. After that it was baled. In the modern cotton mill like that shown in the picture, the cotton is not only freed from seeds but, to a large extent, leaves and dirt, and by a connection between the gins and the baling machine, is baled before it leaves the mill. The pipe hanging down about the center of the picture sucks up cotton as an elephant's trunk sucks up water. As soon as it is lowered on the load of cotton as it comes in the wagon

from the fields, a large fan at the back end of the pipe starts to revolve, sucking the cotton up into the separator which you see attached to the pipe above the gins. You can easily identify this separator from the whole, detailed picture of it which is shown on the next page.

A similar pipe on the right-hand side of the picture is called the over-flow pipe. Sometimes when the cotton is too wet, it is sucked off the wagon faster than the gins can take care of it, so the over-flow pipe helps out the gins by carrying away part of this

Up the Cotton and Tramps It into Bales



cotton, and dropping it on the platform on the end of the row of gins. Then when the wagon has been unloaded, this surplus cotton is sucked back through the gins again.

The long trough running above the gins is called the feeder, because through it the cotton passes into the hoppers of the gins. After entering the hopper, the cotton passes into the saw teeth, the seed is separated from it, and the lint blown out through another pipe to the condenser. The condenser is the large box you see at the left side of the picture, with the

two pipes sticking up from it. The condenser screens out whatever dust and dirt may still remain in the cotton. This is also where the air leaves the cotton, passing off through those pipes. But in passing off, notice how the air is still put to work. It blows the cotton against the screen on a small revolving drum. In this way the cotton is laid out in beautiful white layers before it is passed onto the press to be pressed into bales. Notice the wheel on the outside of the box. It is this wheel that turns the drum inside the box.

Original Model of Eli Whitney's Cotton Gin

It was in 1807, while his fortunes were at their lowest ebb, that another American, born within a month of himself, sprang to instant fame and wealth with the invention of the steamboat.

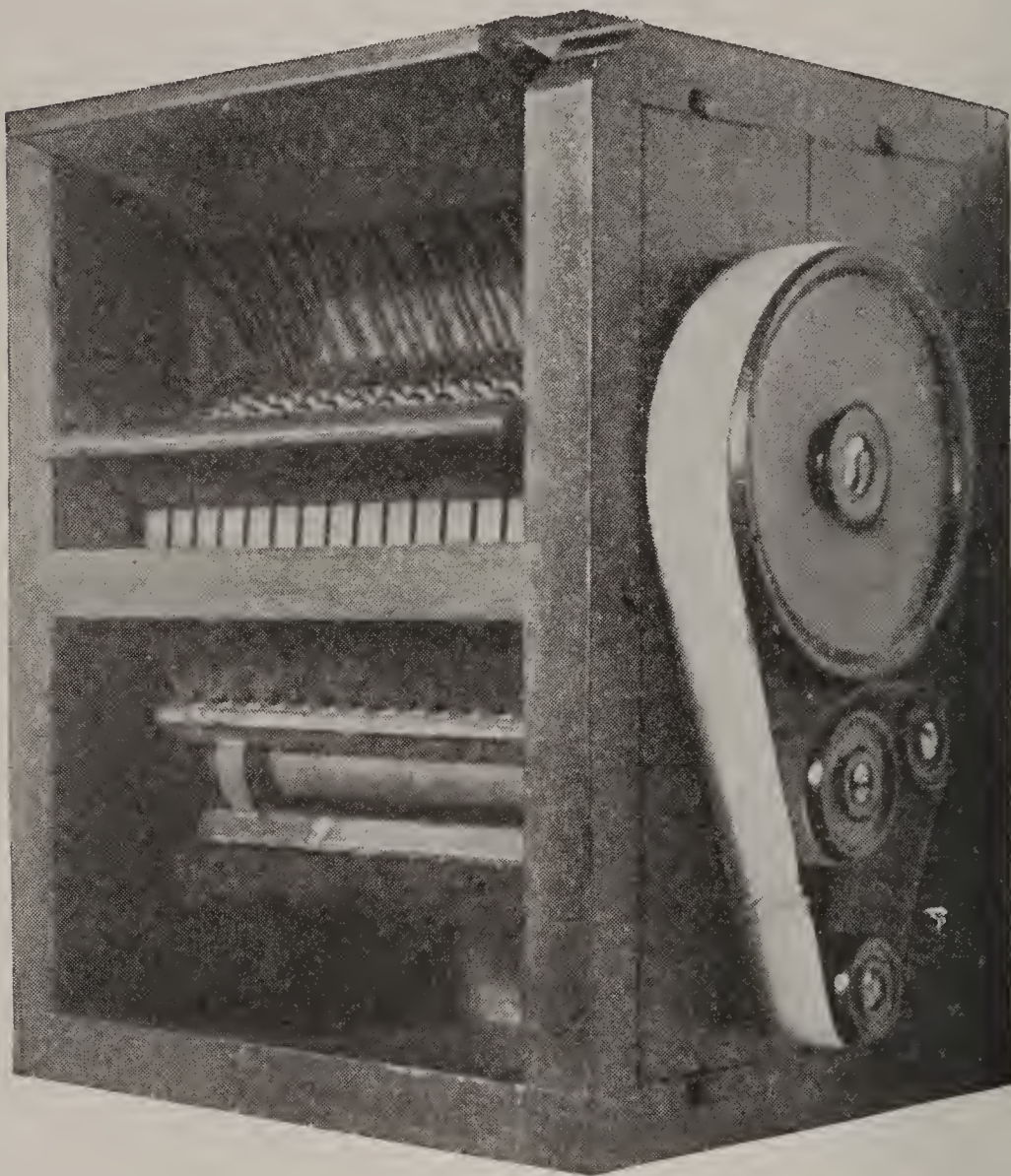
Story of "Quicksilver Bob"

The boys who lived in Lancaster, Pennsylvania, and who were ten years old when news of the battle of Lexington reached the German and Quaker village on the Susquehanna, were lucky. For a playmate they had a merry, quick-witted Irish lad who, because of some amusing experiments he had made with the liquid metal that runs up and down in the thermometer tube, had won the nickname of Quicksilver Bob.

The name exactly described Robert Fulton; such an active mind, nimble fingers, lively curiosity and astonishing ingenuity! A boy like that is liable

Busy Fingers and Busy Brain

so careful of the property of others that he was welcome in every craft shop in the town. Workmen loaned him their tools and the druggist gave him chemicals. He made his own rockets for



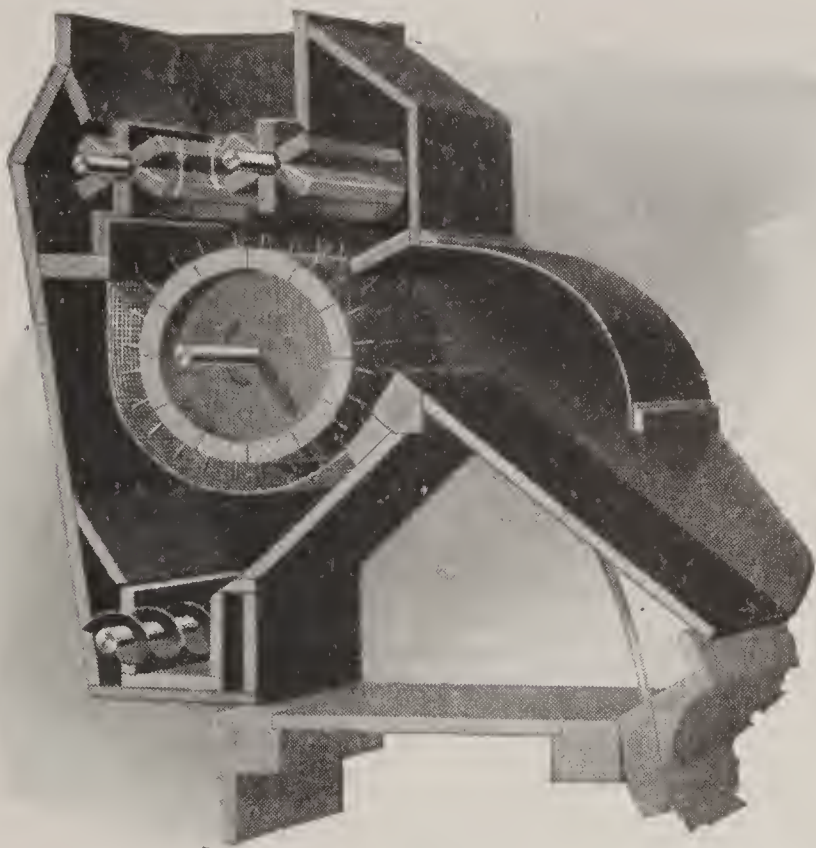
As you will see by the two-page picture farther on, a modern gin plant is quite a complicated affair, but the heart of it all is just the simple bit of machinery shown in Whitney's model of the cotton gin, of which this is a picture. The original is in the Smithsonian Institute in Washington. Turn your hands toward one another with the fingers spread out. Now pass the fingers of one hand between those of the other. There, you have made the most important part of the cotton gin, the part that pulls the lint from the seeds.

Just as the fingers of one hand passed between the fingers of the other, wheels in the gin with teeth in them, pass between slits in an iron bed as indicated by the wires in the upper part of the model. The slits are so small that the teeth draw the cotton through, but the seeds catch and are pulled off. In the lower part of the model is a revolving brush which brushes the cotton from the teeth of the other wheel. The belting is arranged in that peculiar way so that the wheel containing the teeth and the wheel containing the brushes turn toward each other and at the same time the brush-toothed wheel revolves much faster than the other. It is for this reason that it brushes off the cotton. If both wheels moved at the same rate, the brushes would simply pack the cotton against the teeth.

the Fourth of July, and his own pencils of powdered and molded graphite. He built a windlass for the people of the town to pull heavy loads up a steep hill. He designed a gun and calculated how far it would shoot. For this he was obliged to study mathematics and physics. But the thing that excited the admiration of the other boys

The "Works" of the Feeder and the Separator

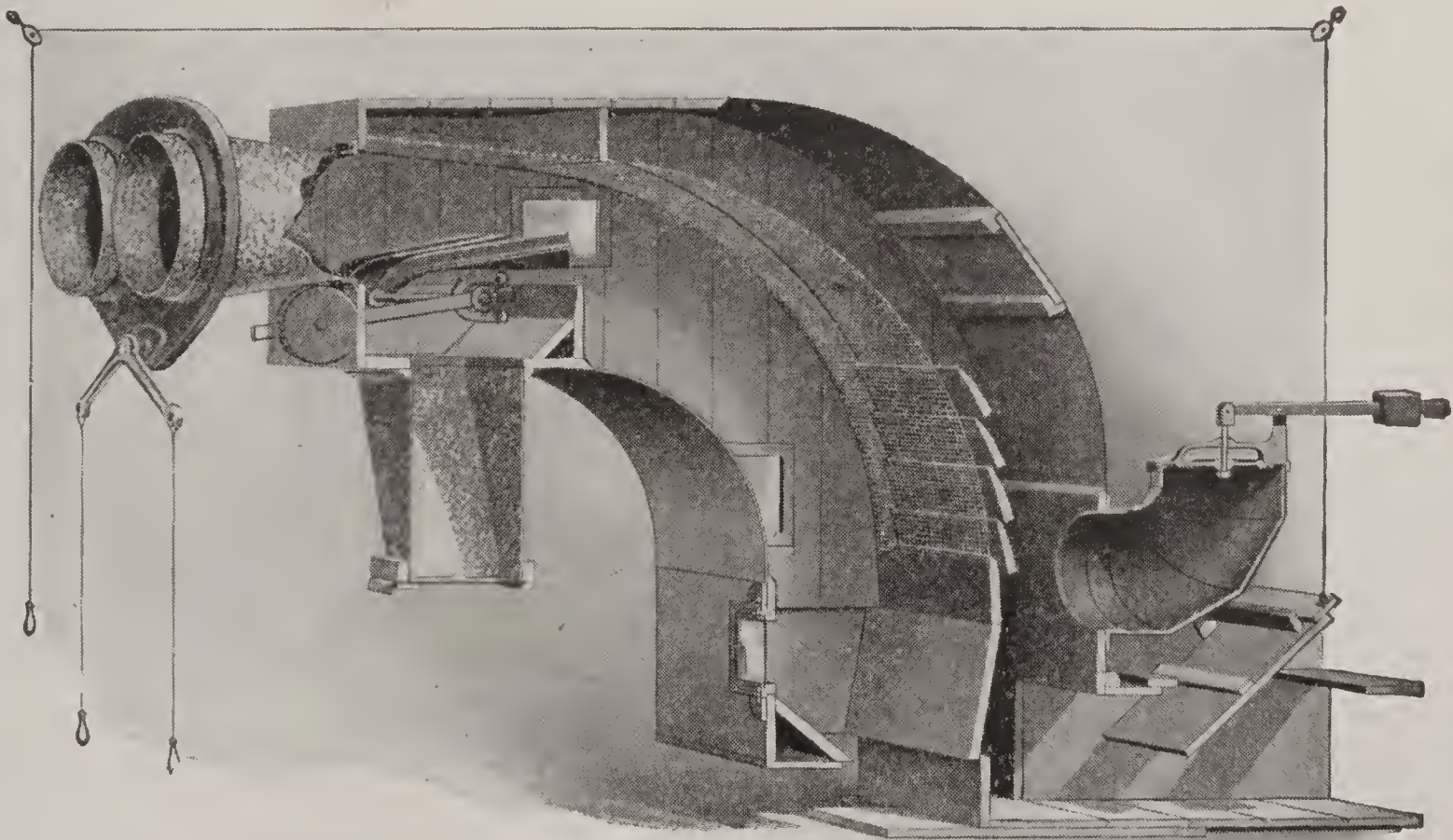
This is a view of the inside of one of the feeders, one of which is located in the top section of each gin. The two rollers turn toward each other and so pull the cotton down to the teeth of the drum. This drum revolves very fast, pulling the cotton out by bits until it is very fine. In doing this, it beats the cotton over the screen just below and screens out the dry leaves and dirt. By this same revolving of the drum, the cotton is passed on down the "slide" on the right into the gin. The "corkscrew" affair below the drum with its screen, is what is called a spiral conveyor. It catches the dirt as it falls through the screen and carries it out.



The Inside of the Separator

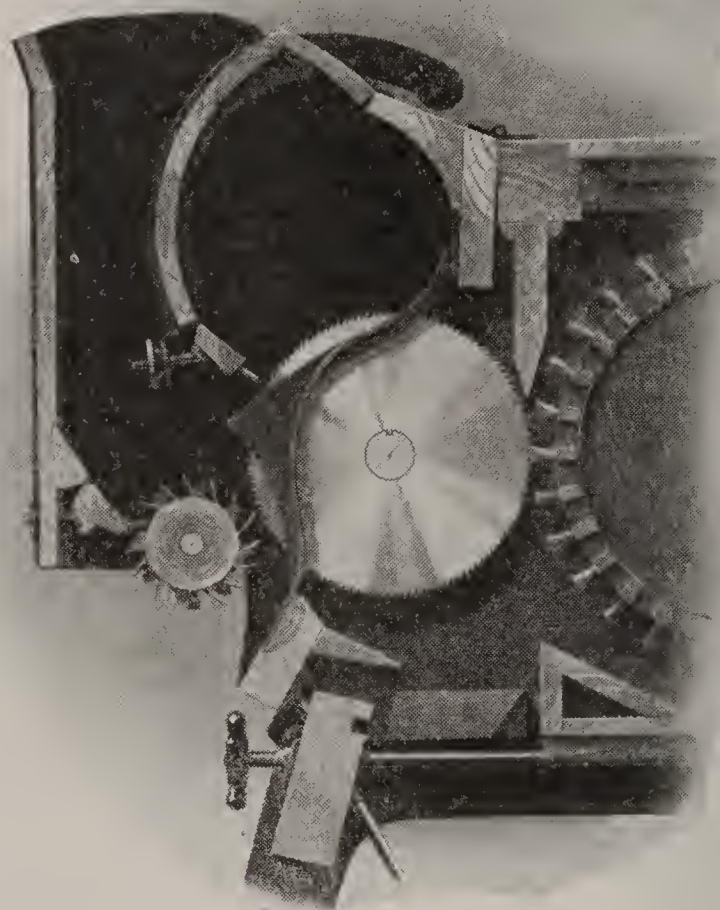
Here you see the separator and how it works. Notice the entrance for the double pipes. One of these is the pipe from the wagon and the other is the over-flow pipe. As the cotton is sucked in by the air, it passes through a screen

which screens out the coarser dirt. This screen is shown just at the entrance above the weight. Then the air passes through the screen and the cotton itself drops down into the distributor, as shown in the double-page picture.

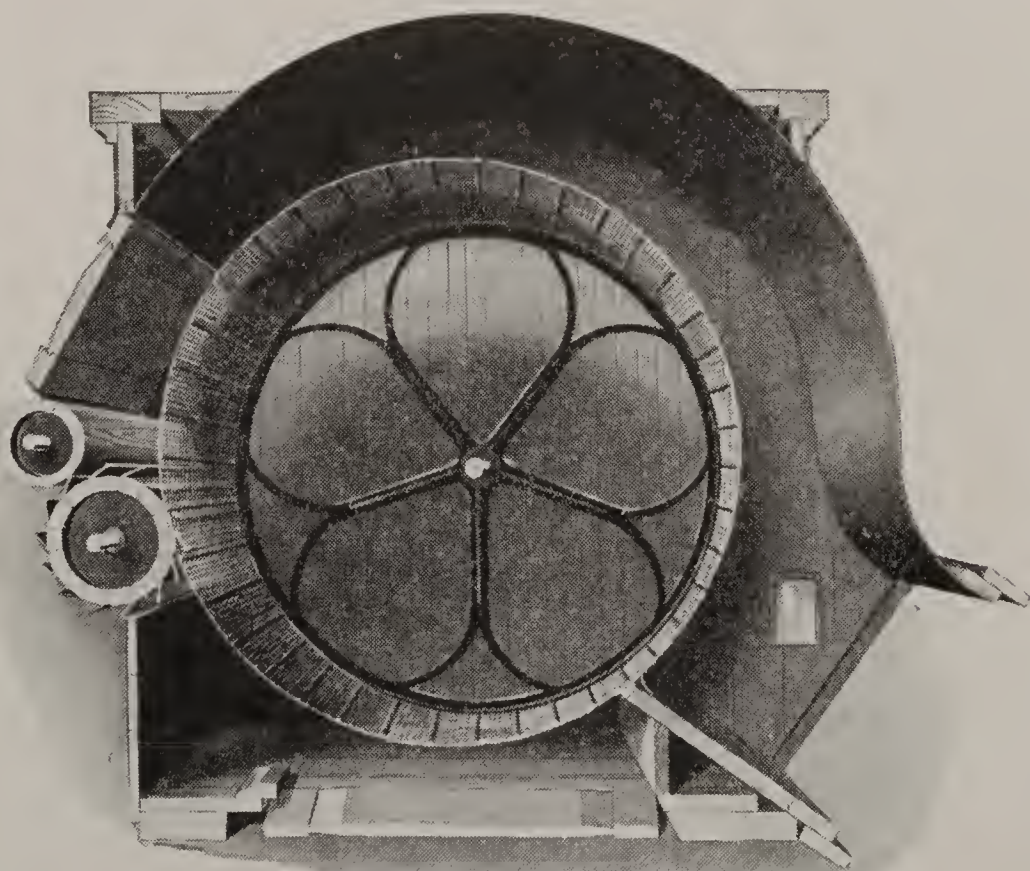


How the Gin Cleans and Seeds the Cotton and Then Brushes Its Own Teeth

At the right is an inside or sectional view of a type of gin which is specially made to handle what is called dirty cotton, that is to say, cotton containing an unusual amount of dirt, dead leaves, etc. The cotton from the feeder enters at the top and is forced down to the wheel below, which looks like a whirligig. This wheel turns toward the left very rapidly and pulls the cotton through some coarse teeth which remove the dirt from the cotton, and at the same time pull it around to the teeth of the saw. The saw then pulls it up between the ribs, as they are called, and removes the seeds. The saw-toothed wheel carries the cotton to the wheel with the brushes. The saw-tooth wheel and the brush wheel turn toward each other, but the brush wheel turns much faster and so brushes the cotton off the saw teeth and forces it out of the gin, where it is conveyed by air to the condenser shown below.



Now, let's have a look into the inside of the condenser. The cotton from the gin is forced into the right side of the machine against the screen drum. Here any remaining dirt is removed and the lint blown against the screen in a soft layer. Then the screen revolving to the left carries this layer to the rollers you see at the left, which convey it on to the baler. On the larger of the two rollers are rubber flaps which scrape the lint clean from the screen and, by the turning of the roller, push it on the bales.



Quicksilver Bob's First Steamboat



Perhaps you don't recognize him, but this is the boy who covered the sea with the giant steamships that now ply between all the great ports of the world. At the time which this picture represents, he was not the great Robert Fulton, but little Bob Fulton, known as Quicksilver Bob. Like all healthy boys he loved to go fishing, and he had a chum named Christopher Gumpf. They got tired of rowing a heavy boat a long distance when they went fishing, so Bob worked out the plan for this boat. Together they built it and you see it worked! The paddles, when not in use, they took off and hid in the thick bushes by the stream. When Bob grew up he built his famous steamboat on the same general plan, but this time he used coal to make steam instead of supplying it himself as he is doing here.

But he still remained a boy in spirit, as you can see by that playful sketch of the steamboat on the cover of his notebook. And here is something one always likes to remember about this great man with a heart of gold. On one trip of his first ferry boats across the East River to Brooklyn, the chief engineer was caught in the wheels and fatally injured. "I would give all that I am worth or ever hope to be if I could save that man," cried Fulton, and he wept like a child. He was never harsh with his workmen and they all loved to tell about his thoughtfulness of their welfare, and his habit of walking up and down the shop with the rattan cane he always carried, his waistcoat unbuttoned, the ruffles you see in the bust of him, waving from side to side as he paced back and forth for hours thinking out some new mechanical problem.

most was a paddle-wheel that he attached to a boat and turned with a crank. With this clever contrivance he beat all other rowers to the best fishing grounds. Many predicted that he would be an inventor, and, with Watt and Arkwright making such a stir in the world, invention began to look like a serious business.

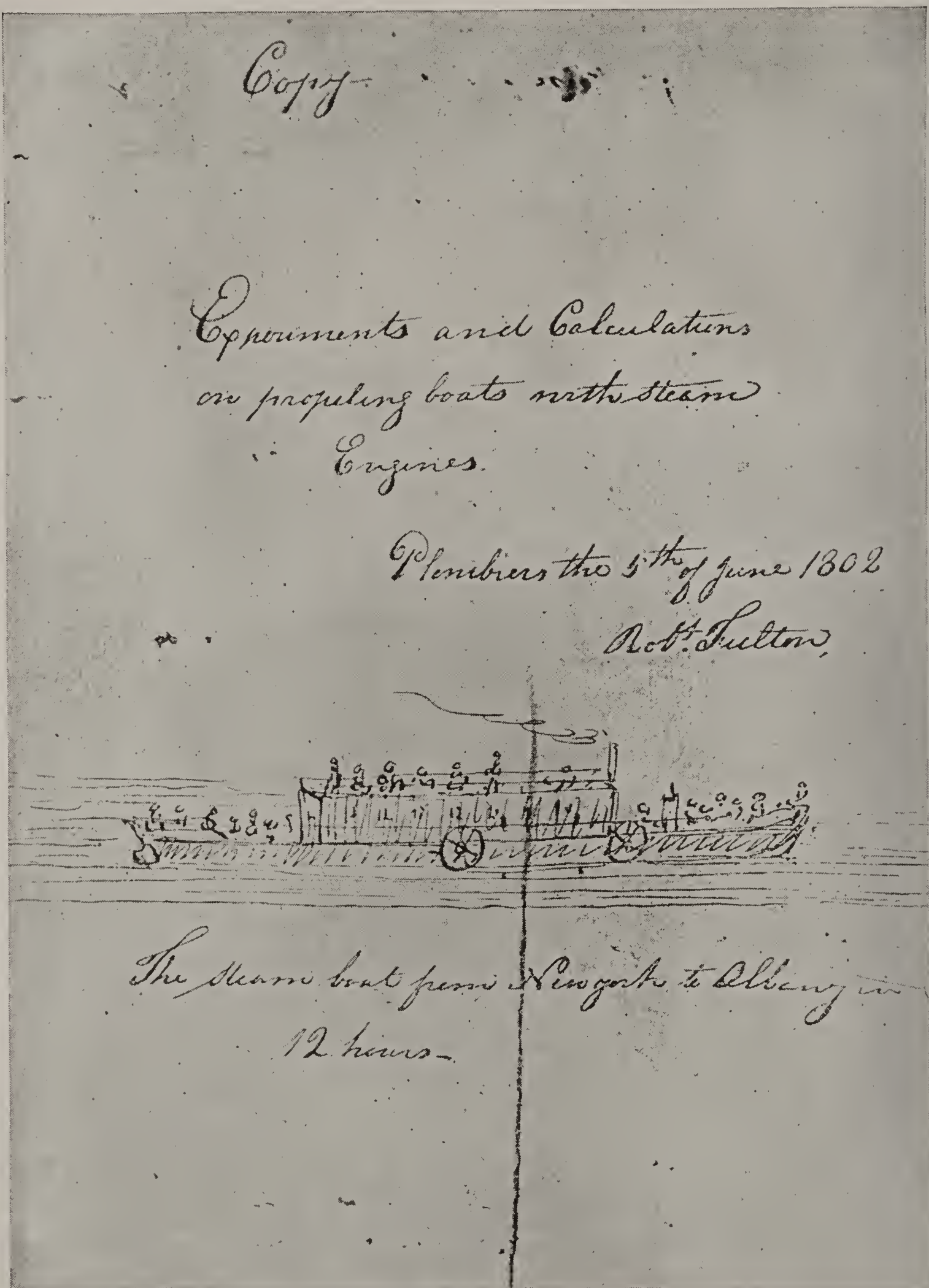
Other people, however, thought young Robert Fulton was to be a great painter, like Benjamin West or Gilbert Stuart. To help his widowed mother he turned his talent for

drawing to the painting of delicate miniature portraits. In this way,

And He by the time he was
Was an twenty-one, he earned
Artist, too! enough money to buy a

farm for his mother and the younger children, and to take himself to London. There he won fame both as an artist and an engineer, and a large income that he spent in experiments. Watt's steam engine was driving all the factory wheels in England. Remembering the paddle-wheel of his boyhood fishing boat,

Fulton's Picture of the Boat that Was to Be



This picture is in the nature of a prophecy—a great prophecy that came true. It is the title page of Fulton's notebook of the experiments and calculations he made before building his first steamboat. The inventors who accomplish things, you know, are not idle dreamers who expect to get results at a bound. They work their way along, step by step. These manuscript notes are in the possession of one of Fulton's descendants, Mrs. A. C. Sutcliffe, of New York City, by whose permission this reproduction of the title page is made.

A Model of Fitch's Steamboat



John Fitch, another American inventor, conceived the two ideas of a steamboat. His first model, like that designed by Fulton, had wheels at the sides, but the following year he replaced the wheels with paddles and it is this later model that is here shown. The original is in the Patent Office at Washington. You see his idea was to reproduce the galleys of the ancient Greeks and Romans, replacing manpower by steam. Looking at this little model, one recalls Homer's fine line in the story of the Odyssey: "They smote with their well-ranged oars, the grey-green brine of the ocean."

Fulton believed that the stationary steam engine could be made to turn the shaft of a big side-wheel, and so force a boat through the water.

This was almost as simple an idea as Whitney's cotton gin, but it took years and a small fortune to work it out to practical success. His first boat, launched on the Seine in Paris, broke in two from the weight of the engine. His second failed to develop sufficient power. But, learning from his mistakes, his third steamed up the Hudson from New York to Albany. Splashing, coughing, and trailing a cloud of smoke and sparks from its pine-wood fire, it "looked like a sawmill afire on a scow," but it showed its heels to every bird-like sailing vessel on the river.

Within a few years steamboats were on every navigable stream and lake of the Atlantic seaboard. In 1811 one was built at Pittsburgh and sent down to New Orleans. With that began the great days of steamboating on the Mississippi. But the famous inventor did not live to see that, nor to see steam navigation

on the ocean. While working on the design of the first steam naval vessel for the government, he died in 1812 at the early age of forty-seven, deservedly loved and sincerely mourned by the people of three countries.

Machines that Labored for Men

A dozen years later George Stephenson, fireman of a steam-pump in an English coal mine, invented the locomotive which, with the iron rail and roadbed, presented many more difficulties than the steamboat. America began to build railroads at once, but produced nothing to match the locomotive before 1840. We were

not idle, however. The war of 1812, cutting off trade with England, obliged us to build more cotton and woolen mills and iron furnaces, and to supply ourselves with shoes, china, glass, paper, furniture, hats, hardware, tools, rope, and fire-arms. It suddenly became patriotic to use things "made in America." And after the war, manufacturing

*Invention
of the
Locomotive*

was encouraged by an import duty, or tariff on foreign goods. With the country prospering, increasing in population and spreading westward, this period was marked by an amazing number of labor-saving machines.

Bricks were pressed and lumber was sawed and planed by machinery. There were steam hoists and dredges, and chain elevators to lift wheat and ore to the tops of mills. The friction match was invented, and cooking and heating stoves. Pens were made of steel, paper and paste-board of straw, and coal gas was used to light the streets of eastern cities. The first threshing machine appeared, to relieve the farmer of back-breaking toil. Pennsylvania developed her vast coal fields. Oil was discovered in 1859, and when the oil fields were extended into Ohio, Pittsburgh became the center of grimy industries.

Iron was brought from upper Michigan, and copper from Lake Superior.

With the settlement of the treeless plains west of the Mississippi, Chicago became the center of an enormous lumber trade, drawing on the pineries of Michigan and Wisconsin.

When the packing business grew up to supply lumber camps, emigrants and gold-seekers, new and better ways had to be found for curing meats. Canal digging, road and

railroad making, bridge building, and multiplying factories, camps and mines created such a demand for rough labor that floods of foreign immigrants poured in. There were labor organizations, strikes and lockouts as early as 1830, in every northern state. All these people had to be transported, clothed, fed and supplied with every necessity of life, at constantly increasing distances. So it was under the pressure of human needs that many mechanical improvements and important inventions were made between 1840 and 1860. As timber grew scarce in the East, structural iron was used in house and bridge building. Wire rope and vulcanized rubber were made.

The steam fire engine, the sewing machine, the Hoe printing press, the McCormick reaper, the photographic camera and the electric telegraph appeared in rapid succession.

How thankful Lincoln was for these inventions! They all came in

Houdin's Bust of Fulton



How this bust of Fulton by Houdin brings out the character of the man; the broad forehead and protruding brow of the practical thinker and the keen observer, the square chin and prominent nose of the man of initiative, the full lips expressing the warm heart and the genial smile of the social favorite.

Fulton was in the right sense, "all things to all men." He was equally at home in polite society and among the workmen in his shop who were all devoted to his interests. His complexion was fair, his hair dark brown and curly, and carelessly scattered over his forehead. His eyes were large, dark and penetrating.

AGE OF INVENTION

Fulton's Undersea Boat



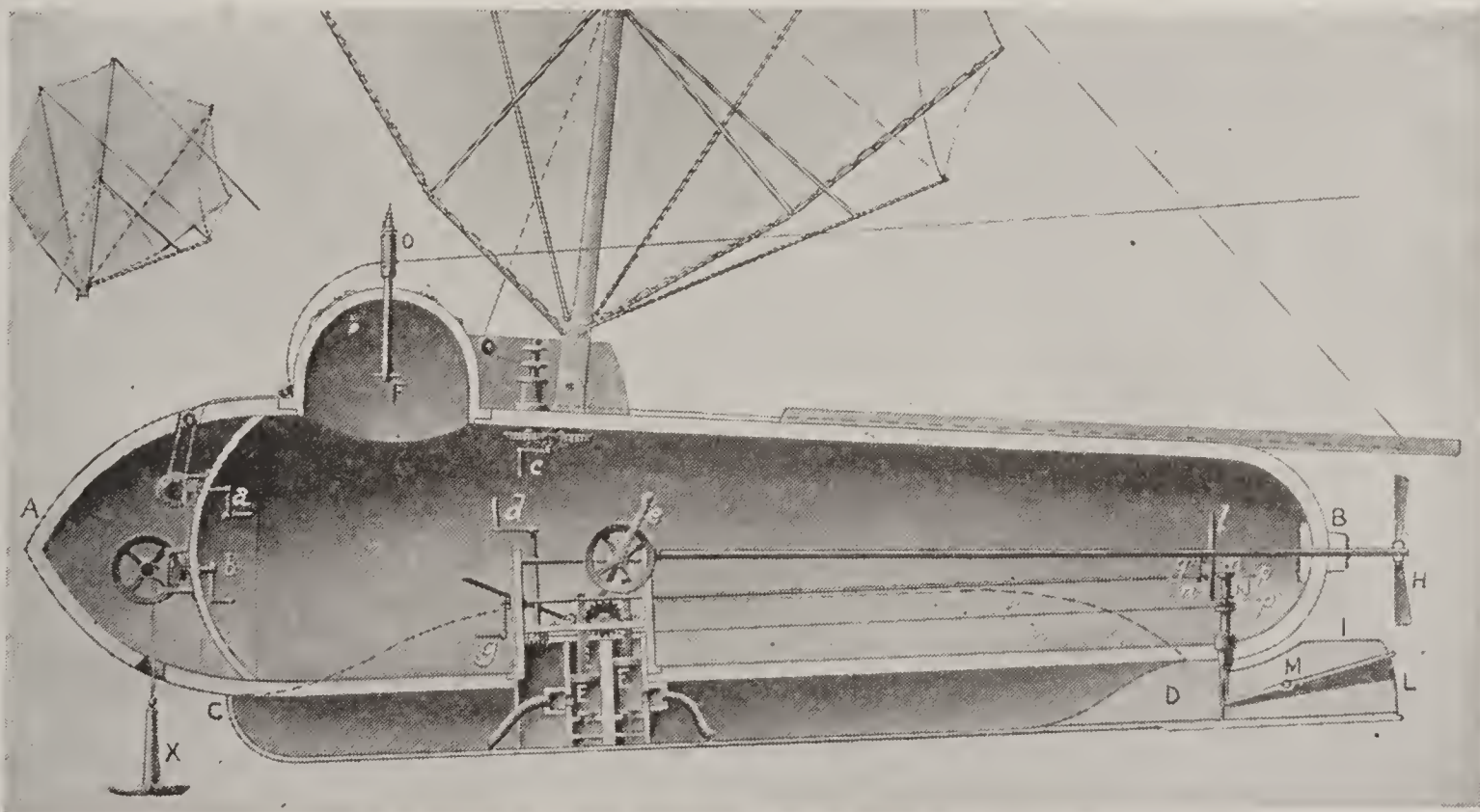
© Munn & Co.

Courtesy Scientific American

As we all know, there are vessels that travel under the surface as well as upon the surface of the sea, and that these undersea craft are used only in time of war. But how many of us know that the first man who ever worked out a practical form of submarine was the same Robert Fulton, whose inventive genius wrought such mighty changes in ocean travel and traffic in times of peace? This picture gives you a good idea of how Fulton's submarine did its work.

Instead of firing a torpedo at a vessel as is done in the use of the submarine of today, it was necessary to creep under it and screw a spike into the wooden hull. In this spike was a hole through which was passed a rope with the torpedo on the other end. Having made all these arrangements, the submarine pulled away with the cord attached to it and so made the torpedo bump against the bottom of the vessel and, exploding, blow a hole in it.

The Machinery that Made It Go



© Munn & Co.

Courtesy Scientific American

This picture will give you a better idea of what those two men are doing in the submarine in the preceding picture. You see this submarine was to be propelled and steered by hand. The parts indicated by the letters are as follows:

A B, the shell or hull; C D, the iron keel; E E, pumps for regulating the submergence of the craft, by taking on or throwing out a small amount of water from the ballast tank; G, bulkhead cutting off the forward compartment, G A C, from the remainder of the interior, and mounting the cranks a and b which control the anchor, X, and the floating mine, through individual windlasses; F, handle attached to the barbed spike, O, which is thrust into the wooden hull of an enemy warship; H, screw propeller operated by hand power applied at e; L, ordinary rudder manipulated by handle d; I, submerging rudder, pivoted at M and controlled from lever g; c, mechanism for raising and lowering the mast and sail, Y.

time to be of wide use and to make more bearable all the dreadful horrors of the Civil War. Soldiers could leave their pictures behind to comfort their families if they never returned. The sewing machine, in house and power factory, kept the brave boys in blue and gray supplied with clothing. The printing press multiplied the news papers. The telegraph brought quick news of battles to anxious hearts; and one reaper took the place of many farmers in the fields.

The Inventor of the Reaper

Every American should know and take pride in the story of Cyrus H. McCormick, who, with an invention as simple as the cotton gin, increased the supply, and decreased the cost, of the world's bread. In his humble beginnings and difficulties overcome, he compares with George Stephenson, the English inventor of the locomotive. He was born within a few days of Lincoln, in a log

cabin crowded with nine children, on a poor, rough farm in West Virginia. His father, a frontiersman of pious, Scotch Covenanter stock that had come to America before the

Revolution, was a man of sterling worth and undaunted courage and resource. A backwoods mechanical genius, he made a hemp break, clover huller, and was experimenting with a reaper when young Cyrus was born.

Father and son were birds of a feather, inseparable as soon as the baby could toddle. They shared every task, and worked together on every ingenious contrivance that would lighten toil. While still a boy Cyrus began to "tinker" with his father's reaper. At twenty-one he mounted the

seat and proudly clattered out of the barnyard on a machine that would cut standing grain. But it was ten years before he could make another. The farm was forty miles from a blacksmith shop, sixty from a canal,

A Man Who Kept on Smiling



When you introduce any very new thing, a machine or an idea, you must be patient and work hard, or neither the machine or the idea will get into general use. Some men bear this experience without smiling, some smile and drop their work and go at something else, but Howe smiled and went on. He had a pleasant humor, a quick wit, and a square chin and all three helped to carry him through. He also had a soft eye and a placid Quaker face (he was a Quaker) and was shrewd, as Quakers so often are. As a boy he was playful and loving and had many good chums. As a man he was so kind and sociable that even in the darkest days he never lacked friends.

Not satisfied with all the work which his machine accomplished for the government during the Civil War, he, although lame, organized a cavalry regiment, presented each officer with a horse, refused the title of colonel, and himself joined the army as a private and served until his health gave way.

You can see by his collar and coat that he lived at a later time than Whitney, for both are more nearly like those we wear today. He didn't wear his hair long to be eccentric, but like many artists, he was usually too busy to go to the barber.

How the Singer Worked in '51



This is how mother looked back in 1851 and this is the kind of a "Singer" that helped her make her pretty dresses and the dresses of the children. You see the machines were set up on the boxes in which they were shipped—no nice neat furniture about them, as we have in the sewing machines of today. Through that slot a rough wooden arm connected the wooden treadle with the balance wheel. You see this wheel didn't get its motion over a belt, as it does in sewing machines today.

The little peg reaching out from the arm was used in starting. Haven't you noticed that mother and the seamstress always give this wheel a little whirl before they start the treadle? The poster you see on the end of the box told what a good thing the sewing machine was and how to take care of it.

and iron was seventy-five dollars a ton. In desperation he built a crude blast furnace of stones and clay, and smelted ore that he dug out of the hills with his pickax. In five years he made and sold one hundred machines.

At the age of thirty-seven, already turning gray, he had accumulated three hundred dollars. With this in his belt he mounted a horse and rode from New York to Missouri to try to interest some man with money in his invention. Most people laughed at him. Then, after two minutes' talk and a keen inspection of the model, William B. Ogden, enterprising mayor of the little city, Chicago, that built the first ten miles of railroad west of Lake Michigan, bought a half interest in the invention and furnished money to build a small factory.

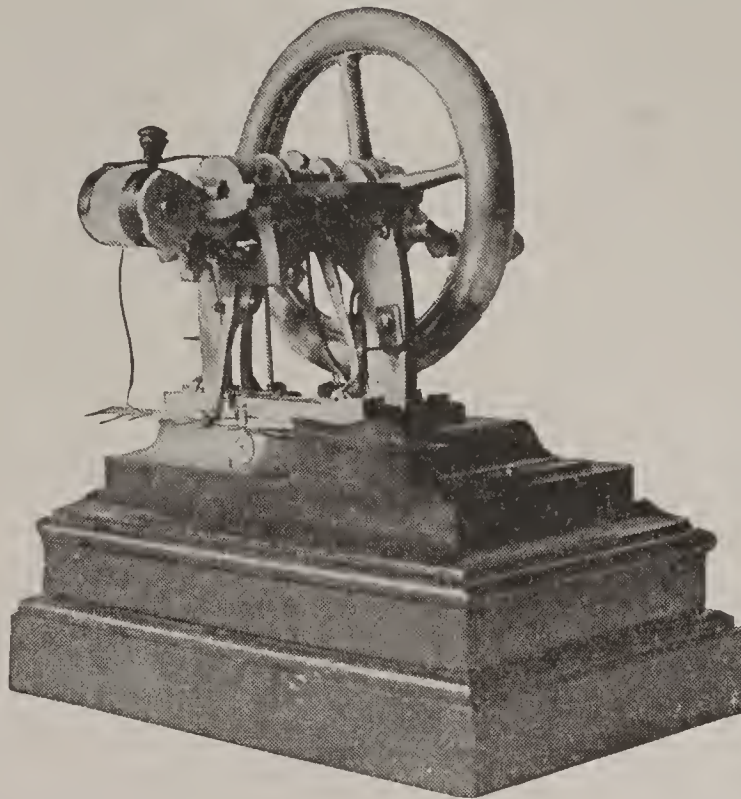
The rest was comparatively easy. Five thousand reapers were sent into the fields of the prairie states to harvest grain in the summer of 1847. And with the opening of the Civil War, McCormick reapers released half a million farmer boys to fight for the Union. Europe

was amazed to see the United States supporting two armies and still selling wheat in Liverpool. The use of the reaper spread to every grain-growing country in the world, and

brought into cultivation millions of acres of land that must have waited long on human labor.

How easily that invention could have been lost! Made in poverty and obscurity that were all but impossible to overcome, it was received with ridicule by neighbors and with contemptuous indifference by manufacturers and capitalists over a ride of fifteen hundred miles. That we have this indispensable machine today is due, not only to the genius of the inventor, but to his courage and tenacity of purpose.

Howe's "Toy" Sewing Machine

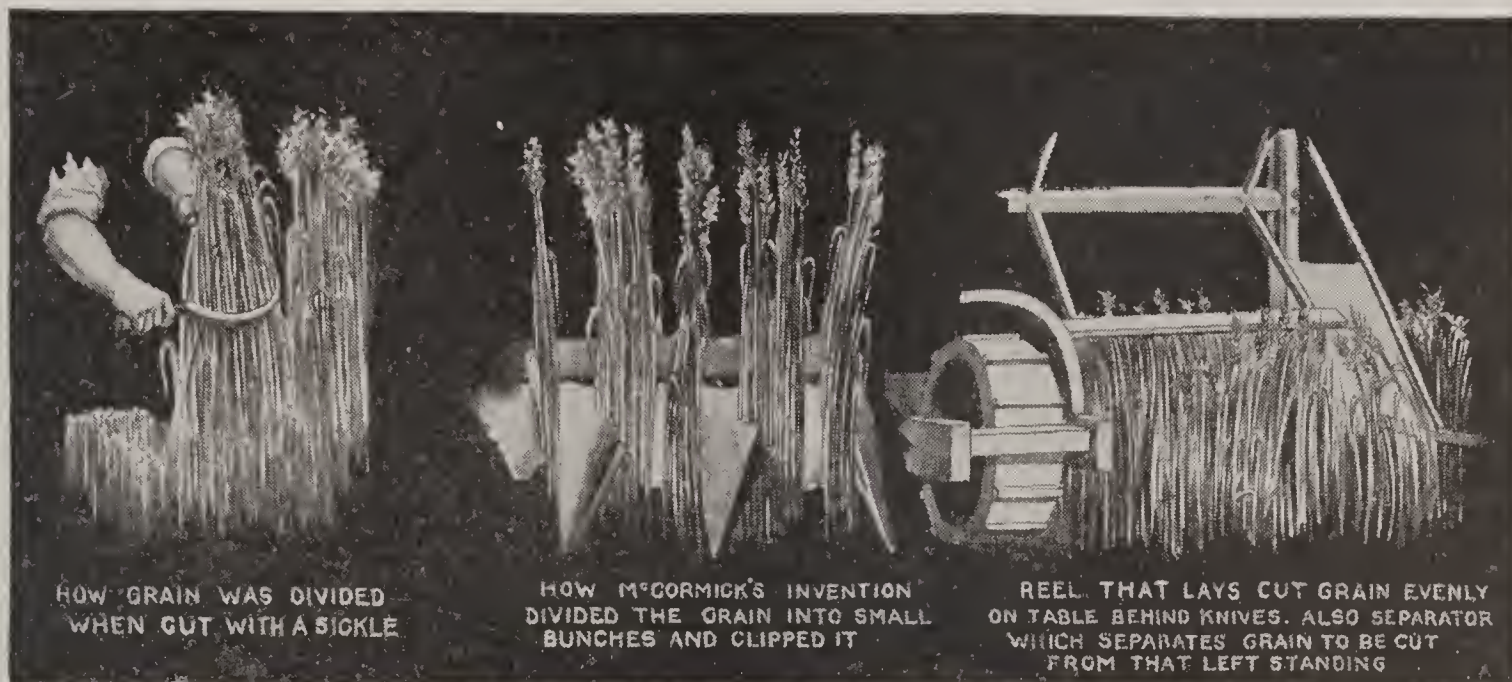


This is another one of the endless number of interesting little machines that you will see in the great mechanical "toy" shop at Washington, in the patent office. It is hard to believe, but the fact is when Howe first invented his machine, the public were interested in it as a toy but not disposed to use it. "What do you want to sew faster for?" That's a queer question to ask but that is what the people and manufacturers and everybody asked when Howe first showed his machine. So, like all inventors who succeeded, he had to be very patient as well as ingenious. When he asked tailors to try his machine, they refused because they said if it got into general use it would throw them out of their jobs. As people were already getting enough clothes to wear, what would happen if you made more clothes than there were people to wear them? Why, clothes makers would be out of work half the time! That was the way they argued. But Howe kept at it and finally got his machine into use. Among other things, it helped to win the Civil War. It provided millions of uniforms, tents, sails, cartridge cases and sewed shoes that couldn't possibly have been supplied by hand.

The Story of Samuel F. B. Morse

The telegraphic instrument, made about the same time, was a conquest in physics, comparable to the steam engine of James Watt. A reverent world took off its hat when the inventor tapped the first sentence: "What hath God wrought?" over the first wire from Baltimore to

The Harvest Hand with the Iron Fingers



These three pictures show you how the reaper is made to take the place of the harvest hand with his sickle. The harvester grasped a little bunch of wheat with one hand and held it, while with the cycle in the other hand he cut it off. In the McCormick harvesting machine the same result was accomplished but in another way. The next time you get your hair cut, notice how the barber takes the hair between his fingers and snips it off wisp after wisp. You see Mr. McCormick worked out much the same idea in the "business end" of his harvesting machine. Then later the inventor of the hair clipper borrowed the idea for the barber who, you know, uses the clipper as well as scissors in cutting your hair.

The third picture shows you how the wheel in turning laid the wheat against the blades. On the left is the separator which separated the grain to be cut, and on the right is one of the two drive wheels on which the reaper moves along.

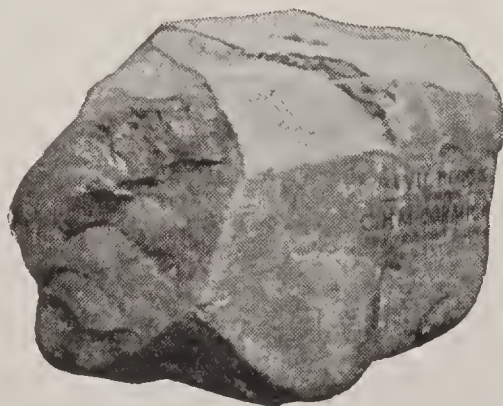
The next picture and the explanation of it tells you how this drive wheel drives.

Washington. He had wrought a man of scientific mind, lofty imagination, creative genius, and consecration to a great task. This invention was understood at once to open up a new field of discoveries in applied electricity.

Fulton was in London, with the idea of the steamboat in mind, and Whitney was in Yale College when Morse was born, in 1791, in the parsonage of a Congregational minister in Charleston, Massachusetts. Descended from four of the best and most intellectual families in America, he had every social and educational advantage. He was graduated from Andover and Yale with distinction before he

was twenty. This Puritan youth showed the same qualities of mind, interests and talents as the Irish immigrant lad, Fulton. He spent his vacations experimenting in chemistry and electro-magnetism, and he earned his first money by painting miniatures. A talent for art and a gift for invention are often found together. Both imply imagination and creative ability.

The Stone and Our Daily Bread



This stone has a very dignified look. It certainly has a right to look dignified, for it helped to make the first of the harvesting machines on which the world now depends for its daily bread. This stone did duty as an anvil in the old McCormick blacksmith shop.

A Homesick Boy's Unconscious Prophecy

At twenty years of age Morse was sent to London to study art. A homesick boy, he wrote to his mother: "I wish that, in one instant, I could tell you of my safe arrival; but we are three thousand miles apart, and must wait

The Birthplace of the Great Reaper



This little old blacksmith shop in the hills of Virginia is the very place where the farmer boy, Cyrus McCormick, first began to work out the design of the reaper. You mustn't suppose, however, from the looks of the place that McCormick's father remained poor. He came to own several farms, a sawmill and gristmill, and had shops for blacksmithing and carpentering like this on the different farms to make it convenient for repairing tools. At the age of fifteen, Cyrus had invented a cradle which he used in the field in competition with his father's hired men.

four long weeks to hear from each other."

Twenty-two years later he was on his way home from a trip abroad. He had won fame as an artist, had painted the portrait of the Marquis de Lafayette and organized the New York Academy of Arts and Design. Important commissions and eager students awaited his return. At forty-two he had no other thought than to devote his life to his chosen profession. But he still had his old interest in electricity, and in London had heard much of Michael Faraday, the famous physicist, who had recently discovered the principles of the dynamo. On shipboard were both scientists and manufacturers who were interested in electric power and transmission. Morse in the course of conversation remarked thoughtfully:

"If the current could be broken and restored at will we would have a means of quick communication."

"Interesting," said the others and

promptly forgot about it. But the idea possessed Morse. Then on the deck he worked it out in a drawing that showed a battery, a charged wire, a keyboard, and a recording pencil to be moved by sparks tapped out in dots and dashes over the wire. And he seems to have decided to give up the life of honor, ease and even wealth which lay before him. On his arrival he consulted no one. His wife had long been dead, his children scattered among relatives. He disappeared into a little shop in New Haven.

Then followed twelve years of poverty, toil and ridicule; "wasted years," they were called by his best friends. Even scientists thought his idea wild and visionary. He slept in his workshop, cooked his own food, refused commissions for pictures, consented to do no more than teach an art class to pay for his bare necessities. Suddenly his name was on every tongue. His patents se-

The First Harvest Hand with the Iron Fingers



This picture shows how the first McCormick reaper was built and how it worked. A reaper has only two wheels on the ground. These are called the drive wheels because as the reaper moves forward, these wheels drive the machinery that does the reaping. One of these drive wheels has teeth on the inside of it that fit into the teeth of a wheel on one end of what is called the disc shaft, much as the teeth in the stem-winder of a watch fit into the teeth of the wheel that winds the spring. (Ask your father to show you, unless you have a "stem-winder" of your own.) This arrangement of one cogged wheel at right angles to another is what is called a beveled gear. On the other end of the shaft that connects with the drive wheel is another beveled gear arrangement which you can see in the picture.

The thing in the machine that takes the place of the harvester's sickle, is a long, straight bar with triangular blades fastened on it. The end of the sickle bar is attached to a wheel by a "peg" on one side of the center of the wheel so that, as the cog-wheel causes the "pegged" wheel to revolve, the cycle bar is given a back and forth motion which cuts off the bunches of wheat between the iron fingers.

The "paddle wheel" you see in the picture, is connected by that belt to the axle of the drive wheels. As the machine moves forward, the paddles brush the wheat up against the blades. At that time there was no device in the machine for sweeping off the wheat as it was cut, so a man followed along and raked it off as you see this man doing.

cured, he persuaded Congress to appropriate \$30,000 to build a telegraph line from Baltimore to Washington. He lived to the age of eighty-one, to reap the honors and rewards of his extraordinary achievement. He saw wires stretched out to the Pacific coast and others connecting the capitals of Europe. And Cyrus W. Field had the benefit of his advice in solving the problems of laying cables under the Atlantic Ocean.

*Reaping a
Just
Reward*

Other Great Electrical Inventions

Three years after Morse died in 1872, Alexander Graham Bell in-

vented the Bell telephone, and exhibited it at the Centennial Exposition in Philadelphia in 1876. Edison already had his first factory; and in 1880 special trains were run from New York City to Menlo Park, to see "the wizard's" town blazing with the new electric lights. Electric lighting was a novel feature of the Paris Exposition of 1889. The Columbian Exposition in Chicago, in 1893, however, had the very first building devoted to electrical exhibits. Visitors reached the grounds by electric trolley cars and third-rail elevated trains, the entire park was brilliantly lighted by incandescent lamps and arc lights, and all

the machinery was operated by dynamos. Most of this amazing exhibit was due to the genius of Edison, whose inventions covered every department of heat, light, and power. His work is so important that we have a special sketch of him among the World's Helpers.

The First Iron Man-of-War

Now let us go back and trace the progress in other fields. The next important invention after the telegraph and reaper, was the "Monitor," the famous, iron-clad naval vessel with revolving gun turret that John Ericsson built for the United States for use in the Civil War. Born in Sweden in 1803, he found no market for his engineering ability at home. In London he improved the locomotive; and then he came to America where, for fifty years, he gave us the finest fruits of his genius. His most notable work was in naval construction. For Fulton's cumbersome side-wheel he sub-

stituted the screw propeller, thus securing greater stability and speed. He placed the engine-room below the water-line, where it was safer from cannon fire.

McCormick, as a Famous Artist Saw Him



Here they are again—the square chin, the steady, level eyes, determination, patience; the power to labor and to wait. McCormick not only endured with patience the struggle to get the value of his machine recognized, but for several years, while experimenting with it, and showing its operation in the field, he refused to begin making these machines for sale until he had made a number of improvements that these experiments suggested.

Cyrus, the farmer boy, could never have thought of having this picture made when he was working in that little old blacksmith shop. It is from a portrait of him by Cabanel. Although before McCormick was grown his father had become a wealthy farmer, it would have taken several of his farms to pay the price charged by the famous painter for his work.

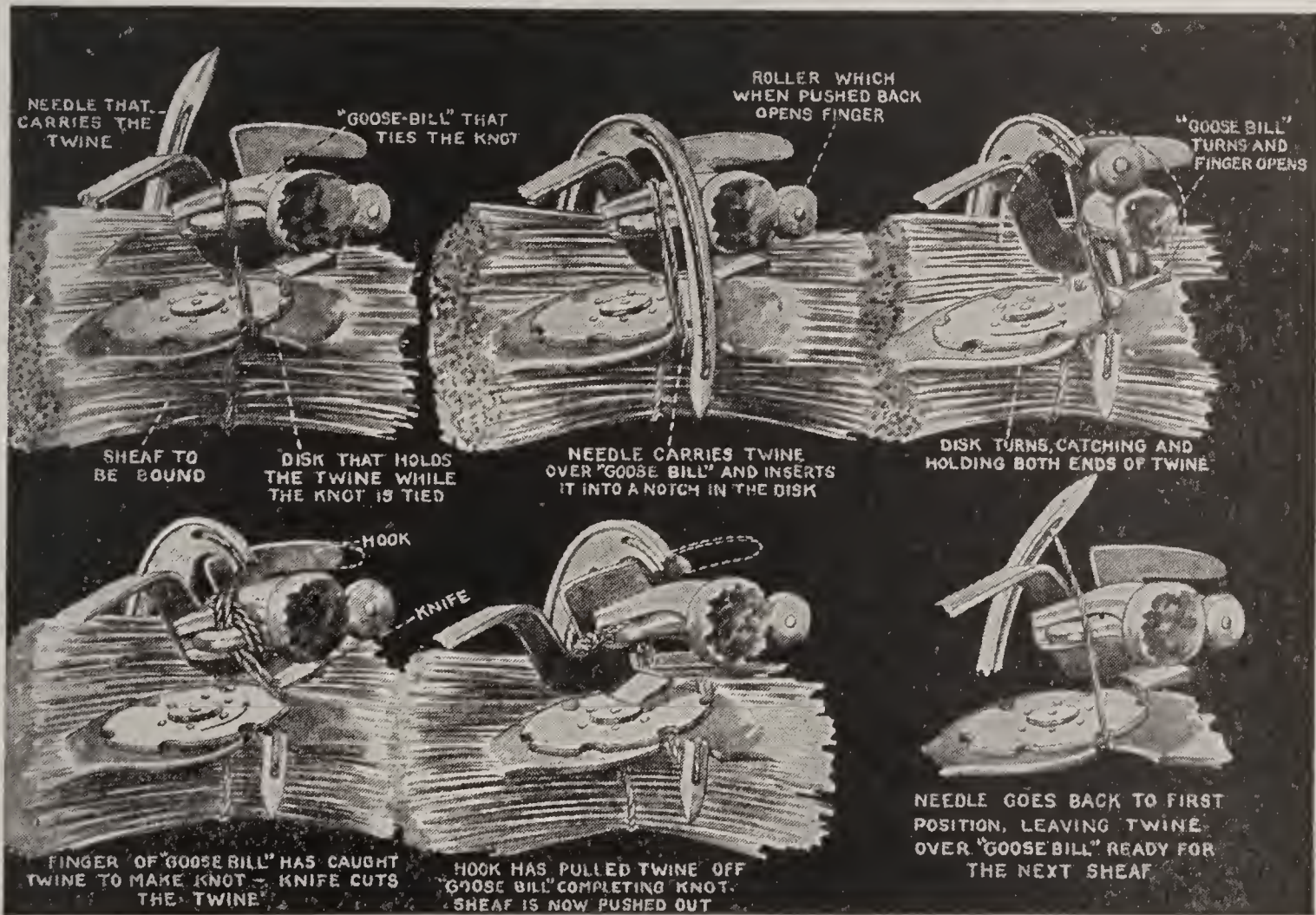
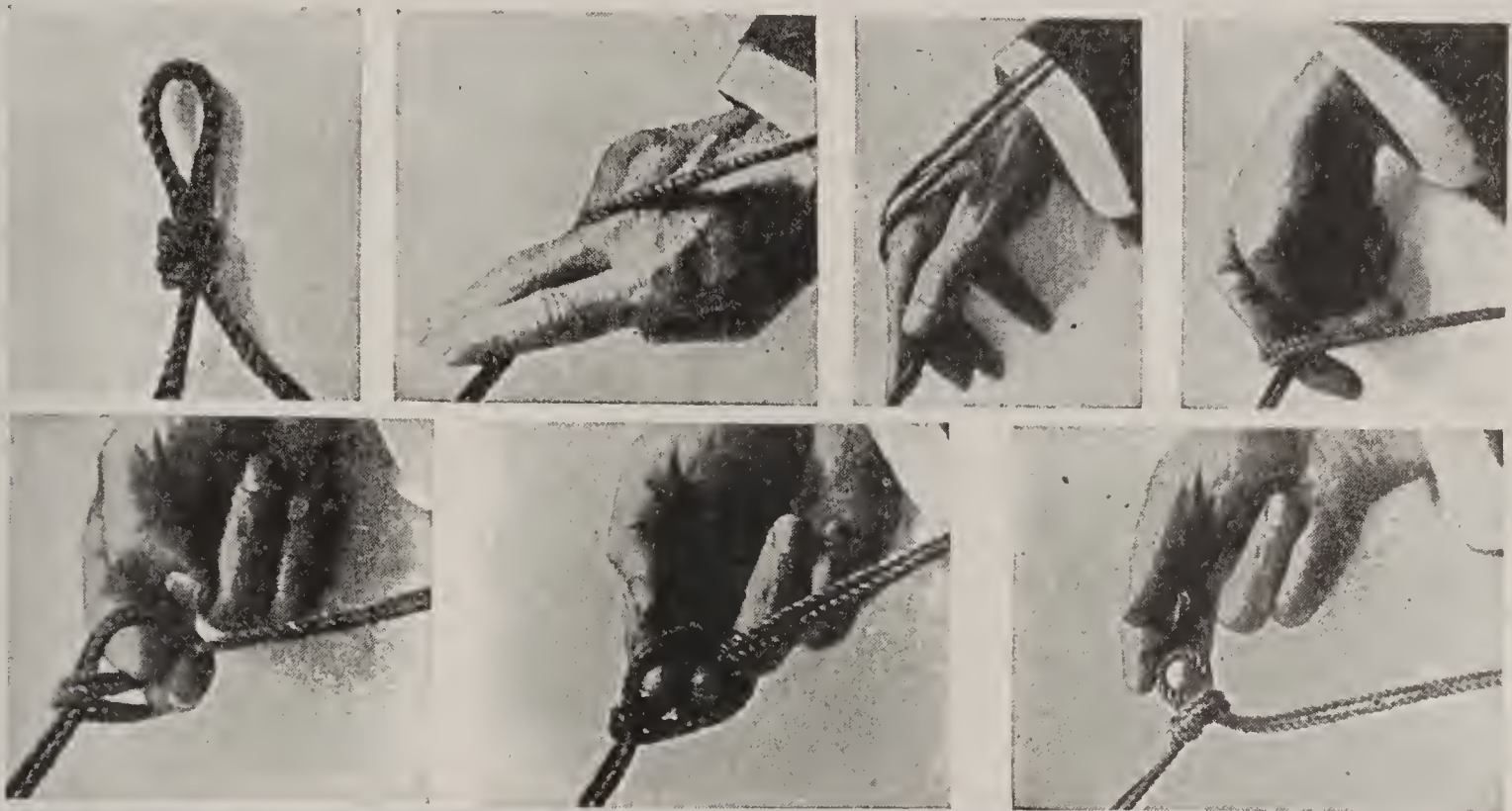
The little ribbon in his coat is the decoration of the Legion of Honor which was given him by the French emperor, Napoleon III, after seeing the reaper work on his farm at Chalons.

Then he boldly encased wooden hulls in thick iron plates which could not be pierced by the small shells of that day. Everyone else predicted that an armored vessel would sink of its own weight. The "Monitor" was laughed at as "an iron cheese box on a raft." But its path was strewn with destruction, and it completely revolutionized naval construction and armament. Old wooden ships were thrown on the scrap-heap.

The period between 1860 and 1880 was marked by mechanical improvements

that expanded many lines of industry, and by great engineering works. A self-binder was added to the reaper. Barbed wire fenced in millions of acres of treeless plains for cultivation. Machines for making tin cans made the can-

How the Twine Binder Works



Before twine could be used in binding sheaves it was necessary to invent a machine that would take the place of the human hand. The machine that does this is called a knoter, and it acts quite a little like the human hand in doing its work. The first picture of the hand shows the twine lying across the fingers. In the second picture of the machine, you see the needle brings the other end of the twine up around the sheaf and over the "goose-bill." This doubles the twine much as it is done by hand.

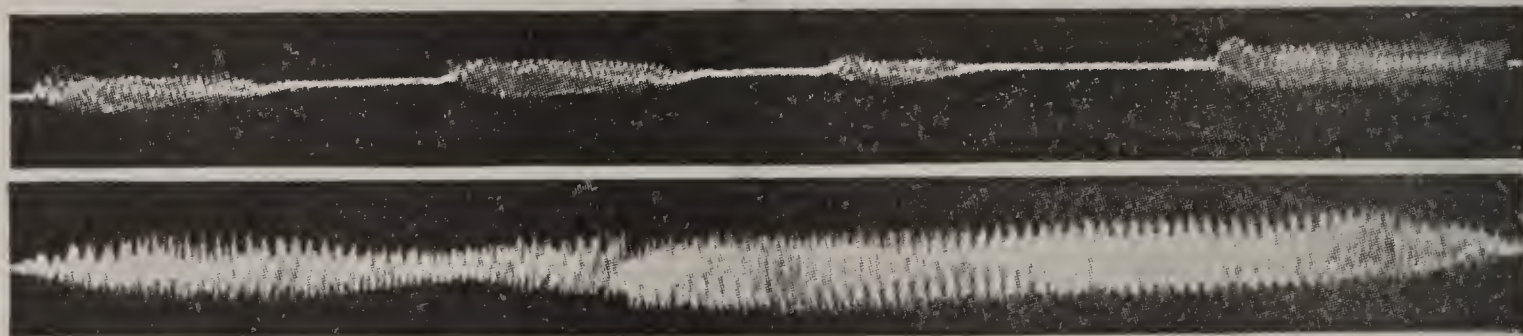
Then the "goose-bill" (which is the machine's finger) starts to turn as you see in the third picture, and as it turns, begins to open, ready to catch the above twine as it goes around. By the time it has turned entirely around, the "goose-bill" has caught the twine and holds it securely. In the corresponding picture of the hand, you will notice that the fingers open in the same way and later secure the twine. Then the hook (marked in the picture) moves to the left, pushing the knot off the "goose-bill" and at the same time the knife cuts the twine below the knot. But the twine would be pushed entirely off the "goose-bill" in this operation, and so the sheaf wouldn't get bound at all, if the "goose-bill" did not hold the two ends very securely, so that the knot be completed as you see in the fifth picture.

ning factory possible, and increased the world's supply of preserved foods. Dynamite, invented by Alfred Nobel of Sweden, and the compressed air drill aided and extended mining and oil production. Powerful elevating machinery lifted ore from

useful products from petroleum. In every industry mechanics and chemistry have turned factory waste into valuable by-products.

Even while our great Civil War was being fought, gigantic engineering works were begun and some of

Two Voice Pictures



These two pictures show the changes made in the electric current passing over the telephone wire, when you say "New York," and when you say "San Francisco." Notice how the "sound pictures" are divided into syllables, a short wave for "New" and a longer wave for "York," while in the sound picture of "San-Fran-cis-co" there are four syllables of appropriate lengths.

When we want to say that anything was done very quickly, we often use the expression, "Quick as a wink." As a matter of fact, however, the electric waves passing over a telephone wire when you say "Hello" carry the words so fast that you would have to wink about fifteen times in a second to keep up with it; while, if your "Hello" traveled through the air without the help of electricity, it wouldn't get to San Francisco in less than four hours.

deeper mines, and carried grain to the tops of tall mills and storage elevators.

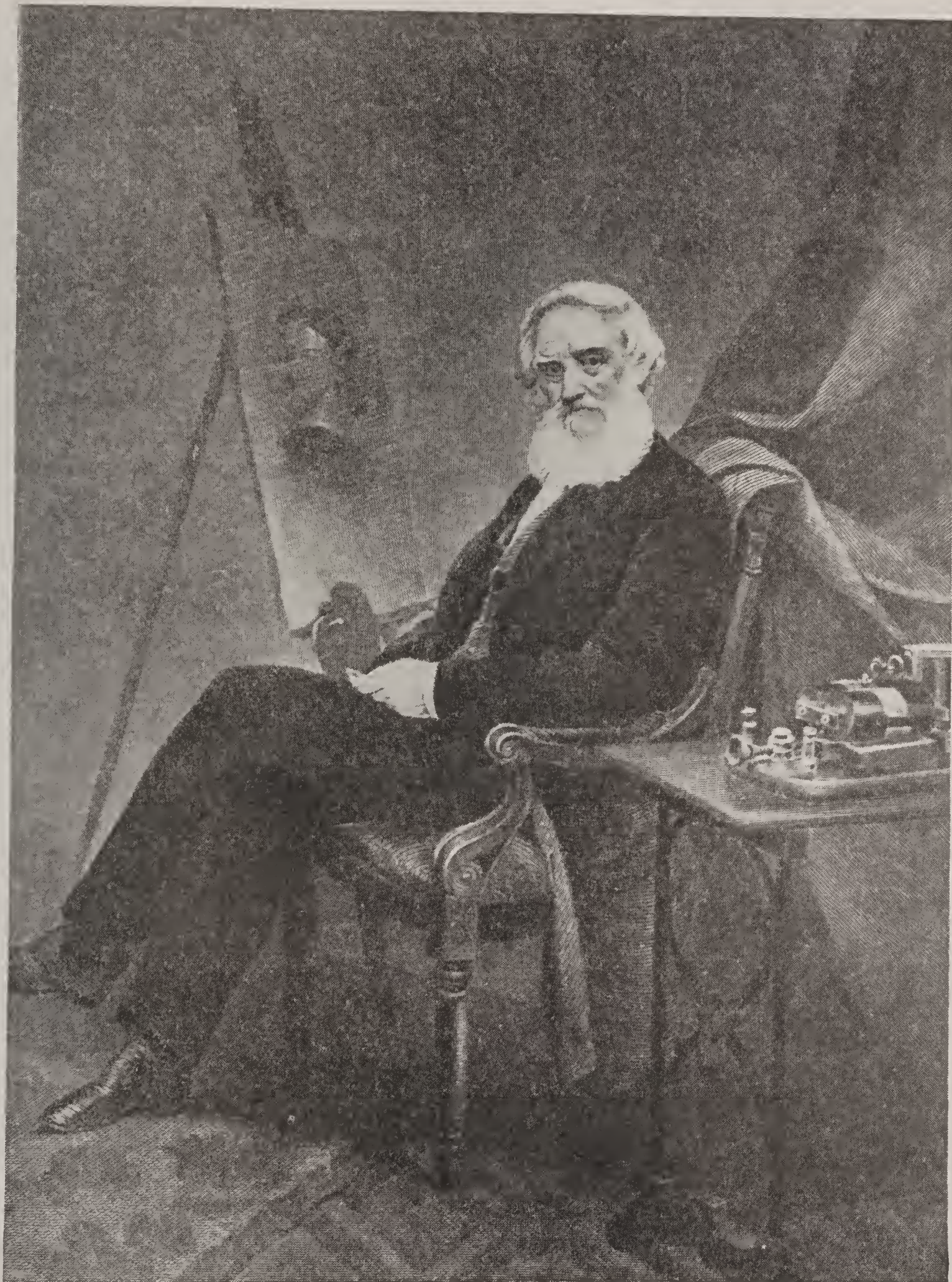
The Westinghouse air brake made travel on railroads safer, and the Pullman sleeping car trebled night travel, so the railroads could operate profitably twenty-four hours a day. The cable car, abandoned now for the trolley and the elevated third-rail system, released horses and mules from killing work, and the gas engine brought power into many a mine, shop and farm where steam could not be used. The typewriter multiplied correspondence and extended business, and the typesetting machine enlarged the newspaper. The use of wood pulp enormously increased the world's supply of paper, and chemical processes recovered the sugar from beets, and syrup from corn. Oil-refining machinery not only improved lamp oil, but gave us gasoline, machine grease and many other

*Engineering,
Chemistry and
Mechanics*

them brought to completion. The first Atlantic cable was laid in 1866; the Union Pacific Railroad was opened to Sacramento in 1867. The Eads pier and steel arch bridge across the Mississippi River at St. Louis was completed in 1874. Ten years later suspension bridges spanned the Ohio River at Cincinnati, and the East River from New York to Brooklyn. The use of enormous quantities of steel in bridges, rails and buildings was made possible by a cheap and quick process of converting pig-iron into steel, invented by Henry Bessemer of England. The first "skyscraper" office building was erected in Chicago in 1885, by making a bridge construction framework of structural steel on a bed of concrete and railroad iron.

In the thirty years since, we have pushed three more transcontinental railroads out to the Pacific Coast; reclaimed desert lands of the West by damming mountain streams, tun-

Morse and His Life in a Picture



The whole story of Morse and his character as a man is told in this picture. He was an artist, an inventor, a scholar, and a polished gentleman. He had unusual talent both as a painter and a sculptor.

That telegraph instrument always stood on a table at his side in his library, and he used to talk with it to his friends hundreds of miles away, just as we call people up by the telephone today. You see from the form of it that it was a printing telegraph, so that his friends who had an instrument just like it could read what he had to say without knowing the Morse telegraph code.

To Carry Your Voice Across the Desert



This team of six horses and two mules is hauling eleven eighteen-foot telephone poles across the sagebrush-covered wastes near Golconda, Nevada. The country is mountainous and there are no roads, as you see. Such difficulties as these have to be overcome every day, in order that every nook and corner of our big country may have a telephone line.

neling ranges, building viaducts and digging canals. We have developed the mines and transportation system of Alaska; laid cables across the Pacific; chained the power of Niagara Falls; tunneled under the Hudson River; built the colossal waterworks of New York and Los Angeles, and dug the Panama Canal. Many people think our next big task should be to control the floods of the Mississippi.

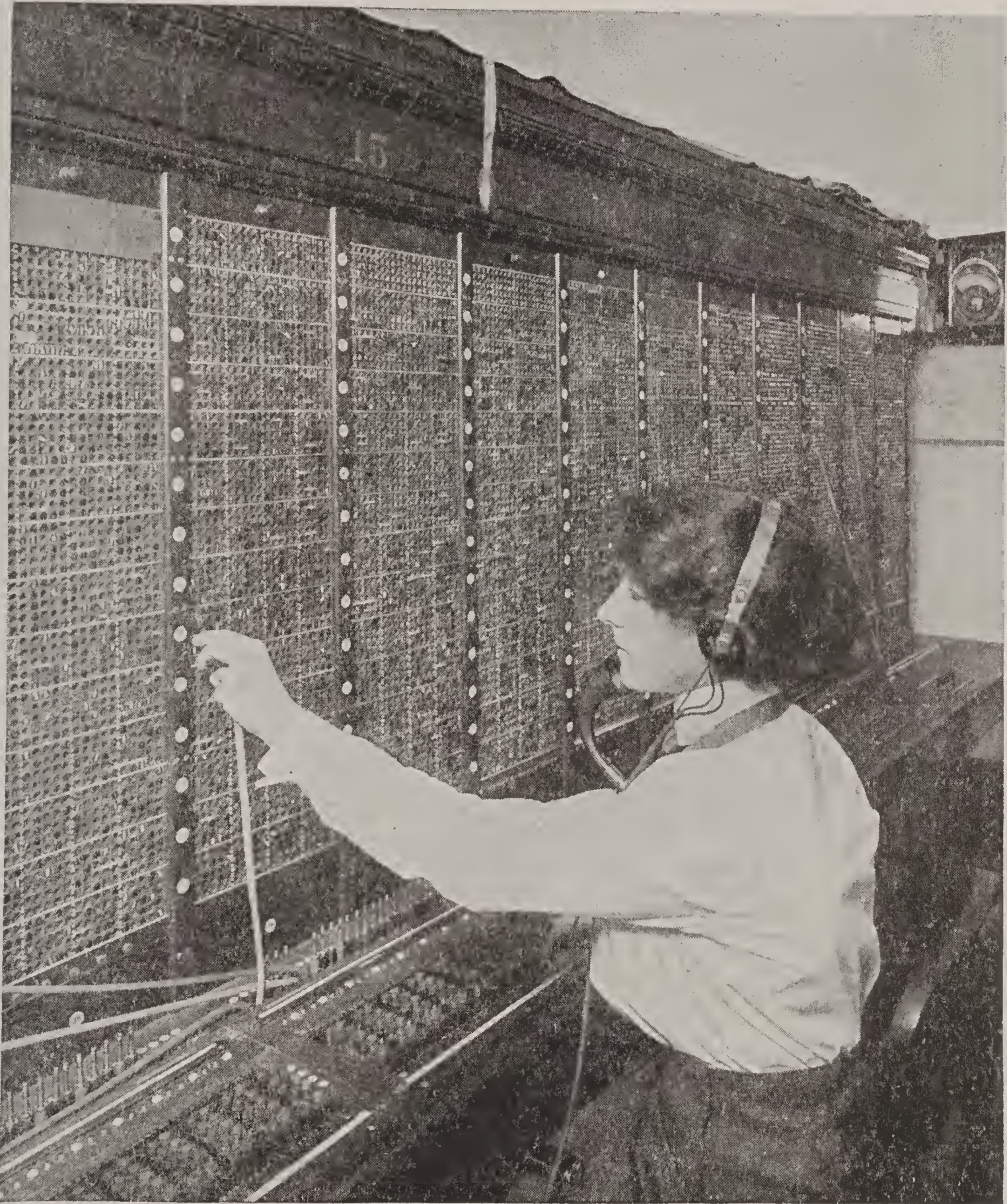
The Three Great Fields of Invention

The very multiplicity of things done in this age is confusing. Let us see if we can simplify it. Discovery and invention have all been in three fields: Physics, which considers the properties and powers of steam, electricity and air; second, in mechanics and engineering; and

third, in chemistry. All western countries have contributed to every line of progress, but England has the greatest honors in her physicists, working in scientific laboratories and giving their discoveries freely to the world. The United States has no one to match with Watt, Davy, Faraday and Kelvin. Germany has made the greatest contributions in chemistry. Italy and France have a few noted inventors, but the United States is pre-eminent in applied electricity, mechanics and engineering. Marconi, an Italian, invented wireless telegraphy, almost the only thing Edison overlooked, but we have capped that with the wireless telephone. And an American first navigated the air.

And this age has developed a new spirit—a brotherhood of nations in every thing progressive. You re-

A Big City Switchboard



Each of the little plug holes in front of the operator contains the ends of the two wires running to a number. The girl at the switchboard can reach seven thousand of these holes, which the telephone men call "jacks." Now let's see what happens when Mr. A, on the Ravenswood exchange, calls up Mr. X at 585 Drexel. One of the girls at the Ravenswood switchboard sees the tiny electric light corresponding to Mr. A's number flash on, and puts one of those flexible wires with a plug on the end of it into the proper hole, just as the girl is doing here. At the same time she says, "Number, please," to Mr. A through her mouthpiece. By putting the plug in the hole she has connected Mr. A's house with her own wire. As soon as Mr. A answers "585 Drexel" she puts in another plug which connects her with the girl at the Drexel switchboard—the one we see here—and tells her to get Drexel 585. This girl then puts one of her plugs in the 585 hole, ringing the bell at that number. The girl here handles no incoming calls from the subscribers directly. She receives them all from another operator who speaks the number wanted into her ear, and then this girl makes the connection with the Drexel number called for.

She is a part, you see, of a very large and complicated system. The four buttons at the base of the board are used when there is more than one phone on one set of wires, that is "when the operator wants to call a "party line." By pressing one of those buttons she makes the connection with one number on the line, without disturbing the others.

A Great Inventor and His Secret



If there ever was a man entitled to be called genius it is this man Edison. In fact, the word "genius" does not seem to have been strong enough to express the popular idea of him. He has been named "the wizard," because he has invented or perfected so many remarkable things—such as the phonograph, the electric light, the moving picture camera.

But do you know what Mr. Edison himself says a genius is? "Nine-tenths perspiration and one-tenth inspiration; and it is the perspiration that brings on the inspiration." That's his funny way of saying that what we call genius grows out of work, very much as corn grows when you work it with the hoe or plow. In this picture you see him, "all dressed up," in his workshop. When he gets that old linen duster on, things begin to happen, because he makes them "happen." You see he is figuring out something new and has just looked up for a moment to accommodate our camera man.

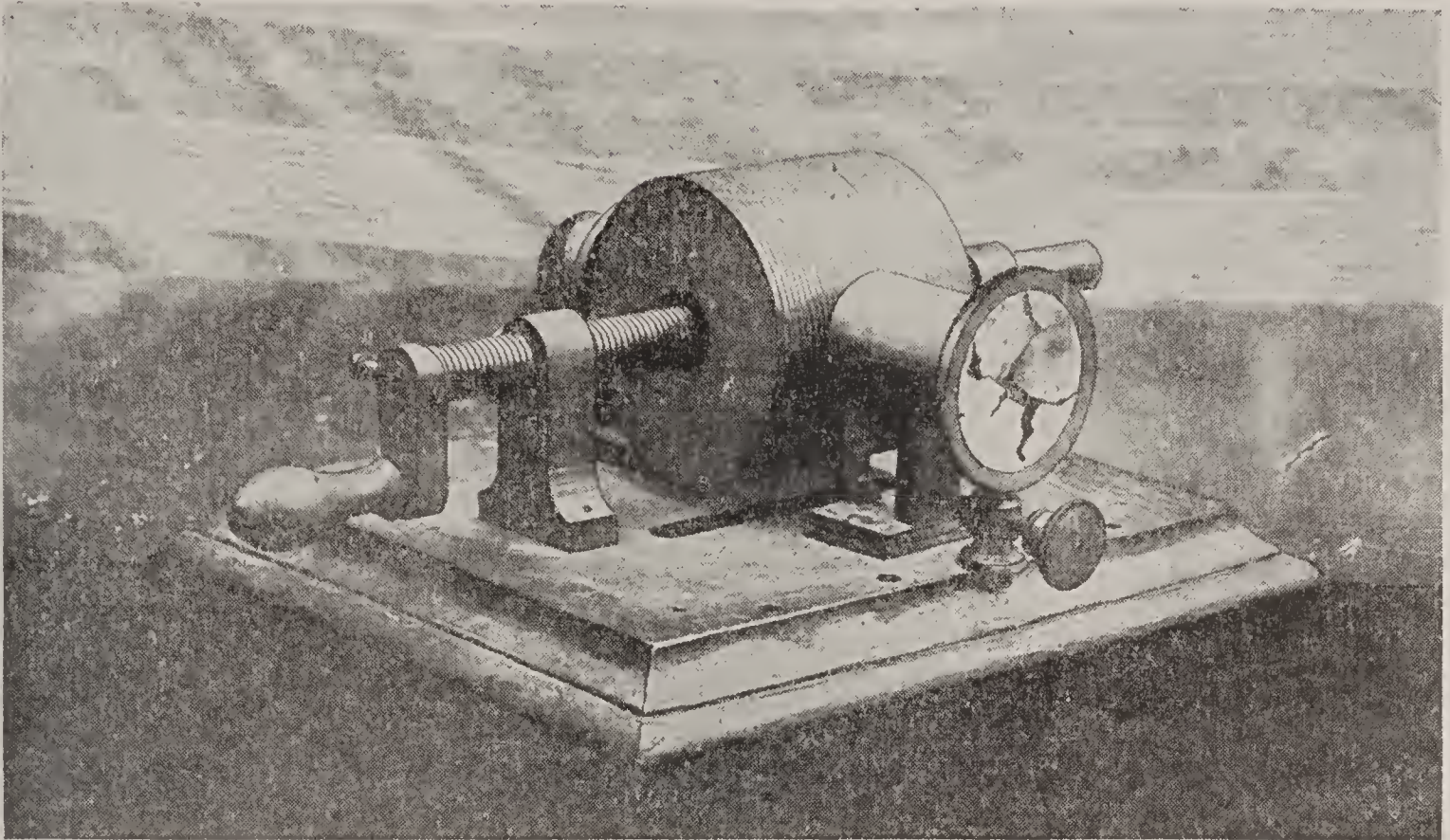
member how jealously England guarded the secrets of the steam engine and textile machines? Now, by mutually protective patents, every new invention is shared with all other countries. Usually, as in the case of the automobile and flying machine, scientists and mechanics work on the same idea, independently, in several countries, and solve a problem in different ways. The Wright brothers of Ohio built the first successful aeroplane, but they had the benefit of the mistakes, achievements, and experiments of Maxim in England, Santos-Dumont in France, and Professor Langley in Washington. There are now several types of flying machines; and

Germany has developed the gas balloon into the engine-driven Zep-
pelin.

How One Invention Grows Out of Another

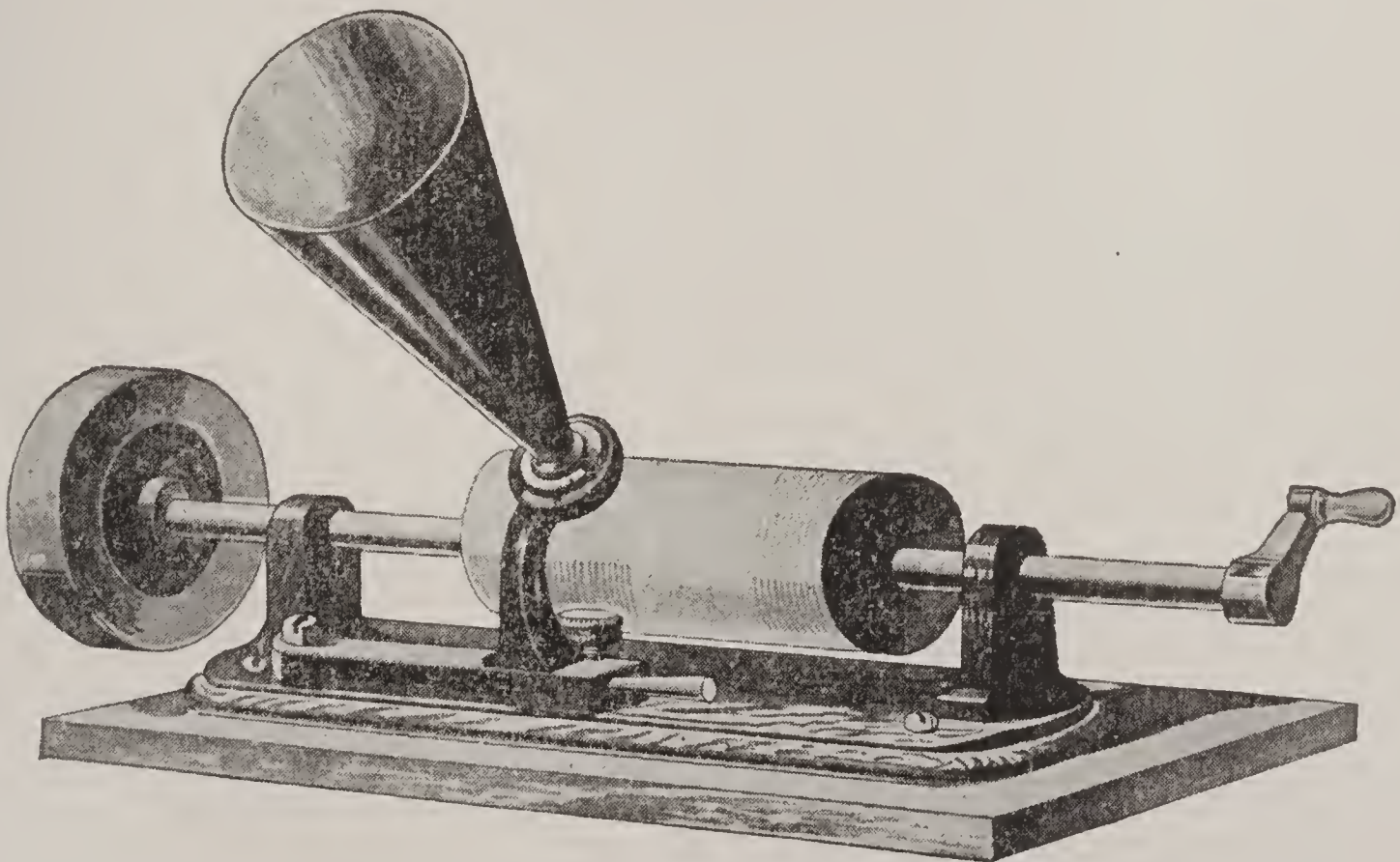
Indeed, every invention rests on discoveries of the past. The steam engine and dynamo were the result of a century of work in scientific laboratories, and their full possibilities were not at once realized. The steam pump was in use in mines a half century before the steamboat was invented and seventy years before the locomotive. Franklin captured the electric spark a hundred years before Morse sent it over a wire, and it was another generation before Edison gave us the electric light. The photograph preceded

The First of All Talking Machines



This is a model of the original Edison phonograph, the father of all talking machines. It is now in the South Kensington Museum, London. Mr. Edison had a representative in England in the early days, named Colonel Gourad, to whom he gave this model and Colonel Gourad presented it to the museum.

The Phonograph that Went to School



This picture has frequently been published as the "first phonograph," but it is not. It is a model of the kind of phonograph that was first used in schools. It was made cheaply in order to illustrate to pupils, in a simple way, how the phonograph "hears" and "remembers" things. The words spoken into it were recorded on tin foil, instead of wax cylinders or discs as in the talking machines and musical phonographs of today. The heavy wheel at the left was to make it run smoothly, the wheel doing a work similar to that of the balance wheel on the steam engine. The screw and peg were for use in adjusting the recorder and reproducer.

Two Typical American Business Men



© Gessford

The wonderful development of America has been due not alone to the fact that we are a great nation of inventors, but that Americans are the best business men in the world. One of the most distinguished names identified with our industrial and commercial development is that of George Westinghouse (at the left) and here he is looking at you with the frank, fearless eyes and the genial expression which was one of his most attractive characteristics.

One of the stories his friends used to love to tell about him was that of his attempt to interest Commodore Vanderbilt in his air brake, when it was first put on the market. Then entirely unknown, he called at the office of the great railroad man, but when the office clerk learned his business and asked Mr. Vanderbilt if he would see him, he sent back word that he didn't have any time for cranks.

You see he was as slow about believing that you could stop a railroad train with air, as the farmers were in adopting the McCormick reaper. Some time afterward when the air brake had come into general use, it was Vanderbilt who called on Westinghouse. Extending his hand with a smile, Westinghouse said:

"I haven't got time for cranks, but I'll see you just the same." And they had a hearty laugh together before proceeding to business.

But now for the story of the invention of the sleeping car. This invention has done more perhaps than any other one thing to make travelling in comfort possible on the modern railroad, particularly in this country of "magnificent distances."

Sleeping on a train, in a narrow "Pullman" is quite different from sleeping in a big, broad bed that holds still, and some people have difficulty in doing it at first, but experienced travelers think no more of going to sleep in Chicago and waking up in Omaha, say, than you do of going to sleep in your own bed now and saying "Good morning, Merry Sunshine," the next day.

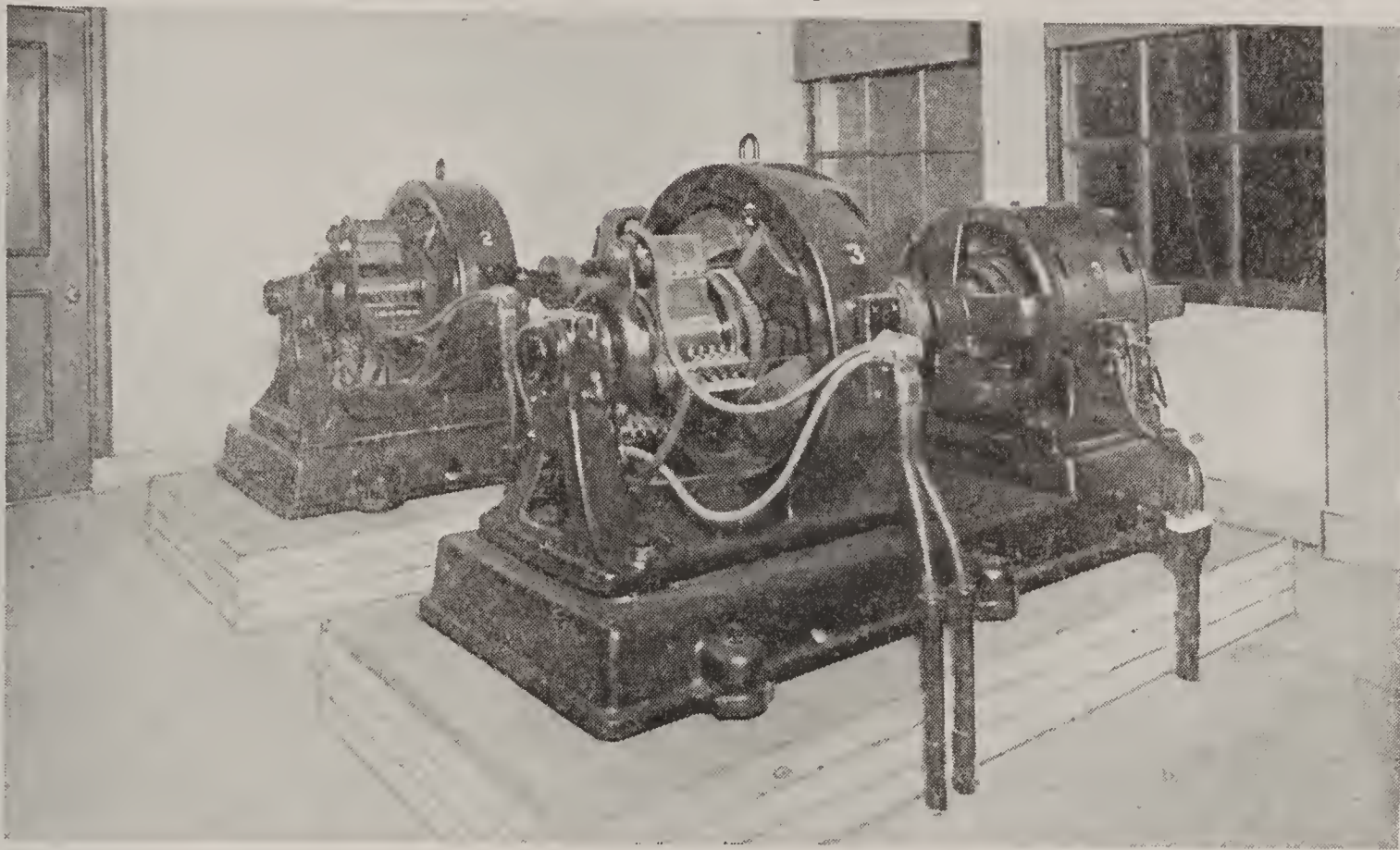
Before George M. Pullman perfected the sleeping car, there were coaches for night travelers in which you could lie down on a shelf and sleep—if you could. Usually you couldn't. These shelves had neither sheets nor pillows, and roads in those days were full of bumps.

Somebody described these sleeping cars as "nightmares on wheels." It was when going from his native state, New York, to Chicago, that Pullman put in a night in one of these cars, and it was this personal experience that led him to invent the sleeping car that is now used all over the world.

the moving picture by several decades, and the gas engine was long in use before anyone thought of the automobile. And, did you know that Fulton made a diving boat that would fire a torpedo under water, nearly a hundred years before the submarine was perfected for practical use in warfare?

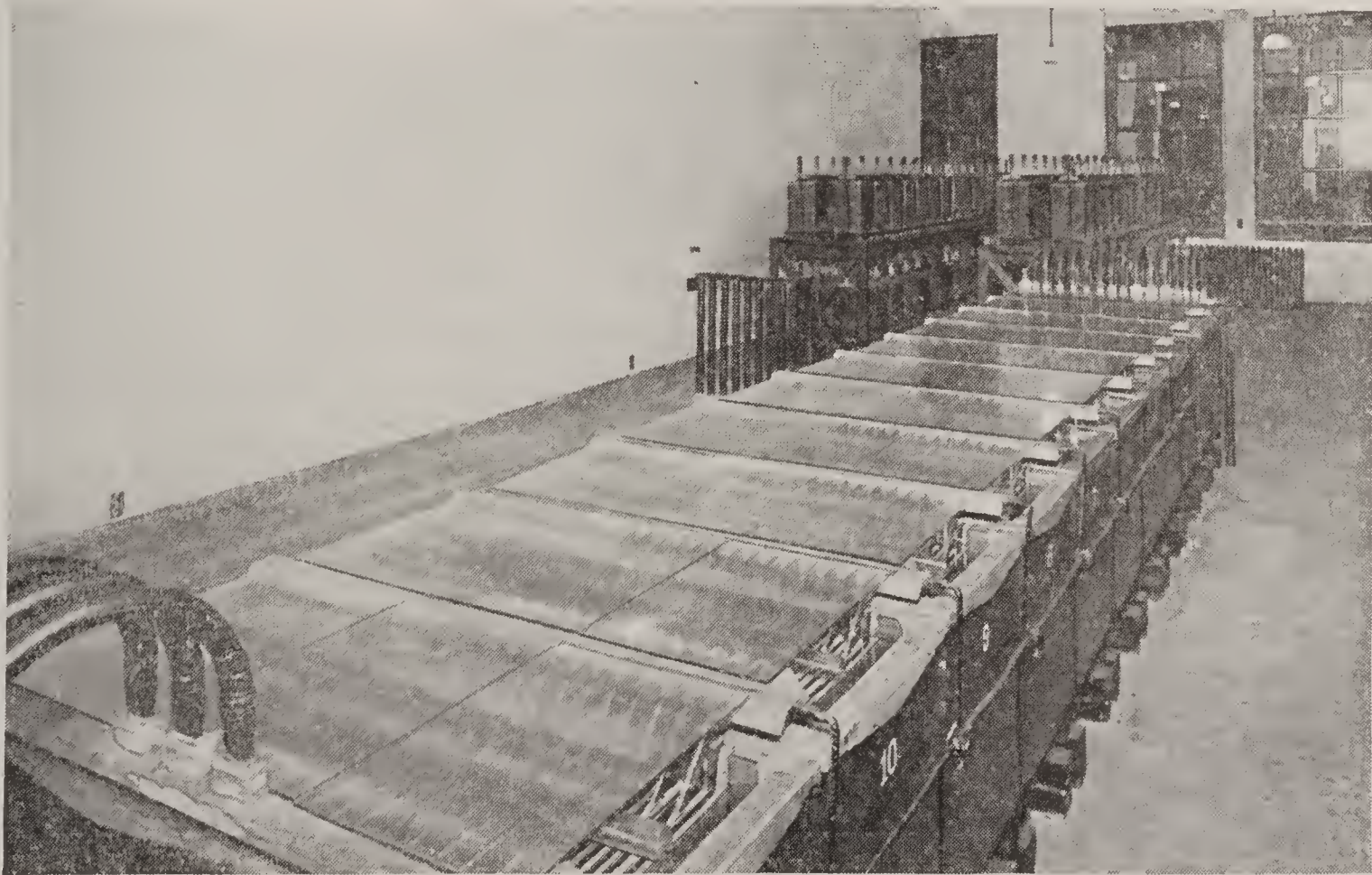
What next? No one knows. Amazing discoveries, creations and improvements are still being recorded every year. Scientific and practical men alike place no limits upon what may be done, since the seemingly impossible has been done so often. There are still unexplored fields, unsolved problems in mechan-

The Power Room



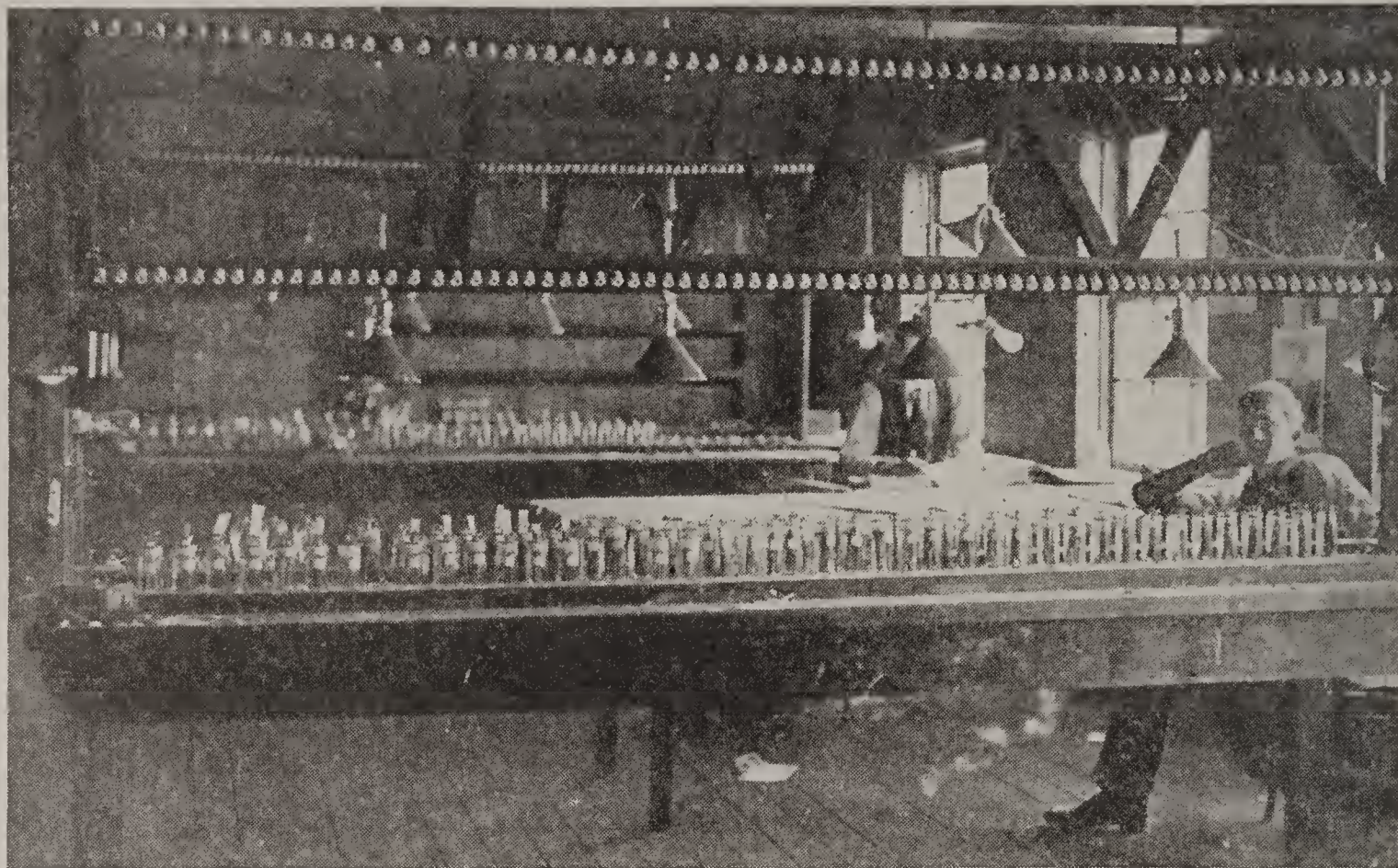
The smaller apparatus is an electric motor which turns the armature coils of the dynamo in the foreground. In revolving, these armatures (the round, cheese-shaped affairs) generate a powerful current in the coils of wires making up the core at the center of the dynamo. From this core the current passes out over the wires enclosed in the cable at the side.

Where the Dynamo Electricity is "Made Over"



The cables from the dynamo can be seen entering the battery in the foreground at the left. This battery is composed of eleven troughs called cells, and is large enough to supply current for a very large telephone system. Each cell contains a solution of sulphuric acid, in which lead plates are immersed. The current from the dynamo sets up a reaction between the lead and the acid, generating a different and more usable kind of current which passes out of the battery through the cables at the far end, going to all parts of the telephone system. Each lead plate is connected with the long lead bar between every two cells, and thus with the plates of the next cell. The connection is made by a strip of metal which runs from each plate and is welded into the bar of lead.

How Inventors Try and Try Again



Practical ideas don't come to inventors already finished; they have to be worked out. This picture will give you something of an idea of how Edison worked out one of his many inventions, the Edison storage battery. Each of the jars on the table in the foreground is one of these batteries, but each is a little different from the other. These young men take a look at the jars from time to time to see which one is making the best record, and all these experiments put together determine how the final battery is to be made.

ics, physics, chemistry and engineering where future inventors are free to win fame, fortune and the admiring gratitude of the world. But the conditions of success remain the

same. Men will need to know all that has been done in any one line before, and to possess the same qualities of mind as those who have done the great deeds of the past.

Our Political History from the Revolution to the Civil War

IF you are an American you love your country, but you are apt to think foreign lands more interesting than your own. Perhaps you know and envy some lucky friend who has traveled or served abroad and seen palaces and castles, ancient temples and cathedrals, galleries of "Old Masters" of art, and the places of dead kings, romantic lovers, and battles long ago. Compared with the countries of the Old World we have few historic shrines. Here, except for the Indian mounds and cliff dwellings, the works of man are new. Our beautiful Capital is only little over a century old. Our history appears to be only the story of the conquest of a wild continent; and our heroes are bold explorers and hardy pioneers.

Greatest Chapters in the History of Liberty

But, did you ever think that for every American who took a pleasure trip to Europe, hundreds of eager immigrants came to the United States to live? They looked upon our country as the most fortunate on earth. They were inspired to the great effort and risk of leaving their native lands, to make new homes in America, by the promise of liberty, justice and equal opportunity that they find in the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution.

Have you read these documents? They are printed in the back of your school history. They look dry and uninteresting, but really they are the opening chapters of our dramatic, national story, and the beginning of a better day in the political history of the world. People all over the earth are freer and happier today, because these were written; because the liberty-loving leaders of our Revolution had a new conception of human rights, and a noble faith in the ability and the virtue of the common man.

Unless you read them you cannot understand the principles and basic laws on which our government was founded. Nor can you understand its subsequent history; the mistakes we have made and paid for in blood and tears, the dangers which may threaten us again, from within and without. Nor can you understand your own duties and privileges as a citizen. When you grow up, you know, you must help conduct public affairs and safeguard our free institutions.

Begin by reading the Declaration, and thinking what the world was like at the time it was signed. It enumerates a long list of grievances and injuries, which England thought it entirely within her rights to inflict upon loyal

colonists. The services of foreign soldiers could then be bought. King George III hired 29,000 Hessian Germans of their Grand Duke, to fight his own subjects in America. The notion that "all men are created equal, with a right to life, liberty and the pursuit of happiness," was a bomb shell in the royal courts and camps of Europe.

France did help us with men, ships and money. But, while the French people sympathized with us, it must not be forgotten that the King of France had long been at war with England. Only a dozen years before, England had conquered all the French possessions in America, and France was glad to see her lose her rich colonies in return. King Louis soon had cause to regret his help, and to be alarmed at our success; for the French Revolution broke out in 1789, and a monarchy a thousand years old was overturned. The empires and kingdoms of Europe combined to punish France, to restore her royal family to the throne, and to beat back the rising tide of republicanism. If people could rebel and set up self-governing republics no monarchy would be secure.

Our Great Experiment in Government

This task of fighting the armies of France under Napoleon, kept England busy for twenty years. She had no thought of attempting to reconquer her lost colonies. Indeed, many of her liberal statesmen rejoiced that they were free. But with her powerful navy she continued to interfere with our sea-borne trade and there were long disputes over the surrender of the interior trading posts. So, "to provide for the common defense," as well as to secure

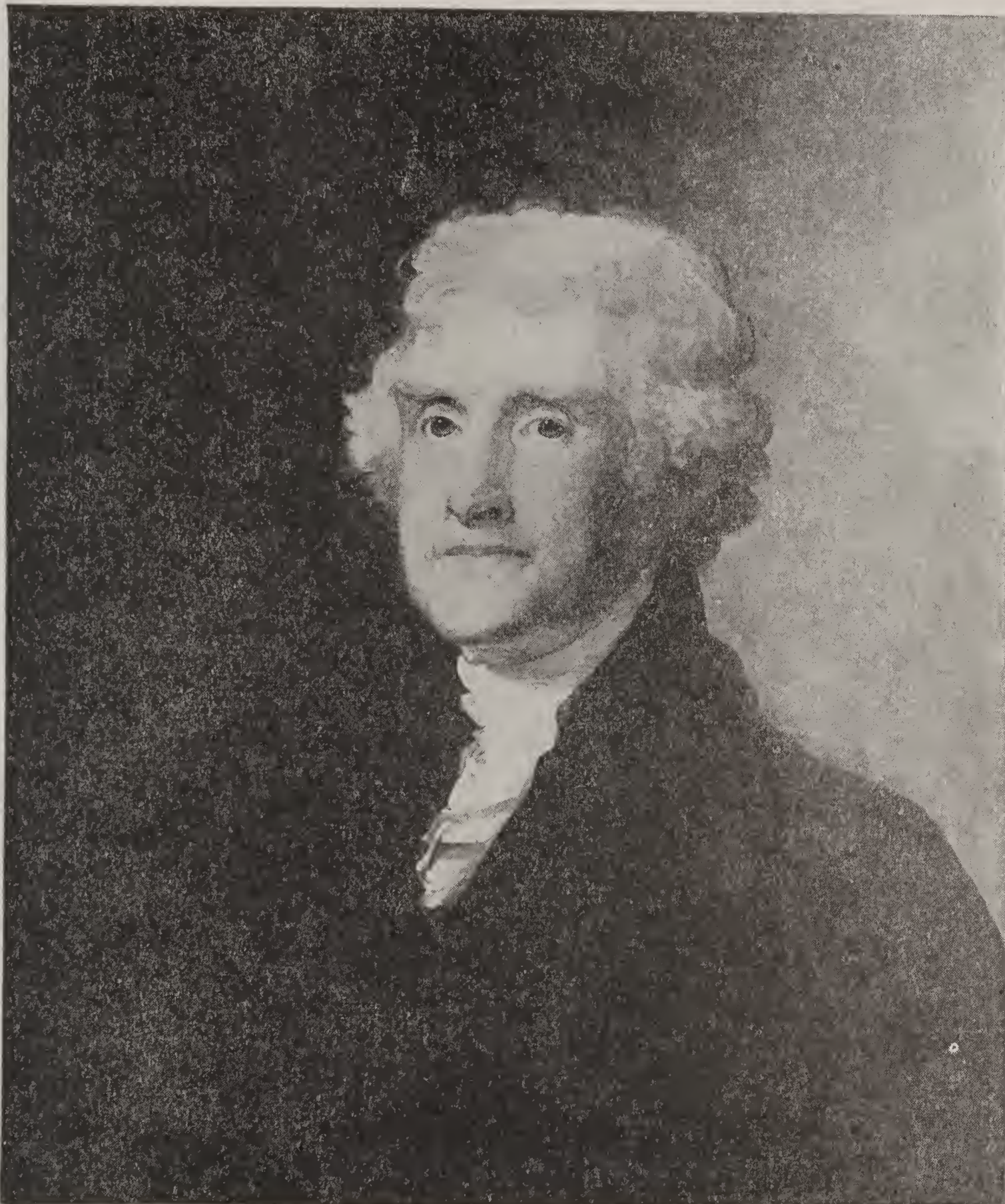
public order and credit, national responsibility, and the prosperous development of the country, the thirteen states were obliged to form "a more perfect union." They framed a constitution, set up a federal government, and claimed a place in the family of nations.

This was a doubtful experiment. Government by the governed had succeeded in The Netherlands, but that was a small, compact country, whose people were mostly Dutch and of similar habits, interests, and opinions. In America there were people of every nationality of western Europe, scattered from Maine to Georgia, and inland to Kentucky. Ninety-seven per cent of them were on farms. This population was sure to be increased by unknown elements, for we offered asylum and citizenship to the discontented of all lands. The country, too, had already begun to expand across a vast, unexplored wilderness, and pioneer life to develop a new type of self-reliant men remote from the seat of government. And one-tenth of our population of 3,000,000 people were Negroes, who were held in slavery. A few men like Benjamin Franklin and Patrick Henry, saw the inconsistency of slave-holding in a free country, and thought it so dangerous that it might yet disrupt the Union. You can see that the best, wisest, and most liberal statesmanship was needed to build, launch and pilot our new Ship of State.

Slow Growth of the National Spirit

We had a very solid foundation to build on, however. The people then in the country had brought with them a thorough knowledge of

Gilbert Stuart and His Jeffersons



Gilbert Stuart, one of the greatest of early American artists, painted several portraits of Jefferson. The original from which this one was copied was painted in Philadelphia, when Jefferson was fifty-seven years old and was serving as vice-president. His coat is a velvety, grayish black, the background is a dull, neutral olive tone, as in most of Stuart's paintings. Stuart was first of all a portrait painter. He cared little for the rest of the body or the surroundings of his figures, putting all his emphasis and good work on the head. He would tell clever anecdotes of his interesting life to his sitters, trying to kindle them to interest and thus bring out their most characteristic and natural expression. He was wonderfully successful in reading people's true characters, and in catching their most typical expressions on his canvases. It usually required only four or five sittings for him to complete a picture. The face in this portrait is that of a simple, kindly, intellectual gentleman, and that is what Thomas Jefferson was. We are told that he was "over six feet tall and very erect. His features were delicate, his eyes a bright hazel, his hair auburn, his complexion ruddy." He was one of the most scholarly men of his time, a good singer and violinist, a graceful dancer and an excellent horseman. He was a deep thinker and a brilliant and forceful writer, as he has proved for all time in his writing of the Declaration of Independence, but he was never a successful public speaker. He carried his democratic beliefs to the extent of being careless about his dress, sometimes going about in shabby clothes and down-at-the-heel shoes because he thought fine dress and display of all kinds to be wrong.

local self-government in England, and this had been used as the model for the self-governing colonies of America. And the English system of courts and common law, legislative bodies and administrative offices had been established everywhere. But the political experience of the people, in managing the affairs of the thirteen states that had risen from the old colonies, was both an advantage and a disadvantage. The states differed in size, population and climate, industries, wealth and social ideals. The little states feared the big ones, and the lower classes were jealous and suspicious of the upper. And except in the way of trade, much restricted by England, none of them had had any dealings with the outside world.

It is not surprising, therefore, that there was an exaggerated notion of the dignity and importance of the state, and a limited conception of the nation. The United States of America was looked upon as an artificial thing, created by the states for their convenience and safety. Until long after the Revolution there was intense local, and then sectional, patriotism. But love and loyalty to the country as a whole, was a plant of slow growth.

Until four years after the Revolution the country was governed by the same loose confederation that had almost lost the war. We really had thirteen small, independent countries, which maintained little armies, and passed laws that created disputes and hampered trade. With no means of paying the public debt incurred in the common defense; no revenue for general expenses; no credit; no power to regulate domestic or foreign trade, or even author-

ity to enforce peace between the states, the country drifted rapidly toward helplessness and ruin.

First Step Toward a Binding Union

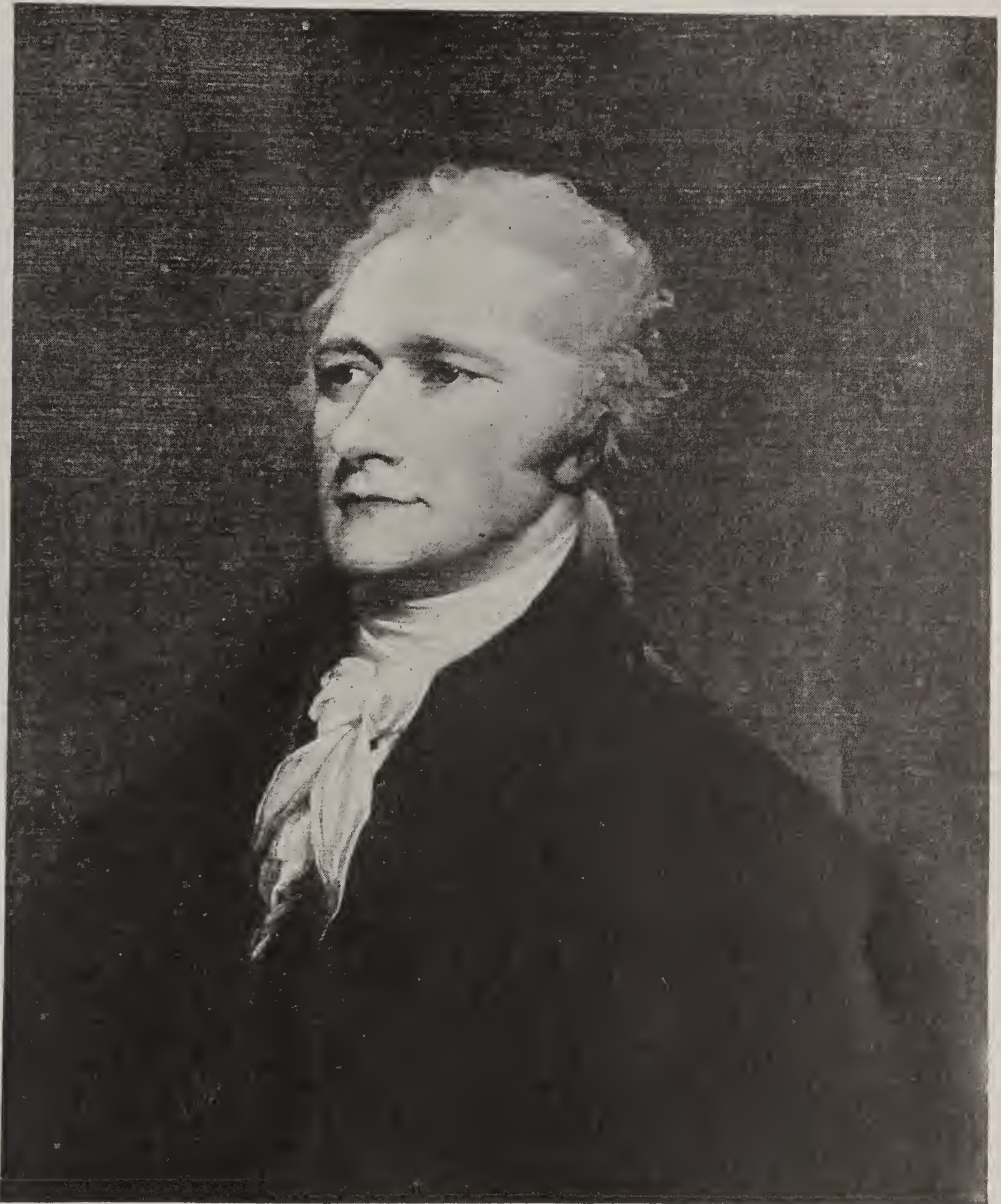
In 1787 a Constitutional Convention was called, to devise some plan of closer union. Everyone was agreed in demanding a republican form of government. But the debates over the Constitution and afterwards developed two widely differing opinions as to the form of republic that would be acceptable to the people. As these two views have permeated, and must continue to permeate all our law-making and political practice, it is necessary for every citizen who expects to take an intelligent part in the government of the country, to have a clear understanding of them.

One of these conceptions of government was held by Thomas Jefferson. You have had a sketch of the author of the Declaration, and his lofty political philosophy. The apostle of personal liberty, he had a sublime faith in the right and the ability of every man to govern himself. He wanted only enough government to secure public order and safety, and he firmly believed that, even in a republic, a strong central power, supported by an army and navy and with ample revenues, would lead to the same tyranny and corruption as in a monarchy. He insisted upon home rule for every state, city, county, township, and village in the country. He thought the defense of the nation should be left largely to the state militia, and was the champion of free trade. The followers of Jefferson called themselves Democratic Republicans.

*Jefferson's
Idea of
Union*

*The
Loose
Confederation*

Trumbull's Portrait of Hamilton



Alexander Hamilton was short and slender, erect and dignified. His eyes, as you see, were deep-set and dark, his hair light. This portrait of him is by John Trumbull, and is one of the finest that that great historical painter ever executed.

Hamilton's manners were charming and, for so great a man, his simplicity was marked. Today we still feel the influence of his clear thinking and sound judgment in our interpretation of the Constitution and the powers of the central government. The alert, bold poise of the head, the steady eyes and firm mouth of this portrait show that Trumbull has caught the spirit of the man—his intense feeling, aggressive mind, determined will, and high courage. The original painting is in the Boston Museum of Fine Arts, but it is so popular that we see copies of it everywhere.

Opposed to Jefferson was a party led by an equally ardent patriot, and one of the greatest political thinkers and writers of the day. It is difficult now to realize that we might so early have missed having the ideas and the services of this brilliant statesman, who shares with Jefferson the glory of having founded our republican institutions.

Alexander Hamilton was born, the son of a Scotch father and a French mother, on the little West Indian Island of Nevis, in 1757. His father failed in business, so the boy was obliged to take a clerkship in the office of a West Indian importing merchant. But at thirteen he showed such remarkable gifts of mind and strength of character, that friends of the family raised funds to send him to King's College, New York (now Columbia University). At seventeen he wrote letters to the press, in defense of the rights of the American Colonies, that were ascribed to the noted lawyer and diplomat, John Jay. He was in the army at nineteen, commanding a company of artillery, and was soon made an aide-de-camp on Washington's staff.

During the eight years of the war Hamilton studied for the New York bar, became such an authority on sound finance that he was often consulted by William Morris, that patriotic banker of Philadelphia, and formulated his theory of republican government. Washington was a quarter of a century older than Hamilton, but profited by his political views. So did John Adams, John Jay, William Morris and James Madison.

Hamilton had an imperial imagination. He foresaw the vast extent and high destinies of the United

States of America, and insisted that, in a world ruled by kings, who were hostile to republican ideas, the country should guard itself against the dangers of internal weakness and

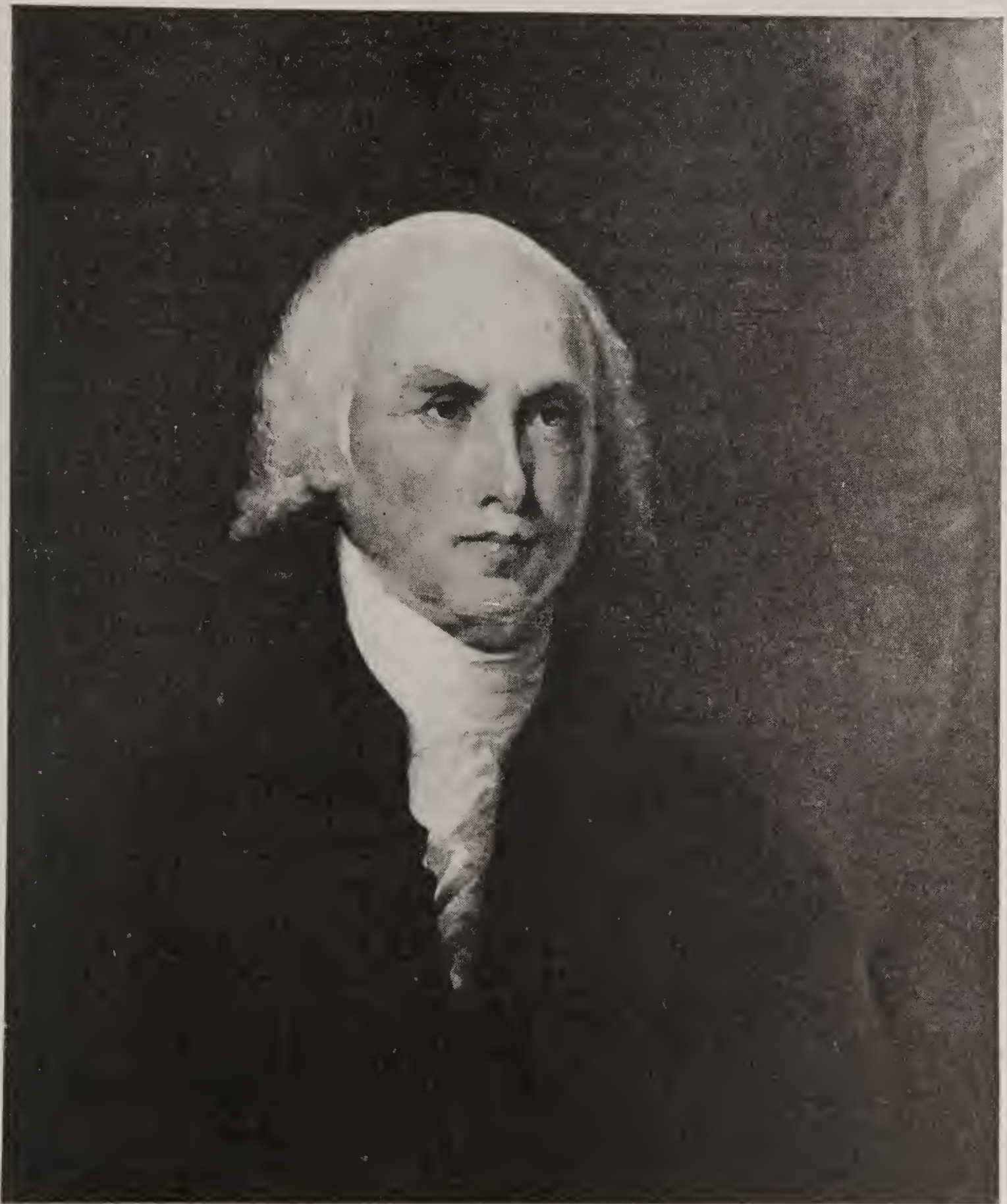
division of authority. *Hamilton's Idea of Central Control* He thought that the federal government should be superior to the states in everything that affected the general welfare, and that the President and Congress should be supported by an adequate army and navy and ample revenues. He conceded the principle of home-rule in local affairs to the states, and thought that this, together with a wide suffrage, frequent elections and limited terms of office, should make the country secure against official tyranny and corruption. Men of Hamilton's opinion were known as Federalists.

The Great Compromise in the Constitution

The groups which favored and opposed a strong Federal government were so evenly matched in numbers and eminent leadership, both in the Convention and in the State Conventions that ratified the Constitution, that the only solution possible was a series of compromises. Consequently, each party has honestly found, in the fundamental law of our government, authority to put its principles into practice. Administrations have, at times, shaped laws and events toward Jefferson's view, and at times toward Hamilton's. Thoughtful historians are of the opinion that this elasticity is a source of strength. The country bends this way and that, in obedience to the popular will, but it has come through every crisis without breaking, and has even stood the strain of civil war.

Now, although the country was

Madison the Scholar President



Gilbert Stuart's portrait of Madison shows us a dignified little man with the pale face of the scholar who burns the midnight oil. His hair itself was light but, as you see, following the fashion of the time he wore a powdered wig. When Madison first appeared in the Virginia Legislature at the age of twenty-five, his clothing was so somber, so different from the gaily colored garments of the fine gentlemen about him, that people took him for a preacher.

People who knew him said that James Madison was an interesting talker, didn't lose his temper easily and was always ready to laugh at a good joke. He was considered the broadest and most accurate scholar among all the well-informed, keen-thinking men of that day. Henry Clay thus contrasted him with Jefferson, whose lifelong friend Madison was: "Jefferson had more genius, Madison more judgment and common sense. Jefferson was visionary, Madison cool and practical." As a young man he was the champion of religious freedom and absolute separation of church and state. As an old man, he watched the development of slavery with growing sorrow, and never failed to regret the presence of the institution in America.

For the story of how this learned, dignified gentleman fell in love with and married pretty, saucy Dolly Todd, the belle of Washington, read our story of Dolly Madison.

divided between the Federalists and the Anti-Federalists, in the first presidential election, there were no party organizations as we know them today. Regardless of his opinion, every man trusted and wanted Washington; and he, never a bitter partisan, persuaded both Jefferson and Hamilton to accept places in his cabinet. But two such strong men of opposite convictions could not work well together, and Washington's sympathies were with Hamilton.

No "Entangling Alliances"

In Washington's two terms there were serious disputes over the assumption of state debts, the tariff, and the establishment of a national bank. Jefferson advocated free trade and state banks. The cabinet was disrupted over the French Revolution. Since France had helped us, Jefferson insisted that we should go to the help of the French people in their struggle for liberty. It was a generous impulse, but European countries had been fighting each other for a thousand years, and Washington and Hamilton thought we should keep out of Old World quarrels—make no "entangling alliances."

This was our first international policy, and it is one to which all parties later subscribed. Even the Democrats soon saw the wisdom of it. A Democratic president, James Monroe, twenty-five years later, announced that the United States would not permit European governments to interfere in the New World "for the purpose of oppressing or controlling" the free governments there. This is the famous "Monroe Doctrine," formulated to protect the republics of Mexico and Central and

South America, which had rebelled and won their freedom from Spain. The "Monroe Doctrine," consistently followed for a century, has saved us endless trouble. European governments accepted it unwillingly, but only one serious attempt was ever made to dispute it. Taking advantage of our Civil War in the sixties, Emperor Napoleon III of France attempted to force an empire on Mexico. This ended in failure and tragedy to a foreign prince when, at the close of our war, the United States obliged the French troops to withdraw.

Beginning of Our Two Great Parties

Disagreements in Washington's cabinet were so serious that Jefferson resigned and organized the Democrats for active opposition to the administration. James Madison, then a senator from Virginia, deserted the Federalists and joined the forces of Jefferson. With James Monroe and Edmund Randolph, the Democrats had four able leaders, three of whom afterwards held the office of president for eight years each. The Federalists were left in control of the government, and elected John Adams for one term, but they also had to organize to fight a large and energetic minority.

Thus were born our two great political parties. The Democratic party, although it has often been divided into factions, and even split in two, has kept its name and identity down to the present day, and is still true to the principles of Jefferson. The Federalist party has had a different history. With the death of Washington in 1799, and of Hamilton in 1804, it was left without able leadership, and went into

*Birth of the
Monroe
Doctrine*

*Democrats
and
Republicans*

eclipse. With the War of 1812 it disappeared altogether. But Hamilton's principles lived, in an important faction of the Democrats, and events conspired to revive it about 1830, under the name of the Whig Party. The Whigs flourished for more than twenty years, under as brilliant political leadership as this country has ever seen, and elected two presidents. The northern Whigs joined with other Free-Soil parties in 1856 to form the Republican party of today. Republicans still form Hamilton and Lincoln Clubs, after their two greatest leaders; Democrats form Jefferson and Jackson Clubs.

Why Political Parties Are Necessary

Political parties are necessary in a self-governing country. Their function is to determine the few questions of greatest public importance which need attention at any one time, to state opposing views as to how those matters should be dealt with, and to line up the voters for team-work, as in a match game. The stronger team, that is the party with a majority of the votes in a majority of the states, wins the game, and is said to be "in power." While in, it runs our government as literally as steam runs a locomotive. If it abuses its power it is liable to be defeated at the next election.

The minority keeps its organization in training and on the watch for any weakness or foul play of the party in power. And smaller parties, working for some reform, have much influence by voting with the big party that will help them most. No important body of public opinion can be ignored, if it is organized. And every citizen who would take

an intelligent and influential part in the government of his country, must belong to a party, and work with it for definite ends. If he changes his opinion he can, of course, change his party.

The history of a party is written in the biographies of its leaders. The Federalist party died for lack of leadership. The early Democrats were more fortunate. Jefferson lived until 1826, and he was succeeded by Andrew Jackson, who left his party so strong that it survived his death in 1845. So, with the inauguration of Jefferson in 1801, the Democrats came into a power that they held, with but two interruptions, until 1860 and the Civil War.

Washington, Jefferson and the Third Term Precedent

Jefferson served eight years. Following Washington's example, he refused a third term. Both thought it dangerous to our free institutions for one man to remain in office too long. Thus a Federalist and a Democrat established a patriotic precedent that has never been broken.

Experience has shown, too, that it may be equally bad for one party to remain in power too long. Even if it does not become corrupt and tyrannical, it tends to perpetuate one viewpoint, and to stand in the way of progress. The people could not possibly trust the wisdom and patriotism of Jefferson more than they had trusted Washington; but many states had become alarmed by twelve years of Federalist rule, and the Hamiltonian policy of strengthening the power of the federal government. These were re-

*Like a
Football
Game*

*Value of
Change in
Office*

assured by the election of Jefferson, champion of states' rights. This was a good thing, for in these early days dissatisfied states looked upon secession from the Union as the proper remedy for any and all political ills. Virginia threatened to secede if her state sovereignty was encroached upon, and Kentucky and Tennessee for the opposite reason—if the government failed to come to their relief and compel France and Spain to open the Mississippi River to their commerce.

Jefferson and the Louisiana Purchase

Jefferson settled that matter by taking \$15,000,000 from the United States treasury and buying Louisiana from France. He "stretched the Constitution" according to his own doctrine, in order to acquire a magnificent trade beyond the Mississippi, and benefit the three states west of the mountains. Washington or Adams would probably have done the same thing, very certain that they were acting within their constitutional power. Both parties had the same motive,—to benefit the entire country, and to add to the power and credit of the United States, by giving it an immense public domain. This is one of many striking incidents in our history which prove that, in an emergency, a patriotic president of any party can usually be trusted to do the right thing. The "Monroe Doctrine" is another instance, and the "Force Bill," by which President Jackson compelled South Carolina to obey the tariff law passed by Congress, is another.

Jefferson's long term in office was marked by a national vision that Federalists were surprised to find in him, but his foreign policy was at-

tacked with bitter criticism. He satisfied his own party by cutting down the public debt, reducing the army and navy, and stripping his office of ceremony. "Jeffersonian simplicity" freed our White House of the elaborate etiquette of royal courts.

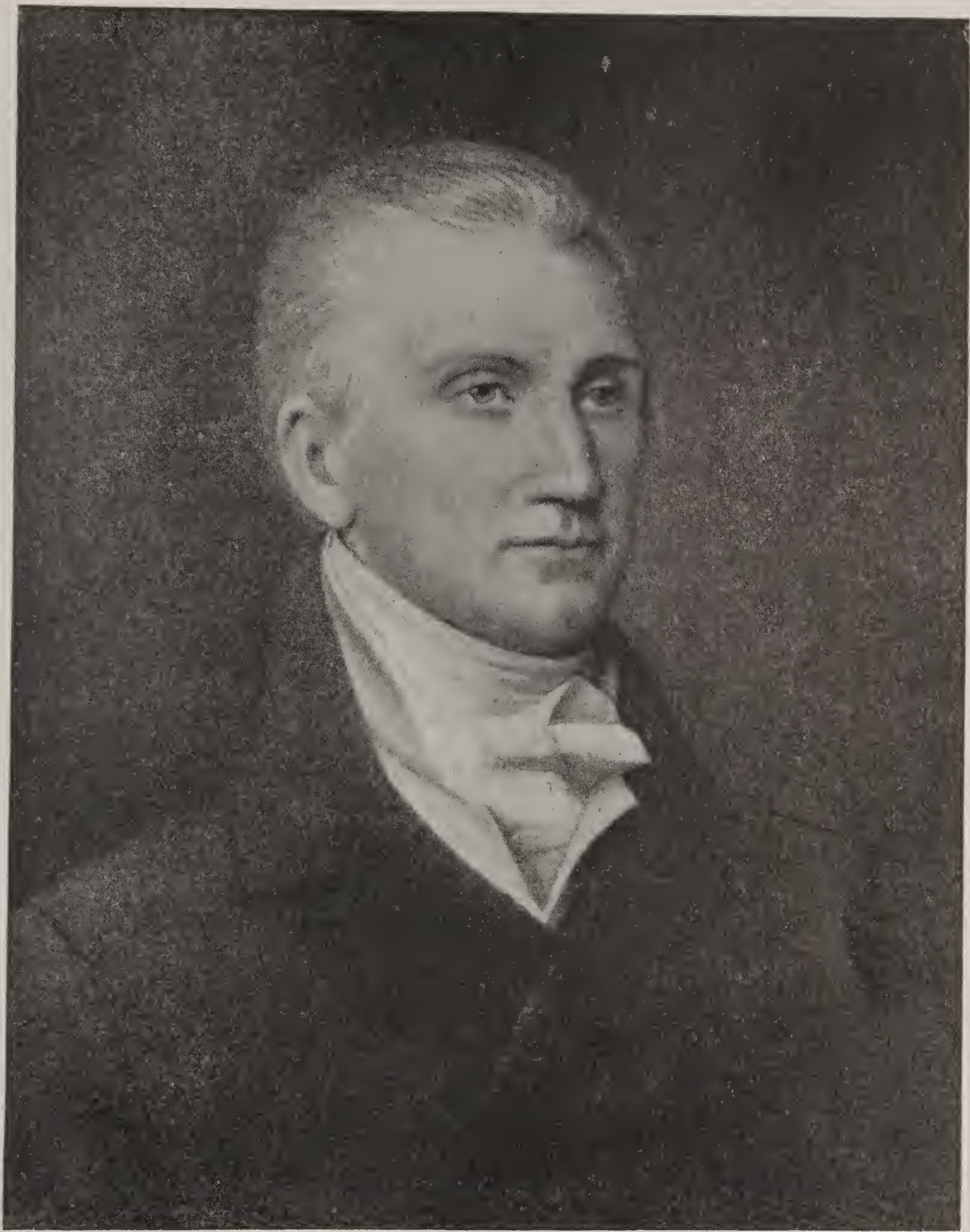
*Meaning of
'Jeffersonian
Simplicity'*

Why We Won the War of 1812

As you know, we had a second war with England in 1812. This had long been foreseen, but because of the Democratic policy of reducing the army and navy, the country was unprepared for it, and the militia of the states was unequal to the task. And it should be clearly understood that we won this war after unnecessary loss, and the bitter humiliation of having our capital burned. And we won it only because England could not give her entire attention to us, while engaged in the European coalition which overthrew Napoleon. She made peace with us in December, 1814, to leave herself free for the decisive battle with Napoleon at Waterloo in the following August.

The Napoleonic wars spread to America as early as 1810. When Spain was conquered by French armies, the Spanish colonies in Mexico, and Central and South America seized the opportunity to rise in rebellion. President Monroe promptly recognized the new Spanish-American republics, and courageously challenged the monarchies of Europe to interfere with them. In the days of wooden navies, driven by sails, it was indeed a serious undertaking for any foreign power to attack us. For quite a hundred years the Atlantic Ocean was a real protection to us, and we were left to work out our destiny in peace.

The Man Who Gave Us the Monroe Doctrine



James Monroe was six feet in height but so stoop-shouldered that he did not look that tall. He was a fine looking man, as you see. His deep-set eyes were mild and grayish-blue, and even as a young man he was deeply wrinkled. Monroe, like so many of the great statesmen of the Revolutionary Period, was born in Virginia. He came of mixed Scotch and Welsh parentage. He held various public offices under both the state and national governments, and was especially successful in foreign diplomacy. He is most famous for the Monroe Doctrine which did not originate with him, however. It was one of the many sound political principles which Washington recommended, but it was Monroe who crystallized it in its present form in a message to Congress, while he was president. Credit for some of its provisions must also be given to Monroe's able secretary of state, John Quincy Adams.

But this ocean was no barrier to the republican ideas that flowed from the New World to the Old. France was conquered in 1815, and her ancient royal family restored to the throne—for a time. It was, indeed, not until 1871 that the French Republic of today was finally established on the ruins of the second Napoleonic Empire. But in the meantime the power of the King of England was much limited, and that of her people enlarged, and home rule was given to the big British colonies. Italy fought for freedom, and united her petty kingdoms and principalities under a constitutional monarchy. The several hundred petty states of Germany were reduced to thirty-eight, which were later combined by Bismarck into the German Empire. Greece and the Balkan States slowly won their freedom from Turkey; Nihilism aroused Russia from sleep and freed the serfs; and Japan emerged from her age-old hermit despotism into an enlightened and progressive country under a constitutional emperor. The Revolution started a mighty wave of liberty that, in one century, rolled around the world.

Origin of the Tariff Question

Our troubles were chiefly internal. We had to learn how to govern ourselves. It had been foreseen that it would be difficult to mete out equal justice to every one, in such a big and varied country, where the needs of one section might be the opposite of the needs of another. But no one foresaw the animosities that were to grow out of the tariff, or duty on all foreign goods entering the country, which was Hamilton's device for providing a revenue for the fed-

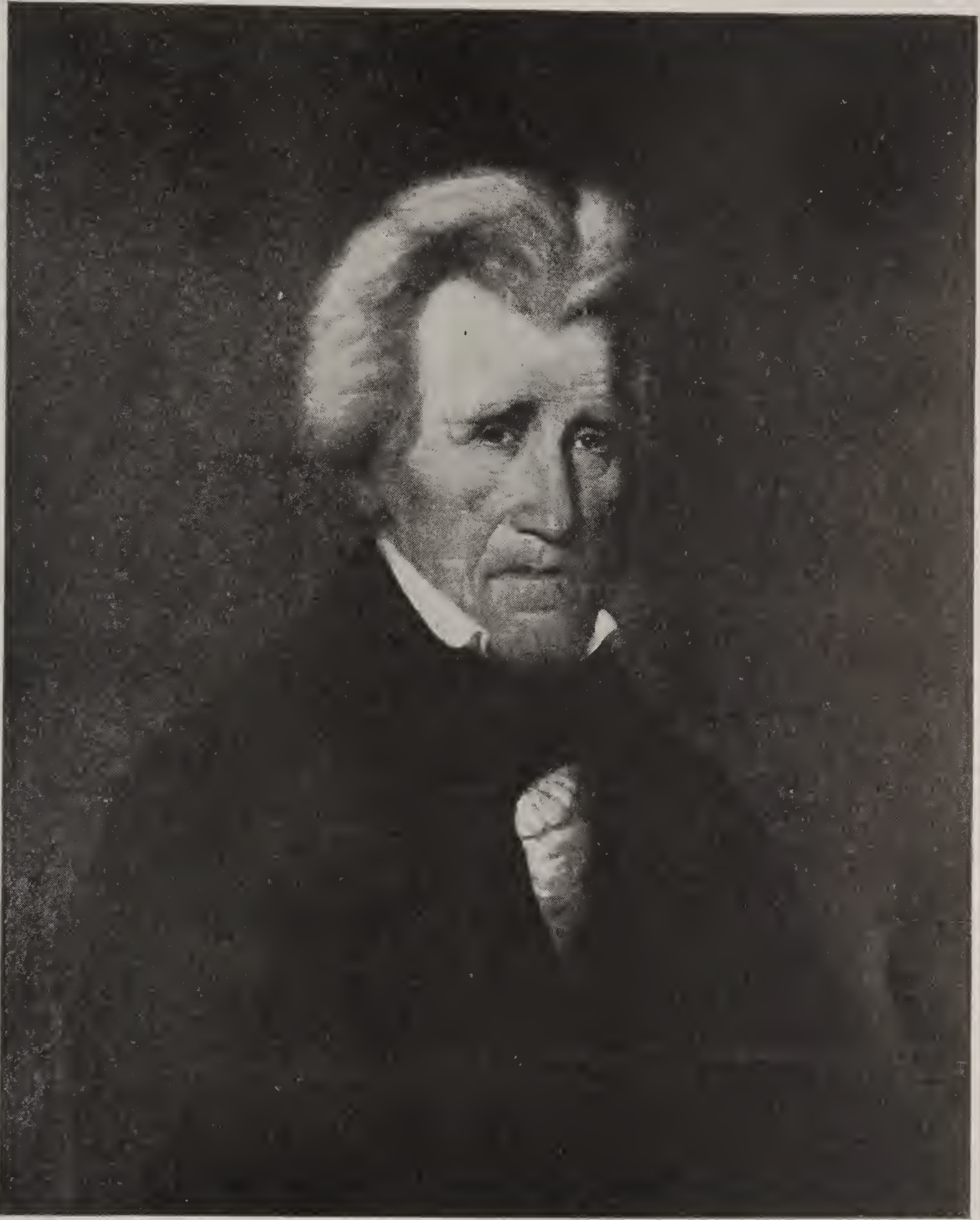
eral government. The Democrats believed in free trade, but they could not suggest a better way to raise necessary revenues, and they finally accepted the principle of a tariff for "revenue only." This system of indirect tax was fair enough, bearing equally on all the states, in exact proportion to their use of foreign manufactures, as long as the entire country was largely agricultural.

The War of 1812, however, brought about an unexpected change. The embargo imposed by Jefferson, by cutting off trade, suddenly obliged us to go into every sort of manufacturing. But the factories were all built in the northern states by those "handy" Puritan Yankees, and by the Dutch, Quakers, Scotch-Irish and Germans, of New England, New York and Pennsylvania. The southern states, with their large plantations, numerous slaves and simple crops, remained agricultural.

The Tariff, Slavery and the Civil War When peace was signed, English goods poured in, cutting prices. This delighted the people of the South, who, having to buy nearly everything they used, wanted things cheap. But the new factories of the North were threatened with ruin. When the tariff was raised in 1816, for the avowed purpose of protecting home manufactures, there were cries of distress from the South. No scheme could be devised by which the South could have free trade and the North protection. So a bitter struggle for the control of Congress, and of the tariff question, arose between the two sections.

It seemed highly probable that the northern states would gain and keep the control, for they were increasing rapidly in population by foreign immigration to their indus-

The Character of "Old Hickory"



Painting by Earle, National Gallery of Art, Washington

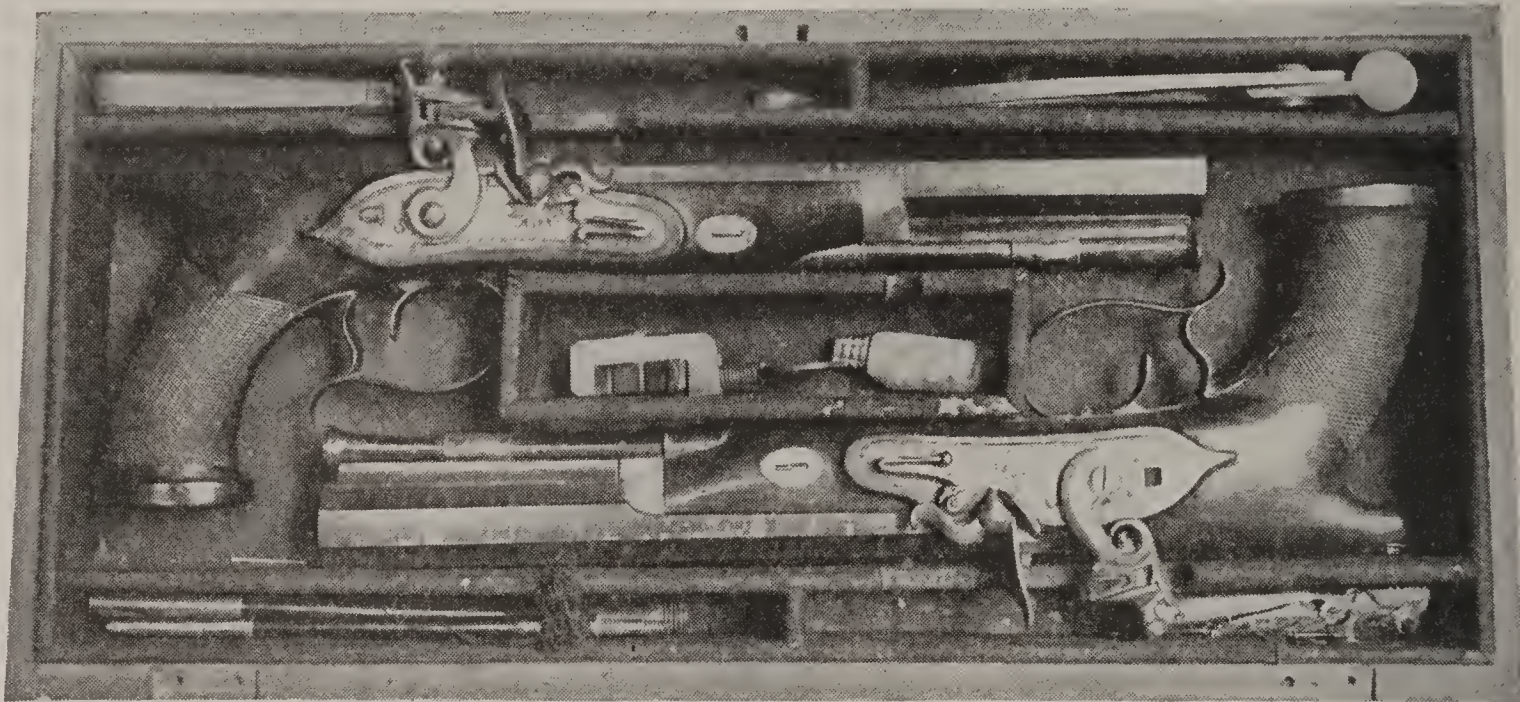
Andrew Jackson's long, narrow face, deep-set eyes, tight-lipped mouth, and square chin tell a story of his character that cannot be mistaken. You know how his daring campaigns against the Indians in the South won him the nick-name "Old Hickory," and you know how he was twice wounded in duels which originated in bitter quarrels. He was a stubborn man, for once an idea or a prejudice took root in his mind it was hard to change it. And he was hot-tempered. As a soldier he was dashing, very popular and absolutely without fear. His personality was so strong and his popularity so great, that he was able to oppose one of the doctrines that was widely held in his party—that of states' rights—and at the same time become his party's most powerful leader. The election of Jackson marks the advent to power of the new turbulent "backwoods" democracies of the West. Compare his face with that of Madison, the scholar, and Washington, the dignified, thoughtful statesman, to see if you can find evidence of the difference in their personalities.

trial cities, and the pioneer movement to the region around the Ohio and the Great Lakes was adding to the number of states. Ohio, Indiana and Illinois were all admitted to the Union by 1818. Emigrants would not go into the southern states,

the political thought of the day, the line of division between the free and the slave states. It was inevitable that there should soon be a sectional division of political parties.

You must remember that, immediately following 1812, there was

Jackson's Duelling Pistols



This is a picture of Jackson's duelling pistols in a portion of the box in which they were kept. The lid has disappeared with the barbarous custom of duelling itself. It is easy to see the wisdom of our laws which do not permit men to carry deadly weapons in times of peace. Duels were most common of all in the times when every man wore a sword.

where, with unpaid black labor, there was no employment for them. So the South saw the only chance of keeping its proportionate representation in Congress, in the extension of slavery into new agricultural states west of the Mississippi.

The Famous Missouri Compromise

It was in this way, and not, at first, as a moral issue, that the institution of slavery entered national politics. The first battle in Congress was fought over the admission of Missouri in 1820. It came into the Union as a slave state, but under the famous "Missouri Compromise," by which it was agreed that, in all future states north of its southern boundary, slavery should be prohibited. But this very compromise served to make visible to

only one party in the country—the Democratic. But by 1820 the tariff, slavery and states' rights questions had split the Democrats into four factions, two in the North, two in the South. In 1824 there were four presidential candidates, each of whom claimed the name of Democrat. The protective tariff views of manufacturing New England and the West prevailed in the election of John Quincy Adams.

He called himself a *National Democrat*, a name very suggestive of the old Federalist party. And do you recognize the influence of his ancestry? His father, John Adams, the early president, was still living. His son held Democratic principles with Hamiltonian leanings. A few years later he was one of the organizers of the Whig party,

which advocated Hamilton's political philosophy. Adams, Henry Clay and Daniel Webster were the leaders of the Whig party, which became identified with the interests and social ideals of the northern states. The Democrats, uniting under the leadership of Andrew Jackson, became the party of the South.

Had the two sections been solidly arrayed against each other, there would have been secession and civil war fully a generation before Lincoln's election. But there were some Whigs in the South and many Democrats in the North. Henry Clay, the leader of the Whigs in the House of Representatives, was from Kentucky; and up to the war Illinois was represented by Democratic senators. And there was division in both parties. Clay, of Kentucky, for instance, differed on many points with Adams and Webster, of New England; and John C. Calhoun, of South Carolina, was a more uncompromising states' rights man than Andrew Jackson, of Tennessee. In both parties the more moderate view was held in the states west of the mountains. This accounts for Lincoln's understanding and sympathy for both sections. Born in Kentucky, in 1809, he grew to manhood near the Ohio River in Indiana, in a region of the country where Jackson and Clay had nearly equal following.

The tariff was finally hammered down to the old "revenue only" basis in 1842. But long before this question was settled satisfactorily for the South, slavery had become a menacing issue.

At some time slaves were held in all the colonies. But Negroes did not thrive in a cold climate, nor could

they be used profitably in the many complicated tasks of the small farms and workshops of the North. There slave-holding was gradually abandoned, and it was on the decline in the South when a fresh impetus was given to it by the invention of the cotton gin. Millions of acres of wild land were cleared and planted to this simple crop, that could be grown with slave labor, from the Gulf to the Ohio and Missouri Rivers.

At that time the extension of slavery into the territories and new states was opposed in the North chiefly because it would restrict the field of free white labor. Benjamin Franklin had helped form the first Abolition Society before 1800, but it was not until 1831 that abolition sentiment had grown to the point to justify William Lloyd Garrison in beginning the publication of *The Liberator* in Boston. Soon thereafter John Quincy Adams represented an anti-slavery wing of the Whigs in Congress. After 1833, when England abolished slavery throughout the British Empire, a strong moral feeling against the institution developed throughout the civilized world. In some of our border states the gradual emancipation of the slaves was seriously considered.

But the organization of strong abolition and free-soil parties in the North, and the establishment of "under-ground railway systems" by which runaway slaves were helped

to escape to Canada, aroused alarm and resentment in the South.

The industrial system of the South was based on slave labor, and sudden emancipation without compensation to the owners of slaves, or

*Growth of
Abolition
Sentiment*

*The "Under-
ground
Railway"*

provision for the freed Negro, would have brought ruin and anarchy to half the country. The Constitution had sanctioned the existence of slavery, a thing that Northerners were prone to forget or to ignore. Many plans were proposed for the gradual emancipation of the slaves, together with their removal to a separate Negro state or colonization

William Lloyd Garrison looks more like a mild school-teacher or preacher than the man of fiery eloquence and grim determination that he was. He got his education in the type-setting room of a printing office, and even when he was very young he advocated reforms that were many years ahead of his time. He was hunted out and dragged through the streets by a howling mob more than once, and put in jail for libel when he denounced the men who transported slaves from one place to another. But through it all he managed to print his paper, *The Liberator*, and to remain firm in his doctrine of immediate and absolute liberation for all the slaves. It was his tireless energy and clear, forceful way

in Africa; but none of these met with much success.

Instead of healing, the breach widened. Talk of secession was heard in both sections of the country. A free republic for the North and a slave republic for the South was thought, by many, to be the best solution. But as early as 1830 the most eloquent voice in the country, that of Daniel Webster, was heard pleading for the Union, and for a national patriotism that would settle all differences justly and peaceably.

For quite twenty years the two sections were very nearly evenly matched in Congress. Arkansas and

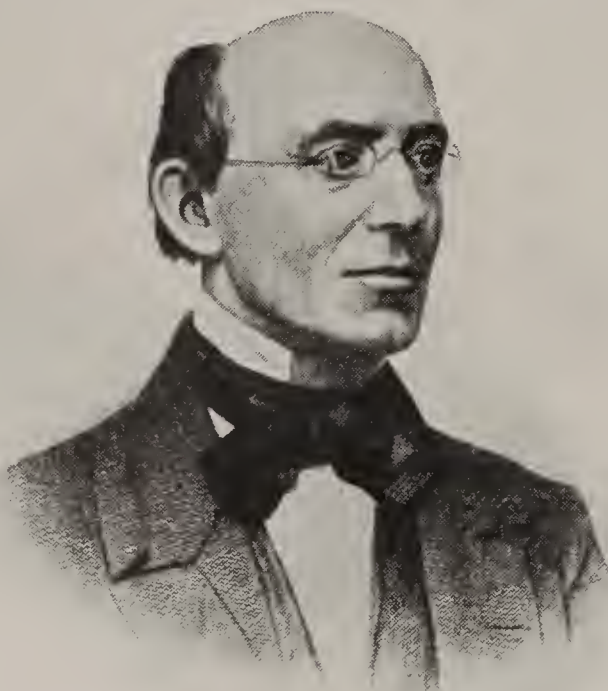
Florida, and Texas by annexation and war with Mexico, were admitted as slave states. The free states added Michigan, Wisconsin and Iowa. There were long and bitter fights over Kansas, Nebraska and California, —in Kansas taking the form of pro-slavery and free-soil colonization, and civil war—but all came in free.

Between 1845

of presenting his arguments which helped the abolition sentiment to grow, until it pervaded the whole North. Unlike many radical reformers, Garrison lived to see this reform accomplished. After the Civil War was over and the Thirteenth Amendment abolishing slavery forever was passed, William Lloyd Garrison closed *The Liberator* office, because its work was done. Its motto

showed the breadth of Garrison's views, which are more and more being realized among civilized nations: "Our country is the world—our countrymen are mankind." And these words, uttered in the course of one of his abolition speeches, show the character of the man: "I am in earnest—I will not retreat a single inch—and I will be heard."

William Lloyd Garrison and the Liberator



Wm. Lloyd Garrison.

and 1852 the Democrats and the Whigs lost five great leaders by death, and both parties began to break up. The northern Whigs, uniting with the Abolitionists, Free-Soilers, and Know Nothings (an anti-foreign party) formed the Republican party in 1856, and began to develop a number of young and vigorous leaders. Abraham Lincoln who, as a Whig, had served a term in Congress ten years before, was one of the founders of the new party in Illinois. Then the Democrats were divided into Northern and Southern factions by the Kansas-Nebraska bill, and by

*Webster's
Plea for
Union*

*The
Dred Scott
Decision*

the famous Dred Scott Decision of the United States Supreme Court. By this decision slaves were declared to be property—not persons—and that they could be taken into any state or territory without loss of ownership by the master. Thus slave-holding could not be prohibited in the territories and all attempts to prevent its further spread were against the Constitution.

The North, this time, was alarmed. Many northern Democrats went over to the Republicans; and the Lincoln-Douglas debates in 1858, and John Brown's raid on Harper's Ferry, in 1859, a heroic but ill-advised attempt to incite the slaves to rebellion, divided the Democrats hopelessly, crystallized

anti-slavery sentiment in the North, and resulted in Lincoln's election to the presidency. Before his inauguration in March, 1861, several southern states had seceded, and the war was begun by the firing on Sumter.

You can, perhaps, best understand Lincoln and other leaders of the Civil War period, both northern and southern, by knowing more of the troubled times in which they grew up, and of the great Democratic and Whig leaders who, for a generation, prevented the disruption of the Union. Two of them served as President; three were in Congress, orators who ranked with Patrick Henry and Lincoln, in what has been called the Golden Age of American Oratory.

The Tide River

*Clear and cool, clear and cool,
By laughing shallow and dreaming pool;
Cool and clear, cool and clear,
By shining shingle and foaming wear.
Under the crag where the ouzel sings,
And the ivied wall where the church-bell rings,
Undefiled, for the undefiled.
Play by me, bathe in me, mother and child.
Dank and foul, dank and foul,
By the smoky town in its murky cowl.
Foul and dank, foul and dank,
By wharf, and sewer, and slimy bank.
Darker and darker the farther I go,
Who dare sport with the sin-defiled?
Shrink from me, turn from me, mother and child.
Strong and free, strong and free,
The floodgates are open, away to the sea.
Free and strong, free and strong,
Cleansing my streams as I hurry along
To the golden sands and the leaping bar,
And the taintless tide that awaits me afar,
As I lose myself in the infinite main,
Like a soul that has sinned and is pardoned again.
Undefiled for the undefiled.
Play by me, bathe in me, mother and child.*

CHARLES KINGSLEY

The Climax of Henry's Speech



The Golden Age of American Oratory

THE period which immediately followed the disappearance of the last of the Revolutionary heroes was the one, in American history, which produced the greatest number of political leaders. The date is easily fixed, for Thomas Jefferson and John Adams died on the Fourth of July, 1826, while the country was noisily celebrating the fiftieth anniversary of its independence. Both had reached an advanced age and had, in truth, outlived their time.

An Era of Political Strife

Party politics had become a dramatic feature of a more varied American life. North and South had begun to find in themselves irreconcilable differences; and pioneers, on the westward march, were discovering new needs and problems. Politically, the country was divided into warring factions, with every election a conflict of sectional interests.

Let us review a little, to avoid confusion. The two big parties, you remember—the Democratic

and Federalist—were organized by Jefferson and Hamilton. Because of the folly of its later leaders, the Federalist Party soon dis-

appeared. John Adams had the ability and the experience to lead it, but failed to win popularity. But he and his son kept some of Hamilton's principles alive in a New England wing of the Democracy. This, together with opposing views in the South and West, split the Democratic Party into four factions.

About 1830, how-

ever, two of these factions united to form the Whig Party, which revived much of Hamilton's teachings. There were, again, two clearly defined parties in the country.

Radical Differences Within the Parties

But within party lines the Whigs were divided into three factions, each with its leader, and the Democrats into two. So, for the next twenty years, there were five political leaders in public life. All of them were aware that the

Patrick Henry on Fire

This is a painter's conception of the scene in the Virginia House of Burgesses when Patrick Henry made the historic speech in which he referred to the fate of Charles I as a warning to George III. "Caesar had his Brutus," he cries with that gesture of his right hand as if pointing to the past, "Charles I had his Cromwell, and George III—" "Treason! Treason!" shouts the speaker. "Treason! treason!" echo the royalist members. Then the orator adds "and George III may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it." While this picture is widely known and identified with the great event which it represents, and expresses well the spirit of the occasion, we must remember that it belongs to the old school of art which dealt more in symbols than in the details of historic events. The House of Burgesses had no classic pillars as here represented, nobody started to draw his sword as the British officer in the background is represented as doing, and there was no glove on the floor. The one shown in the picture is to express, after the classic manner, that Henry is throwing down the gauntlet to the king and to his royalist supporters in the colonies.

country was drifting steadily toward civil strife, but, because of honest differences of opinion, were unable to agree upon what should be done about it. These men were John Quincy Adams, Daniel Webster, and Henry Clay, who led the Whig Party, but who differed radically on vital questions; and Andrew Jackson and John C. Calhoun, both Jeffersonian Democrats, but who interpreted Jefferson's teachings differently and quarreled bitterly.

All of these men were born in the Revolutionary period, between 1767 and 1782, when the nation was not in existence, and patriotism was for the state; and they all entered public life in the formative years of the young Republic: Adams in 1794, Clay and Jackson by 1800, Webster and Calhoun before the War of 1812. Clay, Webster and Calhoun were orators of the first rank.

One of the Revolutionary traditions that is usually overlooked, as having a profound influence on the next two generations of Americans, was the pride of the country in the fiery oratory of Patrick Henry. The people were stirred by eloquence in

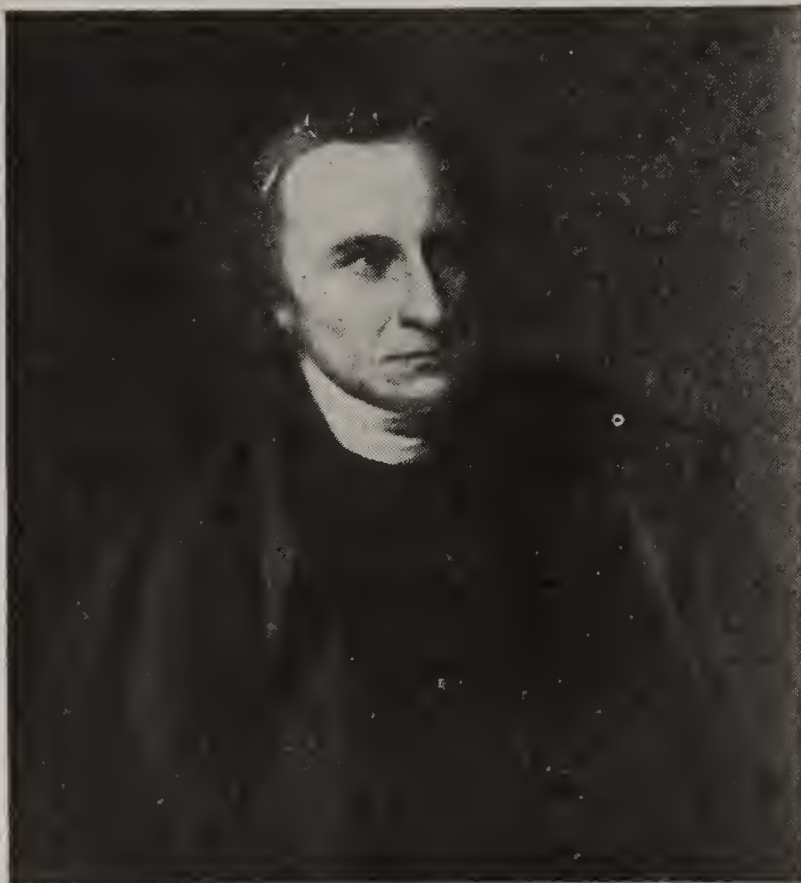
the pulpit, at the bar, and on the stump, as by nothing else. Every boy burned to be an orator, and an astonishing number of gifted public speakers were developed in the first

half of the nineteenth century. There was an unbroken line of them from Patrick Henry to Lincoln. Lincoln was able "to think on his feet," and to move audiences to tears or laughter, at the age of twenty-two.

This was in 1831, when Webster, Clay and Calhoun were at the zenith of their powers and fame. For fully a quarter of a century every important speech which they delivered in the National Capital, was

printed in the smallest newspaper, to the exclusion of every other sort of news. And scarcely second in importance were the public activities of Andrew Jackson and John Quincy Adams. All this furnished a liberal education in public affairs to young men who, seriously concerned about these troubled times, were unconsciously preparing themselves to take charge of the country during the perilous years of the Civil War. From biographical sketches of these leaders, see if you can figure out for

How Patrick Henry Took Fire



Patrick Henry was not really Patrick Henry until he warmed to his work. When he made a speech he rose very awkwardly, and faltered and almost stumbled along at the beginning as if feeling about in his mind for the right word. In a few minutes, however, excited by the occasion, he seemed absolutely transformed. His action became graceful, bold, and commanding, and the tones of his voice like music. A man who heard him make the great "treason" speech said that his eyes seemed actually to flash lightning. "In less than twenty minutes," he says, "the audience in every part of the house, on every bench, and in every window, were leaning forward in death-like silence, their features fixed in amazement and awe."

yourself the influence of each on Lincoln's character and political convictions.

The Democratic Leaders

During the first forty years of its history, the United States found its presidents in Massachusetts and Virginia, and from the class of scholarly gentlemen who had led the Revolution. Andrew Jackson, who served from 1829 to 1837, was the first chief executive to appear from the region west of the mountains. Originally poor, and self-educated, he

Character of Andrew Jackson was a typical product of the rough, pioneer period which followed the frontier era of Daniel Boone. A man of arrogant temper, independent opinions, blunt honesty, indomitable courage, and broad patriotism, he was one of the most original and forceful characters who ever appeared in the arena of American public life.

Born of Scotch parents, in a new and poor settlement in South Carolina in 1767, Jackson was to have been educated for the ministry; but the early death of his father left the family in poverty. As a boy of thirteen he saw service in the last years of the Revolution. After the war, his adventurous spirit and impatience of restraint, led him to seek the lawless wilds of Tennessee. There, before Washington's inauguration, he educated himself for the bar. A man of iron strength and tireless energy, he was soon busy prosecuting law-breakers, fighting Indians, and directing the labor of slaves in clearing a cotton plantation out of the wilderness near Nashville.

On the outbreak of the War of 1812, he organized forces of volunteers to conquer the red tribes of the

South, which, armed from British forts in Canada, harried the frontier all the way to the Gulf. This task required two years, won him the nickname of "Old Hickory" for his extraordinary endurance of hardships, and also won for him national fame

Jackson's Military Exploits and a major-generalship in the regular army. Taking four thousand troops, he defended New Orleans against twelve thousand British regulars. This brilliant victory of January 8, 1815, is still celebrated by the Democrats as Jackson Day.

A hero on horseback, General Jackson rode into national politics, appearing in Washington as United States senator from Tennessee, just at the time when the Jeffersonian Democrats were looking around for new leaders. The country had never seen such a paradox as this gentle but fiery, forceful, tender and brave, crude but efficient frontier lawyer, Indian fighter and shrewd politician. He soon captured the popular imagination, and it presently began to appear that the leadership of the party would be safer in his hands than in those of the intellectual statesman and gifted orator, John C. Calhoun. He represented the more conservative views of the West on the tariff and slavery questions; and was one of the first public men in the country to insist that the federal union was superior to the states.

Although true to Jefferson's principles of free trade and state sovereignty, destroying the United States bank in the interest of the state banks, yet Jackson rebuked the extreme states' rights view of Calhoun, his own vice-president, that a state could refuse to submit to an act of Congress. When South Carolina, Calhoun's state, repudiated an un-

popular tariff law, President Jackson joined with the Whigs to put through the Force Bill, which gave

*Jackson
and the
Nullifiers*

to the president the power to use the army and navy to compel rebellious states to obey federal laws. He intended, as he said, "to stamp this treasonable nullification doctrine" out of his own party. At a banquet he proposed a toast which Lincoln might have proposed thirty years later: "The Union—it must be preserved!" Calhoun followed with the defiance: "Liberty, dearer than Union!"

In the face of such division, in the hard times which followed his destruction of the United States bank in 1837, and of the loss of the election of 1840 to the Whigs, Jackson held his party together and ruled it like an autocrat until his death in 1845. He left his party in power, and so well organized that it presented an unbroken front until split in two by the Lincoln-Douglas debates in 1858.

Secret of Jackson's Power

The immense political power that Jackson gained and held for twenty years, in the most turbulent times, was due in part to his personal popularity. Without that, leaders of the greatest ability and experience, like John Adams, have failed. But Jackson also had the qualities that win enduring fame. His sincerity, honesty, and patriotism have never been questioned. And his services were important. He played a large part in preventing the disruption of the Union, and in delaying the Civil War. And he gave to a divided people a dramatic lesson in national patriotism. In Democratic annals he takes his place beside Jefferson, and later leaders of the party have

been rated as they approached the measure of these two.

Jackson was not quite just to Calhoun, the very able Democratic statesman and brilliant orator who, in trained intellect and manners, was his superior. Calhoun was, indeed, a belated Revolutionary, who would have felt more at home among the philosophical gentlemen in Independence Hall, than in the boisterous, rancorous days in which he found himself.

*Character
and Abilities
of Calhoun*

His father had been a friend and disciple of Jefferson, and the son had often heard him quote from the Sage of Monticello: "That government is best which secures to the individual the largest amount of personal liberty that is compatible with public order."

Born in 1782, Calhoun was graduated from Yale College in 1801, with the reputation of a hard student and fine debater. Equally marked for his integrity of character and for his capacity for clear thinking, a brilliant career was predicted for him. Jefferson's inauguration, and the beginning of a long period in power for the Democratic Party, opened the way for Calhoun's early entry into public life. An influential member of Congress, and an orator of proved powers before 1810, he was conspicuous in opposing the protective tariff legislation which was the most serious domestic consequence of the War of 1812. To an ardent Southerner of his convictions, the imposition of a tax which burdened the South, for the benefit of manufacturing states of the North, partook of the nature of that centralized tyranny which Jefferson had feared.

Leading the revolt of the south-

Jackson, the Man of War



© Detroit Publishing Co.

Thomas Sully, who painted this picture of Andrew Jackson, was one of the greatest of early American painters. He shows us a fiery, alert old man in a military cloak below which the scabbard of a sword is seen protruding. Beside Jackson is a cannon and behind him the smoke of the battlefield. He has pulled off one gauntlet and is signing an order, using his cocked hat for a writing pad. The whole picture expresses the quick, decisive character of Andrew Jackson. The original is in the Corcoran Gallery in Washington.

ern seaboard states, Calhoun defended the right of South Carolina to refuse to obey the federal tariff law, and even to secede from the Union. He held his own in a de-

His Debate bate with Webster, on
With the nature and the rights
Webster of the federal and the
states' governments, that was one of the most eloquent and instructive in the history of the nation. He was defeated by the passage of Jackson's Force Bill; but he had made so strong a plea for justice to the South, that Henry Clay persuaded the Whigs to consent to a gradual lowering of the tariff.

Of all the defenders of the institution of slavery, Calhoun was the most brilliant and convincing. From the time of the Missouri Compromise in 1820, until his death in 1850, he fought for the extension of slave-holding into the territories and new states. He brought about the annexation of Texas, and his policies were responsible for the bitter fights over Kansas, Nebraska and California.

That Calhoun was sincere and personally disinterested, no one doubts today. To his own disadvantage he led a violent faction within his own party. His defiance of Jackson cost him the presidency. Twice he rose to the vice-presidency, only to see men of lesser ability and distinction preferred for the higher office. He denied that he had any desire to disrupt the Union and head a southern republic. If he had had any such ambition, he could, at least, have split his party and brought Jackson to defeat. Remaining loyal, under severe provocation and bitter disappointment, it seems much more probable, today, that he kept his own followers from

going to extremes. He had been dead ten years, and less able and more unscrupulous men were in control in his section of the country, when South Carolina seceded in 1860 and thus precipitated the great Civil War.

The Leaders Among the Whigs

Of all the political leaders of his period, the seventh president of the United States, who was the son of the second, was the most fortunate in his birth and education. He had a remarkable father and mother, who founded one of the most distin-

The Adamses guished and patriotic
and the families in America.
Nation John Adams gave

thirty-five years to the service of the struggling colonies and to the establishment of the republic. And his wife, as you know, was "the Portia of the Revolution." The son devoted sixty years to his country. And every generation of Adamses, since, has furnished its able and learned men, brought up in the tradition of service and sacrifice owed to the United States.

Lacking the qualities that win popularity, they have not always been rewarded as they deserved; but no Adams has ever surrendered his principles to secure his personal advantage. In this New England family, Puritanism, with its submission to discipline and its strong sense of duty, has made us its best contribution.

It was at the knees of his mother—Abigail Adams—that the nine-year-old boy heard of the signing of the Declaration of Independence. Jefferson wrote the document, but it was John Adams who, by three days of argument, whipped the courage of the faint-hearted up to the point

of adopting resolutions that made every signer a traitor to King George. Men said that John Adams had "the clearest head and stoutest heart of any man in the Continental Congress." In

constant correspondence with his brave, wise and devoted wife, he often said that he took "two clear heads and stout hearts" to the doing of every patriotic duty.

The son, John Quincy, was graduated from Harvard in the same year that Washington was elected president. Three years before his father had been appointed the first United States

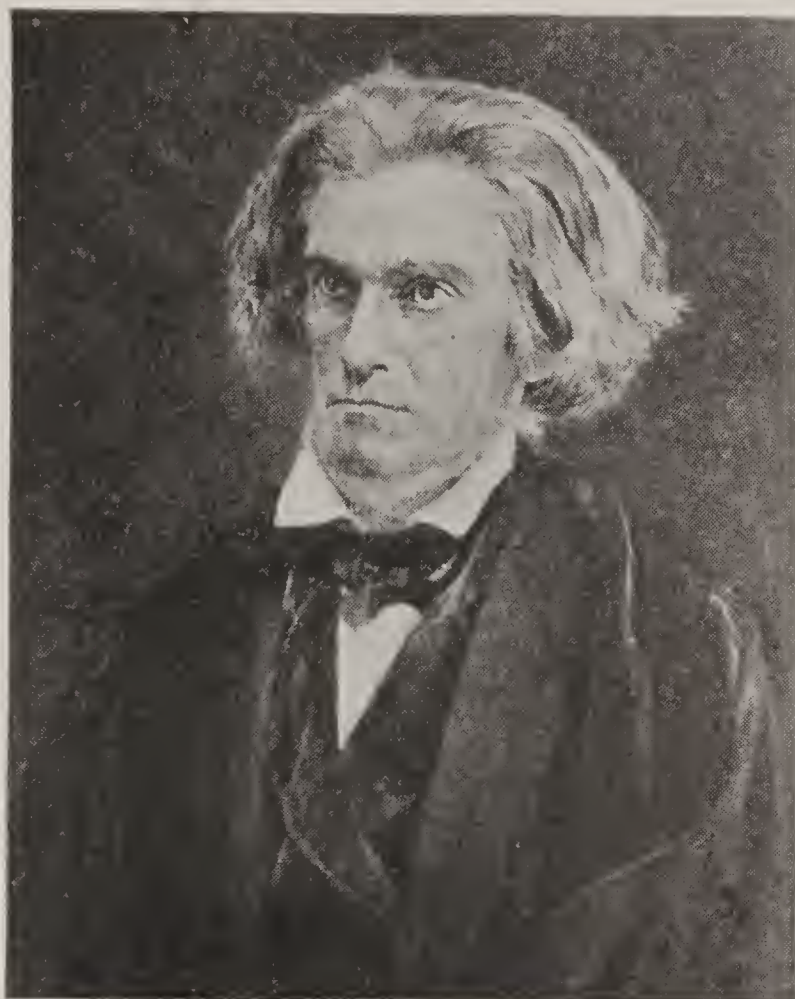
Minister to Great Britain. Learning under him the complicated business of diplomacy, the son soon became "the ablest diplomat in the American service," and was appointed successively to Holland, Portugal and Germany.

John Adams had been a moderate Federalist and so belonged to the party of Hamilton. The son was at first of the same political faith. With Jefferson's election he was recalled. He came home to fill the chair of rhetoric in Harvard, and to watch the Federalist Party die. For a time (1803-1808) he was United

States Senator from Massachusetts, and strongly supported Jefferson's measures against the views of his own state. He became leader of an energetic New England wing

of the Democracy that could not be ignored. President Madison sent him to the Court of St. Petersburg, and then to London. When next he came home it was to fill the office of Secretary of State under President Monroe. There was no other man in the country of Adams' ability, and he had had twenty years' experience in the foreign service.

Calhoun, Student and Orator

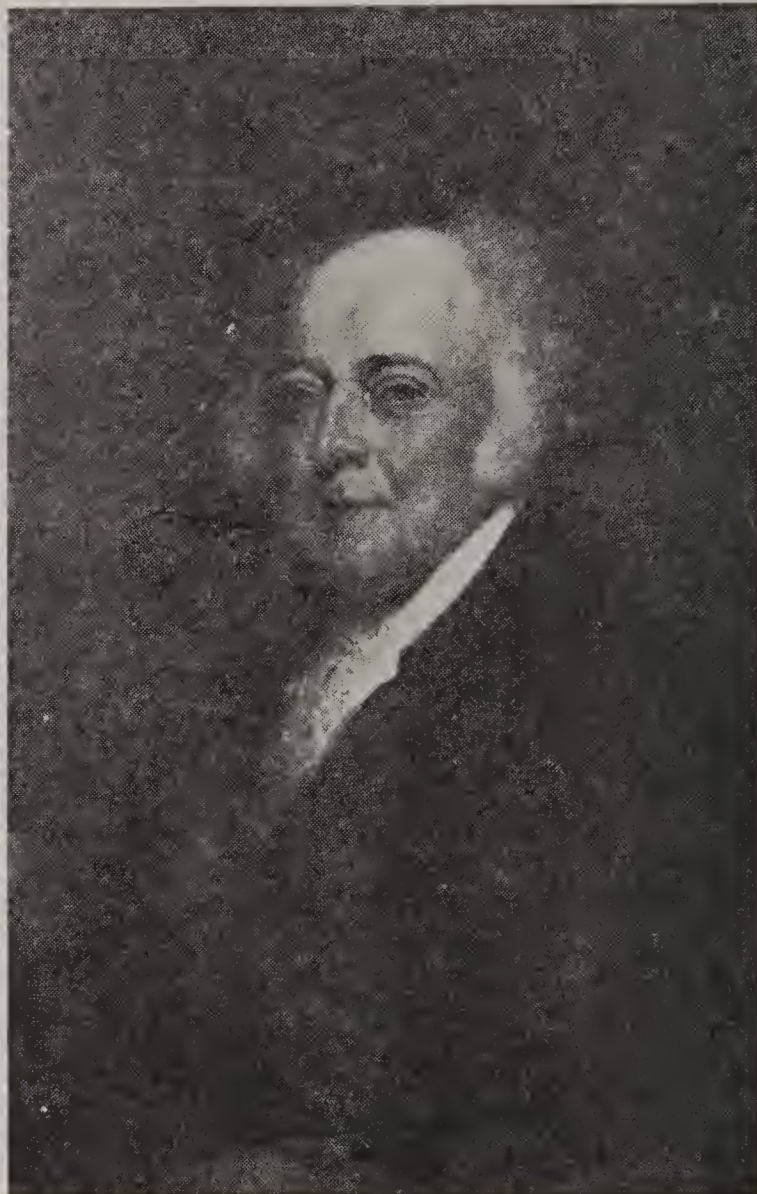
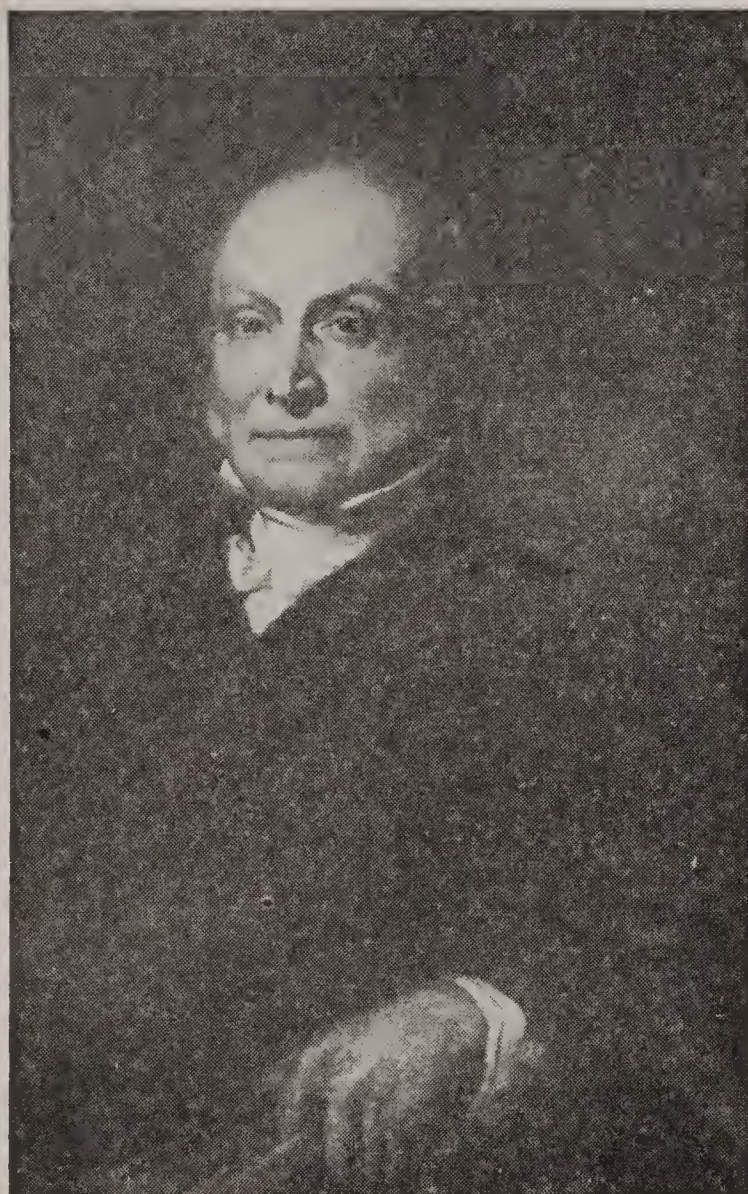


Although Calhoun was by disposition and training a student, and "would have felt more at home among the philosophical gentlemen in Independence Hall than in the boisterous and rancorous days in which he found himself," he was, "of all the defenders of slavery, the most brilliant and convincing."

While he was Secretary of State the "Monroe Doctrine" was declared. You remember that the policy of making "no entangling alliance" originated with Washington and Hamilton. It is Federalist in principle; but the Democrats saw the wisdom of it, and Monroe and John Quincy Adams enlarged it to the point of refusing to tolerate foreign interference in America.

Many early Federalist principles began, about that time, to find new and vigorous support. The War of 1812 had imperiled the country and developed a sentiment of national patriotism. The people responded

The Two Presidents the Adams Family Gave Us



The Adams family is the most famous in the political history of our country. These portraits of the two who served in the presidency, are by G. P. A. Healy. That of John Adams is a copy of a portrait painted by Stuart. Both belong to the Ladies' Mt. Vernon Association, but are in the Corcoran Art Gallery in Washington. Of John Adams it was said that he had "the clearest head and firmest heart of any man in congress." You can see by their faces that firmness, mental balance, and fearlessness in asserting and defending the things they believed in, were characteristics.

to the appeal to use goods "made in America," even if they cost more, and the first protective tariff law was passed in 1816. It was as a high-tariff, *National Democrat* that Adams was elected to the presidency in 1824. By 1830 the time was ripe for the formation of the Whig Party, and the revival of Hamilton's principles. During the last eighteen years of his life Adams was one of the leaders in Congress, with Whig leanings.

In 1833 Great Britain abolished slavery throughout the Empire, and a moral wave against the institution swept over western Europe and America. Abolitionism, in this

country, spread from Puritan New England. Talk of secession, in that early day, was not all *His Denunciation of Slavery* on one side. It was the ideal of many abolitionists to let the southern states depart in peace, and to form a free northern republic. The violent opinions and uncompromising attitudes of some abolitionists and Calhoun were equally disruptive.

Adams, while not an abolitionist, upheld the right to petition Congress against slavery, and fought a long and successful fight against Southern attempts to enforce "gag" measures. Without close party connections, this "old man eloquent" thus

rounded out his long life of patriotic usefulness, dying in 1848 of a stroke of apoplexy received on the floor of the House. His unflinching resistance to pro-slavery dictation no doubt stimulated Free Soil emigration into Kansas and Nebraska after Adams' death. Never popular, he won his way and kept his very real influence in public affairs by sheer ability and force. Harsh and narrow in his sympathies, he was honest and patriotic, and everyone granted him the "clear head and stout heart" of his father.

The Young Law Student

Before Washington finished his second term, or the first building had risen on the site of the new National Capital on the Potomac, a young law student of Richmond, Virginia, emigrated to Lexington, Kentucky. Going by sailing vessel to Philadelphia, he crossed the mountains on horseback. From Pittsburgh, a little settlement around an old Indian fort, he floated down the Ohio on a flatboat. It was a quarter of a century before the Cumberland Road was opened from Washington to Wheeling, Virginia, and a Congressman from the West

could travel in comfort by steamboat and stagecoach.

Kentucky, however, had been admitted as a state in 1792. Louisville, at the falls of the Ohio, was a busy, if rude, little town; and the tiny capital in the Blue Grass region had its white-pillared state-house, and its good society of professional men and wealthy planters, when Henry Clay hung out his modest shingle as an attorney-at-law.

The son of a poor Baptist minister of North Carolina, orphaned in childhood, he was imperfectly self-educated, according to the classic standard of the colleges of the day. But he was an ambitious and

An Orator at Twenty-Three

lifelong student. And he had an uncommon mind, an engaging personality, charming manners, and such an amazing gift for oratory that Kentucky, and then the Northwest, were soon at his feet. By 1800, at the age of twenty-three, he had started on a brilliant public career of half a century.

Three years later he dazzled Washington with his speeches in the Senate, to which he was appointed to fill a temporary vacancy. And in

Henry Clay in His Prime



This portrait of Henry Clay hangs on the wall in the home of one of his descendants, Major C. D. Clay of Lexington, Ky., who kindly permitted a photograph to be taken of it to illustrate the story of our Golden Age of Oratory. It shows Clay at the zenith of his powers.

1811, on the day that he first took his seat in the House of Representatives, he was elected Speaker. In that office, which, in power, is second only to the presidency, he re-

and stilled every storm with the music of his voice of persuasion. With hosts of friends and ardent admirers in all parties, Henry Clay had practically no enemies.

The Home of Henry Clay



Here we are looking into the spacious grounds of the home of Henry Clay at Lexington, Ky. Lexington is in the famous blue-grass region and is noted for the beauty and fertility of the surrounding country. The grounds of Clay's home are filled with magnificent specimens of all the great variety of trees that grow in that region. The trees most conspicuous in the picture are oaks, as you can see from the character of the leaves and the rugged angular outlines of the limbs and branches.

mained for sixteen years, except for one term, when he declined election. He served as Secretary of State to John Quincy Adams, and narrowly failed of election to the presidency in 1824, 1832, and 1844. During the last eighteen years of his life he represented Kentucky in the Senate.

Clay was the greatest party chief the country has produced, and the most popular orator. For fifty years he swayed applauding audiences to his mood. His style of oratory flowery, his appeal emotional, he moved men to laughter or tears, or to sweet reasonableness. He softened the hearts of men toward their enemies; drowned opposition under floods of eloquence,

Now, no man, however brilliant his gifts, could win such a place of general esteem and power, hold it so long, nor keep his enduring fame, unless he had solid qualities. What did Henry Clay stand for? What was his contribution to the problems of his time? He began

The Character of Henry Clay

his public life as a Democrat, but, as you know, there was for many years only the one political party in the country. This was divided into four factions; and Clay headed his own. The War of 1812 developed an ardent national patriotism in the West, and both Jackson and Clay were as staunch for the Union as Webster. But Kentucky differed with Ten-

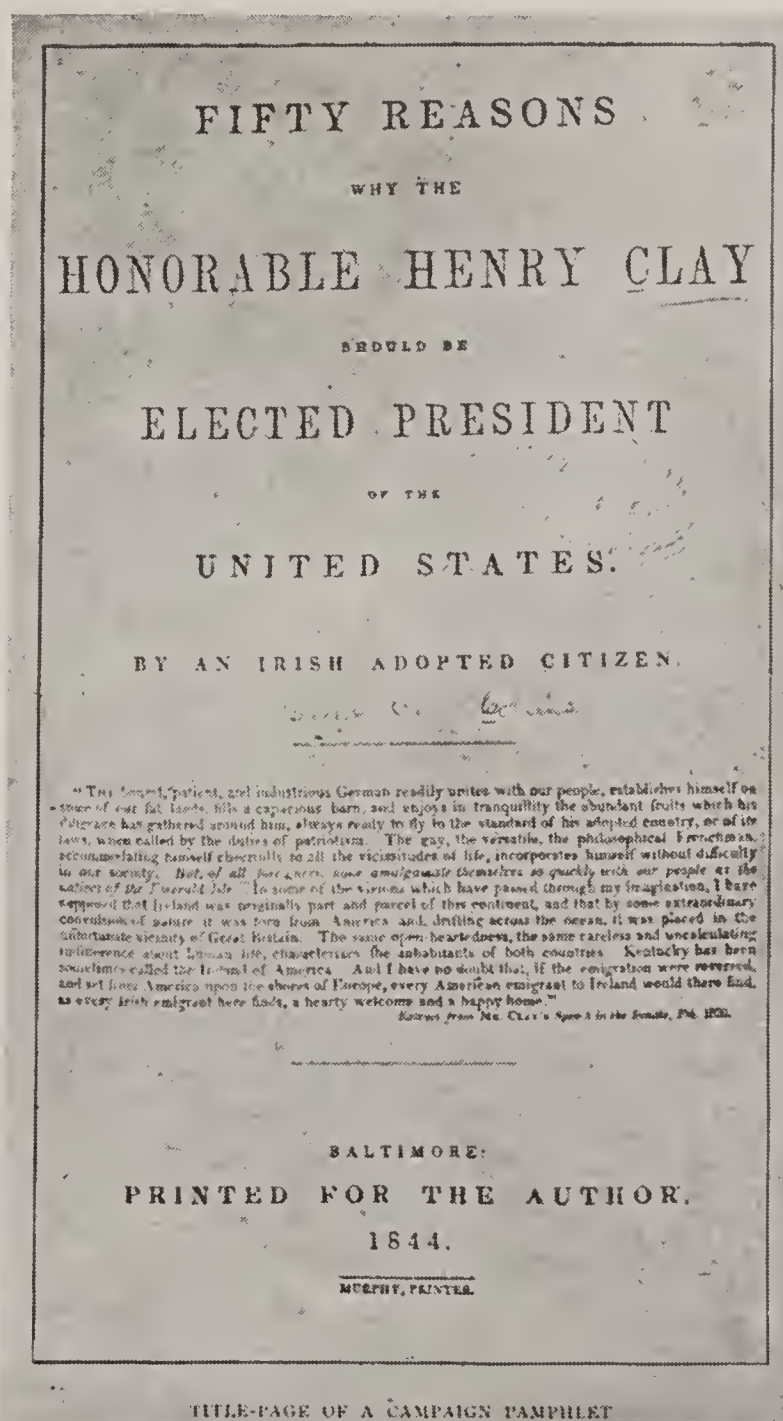
AGE OF ORATORY

A Henry Clay Banner

This is one of the banners carried in the political campaign of 1844 when Henry Clay ran for the presidency. Frederick T. Frelinghuysen was a candidate for the vice-presidency. Frelinghuysen was an eminent lawyer and was chancellor of the University of New York from 1839 to 1850, and president



The "Fifty Reasons Why"



TITLE-PAGE OF A CAMPAIGN PAMPHLET

of Rutgers College from 1850 to 1862. You see the great orator and statesman was affectionately known as "Harry Clay" just as Lincoln was spoken of as "Abe" Lincoln. Notice how many stars there were in the flag at that time. Could you name the states that made up the United States then?

nessee. It was more like Ohio and Indiana. It made hemp rope at an early date, while Ohio grew wool for the factories of New England. So Clay was in favor of a protective tariff.

You must remember that men's opinions are influenced by the needs and problems of the people around them. Had Clay represented some small, well developed seaboard state, he would probably never have appeared as the champion of internal im-

provements at the expense of the federal government. But living in the New West, with its poor, struggling pioneers, and its enormous stretches of wilderness, through which farm products could not be sent to market, nor needed goods returned, Clay thought a rich country should come to the rescue. In his time the great National Road was opened across Ohio, Indiana and Illinois to the Mississippi. Canals were cut, the naviga-

lays particular stress upon his tribute to the character of the Irish and how they have helped to make America. Among other things he says, "Of all foreigners, none amalgamate themselves so quickly with our people as the natives of the Emerald Isle."

This is the title page of one of the pamphlets circulated in the Clay campaign, and as you can see, gives fifty reasons why he should be elected President. It is by "An Irish Adopted Citizen," and as we can see by the extract from one of Mr. Clay's speeches

tion of rivers improved in the days of steamboating, and the earliest railroads were assisted by free rights of way and grants of public land. With a statesman-like vision, Clay made possible the rapid settlement and prosperous development of Kentucky and the Northwest.

This work was federalistic in principle, and all of Clay's natural leanings were toward the theories of Hamilton. After being in public life for thirty years, and representing the interests of only one section

Why He Was the Great Pacificator of the country, he found his true political home on the organization of the Whig Party, with its comprehensive national policies. But he was a different type of Whig from Adams or Webster. Living on the western border of the free and slave states, where violent opinions were not held on the tariff or slavery questions, he was noted for his tolerance. For thirty years he stood between the warring factions and parties of North and South. With a rare understanding and sympathy for both sides, he used his influence and powers of persuasion in the interests of mutual concessions and peace. He was the author of the Missouri Compromise of 1820. After the passage of Jackson's Force Bill he persuaded the New England Whigs to consent to a gradual lowering of the tariff for the relief and pacification of the southern states. And before he died, in 1852, he made a last effort to settle the slavery question by another compromise.

Of course he settled nothing permanently, because it could not be done by compromise. But he softened many asperities, sweetened the bitter spirit of his time, and helped delay an inevitable conflict until the

country was better prepared to meet the shock of civil war. And, he, as well as Webster and Jackson, played an important part in educating the next generation in national patriotism. The honor of which he was proudest was his popular title, "The Great Pacificator."

The Story of Daniel Webster

In reading the stories of great men we learn the potential value of all life. Many whom the world could ill have spared were frail in childhood. Daniel Webster, whose

His Delicate Childhood name is spoken with reverence and awe to-day, for his inspired patriotism and genius for oratory, was so delicate in infancy that he was kept alive only by the intelligent devotion of a Puritan mother. And as he grew up on a poor, stony farm, near Salisbury, New Hampshire, he was the only one of a large pioneer family, who was exempt from hard labor.

Even as a child his head was too heavy for his slight body. It was covered with a mop of thick, black hair. With his dark eyes glowing in his swarthy face, under a bulging forehead and bushy eyebrows, he early got his nickname of "Black Dan." His mother, in teaching him what she knew, discovered that he had a remarkable mind. At fifteen he had mastered all that was to be learned in a local academy. Then the father, mother, brothers and sisters, gathered around the rude fireplace for family prayers, decided that, no matter at what cost of toil and privation to the others, little Black Dan must go to college.

The sensitive boy burst into tears at this proof of confidence and devotion. And he repaid it in kind.

Webster Under the Big Elm Tree



Although New England farms were never rich, they have produced some of the finest crops in the history of the country. These crops were great men. Webster was one of them. He grew up on a stony farm near Salisbury, N. H., and he never got over his love for country life. Here you see him in one of the big soft hats he loved to wear on his vacations, sitting under an elm tree on his country estate at Mansfield, Mass., which he bought after he became a famous man. He is evidently chatting with someone and at his feet are probably some state papers which are the subject of their conversation.

You wouldn't think to look at him, that he was once a delicate, frail child, would you? He was so delicate that he could not help much with the farm work, but he afterwards grew into the magnificent specimen of physical manhood we see here under the tree. His mother was his first and best teacher. She taught him all she knew and insisted on his going, first to the local academy, and afterward to college. All the family agreed to this, and when they told little Dan of their decision, he burst into tears to think how much they cared for him and believed in him. After he graduated from Dartmouth, he himself taught in an academy to earn money to send his brother Ezekiel to college. Then later when he had built up a law practice in one town, he turned it over to Ezekiel and started over in another town.

After his graduation from Dartmouth, he sent a brother through college. He cared for his father and mother until their death. He built up a law practice in Boston and gave it to a brother, beginning again in Portsmouth. In all history there is not a finer example of family love and loyalty than that of the Websters'.

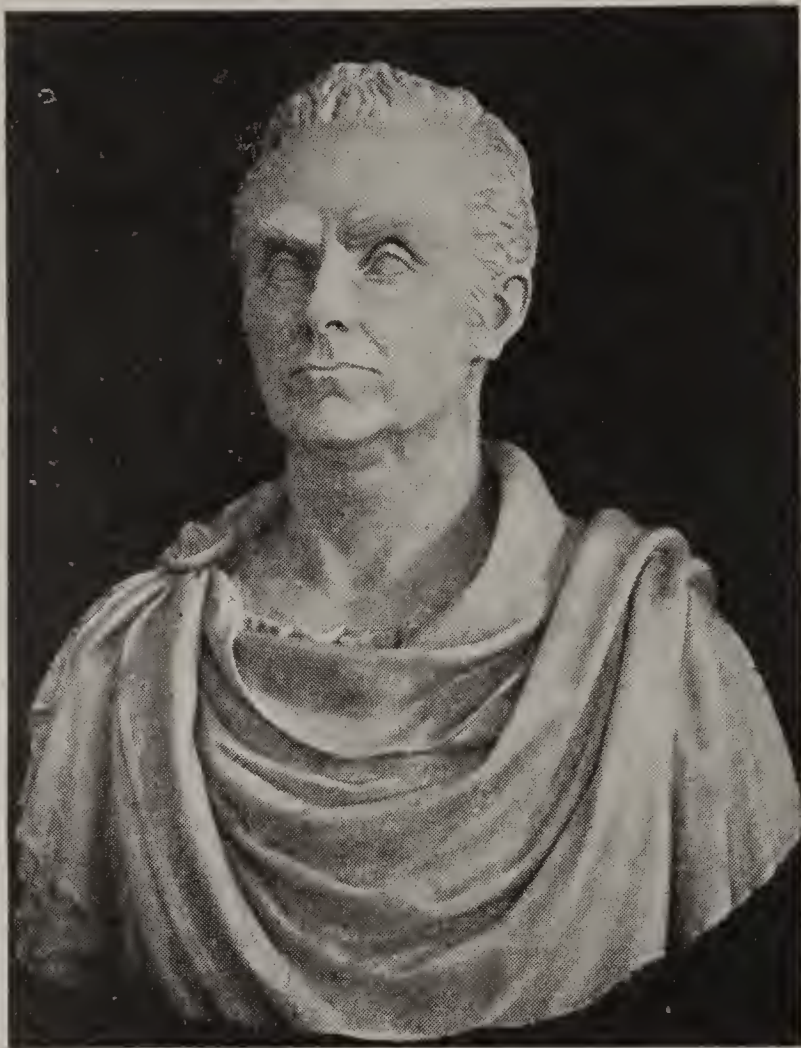
In Daniel Webster's great heart and mind, this love and loyalty grew until they embraced his country. At the age of eighteen he delivered a Fourth of July oration, in which he made an impassioned appeal for national patriotism. This was in 1800, long before the people had outgrown their strong sense of the separate colonial origins of the states. Until 1816 Dartmouth College cherished and used the charter granted to it by King George, in 1760.

Webster served a term in Congress in 1812, and again in 1823, and he lost no opportunity to put his broad conception of patriotism before the country. By three speeches

—at the celebration of the second centennial of the landing on Plymouth Rock, in 1820; at the dedication of Bunker Hill Monument in 1825; and by his eulogies of Jefferson and Adams

in 1826—he made his views known throughout the country, and won enduring fame as an orator. But his great opportunity did not come until January, 1830, when, at forty-eight years of age, he was one of the United States senators from Massachusetts.

If Webster Had Been a Cicero



If Webster had lived in the days of the Romans, the Roman Senate instead of the United States Senate, would have echoed the tones of his wonderful voice with its "range and melody of a chime of bells," and he would have worn a toga as he does here and gone about everywhere without a hat, as the Romans did. This is a portrait bust of him in marble by the famous American sculptor, Hiram Powers. Powers, like Webster, was a New England country boy and studied art in Italy; so no one could have been better fitted to "translate" the great American orator into Latin. What magnificent eyes and brows; and that powerful neck, and chin and jaw, and the "mastiff mouth" as Carlyle called it. Webster, by the way, was a fine Latin scholar and attributed his success as an orator to his study of the Greek and Latin poets and orators. From his college days on he used to read them over and over, and could recite practically the whole of Virgil's Aeneid.

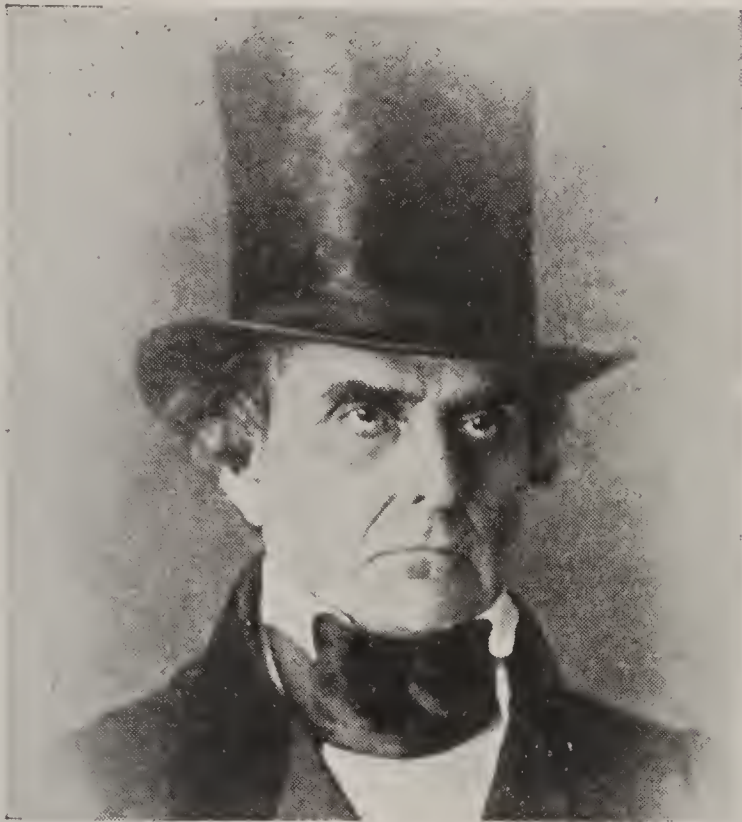
The Famous Reply to Hayne

Then it was that, in his "Reply to Hayne" he made a memorable speech, and became the greatest figure in public life in America. Senator Hayne, of South Carolina,

who was Calhoun's chief disciple, had declared that the federal government was only a loose confederation, erected by the sovereign states, and that any state had the right to refuse to obey a law of Congress, or even to secede from the Union.

Webster rose to packed galleries,

And Such Eyes!



As a member of Congress and when practicing at the bar, Webster wore this tall silk hat. We can realize as we look into his face why he was called "Black Dan." His face was swarthy, and his dark eyes so remarkable that they at once attracted attention. When he visited London in 1839, his whole appearance and bearing was so striking that even in that crowded city, where you have to be a very great man indeed for anyone to pay any attention to you, the people on the streets everywhere used to stop and look at him whenever he passed along.

Thomas Carlyle who met him in London, drew the following pen picture of him in a letter to Emerson:

"Not many days ago I saw at breakfast the notablest of your notabilities, Daniel Webster. He is a magnificent specimen; the tanned complexion, the crag-like face; the dull, black eyes under the precipice of brows, like dull smouldering furnaces, needing only to be blown."

"looking like Judgment Day." Grave and dignified, he had the noblest head America has produced.

*Character of
Webster's
Oratory*

His oratory was not as polished as Calhoun's, nor as graceful and persuasive as Clay's. There was something in him of his granite hills, and the spirit of duty and sacrifice of his Puritan ancestry. His logic was unanswerable, his learning profound, but his choice of words was so simple that the unlettered could follow him. He made no appeal to the emotions. His argument rested on moral principles and impassioned patriotism. And his voice had the range, melody and

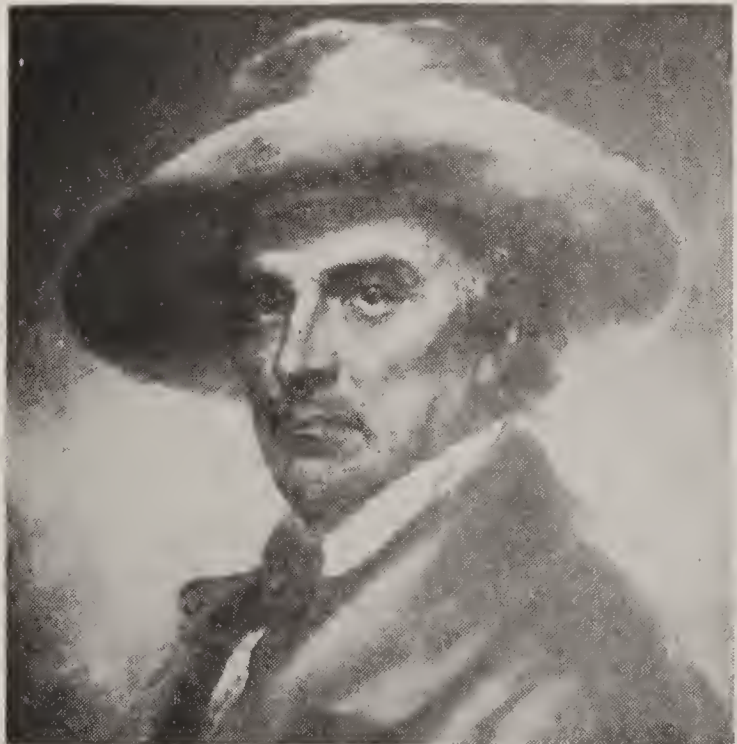
solemn beauty of a chime of church bells on a Sabbath morning.

Our government was then forty-two years old, and this was the first defense of the federal Constitution heard since the death of Hamilton. Webster's speech lifted the whole question of "States' Rights versus Federal Authority," from the level of political theory to the high plane of national ethics. We had a charge to keep—our sacred republican institutions. He declared that nullification was not only dangerous but treasonable. It could lead to nothing but disruption and civil war, and to the betrayal and destruction of all that our revolutionary fathers had fought and died for, and left to us in trust for future generations.

For twenty-two years after that Webster was a colossal figure. He

*Devotion
to the
Union* stood apart and above party politics. To those he was more or less indifferent. While he was one of the organizers of the Whig Party, be-

Webster in the Big Hat Again



This is another picture of Webster in his big soft hat. Mrs. M. L. Joy of Boston, who loaned Pictured Knowledge this portrait for reproduction, says that it was one of the latest portraits painted of him and adorned the walls of his country home at Mansfield. "The hat which he wears," she says, "was one in daily use when he was in the country."

cause of its federalistic principles, he believed, with Jefferson, in free trade. He supported the protective tariff only because it had been established, and could not easily be abandoned without ruining American industries. Opposed to the extension of slavery, he yet joined Clay in his compromises. And he joined Jackson in putting through the Force Bill. In truth, he hated abolitionist and nullifier alike, as did Jackson, and he fought every measure and every opinion which tended to divide the country.

His one passion and political doctrine was love and loyalty to his country. He made a profound impression on the people of all classes and sections. Extracts from his patriotic speeches were used in school readers. Little boys declaimed them in log schoolhouses on Friday afternoons. Lincoln, at twenty-one, read the "Reply to Hayne" in a Louisville newspaper in the little settlement

at Salem, Illinois. Long afterwards he said "Patrick Henry was the greatest American orator, Clay the most persuasive, Calhoun the most brilliant, but Webster's Reply to

Hayne was the greatest single speech delivered since Demosthenes' 'On the Crown.'"

Grief and alarm were felt throughout the country when Webster died in October, 1852. How was distracted America to live without him? Clay had died in June; Calhoun two years before; Adams in 1848; Jackson in 1845. It had been an age of giants. Now they were all gone. Both parties were left without able or responsible leaders. The Democrats got out of hand and passed the Kansas-Nebraska Bill, which repealed

The "Other Man" in the Great Debate



Next to delivering one of the greatest speeches in the history of oratory, it is a great distinction to have been the cause of such a speech. The young man with the pleasant smile who is looking at you here has this distinction; for this is Robert Y. Hayne in reply to whom Webster delivered the greatest of his public speeches in defense of the Union in opposition to the doctrine of states' rights, which Hayne supported.

But you may be sure that Hayne himself was an orator of rare ability, or what he said could not have furnished the occasion for such a reply from such a man as Webster. As a school boy he did not show much talent at first, but he made a study of oratory and, after he entered public life, soon distinguished himself as one of the most brilliant speakers among the younger senators.

He had a fine personal appearance and a winning manner. His method of speaking was quite different from Webster's. While Webster's manner was deliberate and ponderous, Hayne "dashed into debate like Mameluke Cavalry upon a charge." He had a gallant air about him which won admiration. After the close of Webster's speech he was the first to approach him with extended hand and the warmest expressions of admiration.

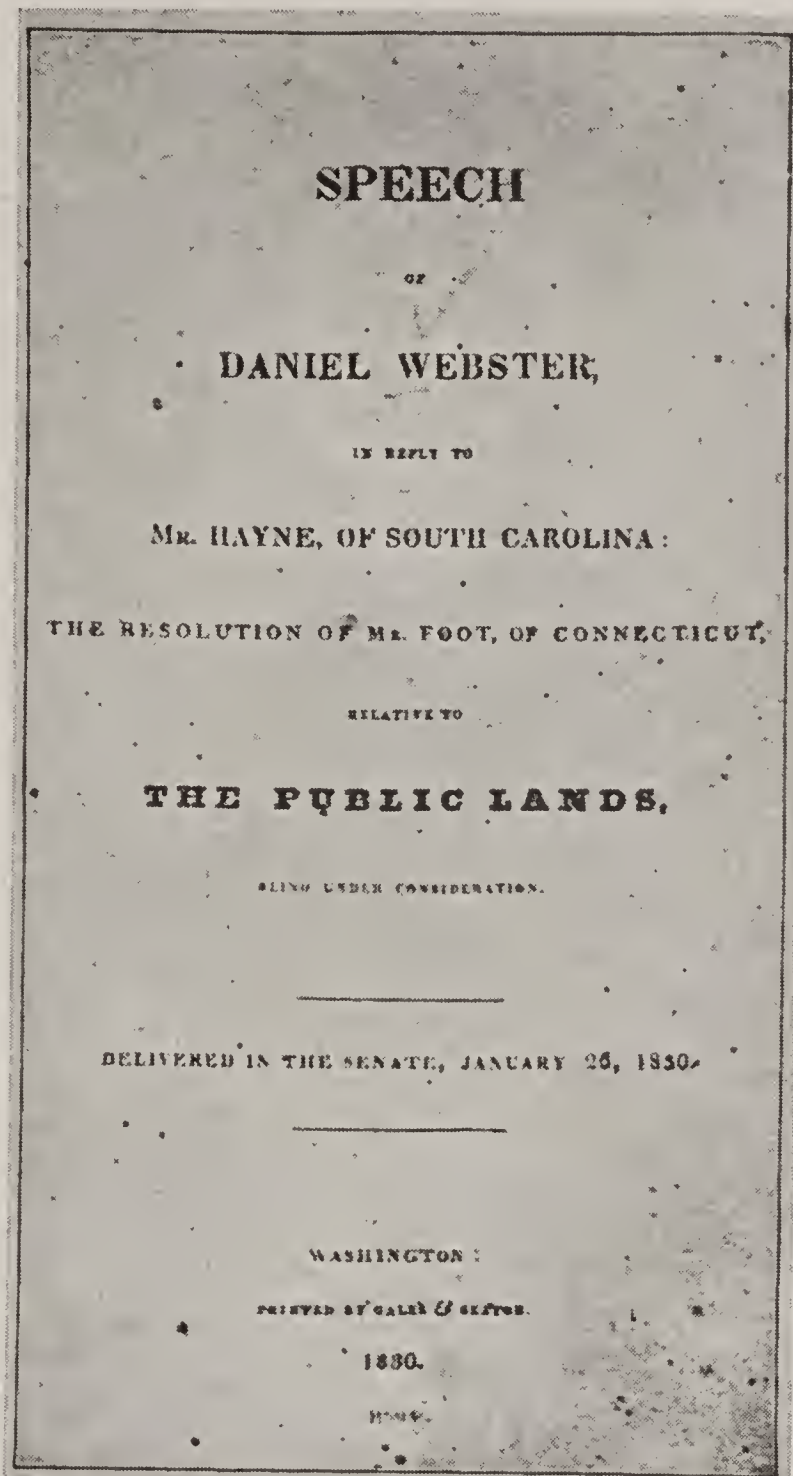
Our portrait of him was supplied by Mrs. Robert Y. Hayne, the widow of the orator's grandson.

the Missouri Compromise. The Whigs went to pieces.

The Republican Party was organized in 1856, and soon attracted to itself all the federalistic and anti-slavery sentiment in the country—the Whigs, Know-Nothings, Free

Webster's Greatest Speech in Pamphlet Form

Soilers and Abolitionists. Lincoln was one of the organizers of the new party in Illinois. Aroused by the peril to the Union, this unknown lawyer, in a small western capital, developed a remarkable gift for oratory, and qualities of



leadership that swept the Republicans to victory in 1860.

Then the storm of civil war, that had been gathering for a quarter of a century, broke. It was Lincoln's task, begun by Webster, Clay, and Jackson, to preserve the Union.

It was not only the custom in the golden age of American oratory for the newspapers to print speeches of eminent public men in full, but they were reprinted in convenient pamphlet form, so that men could carry them about in their pockets and read and reread them and argue about them with their neighbors, and many of these speeches were preserved in this form and handed down as precious possessions. This copy of Webster's speech in reply to Hayne is in the collections of historic documents in the Smithsonian Institution at Washington. Wouldn't you like to have a copy of it!

The Blue and the Gray

*By the flow of the inland river,
Whence the fleets of iron have fled,
Where the blades of the grave-grass quiver,
Asleep are the ranks of the dead:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Under the one, the Blue,
Under the other, the Gray.*

*These in the robings of glory,
Those in the gloom of defeat,
All with the battle-blood gory,
In the dusk of eternity meet:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Under the laurel, the Blue,
Under the willow, the Gray.*

*From the silence of sorrowful hours
The desolate mourners go,
Lovingly laden with flowers
Alike for the friend and the foe;
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Under the roses, the Blue,
Under the lilies, the Gray.*

*So with an equal splendour,
The morning sun-rays fall,
With a touch impartially tender,
On the blossoms blooming for all:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Brodered with gold, the Blue,
Mellowed with gold, the Gray.*

*So, when the summer calleth,
On forest and field of grain,
With an equal murmur falleth
The cooling drip of the rain:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Wet with the rain, the Blue,
Wet with the rain, the Gray.*

*Sadly, but not with upbraiding,
The generous deed was done,
In the storm of the years that are fading
No braver battle was won:
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Under the blossoms, the Blue,
Under the garlands, the Gray.*

*No more shall the war cry sever,
Or the winding rivers be red;
They banish our anger forever
When they laurel the graves of our dead!
Under the sod and the dew,
Waiting the judgment-day;
Love and tears for the Blue,
Tears and love for the Gray.*

FRANCIS MILES FINCH

The Story of Abraham Lincoln



The Crumbling Cabin in the Marble Shrine

This is a scene on the Lincoln farm at Hodgenville, Ky., when President Wilson, on behalf of the nation, accepted the memorial temple which encloses all that remains of the little cabin in which Lincoln was born. Let us imagine that we are among the twenty thousand people present and listening to this speech. Among other things this is what we hear:

"How eloquent is this little house within this shrine, of the vigor of democracy! There is nowhere in the land any home so humble that it may not contain the power of mind, and heart, and conscience to which nations yield and history submits its processes. Every door is open in every hamlet and countryside * * * for the ruler to emerge when he will and claim his leadership in the free life.

* * *

"This little hut was the cradle of one of the great sons of mankind. * * * His heart seemed to comprehend all mankind in its catholic and benignant sympathy. * * * The mind that sat enthroned behind those brooding, melancholy eyes * * * comprehended what it had never seen, and understood the language of affairs with the ready ease of one to the manner born; a nature that seemed in its varied richness to be the familiar of men of every way of life.

* * *

"We are not worthy to stand here unless we ourselves be, in deed and in truth, real democrats and servants of mankind, ready to give our very lives for the freedom, and justice, and spiritual exaltation of the great nation which shelters and nourishes us."

WITHOUT any doubt, the birth of Lincoln, of poor, illiterate parents, in the backwoods of Kentucky, was the most important event in America, after the Declaration of Independence

and the adoption of the Constitution. Our country was founded in the new faith that the common people possessed the wisdom, virtue and unselfish patriot-

*The
Savior of
Democracy*

ism necessary for self-government. Lincoln justified that faith. From the humblest origin and the scantiest opportunities, he appeared in a national crisis, not only to save the Union, but to prevent, for all liberty-loving people, the failure of democracy.

A Visit to Lincoln's Birthplace

Let us take a little journey to the farm in Hardin County, where he was born on February 12, 1809. You leave the train at the quiet village of Hodgenville, and drive out over a pleasant country road. The farm is, today, part of a landscape of pastures, groves and cornfields. Nearby is the shady creek where Lincoln learned to swim and fish. And there are still lichen-crusted, briar-grown remnants of the rail fences that enclosed the little clearings of more than a century ago. In such a rustic scene, it is strange to come upon a temple of glistening white marble, its flight of broad steps leading up to a lovely line of classic pillars. The visitor instinctively takes off his hat as he steps within the historic shrine that was built by the Lincoln Farm Association over the decaying log cabin, in which our great president was born.

The top of its stick and clay chimney crumbled and fell long ago. Its roof of weather-worn clapboards and poles long since ceased to keep out the rain. But even when new, it could have furnished little better shelter than an Indian lodge. The floor was of earth. A deer skin curtain served as its first door. The bed was of poles, laced with deer hide, and supported by holes bored in the logs. There was not even an iron crane to hang a kettle over the

*The Home
of the
Lincolns*

fire. Even among poor pioneers the Lincolns were poorer than others. The food of the family was game, fish, wild berries, honey from bee trees, and the little corn that could be grown between the stumps, pounded into hominy. Little Abe wore buckskin clothing. When very young he had to ride ten and twenty miles through the woods, to have corn ground at the nearest water-mill. And he had to carry a gun to defend himself from the wolves, black bears, lynxes and wild cats that infested the woods.

Death of Lincoln's Mother

Southern Indiana, to which the family moved in 1816, was equally wild. The new cabin was scarcely up before the young mother—Nancy Hanks Lincoln—died of milk sickness, for the one cow had eaten poisonous weeds in the woods. The nine-year-old boy helped his father whipsaw boards and whittle pegs for the rough coffin in which they laid her away by a deer path in the forest.

The piteous death of his mother, for lack of a doctor or the simplest remedies, was a life-long grief to Lincoln. In an unlettered family, and with no schooling, Nancy Hanks had, in some way, learned to read and write. She taught her son all she knew and told him stories of Washington, and of the brave grandfather for whom she had named him, who had come out to Kentucky with Daniel Boone and fought Indians. She often urged him: "You l'arn all you kin, Abe an' be somebody."

So, with the nearest log school-house nearly five miles distant, and teachers little better than wandering

*A
Mother's
Inspiration*

vagabonds, Lincoln taught himself from Webster's spelling book and the Bible. He earned a copy of Weems's Life of Washington by cutting two cords of wood. His cousin, Dennis Hanks, ten years older than himself, got him The Arabian Nights. His kind and capable stepmother helped and encouraged him. He often read aloud to her, as he lay at length, his book between his elbows, before the fire. He borrowed and read every book within twenty miles of his home, even the dry statutes of Indiana. And at the country store and mill at Gentryville, now Lincoln

An
All-around
Education

City, he read the speeches of Henry Clay, in the small newspapers of Cincinnati and Louisville.

By the time he was twenty-one, Lincoln had done an astonishing amount of reading in his scant leisure, after nightfall, and at noon when he rested the plow horse and munched his dry corn dodger under a tree. And it was not only from books that he learned. He made time to know and to love and serve his neighbors; to keep informed on events of the day, and to improve

himself in every manly, useful way. He excelled at running, wrestling and all country sports. Growing up tall and strong, he was the champion tree-chopper, rail-splitter and log-roller of the countryside. He broke

How Lincoln Taught Himself



© Horace K. Turner Co. Lincoln's Boyhood, by Eastman Johnson.

"He borrowed and read every book within twenty miles of his home. * * * By the time he was twenty-one, he had done an astonishing amount of reading in his scant leisure, after nightfall and at noon when he rested the plow horse."

up crowds of rowdy young men and won their friendship. He protected women, children and dumb animals; and he soundly thrashed bullies who could be persuaded to good behavior in no other way. He lost no chance to hear a good sermon, stump speech or courtroom argument; or to talk with a judge, lawyer or preacher traveling the circuit. It was his instinct to

sit at the feet of superior men. He committed some of Henry Clay's speeches to memory; and working his way down to New Orleans as a deck-hand on a flatboat, he saw things that set him to pondering on public questions that the wisest men then in the country were unable to solve.

He Starts Out Into the World

For twenty-one years he gave cheerful obedience, affection and unstinted service to a lovable but impractical father who "never could

seem to get ahead." For good measure he helped the family move to Illinois, and clear and fence a field for corn. Thirty years later John Hanks set the State Republican Convention wild by carrying two rails he had split into the hall. But little he thought of the end of the journey, when he tied his homespun shirts and knitted socks in a bandana handkerchief and set out afoot along the banks of the Sangamon River. His fortune did not concern him. He sought only knowledge, and a wider field of usefulness and service to humanity.

In the thriving little settlement of three hundred people of New Salem, where he found a home and friends for the next six years, there were books, educated people, and a schoolmaster to teach him grammar. He had things to say, already, and his first necessity was to learn how to express himself in speech and writing. Here he read and was deeply stirred by Webster's "Reply to Hayne." As the village postmaster, carrying mail to distant farms, if he had an errand that way, he read every newspaper that circulated in the region. Fighting Indians in the Black Hawk War, civilizing the rowdy Clary's Grove boys, who terrorized peaceable settlers, clerking, failing as a storekeeper, serving the town in the state legislature, and winning hosts of friends by his social gifts, Lincoln lived the precarious life of a student, while, with borrowed books, he educated himself for the bar. It is not to be supposed that he could not have made a better living, with his strength and skill and tireless industry, and with the personal popularity and public respect that are,

everywhere, valuable assets. He won the sort of success that he cared most about.

Beginning the Practice of Law

As poor in pocket as when he entered the town, Lincoln borrowed a horse to ride away to Springfield to begin the practice of law, at the age of twenty-eight. He remained in the state legislature until 1842, and secured the removal of the capital from Vandalia. In the forties he served one term in Congress; but there he made no attempt to distinguish himself. He used the opportunity to listen to Webster, Clay, and Calhoun, and he went home to devote ten years to the routine practice of law.

Long afterwards, almost every lawyer and judge who traveled the circuit with Lincoln filled a book with stories about him. They told how people crowded into the courtroom whenever he was to address a jury. He captured audiences and won verdicts with his homely wit, kindly humor, tender pathos, apt anecdotes that were like the parables of the Bible, and by his sincerity and shrewd common sense. He won the nickname of "Honest Abe" because he would defend no man unless he believed him to be innocent. He did not dazzle people at all. Any child could understand him. College-bred associates who fell under his spell, marveled at his power, for, according to the classic standards of the day, he had no learning. His very simplicity caused him to be long underestimated. Not until 1856, when he was forty-seven was he regarded as a profound thinker, a gifted political leader and an orator of the first rank.

Further

Education

and Training

How He

Won His

Cases

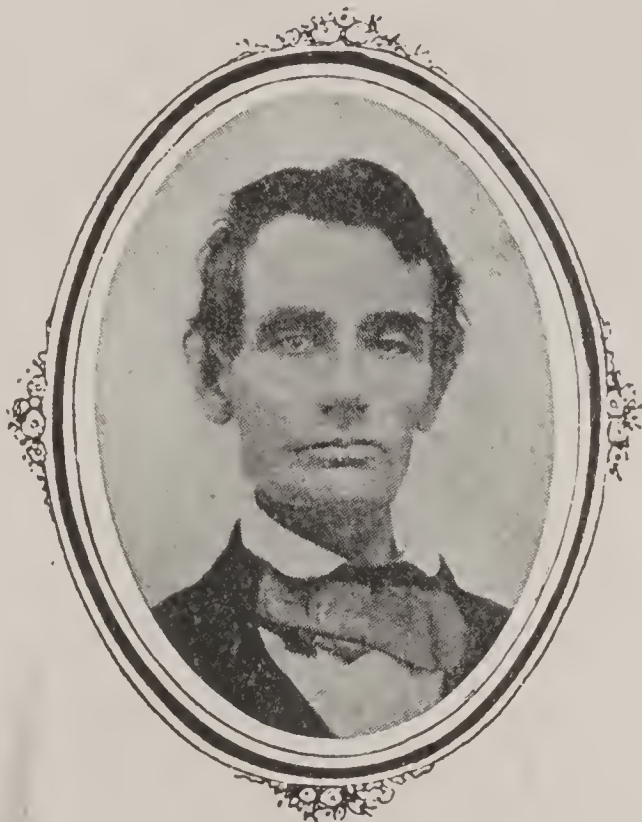
Entry Into National Politics

Lincoln had been out of politics for ten years, when the northern states were alarmed by a threatened spread of slavery. By 1852 all the old leaders of both parties were dead. The Whigs went to pieces, and the distracted northern states were divided among several small, ineffective parties—the Whigs, Abolitionists, Free Soilers, Know Nothings, and the Democrats who were united with the solidly Democratic South. It was a northern Democrat, Senator Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, who was the author of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill which repealed Clay's old Missouri Compromise. Free-soil and pro-slavery colonists immediately swarmed into Kansas Territory to fight for possession of the next new state. Then the Dred Scott Decision of the United States Supreme Court permitted masters to take their slaves into any free state, and to hold them there.

In this crisis Lincoln re-entered public life. As his first concern was to oppose the re-election of Senator Douglas, he returned to the state

legislature. He joined the movement to bring all the federalistic and anti-slavery sentiment in the state together, and to organize the Republican Party in Illinois. In his speech before the Republican State Con-

A Face That Speaks of History



If ever the history of a brave life was written in a human face, it was in that of Abraham Lincoln, but in none of his portraits can we read so clearly and definitely—letter by letter, so to speak—what the face has to say, as in what is known as the "Macomb" portrait which is here reproduced. If we contrast it with one of his earlier pictures, we will see what an air of determination has here come over his face. This portrait was taken when he had decided to pursue a course in his debates with Douglas, against which all his friends and political associates advised him, and which he knew would probably cost him the election to the United States Senate for which he was running. It was taken at Macomb, Ill., two days before one of the debates, and is now owned by Captain W. J. Franklin who loaned it to Pictured Knowledge for reproduction. It shows, as none of his other portraits do, the unbending determination of which he was capable when his conscience told him to take a certain course.

vention he made an observation that set the nation to thinking as it had not thought on any question since Patrick Henry: "A house divided against itself cannot stand. I believe this nation cannot remain permanently half slave and half free."

The Famous Douglas Debates

Lincoln was immediately put forward as the Republican choice for senator. His reply to a Chicago speech by Douglas led to a series of debates between the two that covered every congressional district in the state. The challenge attracted the attention of the country. Douglas was the "Little Giant," an orator of national fame and the probable Democratic candidate for the presidency in 1860. Outside of his own state Lincoln was unknown. Men rode and drove, and even walked, thirty miles to hear those speeches.

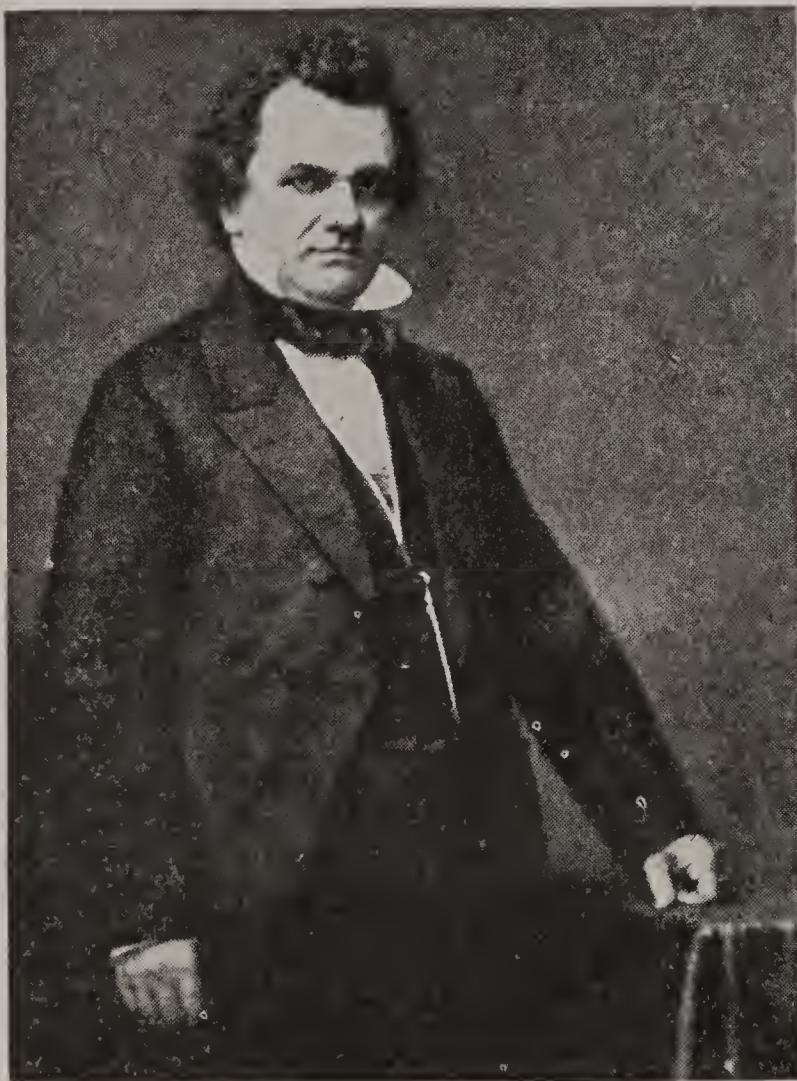
Eastern newspapers reported them. And people went home to say: "Douglas is the most eloquent speaker, but—Lincoln has the right of it."

That is the final test of oratory: to be convincing. Lincoln was so simple, so direct, that people who heard him were not carried away at the time, but it was astonishing how single sentences of his stuck in the public mind. He was unforgettable. He failed to win the senatorship, but he split the Democratic Party by admissions that he forced from Douglas. His fame was nationwide; and his name swept the National Republican Convention in Chicago, like a prairie fire and won the election of 1860.

School textbooks have too little room to explain Lincoln's political convictions. Born and brought up in the Ohio River Valley, when Henry Clay was the popular idol for a half century, he was a Whig of the Clay faction. He had also been profoundly influenced by President Jackson's vigorous handling of the nullification doctrine and talk of se-

cession in the thirties. But most of all he was moved by Webster's twenty years' defense of the Federal Constitution, and eloquent pleas for national patriotism. His one fixed determination, on entering the White House, was to preserve the Union.

"The Little Giant"



"Douglas was the 'Little Giant,' an orator of national fame and a probable democratic candidate for the Presidency in 1860." People who heard the Douglas debates said: "Douglas is the most eloquent speaker, but Lincoln has the right of it."

The contrast between the appearance of the two men was equally striking. While Lincoln was tall, Douglas was hardly five feet high. He was called "The Little Giant," not only because he had such a brilliant mind, but because he had a large head and a massive chest for his size.

The Slavery Question and the Union

Although slavery shocked and saddened him, and he resisted its spread into the free states and territories, he was not an Abolitionist. Like Henry Clay, he understood the difficulty of changing the labor system upon which the agricultural industries of the southern states were based, and sympathized with them. He knew that there was a strong sentiment in the

border states for the gradual emancipation of the slaves; and he thought that, as the states came to that frame of mind, the entire country should share the social and financial burden of freeing the black race.

In that time of heated feeling, Lincoln was the best friend the South could have had in the White

House. He would not have been hurried, for abolition sentiment was so far from dominating the Republican Party that it was not until 1863 that he was sure of support in issuing the Emancipation Proclamation. And he did not abolish slavery. He simply freed the slaves of states that were in rebellion, to weaken the Confederacy and prevent its recognition by England. In neutral border states and in states that had been conquered by Union armies, slavery was undisturbed, until it was abolished by amendment to the Constitution after the war ended.

But, alarmed by Lincoln's large majority, misunderstanding and mistrusting him, and over-estimating the strength of abolition sentiment in the North, the southern states were convinced that an immediate attack was to be made upon slavery. Between November and March seven states seceded and set up the Confederate Government. The saddest man in the country, Lincoln went to Washington under guard to be inaugurated.

Then Came the War

Your history tells you all about

the four years' war; its great campaigns and battles, its shifting fortunes, the conquest of the exhausted South, and Lincoln's official acts. So let us give you this little picture of the war's beginning, as it appeared in Chicago where, in the June be-

fore, Lincoln had been nominated in the barn-like Wigwam, to the booming of cannon, shrieking of whistles, and clamor of fire bells.

"Fort Sumter was bombarded on Saturday, April 13, 1861. Nothing could be done on Sunday. It was one of those cloudless days, warm as July. An azure sky was reflected in a sapphire lake. A gentle breeze stirred the folds of Old Glory, which floated from

every gable. Church doors and pulpits were draped in the colors. Congregations sang America. Ministers prayed that the untried president might have wisdom and strength for his patriotic task. It was a day of grief, bewilderment and prayer. On Monday morning President Lincoln issued his call for volunteers. In just three weeks thirty-eight companies of boys in blue—among them Germans, Swedes, Poles, and a whole Irish Brigade under Colonel

How Lincoln Looked in '64



This picture of Lincoln is from a photograph taken in Washington early in 1864 by a Mr. Brady and hence is known as the Brady photograph. The rough appearance of the ear and a portion of the clothing is due to a defect in the negative. The American sculptor, Bartlett, commenting on Lincoln's appearance when seated, said: "Lincoln's dignity when sitting shows that the popular notion as to his ungainliness is exaggerated. He also stood well and, above all, in a natural and unassuming manner."

Mulligan, marched from Chicago to Springfield." All over the North tramping regiments sang:

*"We are coming Father Abraham
Three hundred thousand strong."*

It was not, however, until the issue of the Emancipation Proclama-

A Martyr for His Country

On April 15, 1865, four years and two days from the beginning of the war, and five days after the South laid down its arms, Lincoln suffered a martyr's death, dying "with malice toward none and charity for all." His task was not finished. The ruined South lost its best and wisest

The Words That Freed the Slaves

On the opposite page is a reduced reproduction of one of the four pages of the first draft of what the London Spectator called, "the noblest political document known to history," the Emancipation Proclamation. It is all in the handwriting of Lincoln except two interlineations on another page by Secretary Seward, and the formal heading and ending which was written by the Chief Clerk of the State Department.

The original draft is dated September 22nd, 1862. On New Year's Day, 1863, as you see he expresses his intention of doing in the second paragraph of this reproduction, he issued the final Proclamation.

When you go to Washington some day you can see both the original draft and the final Proclamation which are kept among the precious original documents of the nation, and you will notice that the signature of the final Proclamation shows that the president's hand trembled a little. "Not," said Mr. Lincoln in speaking of it afterwards, "because of any uncertainty or hesitation on my part; but it was just after a public reception and three hours of hand-shaking is not calculated to improve a man's handwriting."

As the document lay unrolled before him, he took a pen, dipped it in ink, moved his hand to the place for signature, held it a moment and then without signing, laid the pen aside, and turning to the Secretary of State, Mr. Seward, said:

"I have been shaking hands since nine o'clock this morning and my right hand is almost paralyzed. If my name ever goes into history it will be for this act and my whole soul is in it. If my hand trembles when I sign the Proclamation, all who examine the document hereafter will say, 'he hesitated.'" He then turned to the table, took up the pen again and slowly and carefully signed his name.

tion, January 1, 1863, that the country realized that it had a statesman comparable to Washington in the White House; nor until the following July that it had one of the greatest of heroes. In a speech of fewer than three hundred words (delivered at the dedication of the battlefield of Gettysburg as a national cemetery) Lincoln revealed the mind of a sage, the foresight of a prophet, the purpose of a historic reformer and the heart of a mother. In that, and in his second inaugural he gave us literary classics.

friend. A member of his cabinet who saw him breathe his last, spoke the thought of the world and the verdict of history: "Now he belongs to the ages."

One more little picture. You will not find it in your textbooks. It was drawn for the writer of this sketch by Dennis Hanks, Lincoln's cousin and earliest friend. He was ninety at the time, and our great president had been dead a quarter of a century. An uneducated cobbler of sixty-six, "a little

*"Honest
Abe
Is Dead"*

The Words That Freed the Slaves

That on the first day of January in the year of our Lord, one thousand eight hundred and sixty-three, all persons held as slaves within any state, or designated part of a state, the people whereof shall then be in rebellion against the United States shall be then, thence forward, and forever free; and the executive government, including the military and naval authority thereof of the United States, will, ~~during the con-~~
~~tinuance in office of the present administration,~~ recognize, ^{and maintain the freedom of} such persons, ~~and being free,~~ and will do no act or acts to oppress such persons, or any of them, in any efforts they may make for their actual freedom.

That the executive will, on the first day of January aforesaid, by proclamation, designate the states, and parts of states, if any, in which the people thereof respectively, shall then be in rebellion against the United States; and the fact that any state, or the people thereof shall, on that day be, in good faith represented in the Congress of the United States, by members chosen thereto, at elections wherein a majority of the

Lincoln and His Cabinet at the Signing of the Emancipation Proclamation



It was without consultation with, or the knowledge of, his cabinet that Lincoln prepared the original draft of the Proclamation, although the idea of emancipation had frequently been discussed. When he had written it out, he called a meeting of the cabinet and submitted it. To preserve in picture form the memory of this great event, F. B. Carpenter, the artist who painted this picture, spent six months with Mr. Lincoln at the White House, getting materials and information so that the picture should be as accurate as possible. In describing the circumstances of the meeting to the artist, Mr. Lincoln said that no suggestions were offered that he had not anticipated and settled in his own mind, until Secretary Seward suggested that the Proclamation should not be issued at that time because the war had been going against the Union armies. "His idea," said Mr. Lincoln, "was that it would be considered our last shriek on the retreat, and that it should be given to the country following some military success. It was an aspect of the case that I had entirely overlooked, and seeing the wisdom of it I put the Proclamation aside as you do a sketch for a picture. From time to time I added or changed a line, touching it up here and there, anxiously watching the progress of events." Finally came the battle of Antietam and on the first day of the year following, the Proclamation was issued.

The picture shows the meeting of the cabinet when the Proclamation was first submitted. The President sat near the head of the table. Facing him was the Secretary of State, Mr. Seward. Seated at his right is Mr. Stanton, Secretary of War, and between them is Mr. Chase, Secretary of the Treasury. On Mr. Lincoln's left in the order named are: Secretary Welles, of the Navy; Secretary Smith, of the Interior; Postmaster General Blair, and Attorney General Bates, the man with the folded arms.

The President is represented as holding in his hand the Proclamation, which he has just read, and listening to the important suggestion by Secretary Seward that it should not be issued until after a Union victory.

runt of an old man," as he described himself, he was pegging away at a broken shoe, in his shop in Charleston, Illinois, when a neighbor, white and shaken, ran in from the streets.

"Denny!" he cried, "Honest Abe's dead; shot dead!"

"Like the Earth Had Stopped"

"I been hearin' that in my dreams for twenty-five years, an' I kaint

believe it yit. It was in April, the sun shinin', the grass turnin' green, an' the laylocks in bloom. Then it was like the 'arth had stopped. Thar wasn't sca'cely any tradin' done. Everything kivered with black, an' people standin' round the streets cryin'. Crowds waited at every depot from Washington to Springfield, to scatter posies on the track, an' to stand unkivered while the

A Life Mask of Lincoln



A life mask looks anything but lifelike, but it serves an important purpose. It reproduces a man's face exactly as it is and stands in the same relation to sculpture that a photograph does to a painting. In taking a life mask, the face of the sitter is covered with plaster of paris which is allowed to remain on the face for an hour or so until it becomes hardened. It is then removed and this cast is used as a mold for making the life mask itself, such as the one of Lincoln which you see here. In the same way the casts of the hands are made. In order that the sitter may breathe while his face is covered with the plaster, two quills are inserted in his nostrils which extend to the outer air.

Death masks from the faces of the distinguished dead are taken in the same way. The death mask of Napoleon is one of the best known. It would be impossible to say, merely from the look of it, which is the life mask and which the death mask of a man because in both cases the eyes, of course, are closed.

funeral car went by. We didn't keer none about him bein' president. We jist wanted Abe to come home, an' visit around with the folks that loved him. Thar won't be another man like Abe Lincoln until Judgment Day."

A Priceless Memory

A noble monument marks his grave in Springfield, Illinois. His plain old frame house there is a memorial, filled with relics, and kept open to visitors by the state. A marble temple protects the humble cabin in which he was born. His mother's grave in Indiana is marked by a shaft, in the center of a little state park. Hundreds of books have been written about him. Through

numerous statues, busts, bas-reliefs, and portraits, the world has been made familiar with his tall, spare figure, heavy black hair, deep-set gray eyes, and the tender, wistful mouth which betrays his sadness. Countless stories illustrate his wisdom, humor and wide sympathies. And in his writings we have precious examples of the clearness, force and beauty of his style, and the nobility of his mind and heart.

With Washington, Lincoln is the one man in our history whose fame is not accounted for by anything or everything that he did. We love and revere him for what he was. His life conveys the impression of duty rather than of glory. His spirit is

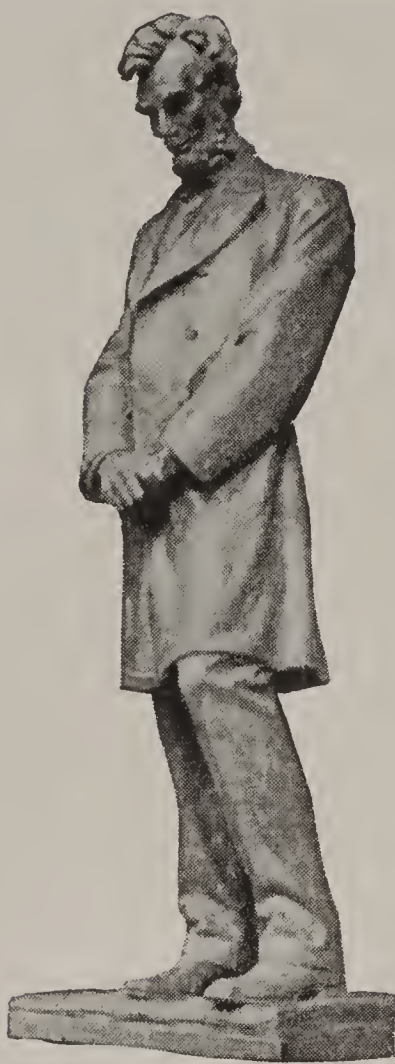
*Lincoln
and
Washington*

Lincoln at Gettysburg

timeless, his appeal universal. The humblest man may cultivate his virtues. His very dear memory admonishes every American patriot.

This is how Lincoln stood when he uttered those few but immortal words at the dedication of the battlefield of Gettysburg as a National Cemetery, and this is what he said:

"Fourscore and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. Now we are engaged in a civil war, testing whether that nation, or any nation so conceived and dedicated, can long endure. We have met on a great battlefield of that war. We are met to dedicate a portion of that field as the final resting place of the men who here gave their lives that the nation might live. It is altogether fitting and proper that we should do this. But in a larger sense we cannot consecrate, we cannot



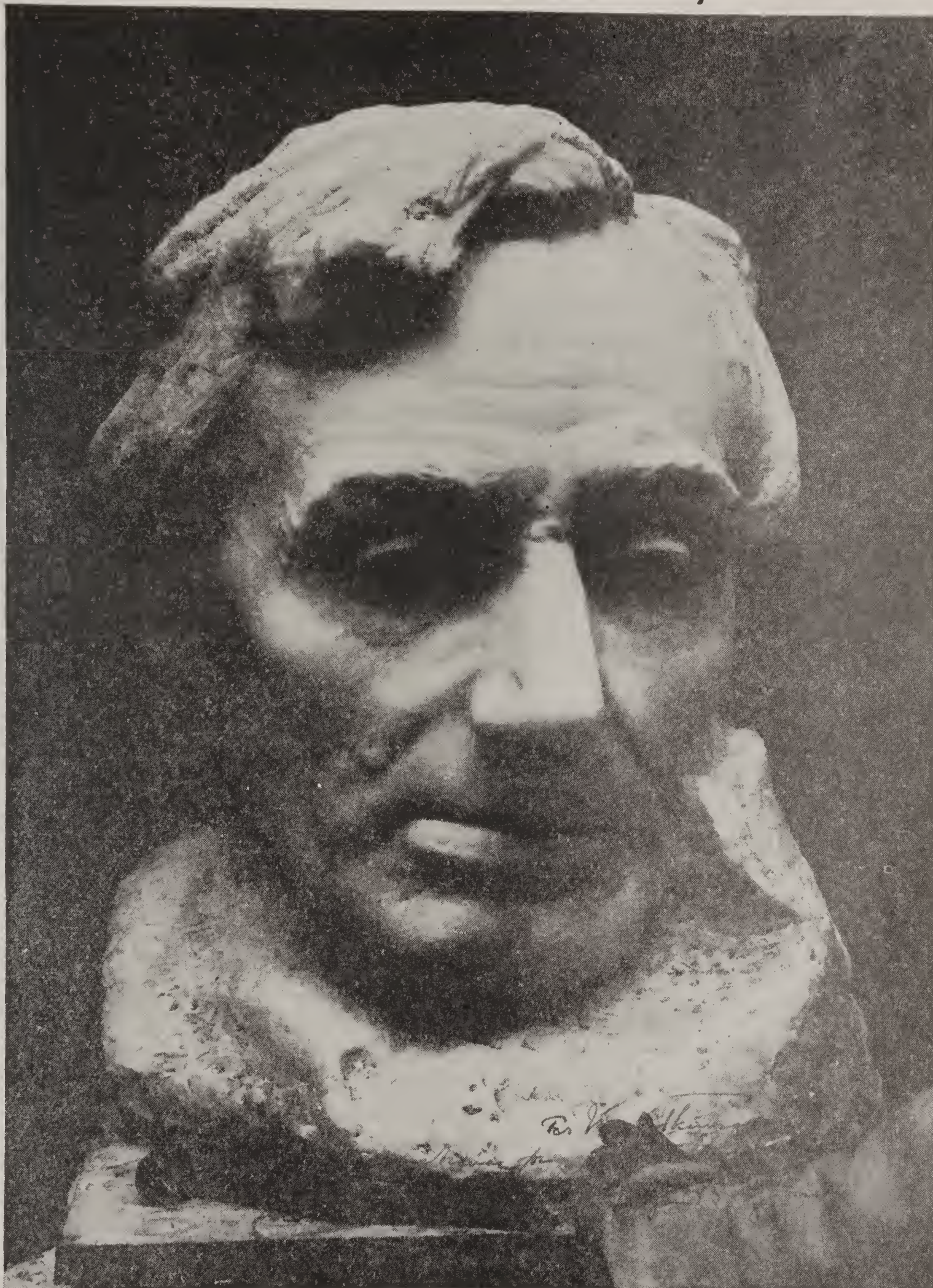
Statue by D. C. French, at Lincoln, Neb.

If the nation which he lived and died to save is not to perish from the earth, it will be because it continues to breed such men.

hallow, this ground. The brave men, living and dead, who struggled here, have consecrated it far above our power to add or detract. The world will little note nor long remember, what we say here, but it can never forget what they did here. It is for us, the living, rather to be dedicated to the unfinished work which they who fought here have thus far so nobly carried on. It is rather for us to be here dedicated to the task remaining before us; that from these honored dead we take increased devotion to

the cause for which they gave the last full measure of devotion: that we here highly resolve that these dead shall not have died in vain; that the nation shall, under God, have a new birth of freedom, and that government of the people, by the people and for the people shall not perish from the earth."

The Saddest Face in History



© Gutzon Borglum

By permission of the Artist

A great leader and statesman carrying the burdens of a nation—this is the impression given us by this head of Lincoln in the Capitol at Washington. It is the work of Gutzon Borglum, one of the most eminent of modern sculptors. As we look at it, how it reminds us, by the kindly lines of the face, the splendid thoughtfulness of the brow, the firm yet tender mouth—of this expression of Lincoln's character in words: "He had the brain of a sage, the inflexible purpose of a reformer, the tender heart of a mother."

Lincoln's Love for Children and Good Stories



This is another conception of Lincoln by Borglum. It occupies a site in front of the Essex County Court House, at Newark, N. J., and was erected by one of the local posts of the Grand Army of the Republic. The figure of Lincoln and the bench on which it rests is a favorite resting place for the children who love to play here. Lincoln himself was very fond of children and would, without doubt, have enjoyed having the very children in the picture on his knee and at his side, just as they are shown.

The Loving Father, the Boy, and the Books

AFTER he became president, he used to spend all the time he could spare from the burdens of his great work to "chum" with his little son, Tad, whose real name was Thomas, after Lincoln's father. But the President used to call him "Tadpole" and this became a family name shortened to "Tad." Opposite we see the boy and his father looking over a beautifully illustrated book with brass clasps. After he became president, people sent Mr. Lincoln a great many books and always having been fond of books himself, it was one of the delights of his life to open them in the evening with Tad standing beside him, and they would talk together as they turned the pages. It was also Mr. Lincoln's custom to read aloud to his family every morning a chapter from the Bible, and while doing so he usually had his arm around Tad, who stood close beside him. Lincoln always loved the Bible, both for its moral teachings and for the beauty and power of its language. Those who heard him read or quote the Bible say that they never listened, even to the most eloquent preachers, with the same feeling of awe and reverence.

President Lincoln, "Tad," and the Goats

Both the President and Tad were very fond of a pair of pet goats and used to play with them for an hour at a time. One day when the goats were

Lincoln and Tad



playing by themselves on the White House lawn, Lincoln called a lady to the window and said:

"Come here and look at my two goats; notice how they sniff the air and play in the sunshine." Then, as one of them jumped up in the air and came down solid on his feet, as little goats have a way of doing to express their joy of living, Lincoln said:

"Whew, what a jump!"

Tad and the Photographers

Once Tad took possession of an unoccupied room at the White House and fitted up in it a little theater with stage, curtains, orchestra, stalls, parquet and everything. A few days afterward, some photographers went into the room to develop some pictures. When Tad heard about it he was very angry because they had not asked his permission. He locked the door and wouldn't let anybody in. When his father was told about it he said, very mildly:

"Tad, go and unlock the door."

But Tad, muttering to himself, went off to his mother's room. One of the artists tried to coax him but it did no good. When Lincoln was told of it, he closed his lips firmly and going straight to Mrs. Lincoln's room returned with the key to the little theater and unlocked the door himself. Then he explained to one of the artists about Tad.

"Tad," said he, "is a peculiar boy. He was violently excited when I went to him. I said, 'Tad, do you know you are making your father a great deal of trouble?' He burst into tears and gave me the key at once."

When Tad's Father Died

When Tad was told of his father's tragic death, it nearly broke his heart. For a long time he shut himself up and would speak to no one. Then one Sunday morning when the sun had risen in the clear and beautiful sky, he looked out of the window and said to a gentleman who had called on Mrs. Lincoln:

"Do you think my father has gone to heaven?"

"I have not a doubt of it," was the reply.

"Then," said Tad in a broken voice, "I am glad he has gone there for he was never happy after he came here. This was not a good place for him!"

Little "Dan" Webster's "Other Hand"

Here is a story of Daniel Webster's boyhood that Lincoln had heard and which he loved to repeat. One day at school Dan had done something quite naughty and was called up by the teacher for punishment. In those days it was common for the teacher to punish by using a ruler on the palm of the culprit's hand. Dan's hands were very dirty—as boys' hands sometimes are. On his way up to the teacher he wiped off the palm of his right hand the best he could against his trousers. When he held it out for punishment, the teacher looked at it and said:

"Daniel, if you will find another hand in this school room as dirty as that, I'll let you off."

"Here it is, sir," said Daniel, promptly holding out his left hand.

"That will do," said the teacher, "for this time; you can take your seat, sir."

The Boy and the Lost Apple

Lincoln was so easy to get at, that people used to come to him with all sorts of little complaints. One day, in order to impress a visitor with the idea that there were too many great things in those troubled times for him to think about to permit his going into all these little matters, he told the story of a lumberman, named Jack Chase, who was known as the best raftsman on the Mississippi. Jack afterward became captain of a steamer, and when the vessel was passing the rapids he always took charge of the wheel himself. One day when the boat was plunging and wallowing through a boiling current and it was all Jack could do to keep her in the channel, a boy, who was one of the passengers, pulled his coat-tail and shouted:

"Say, Mister Captain! I wish you would just stop the boat a minute—I've lost my apple overboard!"

The Boy and the Naval School

Once there was a boy named Willie Bladen, who wanted very much to go to the naval school. He had served on a gun-boat as powder-monkey in two important battles and had conducted himself with such coolness that he had been chosen as the captain's messenger. One requirement was that a candidate for a place in the school must be fourteen years of age. When Willie heard this he cried because he would not be fourteen until the September following. A member of Congress, in whose district Willie lived,

went to the President to see what he could do. This is how he tells the rest of the story:

"Taking by the hand the little fellow—short for his age, dressed in the sailors' blue trousers and shirt,—I advanced with him to the President and said:

'Mr. President, my young friend, Willie Bladen, finds a difficulty about his appointment.' Before I got half through with the details, Mr. Lincoln laid down his spectacles, rose and said:

'Bless me! Is that the boy who did so gallantly in those two great battles? Why, I feel that I should bow to him and not he to me,' for the little fellow had made his graceful bow. Then the President took the papers and made the necessary order for the boy's appointment."

That Wonderful Dollar!

When Lincoln was a boy of eighteen, he built a little flatboat, with his mother's consent, to take some produce they had raised, down the river to New Orleans and sell it. Before he started he got an opportunity to carry some trunks on this raft to a steamer in the river. The two gentlemen to whom the trunks belonged, each tossed a half dollar. In telling the story to the members of his cabinet one evening, he said:

"I could scarcely believe my eyes as I picked up the money. Gentlemen, you may think it was a very little thing, but it was the most important incident in my life—that in less than a day I, a poor boy, had earned a dollar by honest work. The whole world seemed brighter and fairer before me. I was a more hopeful and confident being from that time."

Lincoln's High Ambition

Lincoln was, in one way, a very ambitious man. He was ambitious to do his duty in everything that came to him to do, whether large or small. And do you know that, with very few exceptions, all the men in the world who have become great, began in just this way—doing the best they could whatever work was nearest to them to do? Very few of them ever began to dream of large success until after large things began to grow out of these small beginnings.

Lincoln's feeling of gratitude that he was able to earn a dollar by honest work, governed his conduct throughout life. For instance, after he was elected president the second time he said:

"Being only mortal, after all, I should have been a little mortified if I had been beaten; but the sting would have been more than offset by the thought that the people had notified me that all my official responsibilities were soon to be lifted off my back." Doesn't that last remark remind you of what Tad said? "He never was happy after he came here. This was not a good place for him!"

A member of Congress who called on the President one morning in the winter of 1863, and found him looking more than usually pale and careworn, inquired the reason. He replied that with the bad news he had received on the previous night about a reverse of Union armies, he had not closed his eyes all night and could eat no breakfast, and exclaimed:

"How willingly would I exchange places today with the soldier who sleeps on the ground in the Army of the Potomac!"

Why Lincoln Laughed

Lincoln loved to tell and hear good stories, not only because a story is the best thing in the world with which to make a point or teach a lesson, but also because laughter, and looking at the humorous side of things occasionally were a great relief from the burdens and sadness of his own life. His laugh was very hearty. A congressman said one day as he heard the President's hearty voice in another room:

"That laugh has been the President's life preserver."

And Lincoln himself said one day that if it were not for this occasional "vent," he should die.

Minnehaha and Minneboohoo

Some gentlemen who had recently returned from what was then the "Far West," called at the White House, and, in the course of the conversation, spoke of a town in Nebraska called "Weeping Water." "That's a very picturesque name," said Mr. Lincoln, "but as 'laughing water,' according to Longfellow, is 'Minnehaha,' why didn't they give it an Indian name and call it Minneboohoo"?

The New Hat

Soon after his nomination in 1860, a hat manufacturer in Brooklyn sent him a very handsome hat which he had made especially for him. After admiring it for some moments, Mr. Lincoln put it on his head and walked up to a looking-glass. Glancing from the reflection in the mirror he said to Mrs. Lincoln, with a characteristic twinkle:

"Well, Wife, there is one thing likely to come out of this scrape, anyhow; we're going to have some new clothes!"

The Canvased Hams

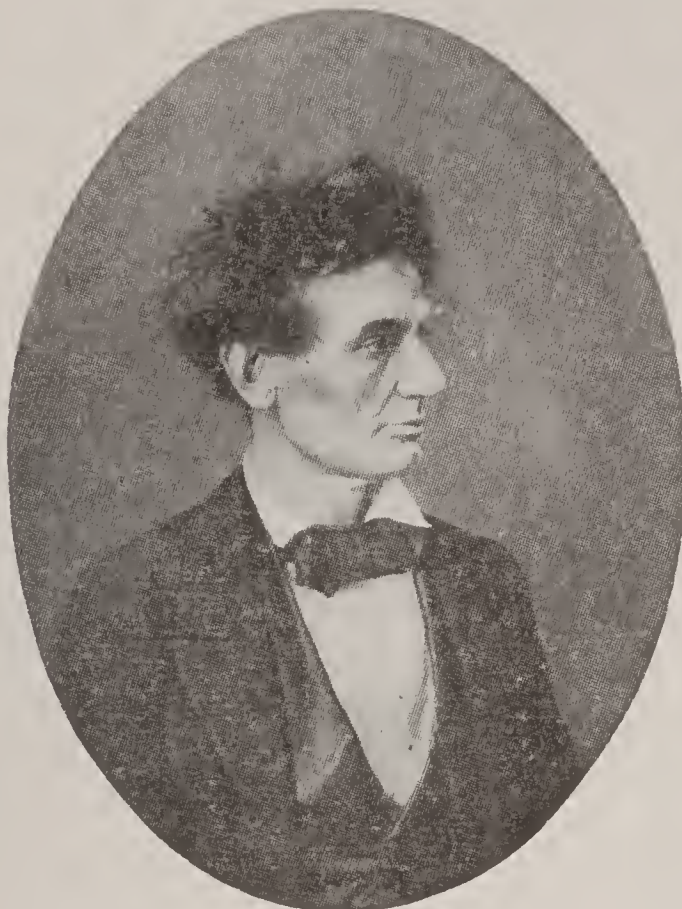
Lincoln used to joke a good deal about his own personal appearance. Among other things, about his hands. Although his hands were in good proportion to his body, he used to refer laughingly to their size. Once, when a congressman called on him, he found the president in his office dressed for a state dinner. Holding up his hands, on which were the conventional white gloves, he remarked with a laugh that an Illinois friend could never see his hands in that "predicament" without being reminded of "canvased hams."

Lincoln's Unruly Hair

Of his rough, unmanageable hair, Lincoln once said it had "a way of getting up as far as possible in the world."

But in addition to what nature had done in making his hair so "ambitious," Mr. Lincoln had a habit when approaching some knotty point or situation, of running his fingers through his hair, which tumbled it up still more.

These Pictures Show Lincoln's Habit of Tumbling His Hair



You can see that in these two portraits, one of which was taken only a few moments after the other. This was shortly after his first nomination and before he began to grow the beard that you see in his later portraits. After the negative was taken for the first of the two pictures, and before the second exposure, he got to thinking about something and up went his fingers through his hair; with the result you see.

The Mother Who Smoothed His Hair

Once a mother who had two sons in the army and so was left without support, called on Lincoln to have one of them released. He said to her:

"I know what you wish me to do and I shall do it without your asking; I shall release to you your second son."

Upon this he took up his pen and began writing the order. The poor mother standing by his side with tears running down her face could not speak, but passed her hand softly over his head, stroking his rough hair. By the time he had finished the order his own eyes were full of tears.

The Handsomest of Men

Thaddeus Stevens once called at the White House with an elderly lady whose son had been in the army, and for some military offense had been sentenced to imprisonment at hard labor. After hearing all the facts, Lincoln wrote out a pardon. As the lady was passing down the stairs with Mr. Stevens on their way out, she suddenly said with much excitement:

"Why, they told me he was an ugly looking man. He is the handsomest man I ever saw in my life!"

O Captain! My Captain!

*O Captain! my Captain! our fearful trip is done,
The ship has weathered every rack, the prize we sought is won;
The port is near, the bells I hear, the people all exulting,
While follow eyes the steady keel, the vessel grim and daring;
 But, O heart! heart! heart
 O the bleeding drops of red,
 Where on my deck my Captain lies,
 Fallen cold and dead.*

*O Captain! my Captain! rise up and hear the bells;
Rise up—for you the flag is flung—for you the bugle trills,
For you bouquets and ribboned wreaths—for you the shores a-crowding,
For you they call, the swaying mass, their eager faces turning;
 Here Captain! dear father!
 This arm beneath your head!
 It is some dream that on the deck
 You've fallen cold and dead.*

*My Captain does not answer, his lips are pale and still,
My father does not feel my arm, he has no pulse nor will.
The ship is anchored safe and sound, its voyage closed and done,
From fearful trip the victor ship comes in with object won;
 Exult, O shores, and ring, O bells!
 But I, with mournful tread,
 Walk the deck my Captain lies,
 Fallen cold and dead.*

WALT WHITMAN

Three Great Military Leaders of the Civil War



First Sight of the Cavalry Group

When you visit Washington, one of these days, you will look up the Mall, one of the broad avenues leading to the Capitol and see this man galloping into view, and beyond him that immense white dome. He is a captain leading a charge in the Civil War and belongs to the Bronze Group which is part of the Grant memorial monument designed by Henry M. Shrady.

WHEN Lincoln issued his call for volunteers to defend the Union, mass meetings were held in every northern city and village. The meeting in Galena, an old Mississippi River town in northwestern Illinois, has become historic. One of the first men to come forward there was a son of Jesse Grant, an aging hardware merchant of the place. U. S. Grant was a man of thirty-nine, a shabby, middle-aged clerk in his father's store. Coming to Galena only a few years before, poor, ob-

scure, and with nothing to say for himself, he had attracted no attention, and was generally looked upon as a failure.

Now he surprised the people of Galena by admitting modestly that he was a graduate of West Point Military Academy, and that he had resigned from the regular army with the rank of captain, in 1854. Very simply, he offered his services in training raw recruits. He thought he could "lick the boys into shape so they would

*Chose the
Duty Nearest
Him*

give a good account of themselves at the front." He was urged to go to Washington, where he would be restored to his rank in the army. There was a scarcity of trained officers, and his promotion would be rapid. He dismissed this suggestion with few words, organized a local company of volunteers and went with it to the state capital. This action was characteristic of the man. Politics and self-seeking were foreign to his nature. Like Lincoln, his ruling passion was devotion to the nearest duty.

There is nothing in Grant's early history to give any hint of his military genius. A number of other boys who were born in Point Pleasant, Ohio, the birthplace of General Harrison, who won fame as an Indian fighter in the War of 1812, also wanted to be soldiers. Hiram Ulysses Grant was not the most brilliant. It was just by dogged deter-

*Little Promise
of His
Greatness*

mination and plodding work that he prepared himself to pass the examinations and enter West Point at seventeen. This was in 1839. By an error in registering, his name was changed to Ulysses Simpson Grant. As "Simpson" was his mother's maiden name, the young cadet made no great effort to have the mistake corrected. Graduated in 1843, he was sent as a Lieutenant to Jefferson Barracks, Missouri. Before twenty-five he won distinction for gallant action in the Mexican War. Marrying Miss Julia Dent, the accomplished sister of a classmate, he spent six years in the service in California, in gold fever days.

Like Lincoln, a Failure in Business

He resigned from the army because there was little to do. It is

true that the storm of the Civil War was gathering; but there had been talk of war for more than twenty years, and most of the people in the country thought there was too much smoke for any danger of fire. Captain Grant opened a real estate office in St. Louis, and also worked a small farm near the city. Like Lincoln and many other great men, he was a failure in business. His military title would have been a help to him, but he made no use of it. His office was soon closed. For a few years he was seen in the residence districts of the city, delivering cord wood in a farm wagon. This appeared to be his only source of income. Then he disappeared. Getting deeply into debt, he was obliged to sell his farm, and to remove his family to Galena. All his father could do for him was to offer him the small but regular wages of a clerk in his hardware store.

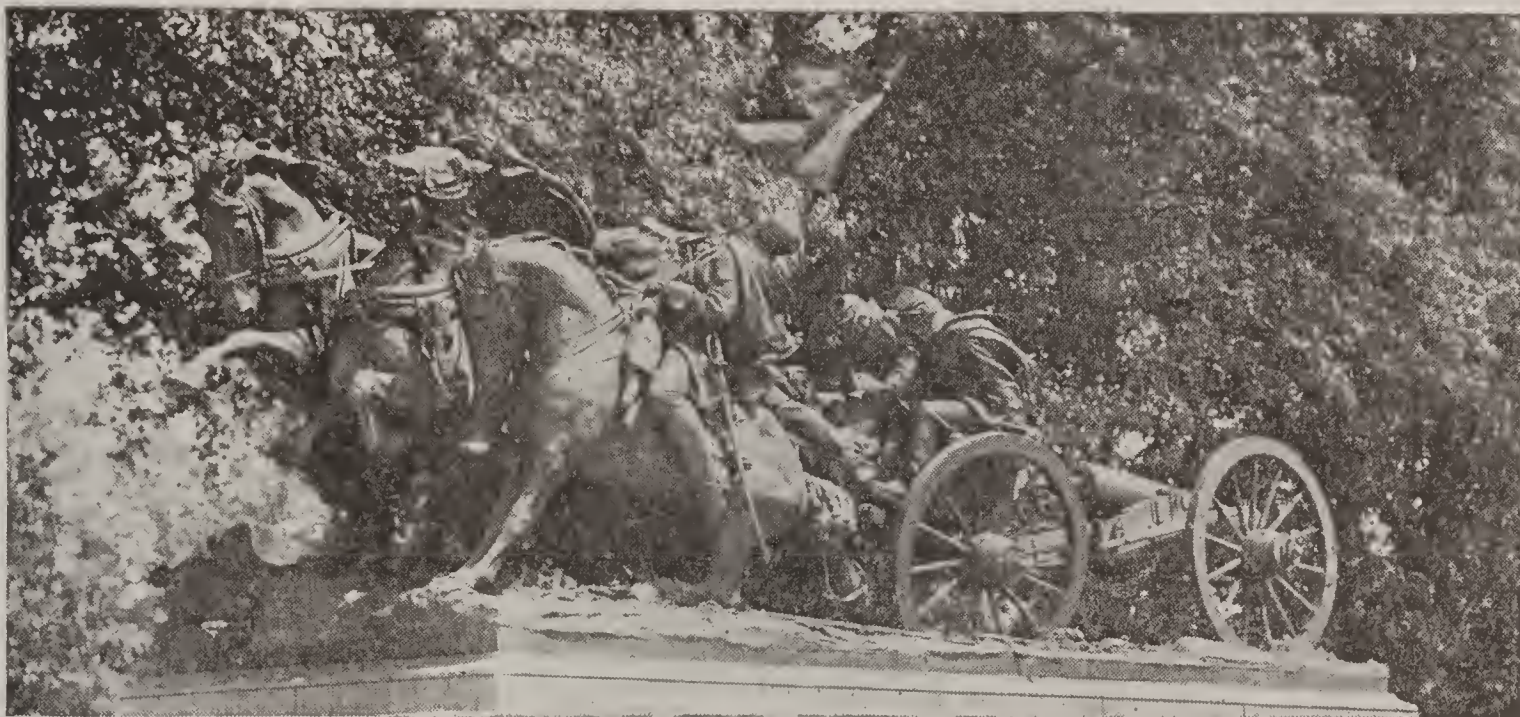
In the training camp at Springfield, Illinois, his ability was recognized at once. Within a month he was made colonel of an infantry regiment. By August he was in the field as a brigadier-general, with headquarters at Cairo, and given the task of pushing southward, along both banks of the Mississippi. He was only an officer of volunteers, but, as a matter of fact, the great opportunity to make a military reputation, during the early years of the war, lay in the West. While Grant steadily smashed his way to Vicksburg, four generals, commanding the army of the Potomac, found themselves unable to make any headway against General Lee in Virginia.

Grant's first move was to capture Paducah, and secure Kentucky for

the Union. His campaign was marked by military strategy, and aggressiveness. In November he routed the Confederate forces in Missouri. By February, 1862, he had

and with Missouri, Arkansas, Texas and Louisiana lost to the Confederacy, Grant turned eastward to the relief of the Federal army, besieged and cut off from supplies, at Chat-

The Gunners and the Big Guns



This is the artillery group of the Grant monument. The gunners are shown sitting on the "limber." The limber consists of two wheels, an axle and a pole to which the horses are attached. The frame of the limber also supports one or more ammunition chests on which the gunners usually sit. When the guns are being got ready for action, the limber is detached from the gun carriage and so you hear the expression, "unlimbering the guns." As you may imagine, it isn't an easy thing to ride on the limber of a gun, and the men are here shown holding on, because there is a sudden jolt. The captain will give the order to unlimber in a few minutes. The gunners will then jump down and load the piece.

pushed into western Tennessee. It was at the siege of Fort Donelson, where he captured a garrison of 14,000 men, that he wrote his famous "unconditional surrender" note that won him his nickname. It was as a major-general that he advanced to Shiloh, Iuka and Corinth. Leaving a series of brilliant victories behind him, he moved on Vicksburg. This fortified river port in Mississippi surrendered, with its garrison of 32,000 men, in July of 1863.

Farragut, by a naval expedition from the Gulf, had captured New Orleans the year before, and, then, after sixteen months of galling work, under fire, had cleared the lower end of the river of Confederate fortifications, mines and gunboats. The river open, "unfettered from its source to the sea," as Lincoln said,

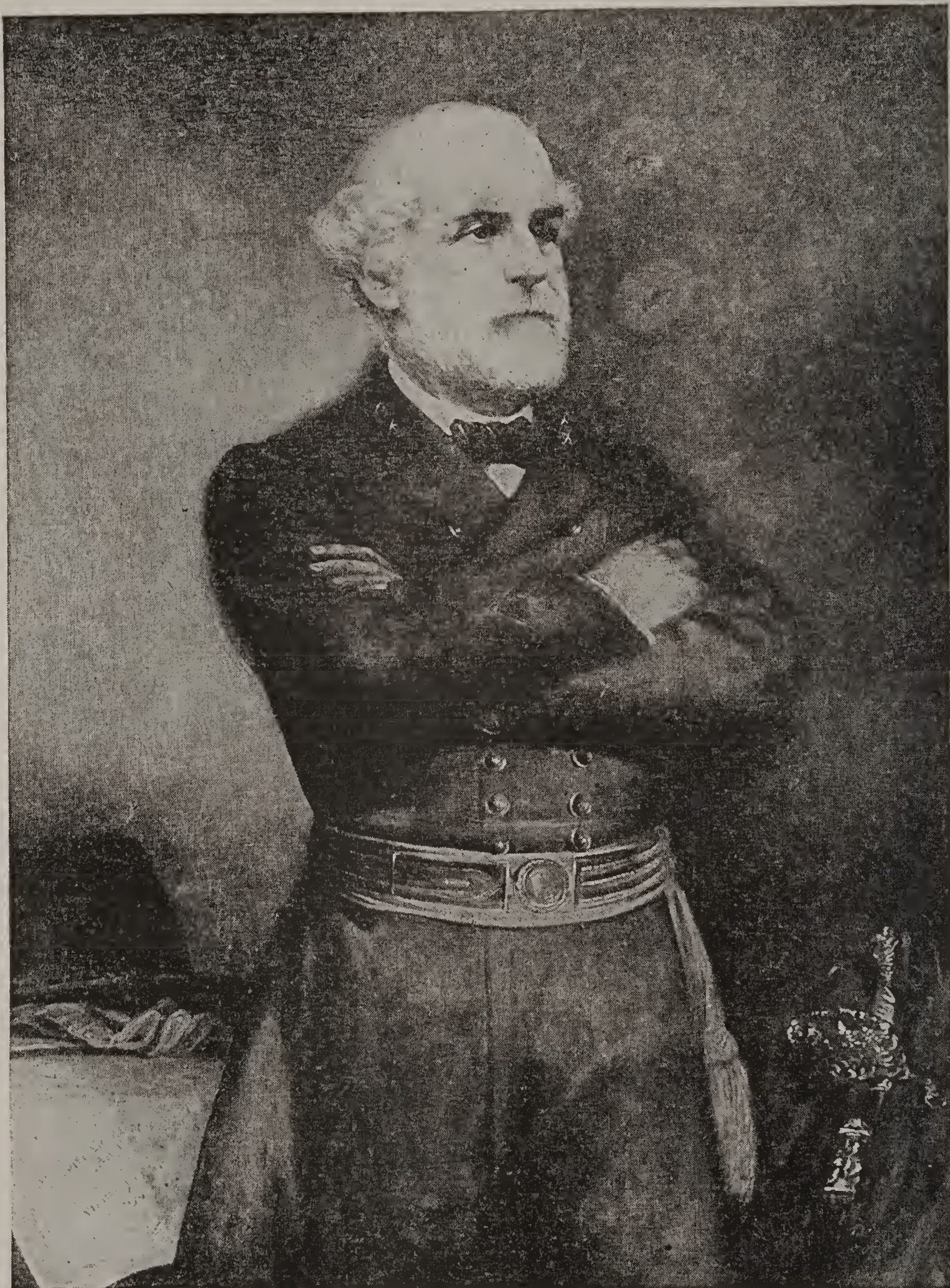
tanooga. Tennessee was won in two battles, at Lookout Mountain and on Mission Ridge, in November, and the way was opened for Sherman's march through Georgia to the sea. By this plan the Confederacy was to be divided again, and Mississippi, Alabama, Georgia, and Florida conquered. Farragut's part was to take Mobile from the Gulf.

Pitted Against General Lee

Grant was called from the West; made Lieutenant-General of the Union armies, and given the supreme task of driving back and forcing the surrender of General Robert E. Lee. For three years this Confederate leader had operated in Virginia, crossed Maryland, and penetrated into southern Penn-

*A Contest
Between
Two Giants*

The Brilliant Leader of the Southern Armies



© Detroit Publishing Co.

This portrait of Lee, which is to be seen in the Corcoran Gallery of Art in Washington, expresses admirably the character of a very intellectual man of good breeding and polished manners. It expresses no less the man who refused a high command in the Federal armies with certainty of rapid promotion and consented to lead the armies of the South in what he must have known was probably a lost cause because he believed his duty and service lay with his own state rather than with that of the national government. Although he fought a losing fight, he left a record as one of the greatest generals, as well as one of the noblest characters, in all history.

The Man of Steady Purpose



A man of quite a different type from General Lee, but equally unselfish and equally patriotic was General Grant. We can read in this fine portrait the steady purpose, the firm determination which sent the message to the Chief of Staff at Washington: "I propose to fight it out on this line if it takes all summer." Both Lee and Grant had seen service in the Mexican War and each had the greatest respect for the other's character and abilities. On the day of surrender at Appomattox, the great leaders, after shaking hands chatted over incidents of the Mexican conflict before Grant drew up the simple terms of surrender to which Lee subscribed his name.

sylvania. He had lost battles, but had always escaped with his army. He had broken the reputations of four Union commanders of the Army of the Potomac. And even after his

took all summer and all winter, and into the early months of the next spring. Sherman reached Savannah before Christmas, while Grant was still fighting Lee at Spottsylvania,

Grant's Saddle and the Story of the Teamster



This is the saddle and bridle used by Grant in his campaigns and is one of the relics of her great General which the State of Illinois preserves in the collection of the Chicago Historical Society. Grant was fond not only of the noble horse that bore him through so many battles, but of horses in general, and one of the only two occasions in which he lost his temper during the Civil War, was when he saw a teamster beating a horse over the head. Throwing himself from this saddle, he seized the teamster, who was a big coarse man, by the throat and shook him furiously.

crushing defeat at Gettysburg he had retired in good order. He found his match in "Unconditional Surrender" Grant. All the western world watched the titanic duel between the two great commanders of armies that were produced by the Civil War.

Grant moved southward in March of 1864, and soon met the enemy in the terrible Battle of The Wilderness. Criticized for his sacrifice of troops in his smashing drives, Grant replied tersely: "I'll fight it out on this line if it takes all summer." There was, indeed, no other way to conquer Lee and end the war. It

at North Anna and Cold Harbor. Slowly Lee's exhausted, ill-supplied army was pressed back. But it stood a long siege at Petersburg; escaped from that city and from Richmond, and made a last gallant stand at Appomattox Courthouse. The Confederate armies surrendered on April 9th, 1865. The war was over.

Hailed as the deliverer of the nation, General Grant went to Washington to hasten the disbanding of the army. With noble magnanimity he had refused to take Lee's sword from him, and to the Confederate

*His Attitude
Toward
Lee*

troops he had left their horses; "to ride home and use in plowing their ravaged fields." He threatened to resign if Lee was tried for treason.

His Election to the Presidency

In 1868, General Grant was elected president, the third "hero on

fined the rights of neutral nations in time of war.

East and West were in rivalry to do him honor, when he made his tour around the world in 1877. On his return home he found himself too poor to maintain his family in his enforced prominent position. The

Union Soldiers Sharing Their Rations



There were many times during the Civil War when the soldiers on both sides showed that they felt toward one another like brothers, although they were fighting on opposite sides. This picture shows Union soldiers sharing their rations with the half-starved men in gray.

horseback" to ride into the White House. The other two were Indian fighters in the War of 1812—General Jackson elected in 1828, and General Harrison in 1840. As a president, Grant's personal conduct was marked by the same characteristics as when he commanded armies. His eight years in office covered most of the difficult period of reconstruction in the South, and the retirement of the paper money issued during the war. Politics were bitter and times hard. A soldier who did not understand political methods, his confidence was sometimes betrayed. He made a real contribution to good government by securing the passage of the first civil service reform bill; and he clarified international relations in his treaty with Great Britain, in which was de-

salary of the president was, at that time, only \$25,000 a year, and he had been able to save little. Investing his capital and lending his name to a banking firm, he was robbed by dishonest partners and connected with a disgraceful failure. A fall had injured him so that he was obliged to use a crutch.

The Death of a Hero

Bankrupt, crippled, dying of cancer of the tongue, at the age of sixty-two, the last year of his life was the most heroic. A publishing company had offered him a large sum and heavy royalties for his memoirs. So he earned a fortune for his family. He dictated to his secretary for hours, every day, when it was agony for him to speak. The work

*Dictation
of His
Memoirs*

fills two large volumes, and literary critics have compared his military autobiography with Caesar's Commentaries. He fought out his last

battle on that line. The task was completed only four days before his death at Saratoga, New York, in July, 1885.

Robert E. Lee

ONE of the pleasantest discoveries, in reading American history, is that so many of our great men won nicknames that were tributes of affection and admiration from the people of their time. To *His Affectionate Nickname* Robert E. Lee, the military genius of the Confederate States, was given the title of loving respect that was used by his negro servants on the beautiful estate of Arlington, where he was "master." To the entire South he was, and is today, "Marse Robert."

His Belief in States' Rights

To understand General Lee, the noblest of all the men who took up arms against the Union in the Civil War, you must remember, that from the framing of the Constitution, the most patriotic men in the country were divided on the question whether we should have a strong federal government, or a loose confederation of sovereign states. Had they been living at the time of the Civil War, Washington and Hamilton would have been true to their principles in defending the Union. Jefferson, equally patriotic, would, in all probability, have decided that he owed fealty to his native state of Virginia. Federalist sentiment was always strongest in the North; Democratic principles finally dominated the South.

Robert E. Lee was a Virginian, born in 1807, the son of "Light-horse" Harry Lee of Revolutionary fame. Two of his ancestors were signers of the Declaration of Inde-

pendence, and political disciples of Jefferson. Other members of the family served in the *His Distinguished Ancestry* Constitutional Convention, in Congress, and in the army. The Lees were the Adamses of Virginia. Every generation furnished its distinguished men to the public service. It was in accordance with family traditions that Robert E. Lee, and his son after him, should go to the West Point Military Academy. Taking the engineering course, he was graduated with honors at twenty-three. Two years later he was married to Miss Mary Custis, a great-granddaughter of Martha Washington, and heiress of the estate of Arlington, on the Potomac River opposite the Capital.

Fortune seemed to have marked Robert E. Lee for its own. He had birth, wealth, a cultivated mind, courtly manners, a handsome face, personal happiness and, as the years went by, he added eminence in his *How Much He Had to Sacrifice* profession. As chief engineer of the army, he won distinction in the Mexican War. Then, as Superintendent of West Point Academy in the fifties, he introduced the best military methods of Europe. While there he admonished his own son, among other cadets:

"Duty is the sublimest word in the human language. You cannot do more than your duty; you should never wish to do less."

When Virginia seceded from the Union, Lee was confronted with the question whether his duty was due

to his country or to his home state. In deciding to resign his commission in the army, and offer his services to Virginia, it must not be forgotten that he sacrificed every material interest. Immediate promotion to command of the Union armies awaited him, with protection for his family and home within the fortifications of the Capital. He was a ruined man; his wife's birthplace and his children's inheritance lost, his family in exile, and Union troops encamped on beautiful Arlington. when he deliberately chose to lead what he must have known to be a hopeless cause.

Historians are agreed that, in Robert E. Lee, the federal government lost a military genius. Not until General Grant was developed by the campaigns in the West, did the northern army produce his equal. It was his superior organization, strategy and engineering which enabled him to hold Virginia in a deadly grip for three years. From April, 1861, to July, 1863, he fought a dozen historic battles, crossed Maryland, and penetrated into southern Pennsylvania. He was not always the victor—was defeated at Antietam and Gettysburg; but he always managed to retreat in good order, to save his army, and to protect the roads to Richmond. As we have said in the sketch of Grant, he successively discredited, and brought to failure the plans of four Union generals placed in command of the Army of the Potomac.

When Grant was called from the West and began his march toward "The Wilderness," in the spring of 1864, Lee still menaced the Capital. Then, for a year, his ragged and starving armies, while slowly retreating contested every vantage

ground in a half-dozen pitched battles. He stood a long siege and escaped from Petersburg and from Richmond, before he was conquered at Appomattox Courthouse.

Lee's surrender ended the war; and he need not have surrendered. By breaking up his army into bands of guerillas and retreating to the mountains, he could have prolonged the struggle indefinitely. This he refused to do. With a nobility rare in history, he accepted defeat and shared the ruin of the southern people. Foreign governments offered him wealth and the highest military offices, in return for his services. But, although impoverished and prematurely aged by the war, with Arlington confiscated and turned into a national cemetery, he set himself to the task of making his country once more a union of loyal states. He accepted the presidency of Washington and Lee University at Lexington, Virginia. Its doors had been closed for four years. Within the next five years 900 students came under his influence. By his spirit of resignation, and co-operation with the government, he cooled the hot heads and sweetened the bitter hearts of the rising generation. This was his last call to duty, his part in the work of reconstruction that finally built up a New South.

He knew that, dreadful as was the ruin, it would be repaired in time, and Blue and Gray would clasp hands above the many graves of the Civil War. But the day of restoration and reconciliation must have seemed far away indeed when, in October, 1870, "Marse Robert" fell asleep, and was laid away under the college chapel.

On the 19th of January, 1907, the

A Closer View of the Cavalry Group



Here we see the whole cavalry group. The horses seem mixed up because they are no longer in the line formation with which a cavalry charge begins. After the first formal charge, there are apt to be little side skirmishes over the battlefield and the ranks are broken up just as shown here. The ground is very rough and one of the horses has fallen.

centenary of his birth was celebrated, not only by Virginia and the South, but by the nation. All parties, and the press of every political

opinion, united to honor one of our greatest soldiers and noblest characters. His eulogy was pronounced by an Adams of Massachusetts.

David Glasgow Farragut

AT the beginning of the Civil War another eminent man was placed in the same difficult position as General Lee. This was Commodore Farragut, who had been in the United States naval service for a half-century, although he was only sixty years old. Born in Tennessee in

How 1801, the year Jefferson
Farragut was inaugurated presi-
Decided dent, he had found a wife and a permanent home in Virginia. His heart torn between love for his country and for the South, he did not hesitate a moment in his decision that his fealty belonged to the Union.

A Midshipman at the Age of Ten

A few years before his birth his father, who belonged to an old Spanish family of the Gulf Coast,

emigrated to the little backwoods settlement of Knoxville, Tennessee. The mother was of Scotch descent, which accounts for the son being christened David Glasgow. Like many other pioneers of that early day, the Farraguts had the best of social connections in the East and South. One of the friends who did not forget them was Commodore Porter of the navy. He offered the little son a berth as midshipman. As our naval academy at Annapolis was not established until 1845, cadets were then taken at an early age, and trained on shipboard, at sea. Farragut was only ten years old when he left his backwoods home, journeyed across the mountains, and was put aboard the frigate *Essex*. There with other homesick boys, he went to school every minute he was awake,

The Saint Gaudens Statue of Farragut



© Underwood & Underwood

This is the famous statue of Farragut by Augustus Saint Gaudens. It stands in Madison Square, New York City. The Admiral is represented as watching an action at sea. His frock coat is buttoned close and the skirt flies loose in the wind. In his hand he holds a double field glass. The legs are a little apart as would be natural on shipboard, and his face and attitude expresses the chief commander, conscious of his responsibility; the man to whose skill, courage and judgment has been committed the life of his men and the honor of his country. A French critic, speaking of the original design of the statue as it was exhibited in Paris, says that the whole figure expresses "the boldness of conception and initiative force peculiar to Americans."

The figure surmounts a curving wall with a seat like the outdoor marble benches of the Greeks. Each of the two arms of the seat are formed by the curved back of a fish, typical of the sea. Across the base of the statue are sea waves. The sword is symbolic of battle, while the two female figures represent Loyalty and Courage.

learning to be a sailor, a scholar and a gentleman.

Within two years he was in the thick of the naval fighting of the War of 1812. In the sea battle off Valparaiso, Chile, the young "middy" acted as powder boy; and he took a prize ship into the harbor of Santiago. Then followed forty-five

years of routine duty. He lived on training-ships, instructing classes of cadets. He tested naval guns; made long cruises at sea; superintended the work of constructing the naval station of Mare Island at San Francisco, and helped plan the equipment and the course of instruction of the new naval academy.

Penalty of a Neglected Navy

In all his long service there had, with the exception of the introduction of steam, been very little improvement in naval construction. American merchant ships, both sail and steam, were on every ocean, trading in every port of the world, but because of our long peace and our sense of security in the protection of two wide oceans, the govern-

*And Then
Came the
Great War* ment had grown careless. In 1861 our navy had dwindled to ninety vessels of all classes. Only forty of these were steamships. Many were in foreign ports at the time of the firing on Fort Sumter; and as there were no ocean cables to call them home quickly, it took weeks to reach them by mail. Others were undergoing repairs; some were condemned as unseaworthy, or had to be equipped with modern guns and supplies. A total of only thirteen vessels were ready for instant use.

Naval commanders were dismayed by the task before them, with the old-fashioned, insignificant fleet at their service. The coast, from Virginia to Texas, had to be blockaded, to cut off the foreign trade of the South. Seaports and forts had to be captured, and the great bays—especially the Chesapeake—guarded; commerce protected; blockade runners brought in as prizes, or sunk; and the cruisers that the Confederacy was certain to purchase abroad, chased and destroyed.

Merchant steamers were sent out to bring naval vessels home; others were built as rapidly as possible, and ships in the merchant marine were purchased and refitted. Within a few months we had four hundred naval vessels, and John Ericsson was

building the iron-clad "Monitor" which, with the Confederate "Merimac," was to revolutionize naval construction. Admiral Farragut, however, fought his historic battles with wooden ships.

The war was only nine months old, and Grant was in western Tennessee, when Farragut was sent to clear the lower Mississippi of Con-

*The Task
Set Before
Him* federate forts and gunboats, and captured New Orleans. He was given a fleet of forty-eight vessels mounted with two hundred guns, the largest ever fitted out by the government up to that time. But not one of his ships was an iron-clad; quite half of them were sailing vessels, almost impossible to manœuvre in the narrow, winding channels of the river where there was seldom enough wind to fill the sails; and even the steamers had been built for sea service.

A Master of Strategy and Daring

Modern naval battles,—those of Dewey at Manila, Togo in the Japan Sea, and the engagements of the great European war which began in 1914, cannot be properly compared with the feats of Farragut of more than a half-century before, for all the conditions of modern naval construction and gunnery are different. His fleet and weapons were very little better than those of Nelson in the Napoleonic wars of fifty years before; the difficulties that he overcame were much greater, and his operations extended over a longer period of time. In daring he matched Paul Jones of Revolutionary fame, while as a master of strategy he was the equal of Grant or Lee on land.

New Orleans was well defended. The Eads jetties had not yet been built to open and deepen the South

The Brave Man with the Tender Heart



© Horace K. Turner & Company, Boston

This is the great naval commander after fifty years in the service of his country. Like England's hero, Nelson, he began his naval career as a boy. When only twelve he took a prizeship in the War of 1812, into Santiago, Chile, and served as powder-boy in the battle of Valparaiso.

Utterly fearless as to his personal safety, and of incredible daring in an attack, he had, like other brave men, a very tender heart. After the battle of Mobile Bay when the dead were laid out on the deck on the flag ship, he could not speak for weeping.

Farragut and the Pilot's Foot at Mobile Bay



Here is how the painter, W. H. Overand, tells us about the battle of Mobile Bay. The original of the painting is in the Wadsworth Athenaeum at Hartford. The general character of the action is well shown, but it is not absolutely accurate as to details. Farragut stood in the main rigging as here shown, but higher up near the platform surrounding the head of the lower mast, because from this high position he could get a wide view of all that was going on. This platform is called the "top," and, as you can see by turning to the word in your unabridged dictionary, has a hole in it called the "lubber's hole." Farragut standing in the rigging, reached his arm through the lubber's hole and took hold of the foot of the pilot who was standing on the "top." Whenever he wanted to give an order, he squeezed the pilot's foot as a signal. The pilot bent his ear down to the lubber's hole, got the order and then turning, shouted it to the helmsman. It was only by such an arrangement that the voice of the commander away up in the rigging could be heard above the noise of the battle.

Pass. The narrow channel was so choked with mud that vessels were always in danger of running aground. And as soon as the fleet reached deep water it found the river crossed by great chain cables fastened to anchored barges. Above the cables, and seventy-five miles below the city, the Mississippi was flanked by two forts mounted with naval guns. The bed of the channel was sown with mines, and above the forts waited a flotilla of Confederate gunboats.

Farragut boldly entered the river, and worked his way through shallow water up to the cables. For a week he bombarded the forts, while they tried to destroy his fleet. Cut-

ting the cables and towing away the barges, he plowed over the mines and ran past the forts, under dreadful fire. Then he engaged the flotilla of gunboats, sank them and captured New Orleans. General Butler, waiting on Ship Island, with an army of 15,000 men, marched in and occupied the city. The task was completed in three months' time, with the loss of one ship and thirty-seven men.

Why He Was Called "Old Salamander"

For the next sixteen months, while Grant was moving southward and laying siege to Vicksburg, Farragut worked his way up stream, so continuously under fire from shore for-

tifications and gunboats, and so invariably the victor, that he won the nickname of "Old Salamander." And then, the Mississippi conquered, he descended to the Gulf. In 1864, as a part of Sherman's campaign across Georgia to Savannah, he fought the battle of Mobile—one of the most brilliant victories in naval history. The poet Holmes called him:

*"The Viking of the River Fight,
The conqueror of the Bay."*

As was the case with General Lee, the war wrecked his health. He was retired soon afterward with the rank of Admiral, which was created to reward his services and to give recognition to his genius as the greatest of American naval heroes. A statue of him was erected in Farragut Square, Washington; and New York City has another, modeled by Saint Gaudens, the sculptor of the Lincoln statue in Lincoln Park, Chicago.

In character we are proud to find in Admiral Farragut the finest qualities of Lord Nelson, England's naval hero of the battles of Copenhagen, the Nile and Trafalgar. Beginning his services at the age of ten, as Nelson began his at thirteen, he had done every kind of work in seamanship, gunnery and naval construction. At any moment he could have taken the place, and done the work, of any man on his fleet.

*Compared to
Lord
Nelson*

He Wept at Sight of the Dead

Honest, upright, religious, a strict disciplinarian, but of quick sympathies, he commanded respect and instant obedience, but he also inspired enthusiasm and won the warmest affection. As tender-hearted as Nelson, he wept like a child when the dead were laid out on deck, after the battle of Mobile.

*"The bravest are the tenderest,
The loving are the daring."*

Sheridan's Ride

*Up from the South at break of day
Bringing to Winchester fresh dismay,
The affrighted air with a shudder bore,
Like a herald in haste, to the chieftain's door,
The terrible grumble and rumble, and roar,
Telling the battle was on once more—
And Sheridan twenty miles away.
And wider still those billows of war
Thundered along the horizon's bar;
And louder yet into Winchester rolled
The roar of that red sea uncontrolled,
Making the blood of the listener cold,
As he thought of the stake in that fiery fray—
And Sheridan twenty miles away.*

*But there is a road from Winchester town,
A good, broad highway leading down;
And there, through the flush of the morning light,
A steed as black as the steeds of night
Was seen to pass as with eagle flight;*

* * * *

*Still spring from those swift hoofs, thundering South,
The dust, like smoke from the cannon's mouth,
Or the trail of a comet, sweeping faster and faster,
Forboding to traitors the doom of disaster.
The heart of the steed and the heart of the master,
Were beating like prisoners assaulting their walls,
Impatient to be where the battle field calls:
Every nerve of the charger was strained to full play,
With Sheridan only ten miles away.*

*Under his spurning feet the road
Like an arrowy Alpine river flowed,
And the landscape sped away behind
Like an ocean flying before the wind,
And the steed, like a bark fed with furnace fire,
Swept on, with his wild eye full of fire.
But lo! He is nearing his heart's desire:
He is snuffing the smoke of the roaring fray,
With Sheridan only five miles away.*

*The first that the general saw were the groups
Of stragglers, and then the retreating troops.
What was done—what to do? A glance told him both.
Then, striking his spurs, with a terrible oath
He dashed down the line, 'mid a storm of huzzas,
And the wave of retreat checked its course there, because
The sight of the master compelled it to pause.
With foam and with dust the black charger was gray;
By the flash of his eye and the red nostrils' play,
He seemed to the whole great army to say:
"I have brought you Sheridan all the way
From Winchester down to save the day."*

*Hurrah! hurrah for Sheridan!
Hurrah! Hurrah for horse and man!
And when their statues are placed on high,
Under the dome of the Union sky,
The American soldiers' Temple of Fame,
There, with the glorious general's name,
Be it said, in letters both bold and bright:
"Here is the steed that saved the day,
By carrying Sheridan into the fight,
From Winchester, twenty miles away!"*

T. BUCHANAN READ

The People of the United States and Their Welfare

FROM the beginning of its history in the thirteen English colonies, our country has had a mixed population. English Puritans, Quakers and Cavaliers; Scotch, Scotch-Irish and Irish Catholics; Welsh, Dutch, Belgians, Swedes, Germans, and French Huguenots were all in America, in varying numbers, before 1700.

They differed widely in language, manners, customs and religious beliefs, but within the short period of a century and a half they had become so far united in feeling and interests that they formed a new nation, with a clear and original political ideal.

We are apt to think that this is a new thing in history. It is not.

The greatest of all the ancient empires were peopled by mixed na-

tionalties and even races. Venice and Genoa, in Columbus' day, had as many varieties of foreigners as London, New York and Chicago have to-day. The people of England are a mixture of ancient Britons and Celts with Romans, Anglo-Saxons, Norse, Danes and Norman French. Several centuries have been needed to blend all these various elements into English men. So "Americans" have become a distinct people, quite unlike any people of the countries of their ancestry. And our characteristics are probably not fixed, for new nationalities are still coming and being absorbed into our national life.

Within the half century from 1790 to 1840, our country grew in population from three to seventeen million. Large fami-



All for the Children

As you are approaching the beautiful pillared temple shown in the next picture, you would see from the sculptured groups on either side of the main entrance that it had something to do with children, and then when you notice they are all happily engaged in learning about things, you would suspect the whole truth—that it is all devoted to the work of the schools of the state. This group of little people is in bronze and they are all seated around a capital of one of the Egyptian patterns as you can see by the locust leaves. Above the pillar stands a circle of solemn owls signifying wisdom.

try grew in population from three to seventeen million. Large fami-

A Great Temple of Education



One of the very greatest things that the United States have done both individually and in their united form as one country, has been to develop the public school system. And the great empire state, New York, has lead them all in the beautiful building shown here, which is the center of all the education activities conducted by the state. This is the State Education Building at Albany. It is the headquarters of the State Department of Visual Instruction and all the other educational activities maintained by the state. It is built in the style of a Greek temple with its magnificent rows of columns.

lies were the rule in pioneer days, but there was also a steady stream of newcomers, chiefly from England, Ireland and Germany. Entering through Boston, New York, and Philadelphia, they were soon well distributed among the older colonial population; and being of the same national stocks as the people already here, they very quickly became good and useful citizens. In the frontier village of New Salem, Illinois, where Lincoln studied law in the thirties, there was a Scotch schoolmaster, a French doctor, a German cooper and miller, and an Irish "gentleman" who loaned him copies of Burns and Shakespeare. This was a typical pioneer settlement.

Famine in Ireland in 1846, and

revolution in several of the states of Germany, caused still larger waves of migration from those countries to break upon our shores. Between 1840 and 1860 the population was almost doubled. In the third quarter of the nineteenth century, German and Irish immigrants did our hardest work. They dug the canals, graded the early railroads, built the levees of the Mississippi, and constructed our first great bridges. They manned the multiplying factories, cleared the farming lands of new western states, worked in all the skilled trades, and opened new shops and stores in towns and cities. They built churches, appeared in the learned professions and in politics, and formed entire regiments to

*The
Waves of
Immigration*

fight for the Union in the war between the States.

What Foreign Peoples Bring Us

Then, for a score of years after 1870, most of the new arrivals were from Norway, Sweden and Holland. These sturdy farmers of North Europe poured into the forest and lake country of Michigan, Wisconsin and Minnesota, and spread westward across the prairies of the Northwest, multiplying our corn and wheat fields, orchards, gardens, and pastures for dairy cattle. Except for the Negroes who were brought in for slaves, a few Polish, Bohemian and Jewish exiles in the larger cities, and the Chinese who swarmed into California in gold-fever days, practically all our immigrants, from 1607 to 1890, were from the enlightened countries of Northern Europe. Vigorous, venturesome and of keen intelligence, they were marked by the pioneer spirit, by nervous energy and a many-sided genius.

Since that date, however, hordes of strange peoples have poured in upon us from Italy, and from the backward countries of Southeastern Europe—the many nationalities of Austria-Hungary and the Balkan States; Poles, Greeks, Russian Jews, and even Armenians and Syrians from Asia Minor. These people are mostly illiterate and unskilled, and entirely alien to our language, customs, and political institutions; but all are eager to improve their worth and fortunes, and each has some special virtue—patience, sympathy, imagination or reverence for Art, to modify our sterner qualities, and to give color and softness to our national life. Willing to do our hardest work, we find the strong

peasantry of country districts in the coal and iron mines, the stone quarries, steel mills, packing houses and railroad camps. The physically weaker, but mentally more alert, people from the crowded slums of foreign cities, find work for their nimble fingers in clothing, box and canning factories. We see them, too, peddling fruits and vegetables from wagons and push carts, and shining shoes. Those who prosper very soon own fruit stands, pawn shops, tailor shops, and barber shops and second-hand clothing stores.

Immigrants Who Are Barred Out

The conditions of their work tend to keep these people isolated in racial groups, in mining and factory towns, and in the poor quarters of the large cities. But the children are quickly gathered into the public schools, and many of the second generation become a part of the general population. This process is going on all the time. But while our country was founded as an asylum for the poor and oppressed of all lands, we admit no alien who would endanger our free institutions or who would be liable to become a public charge. This excludes the insane, the feeble-minded, those with incurable or contagious diseases, the man with a criminal record, the pauper family, and the children and old people without responsible guardians. Chinese coolies, or common laborers, who work so cheap that they lower the wages and the standard of living of American workmen, are not allowed to come in, and, for the same reason, we have an agreement with the government of Japan not to permit the migration of Japanese coolies to this country.

From 1900 to 1910 a million new

people entered the United States every year. Then the number began to decline, and during the great European War, which began in 1914, more aliens left our country, to serve in various foreign armies, than came into it. Until an immigrant becomes a naturalized citizen of the United States, you know, he owes allegiance to his native land.

In 1915 the United States had a population estimated at one hundred million. At least one-sixth of this number were foreign born, and fully one-half were of recent foreign ancestry. Twenty-six million immigrants had entered the country since 1790. Not more than one-tenth of our people of today are descended from the patriots who won our liberties in the Revolutionary War. An equal number of our citizens are descended from the negroes who, a half century ago, were held in slavery. The native Indians who decreased in the two centuries of Indian wars, are now increasing slowly, and number over a quarter of a million.

Making One People of Many

While there have been such mixed populations in other historic times and places, never before were so many and such various peoples so quickly blended into one nation. A

large part of this result is due to our republican institutions—to our political equality, religious tolerance, lack of class distinctions which has permitted the freest social intercourse, and universal, free education in a common language. But we must

One of the Doctors on Guard at the Ports



You can see by the badge on his cap that this man with the fine, strong face is working for Uncle Sam; and so, of course, for all the rest of us. He is a doctor by profession and is one of the medical inspectors at the port of New York who sees to the enforcement of the quarantine and laws.

not forget that, never before in the history of the world, were travel, trade and communication so rapid, easy and cheap as in this age of the steamboat, railroad, telegraph and postal service. For all practical purposes our big country is smaller than it was a century ago. The journey from

New York to San Francisco can now be made with greater ease and comfort and at less expenditure of money and time, than the trip from Boston to Philadelphia in Revolutionary days.

Promoting the General Welfare

And then this is an age in which all progressive governments have a function of social service toward their citizens. In old times there was a kind hearted king of France who wished that every family in his dominion had a fat chicken for their Sunday dinner. But it did not occur to him that he could do anything toward making his people more prosperous. The wise and patriotic men who founded our gov-

*The Nation's
Duty to Its
Citizens*

THE GENERAL WELFARE
Waiting for Mother at Quarantine



These immigrant children, two little brothers and pretty baby sister, are waiting, and watching the family baggage at quarantine, while their mother is being examined.

The Woman Doctor-Inspector and the Woman Immigrant



This is the mother of the three little children that we saw in the main room at the immigrant station. The doctor-inspector is examining the action of the heart and lungs with the stethoscope.

The Doctor-Inspector Examining the Boy's Eyes



Here one of the doctor-inspectors is examining a boy's eyes. By such an examination the inspector can not only tell if there is any disease of the eyes but the condition of the eyes is also an indication as to serious diseases of the rest of the body. You notice how the immigrant back of the boy is smiling. He has probably made some joking remark to reassure the little fellow who seems to be somewhat apprehensive as to what is going to be done to him.

Using the Stethoscope on an Immigrant Boy



Here you see a medical inspector in the port of New York listening to the action of the heart and lungs of an immigrant lad who has just arrived. He is such a fine, sturdy-looking youngster that probably the doctor's report will be favorable and the boy will come to be a useful American citizen.

The First United States Stage Entering El Paso



Painted by Edwin J. Holslag

© Edwin J. Holslag Co.

Before the days of railroads in the Far West, mail and passengers were carried from place to place in stage coaches drawn by several teams of mules or horses. This picture shows the first United States stage entering El Paso. You notice that the men on the driver's box wear tall pointed hats with broad rims, like the Mexicans, because this is a hot climate and hats of this kind are the most comfortable. El Paso, you know, is the northwestern gateway into Mexico. The population is quite mixed, including many Mexicans, Indians, and half-breeds. Five great railway lines now center here.

ernment were among the first in the world to consider it the duty of rulers to do everything possible to improve the general standard of living and the well-being of all the people. In the first paragraph of the Constitution they gave, as one of the reasons for forming a Union of the States, the purpose *to promote the general welfare*.

The first thing done under this power, was to extend and perfect the postal service. President Washington had a small cabinet of only five members. These were secretaries of State, the Treasury, War, and the Navy. The fifth member was the Postmaster-General. Nothing was thought to be of more importance than cheap and easy communication between the people of every part of the country. This, it was wisely foreseen, would encourage education, facilitate business, and create common interests that would serve to knit the people closer together.

Beginnings of the Postal System

This idea was not new. A colonial postal system, of a sort, was in operation very early. In every seaport, bags of mail were entrusted to ship captains, who, for stated fees, delivered them to banks or business houses in London. Every business man and planter in the colonies had his London agent. Neither the colonial nor the home government was in any way responsible for the safe transmission of mails. Important letters were sent by private messenger. The common people did not write or receive letters at all, and so lost all trace of relatives and friends in the Old World, and of those in other colonies. It was not until 1753 that Benjamin Franklin undertook to organize a system of post offices and mail routes for the American Colonies. By boat and carriage and on horseback he travelled from Boston to Charleston. He

*Sending
Letters in
the Old Days*

One Way of Preventing Floods



This shows one of the ways by which the Government reduces the number of floods in the Mississippi. The river is constantly carrying down branches of trees and twigs and even whole trees that have fallen into it from its banks. This material if allowed to accumulate in the bottom of the river, checks the flow of water and so increases floods. Accordingly, frame structures like that shown here were built out into the streams which catch this material and so permit it to be removed.

established seventy-five central post offices, fixed proper rates and appointed postmasters and mail carriers.

The Revolutionary War interrupted this work. In 1790 there were still only seventy-five post offices to serve the needs of three million people who were hungry for news of their friends, and of the large affairs of their new republic and of the world. But by 1800 the President and his Postmaster-General and Congress, working together, had increased the number to nine hundred. There were twenty-three hundred post offices in the country when Lincoln was born in 1809. Did you fully realize what this wonderful service of our government means to us today, before you had read our story, "The Magical Powers of a Postage Stamp"?

Improvements of the Waterways

The next general welfare work undertaken was to make travel and trade safer. Since the harbors and navigable rivers were necessary to national defense, the federal government assumed all rights over them and charged itself with their improvement. It deepened channels, built jetties and breakwaters and erected lighthouses. Although known to the ancient empires around the Mediterranean Sea, these safeguards were new in the modern world. In 1800 there were only twenty-five lighthouses around the dangerous coasts of the British Isles. The American Colonies, in 1790, had nothing more than beacon lights on the points of land and hilltops overlooking harbors. That is how Beacon Hill, Boston, got its name.

The United States government

THE GENERAL WELFARE

The Old Erie Canal Today



The Erie Canal which had so much to do with the development of our country, is still in existence and performing invaluable service in the cheap carriage of freight. All the canals in New York state have now been united into one system called the State Barge Canal, and the Erie is part of this system. The illustration shows one end of what is known as the crescent dam on the Erie during the spring flood. You see the dam practically keeps the water back so that there will be plenty for the operation of the canal, but in times of flood the water rises until it comes to these openings in the dam and then it is allowed to pass through; otherwise the adjoining country would be flooded.

soon began the erection of low towers, on enclosed bays and straits to guide ships into harbors. Then it built higher and higher ones, on rocks and shoals some distance out from the mainland.

The Building of the Lighthouses

With the invention of the Argand lamp in France, Army and Navy engineers were set to work to solve the problems of building lighthouses two hundred feet high, and strong enough to withstand the force of waves and tides and storm winds. Lamps and reflectors were enlarged and improved until warning rays could be sent to ships sixteen miles out at sea.

The number of shipwrecks near our coasts were reduced year after

year. But when a vessel did go aground there was still loss of life. So, in 1871, the life saving service was established. A total of three hundred stations have now been strung along our ten thousand miles of ocean and lake shores, one for every thirty-three miles. They are all connected by telephone and telegraph, and coast guards patrol every mile, night and day. Provided with signals and with every means for reaching ships in distress, they save more than a thousand people from shipwreck every year.

Federal Aid for Schools

Education is one of the things that is thought by most people to

have been left wholly to the States. It is true that the Federal Constitution made no specific provision for education. But under that power "to promote the general welfare," it has encouraged education, made large contributions to it and influenced its character. It established and supports the military and naval academies. And when a public domain was created in the Northwest Territory, the government set aside one section or 640 acres of land, out of every township of sixteen sections, as an endowment for a public school. Two entire townships in each of the states of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin were reserved for founding a state university.

This was the first time in history that public lands were donated to education, and it enormously stimulated the establishment of free public schools in old states and new. As the state universities of the West were built, the government made further donations of public lands. By 1889 its gifts to higher education amounted to twenty thousand square miles of land, worth five million dollars. Only with this generous aid could the universities of the middle and far western states have been so rapidly built up to rank with the old endowed universities of the East. And they set new standards. Supported directly by state taxes they were obliged to respond to the practical needs of the people. In order to hold their own in competition the colleges and universities of the East have had to change their methods and broaden their fields of work.

The government has, besides, established colleges of agriculture, mining and mechanical engineering

in western territories, in advance of their admission as states. It has built and maintained schools on the Indian reservations, and Carlisle Indian College. Through the Freedman's Bureau it began the work of educating the Negroes, in reconstruction days in the South. It established the public school system of Cuba, Porto Rico and the Philippine Islands, and supports free schools for the children of employes in the Panama Canal Zone. Some day there will be a National University in Washington. Our first president recommended that it be built, in his message to Congress in 1796. While nothing has been done as yet, the project has not been forgotten. It is intended that this should be a post-graduate institution, where eminent scholars may have the free use of the national museums, libraries, and scientific departments of the government.

Many kinds of welfare work, on a scale undreamed of by other equally progressive countries, have been possible in the United States because of the vast extent of our public domain. The purchase of Louisiana, and of territory owned by Spain, Mexico and Russia, gave to the Federal government, Alaska and all the land west of the Mississippi. Until settled and developed, this wilderness had no value. To encourage emigration westward, public lands have been sold to actual settlers for nominal prices, and the purchase money used for local improvements.

Land Grants to Railroads

By 1830 there were fifteen thousand miles of roads and canals in use in the Middle West that were built with federal aid. Then land

Indian Girls Learning to Sew



This is one of the rooms in the famous Indian School at Carlisle, Pa., where Uncle Sam teaches his Indian wards how to become good and useful citizens. The girls you see here are all Indians and they are learning plain sewing.

grants were made to early railroads. For quite forty years every railroad that opened up a new region was a costly experiment. Without the help of the government the development of rapid transportation and the settlement of the Far West must long have been delayed. Before 1860 Congress had given to railroad companies an area of land larger than the original thirteen states. The largest grants of all were made to the Union and Central Pacific roads which connected San Francisco with the Missouri River at Omaha. Beside a cash bonus of \$55,000,000, these roads were given every other section of land in a strip twenty miles wide on both sides of their nineteen hundred miles of track.

Much of this mountain and desert land had no value, but the mineral and timber tracts, fertile valleys and town sites have repaid the cost of the first transcontinental railroad many times over. This enormous grant was the last to be made to a railroad corporation. By 1870 pop-

ulation was increasing so rapidly that the people demanded that all the remaining public lands should be allotted to actual settlers, and as mining and timber claims.

Giving Homes to the People

The first homestead act was passed by Congress in 1862. This provided that any head of a family, or citizen over twenty-one years of age, could secure one hundred and sixty acres of land for a home. All he had to do was to file a claim with the government, live on the place for five years, pay fees amounting to a dollar and a quarter an acre, and make certain improvements in buildings, fences and the planting of crops.

*Earning One
of Uncle
Sam's Farms*

Under this law one hundred and three thousand "homesteaders" settled millions of acres of wild forest and prairie by 1870. Then western railroads opened their land grants to homesteaders at about twice the price of government land. As In-

Building the Railroad and Fighting Indians



This shows one of the ways in which Uncle Sam helped to build the Union Pacific Railroad. He not only helped the roads by land grants, but supplied soldiers who helped build the railroad, and also fought off the Indians as you see them doing here. The Indians were determined to rid their country of these men who were spoiling their hunting grounds and killing the buffalo for food. Most of the men who helped with this work were soldiers who had fought in the Civil War, and many whole companies together with their commanders went West for this purpose.

dian tribes diminished in numbers, their reservations in well settled states were exchanged for other lands where game was more plentiful. These, too, were opened to settlement as fast as they were acquired.

The Great Irrigation Works

By 1890 most of the good public lands suitable for farming had been taken up. But on the dry plains and the mountain plateaus of the Far West, there were still one hundred million acres of dry land that needed only water to make them fertile. In the geography article on the Rocky Mountain States, we tell

*Making the
Desert Bring
Forth*

you how the government is reclaiming large tracts of this dry land by constructing great dams, tunnels, aqueducts over canyons, and networks of canals in irrigation works. The first project was not under way until 1902, but already two million acres of desert have been turned into green orchards, gardens, alfalfa and grain fields. In time there will be country homes here for ten million people. A charge of twenty-five dollars an acre is made for these lands, to return the cost of reclamation to the government. Settlers, however, are allowed ten years' time to complete the payments for their homesteads and for their share in irrigation works which farming

communities will own and control when these payments are completed.

Other Great Public Enterprises

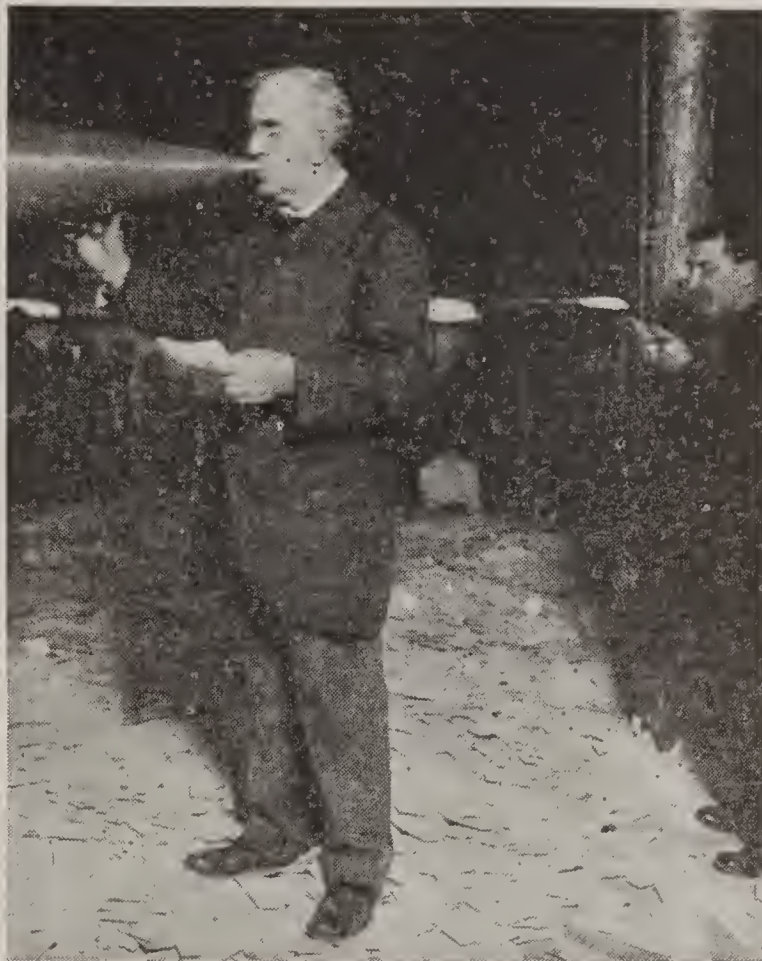
In the same regions the government is saving the forests on the mountain slopes and other public lands. We have a special story about that in Pictured Knowledge. We also tell you of the many ways in which the United States Agricultural Department helps the farmer in his business. And in "The Harvest of the Sea" we explain the nationwide systematic work of restocking the sea, rivers and lakes with food fishes. All this practical service is given freely, so the people can have more and better food, clothing, houses and furniture at less cost, and so the United States can support a greater number of people in comfort. To make trade easier and cheaper between the Atlantic and Pacific coasts the government dug the Panama Canal at a cost of hundreds of millions of dollars. It has laid ocean cables to our distant

island possessions, strung telegraph wires all over Alaska, opened mail routes to the Arctic Ocean, and the building of the Central Alaska railroad means the opening up of the copper and coal mines and the good farming lands of the Yukon Valley and their connection with markets.

Our country has a care, too, for things of interest and beauty, as well as the useful. It has reserved vast tracts of wild wonders in the national parks for public play grounds, and there it protects the native wild animals, birds and plants that are disappearing elsewhere. It has set aside natural monuments, historic battle-grounds, and prehistoric remains of the cliff and mound builders; and it has established winter refuges on islands along

the Gulf Coast for our wild song birds. And our government secured the co-operation of Great Britain and Japan in the work of protecting the fur seal in their summer rookeries on Pribiloff Islands. Every summer swift revenue cutters patrol

Announcing the Highest Bidder



This is a scene at a sale of government land. One of the government officers is calling out the names of those to whom land has been sold because they are the highest bidders. He is speaking through a megaphone because there is a very large crowd present—the people who have sent in their bids. These bids must be in writing and a large number of them are sent in by mail as you can see by the envelopes all over the floor.

When the government has decided to open up lands for sale they make a list of them with their exact location and a brief description of the character of each piece of land. For instance, one piece is described as "smooth pasture land all tillable." Another, "rolling, rocky timber land," etc. Opposite the description of each piece is given the lowest price that will be accepted. Then the land is sold to the highest bidder. All bids must be in writing and accompanied by a certified check for the amount of the bid. All checks lower than the highest bid are returned.

Behring Sea to stop the illegal hunting that threatened to exterminate these harmless fur-bearing animals.

Protection Against Disease

And do you know about the ceaseless vigilance of our government in protecting public health? The states and cities do all the local work in this field, but the authority of the United States extends three miles out at sea, all around our coasts. Ships used to come and go between our own and foreign seaports much as they pleased. They often brought in dreadful contagious diseases, and spread epidemics of smallpox and yellow fever. To close our harbors to ships from infected tropic ports interfered seriously with travel and

A Homestead in the Timber



Here is a picturesque little place on the timber lands where the Government gives to those who comply with the conditions. These houses, unlike that of the woman homesteader of the prairie, were built of logs because there is plenty of material for such houses here, while the Dakota plains are treeless. You see the people here have made a good many improvements and, besides their picturesque little home, have a poultry yard and an additional building in the rear where they evidently do their washing, as you can see the clothes hanging on the line.

trade; and this was unfair to vessels that were free from disease. So the government undertook to have health officers meet and inspect all incoming ships. No vessel is permitted to land goods, passengers or crews until it has been given a bill of health. Immigrants are landed first on Ellis Island, New York Harbor, and at similar receiving stations in other ports of entry; and the sick are isolated in hospitals until they are well again.

Rats are known to spread the bubonic plague, a dreadful contagious disease of Oriental countries, so the rodents are hunted out of docks, piers and warehouses. And they are prevented from coming ashore from ships by

A Woman Homesteader's Home



Of course, a great many more men than women avail themselves of the homestead law to secure a farm from Uncle Sam. This picture shows the house a woman homesteader had built when she took up a piece of land in North Dakota. In spite of the fact that it is a lonesome place, she looks quite comfortable and content and is looking forward to the time when she will have a fine piece of land that is all her own, and besides she has women neighbors—although a good many miles away—who, like herself, have taken up claims.

When the Desert Gets a Drink



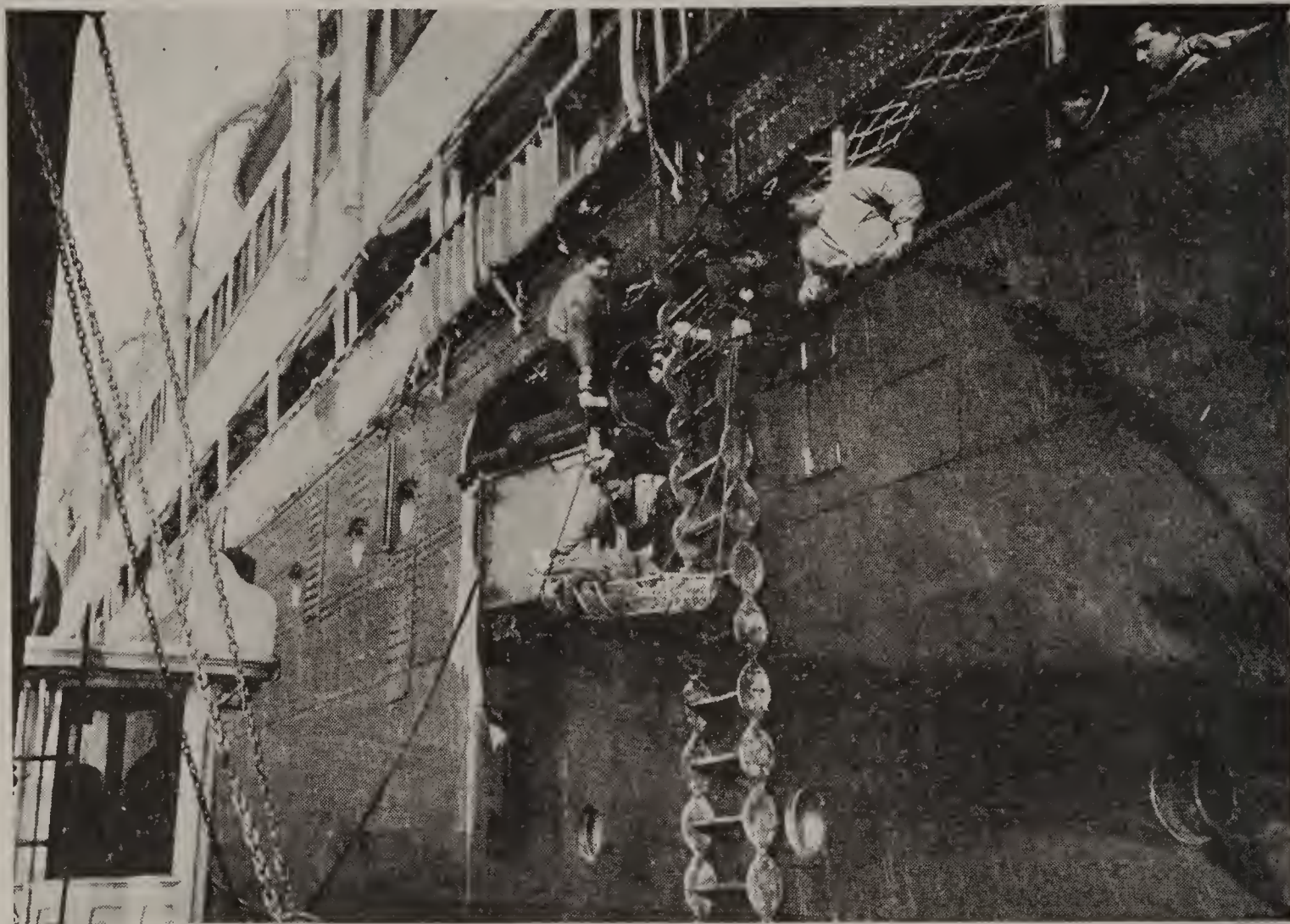
The very same mountains you see, the very same wide plains in both pictures—but what a difference. The first picture is a scene in the desert, for only sage brush and the toughest of desert grasses can get a foothold here and there. But the soil, nevertheless is very rich, and soon as irrigation has been applied, presto! up spring the fields of golden grain. Such heads of wheat! Notice how they bend down the straw by their weight. To the right across the field there is a big stack of wheat and not far away, no doubt, is a farm house and cattle where they have lots of good things to eat, and happy little children play in the sunshine.

stringing big, round, steel plates on the cables which tie vessels to their docks. The government cleaned up Havana, after the Spanish-American War, and stopped the epidemics of yellow, typhoid and typhus fevers which annually ravaged that semi-tropic city. It cleaned Panama and Colon, and made war on the malaria mosquito which infested the Canal Zone. Thus it gave to our states, cities, towns and farming communities valuable object lessons on the principles of sanitation. The entire country has learned the necessity for cleanliness, scien-

tific sewage systems and pure drinking water; and the dangers to public health of dirt, cesspools, rats, flies and mosquitoes.

Government inspectors enforce sanitary laws in packing houses, bakeries, creameries, fruit, fish and vegetable canning factories; sugar, starch, flour and cereal mills—every kind of food manufactory that engages in interstate commerce. Federal pure food laws provide penalties against impurities and adulterations in food, and against the use of harmful preservatives and coloring matter. Local health authorities fol-

Lowering a Typhoid Sufferer from an Ocean Liner



This is a scene in New York harbor where an immigrant on one of the big ocean liners which has just arrived, is suffering from typhoid fever. The passenger will be taken to a public hospital and given attention until he is able to be about.

low this example and inspect dairy cows, milk, food markets and cold storage warehouses. And the lesson has been impressed upon housekeepers to keep their cellars, kitchens and refrigerators clean, to keep garbage cans covered and to exterminate the house fly.

Co-operation with Cities and States

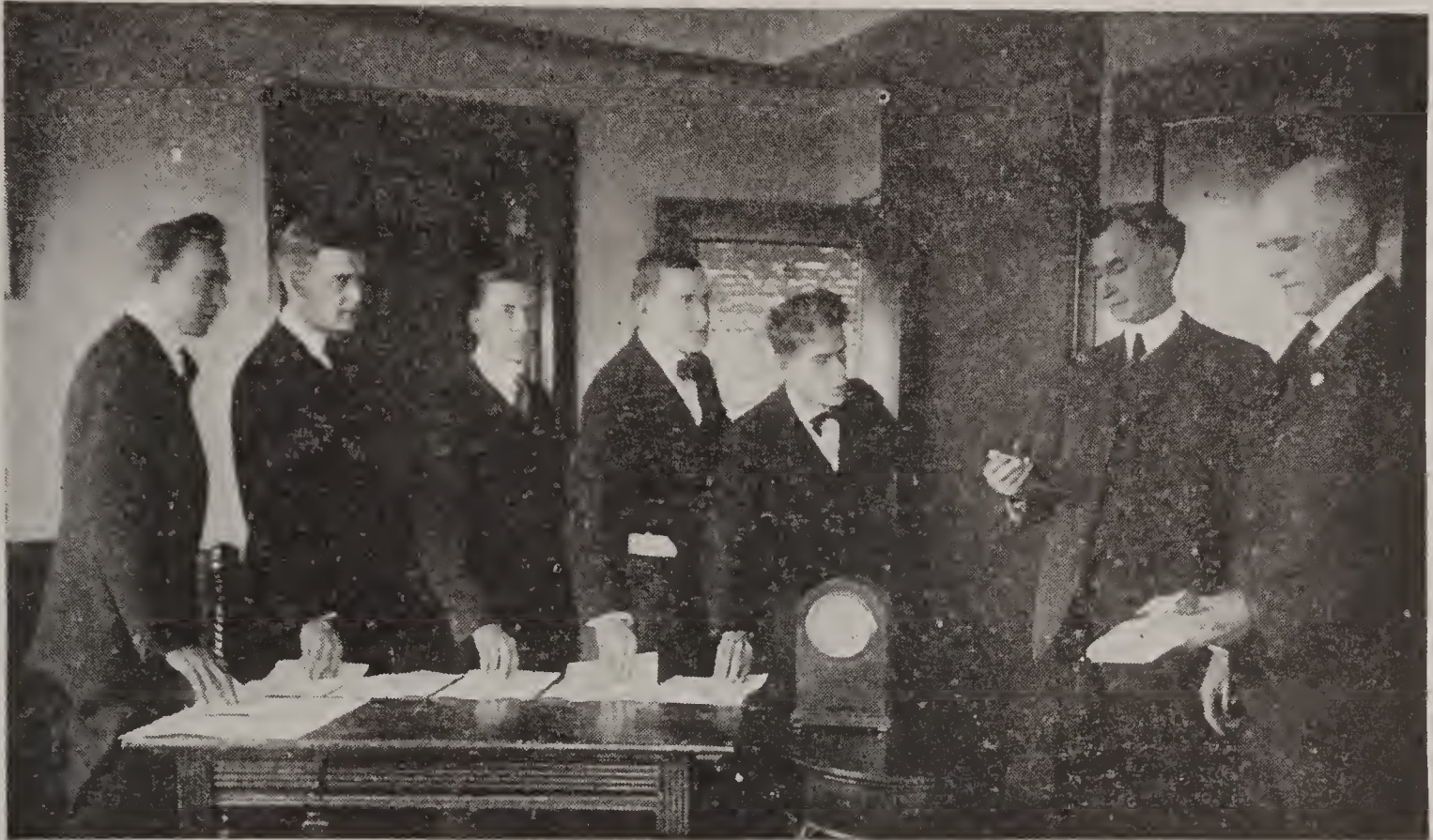
Much of the welfare work of our government is educative. It is surprising to discover in how many ways, without interference with individual liberty or with state's rights, federal activities enter into the every day life of the people. It investigates everything that affects the general welfare, makes reports, recommends where it has no authority to act directly, and sets all sorts of helpful public work in motion.

Sometimes, however, progressive cities and states lead the way with reforms, and the government follows and completes them. The states tried to regulate railroad freight and passenger rates, but endless confusion resulted with injustice to both the public and the owners of the roads. So the Federal Congress, having jurisdiction over interstate commerce, appointed a commission to fix rates.

Helping to Protect the Children

The cities and states, too, began the work of caring for the children. Education has gradually been made compulsory in almost all states. People are prosecuted for abusing or corrupting children, and the age at which they may be employed has been slowly raised until, in many

All Ready for the Rush



The keen-eyed young men you see in line back of the table, are all newspaper men, the Washington correspondents of as many papers throughout the country. They have in their hands the cotton census report and are ready to rush with it to the telegraph office as soon as the Government officials give the word. Information as to crop conditions is very carefully guarded by the Government until it is ready to give out, because these reports affect the market, and prices go up if the report indicates a crop yield less than was expected, so you see it wouldn't do to let one person get this information ahead of another.

states, it is now sixteen years. Public playgrounds and juvenile courts have been established in many cities; the authorities are especially watchful of the health of babies, and the states are maintaining state public schools and finding homes for orphaned and other dependent children. It was not until 1912, however, that the government established the Child Welfare Bureau, as a branch of the Department of Commerce and Labor. We have a little story in these books telling about the duties of this bureau. A Federal Child Labor Law was passed, but was declared unconstitutional. This interfered with no state law, but it would have released thousands of children from working in coal mines, cotton mills and canneries, simply by forbidding the shipment of goods produced by the aid of children in interstate com-

merce. Thus backward states would be brought in line with the most progressive in the proper treatment of their children.

Work Yet to Be Done

What next? No one knows, but it will be whatever the people want to have done. By reading the best newspapers and current events magazines, you will find discussions of many things that are advocated by various organizations. It is widely held that the government should take steps to Americanize the immigrants who are coming to us. Cities have opened night schools to educate them; and the function of the Immigration Officers might well be enlarged to help the newcomer to prosperity and useful citizenship.

Many people think that the government should continue the war-

time operation of the railroads and telegraph lines; and that it should undertake great engineering works to control the floods of the Ohio, Missouri and Mississippi rivers.

interests of all the people, as are the forests. And as the government helped the early railroads, it was thought by many that it should help build, or rather, rebuild, our mer-

The Famous Rat Catchers of Paris



The rat catchers of Paris are famous. They work in the sewers which run under the city everywhere and are the favorite haunts for these disease-spreading animals. So there are officials employed by the city as you can see by the official cap of the man in the picture. He is just going down into the manhole. One foot is resting on the rung of the iron ladder that is attached to the walls of the manhole. He has high hobnailed boots, because the bottom of the sewers are slippery with water and slime. The man behind him is holding the dark lantern and the bag in which he puts the rats. With this dark lantern he explores the walls of the sewers and when he sees a rat he grasps him by the back of the neck and whisk, he goes into the bag which is swung from his shoulder by a strap and the mouth kept closed. These rat catchers work in shifts day and night. Fifteen rats is a good night's work, while when he catches twenty-five, the rat catcher says he has had a "good luck night"—or day, as the case may be. The rat catcher has a peculiar whistle which for some reason calls the rats to come out; possibly out of curiosity. He also carries pockets full of white pebbles which he throws against the wall in such a way that they bound back toward him. This often makes the rats come out from their hiding place and when they see the pebbles they run toward them. Just why the rat does this is not known, but the rat catcher thinks it is because the rat imagines it is a piece of white sugar, for he calls it his "sugar trick."

And along the Atlantic and Gulf Coast, in Florida and on the lower Mississippi, are vast areas of swamp lands that could be reclaimed, by extensive drainage works which only a rich country could finance. There is a growing demand, too, that the water power, oil fields and mineral tracts on public lands should be reserved in the

chant marine. The fact that our sea-borne commerce before the war was carried in the ships of other nations placed our foreign trade at a disadvantage.

It would be an interesting thing for your history class in school to think over and discuss the many ways in which the government might still further "promote the

An Objectionable Passenger Who Is Not Allowed to Land



Because rats are carriers of disease germs which are collected in their fur, or because the rats are infested with disease-bearing fleas, the masters of vessels are required to attach disks like those shown in the picture, to the ropes with which their vessels are moored when they come into port. Mr. Rat can easily run along the rope but when he gets to this disk he can't get over. Farmers frequently carry out the same idea by putting tin hoods around the posts that hold up their corn cribs.

But while he is a very dangerous visitor when he comes from countries infested with plague, and native rats help spread contagious diseases, it must be entered to the credit of Mr. Rat that he also helps to prevent the spread of disease. How would you suppose? By eating waste food and decaying things which would otherwise pollute the air and help to cause fever. In the days before the disposal of waste and sewage had been reduced to the science it is today, the rat was of much importance in this respect.

Rats can and do make themselves at home everywhere. They never complain of the food or the poor quarters. They are found under the barn, under the house, in burrows under old walls, up in the attic, universal nuisances.

The Chemist and the "All-Day Suckers"



You know what an "all-day sucker" is don't you? It would be better for you if you didn't—that is to say, if you put them into your mouth. And I'll tell you why.

Prof. L. B. Allyn is here working with one of his pupils in chemistry in the High School laboratory in Westfield, Mass., and by the magic power of chemistry is making one of these "all-day suckers" tell what it is made of and he finds that it contains among other things, arsenic. At other times these candies and other cheap candies offered for sale are found to contain coal tar dye, to give them their attractive color. This dye may be attractive to look at but it is very bad for the stomach. Prof. Allyn became famous all over the country for the work he did in exposing the character of various foods and candies sold in stores, as represented by specimens brought by his pupils from the different stores in the town.

While we are here with him in his laboratory, the affair that looks something like a doll house with two windows just back of Prof. Allyn, is what is called a gas hood, because in it are put things

from which poisonous gases would escape into the laboratory if the vessels containing them were not inclosed by this hood. The hood is connected with a ventilating shaft which carries the fumes away. Just inside the "front door" which is raised, are a row of flasks on a shelf which contain foods which are being examined to see how much nitrogen or protein they contain. Just beneath it, next to the can, you see the edge of an electrical whirling machine that separates things out of food. It works on the principle as the cream separator which separates the cream from the milk.

The painted glass in front of Prof. Allyn's assistant is an air extractor for taking fats and oils out of food products. Immediately below Prof. Allyn's right arm are three of those "all-day suckers" in the form of human hands, while in the jar just back of the wash basin is a jar of candy containing coal tar dyes. "If candy is properly made and properly used," says Prof. Allyn, "it is a valuable food product, but such candy as this is horrid and poisonous." Next to this jar is a cone-shaped flask which is warming on an electric stove.

To See if Bossy's Heart and Lungs Are All Right



Impure milk is one great cause of the spread of disease and many precautions must be taken by the health officers to protect the public against it. The milk may be impure because it has not been handled under cleanly conditions. Its impurity may also be due to some disease in the cow. The inspector here is listening to the lungs and heart of the cow, just as a physician listens to the workings of the human heart with a stethoscope. The sounds made by heart or lungs indicate certain diseases including consumption which affects cattle and some of the other lower animals just as it does human beings.

general welfare." This is, perhaps, the very largest power conferred by the Constitution. When you come to think of it, that power is limited only by the will of the people. Ideas

change to suit the needs of new and changing times, and this is an age of progress when free people demand the highest social service from their governments.

Protecting Melons Against Flies



In the poorer districts of great cities where people cannot afford to buy a whole melon at a time, the melons are cut in half and sold from carts. Where they are not protected, flies gather on them and flies are bearers of disease germs. Here the woman is calling a fruit peddler's attention to the fact that he must keep his cut melons covered with netting.

Woman Inspector Destroying Bad Fruit

In seeing that the laws against the sale of bad food are carried out, a good many women inspectors are employed. This



illustration shows a woman food inspector destroying a box of bad fruit that has been offered for sale on a street fruit-stand.

Inquiring into the Eggs



Here is the same inspector in a grocery store looking for bad eggs. You see she is breaking them into a dish. Grocers who persistently offer bad food for sale are subject to fine, and as a dishonest grocer never knows when the inspector will drop in, her visits tend to put him on his good behavior, or if he is merely careless, he goes more careful.

A Bombardment in the Battle of the Eggs



If you had been within hearing distance after this Deputy United States Marshal set those boxes on fire, you might have thought there was a battle going on, and indeed there was. It was a battle against bad eggs—over 89,000 of them. They all went off pretty close together like the crackers in a bunch in the time of the old-fashioned Fourth of July. The boxes of eggs were seized in the markets of Washington and were condemned by the Supreme Court of the District of Columbia, as being unfit for use. The flames caused the eggs to pop like pistols. The Deputy Marshal in the picture has just poured kerosene over the material for one of the numerous bonfires required to destroy these eggs, and will run away as fast as he can after he has applied the match.

Official Inspector Examining Barrels of Grapes



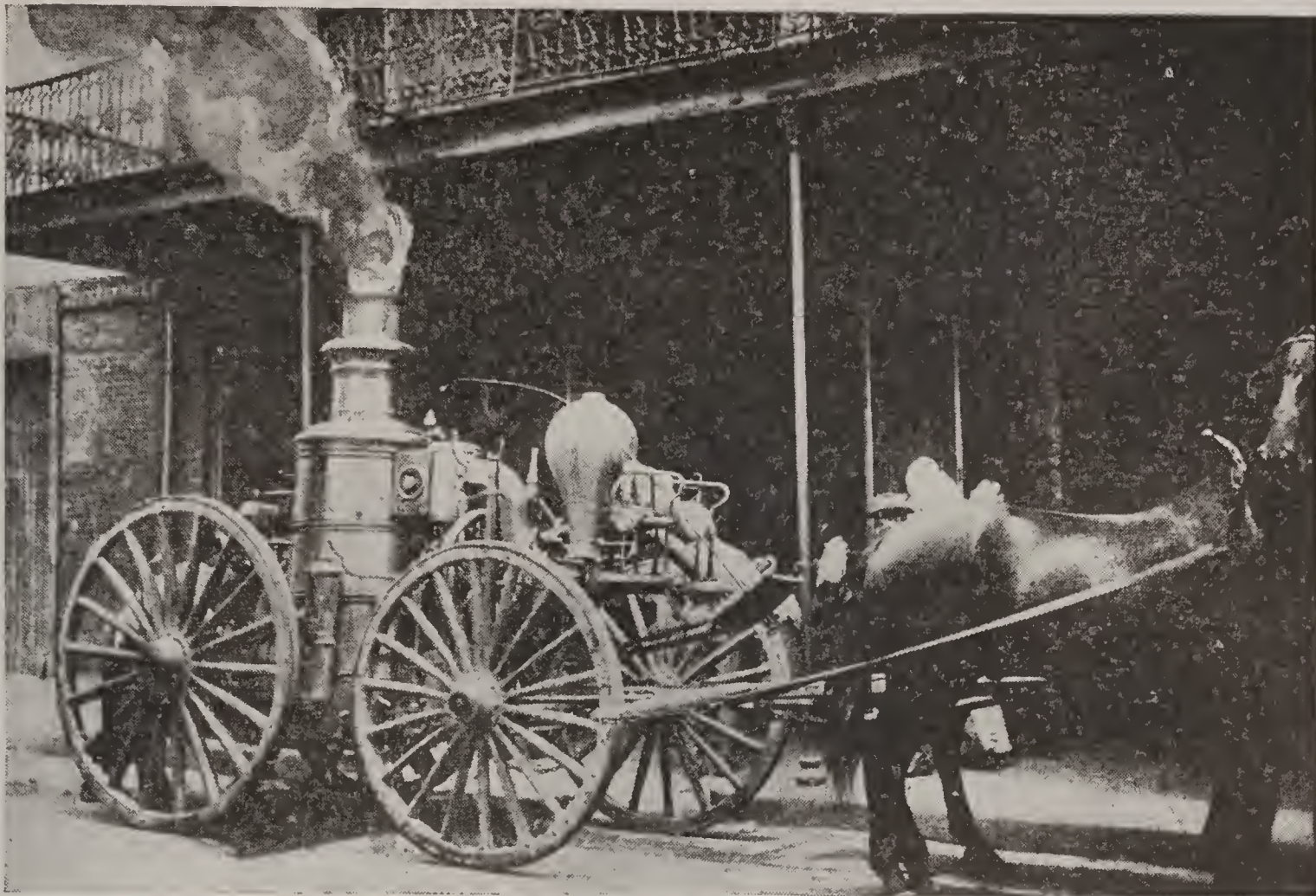
Here are a lot of barrels of grapes that have been shipped into a great city, and one of the food inspectors is emptying some of the barrels to see whether the grapes are in good condition.

What Is Done to the Bad Grapes



Out of all the barrels of grapes you saw in the previous picture, there were so many bad grapes in the barrels here shown that they have all been condemned, and the officer who showed you the bunch of decayed grapes is preparing to spray the barrels with crude petroleum, so that they cannot be offered for sale.

THE GENERAL WELFARE
Using the Fire Engine on Disease Germs



Sometimes, as in this instance a fire engine is used to pump disinfectants into a disease-infected house. The scene here shown is in the poor quarters of one of the southern cities, in the days when yellow fever epidemics were not uncommon. Now-a-days, owing to the better sanitary conditions maintained by public authorities, such epidemics are unknown.

Killing Disease Germs with Sulphur



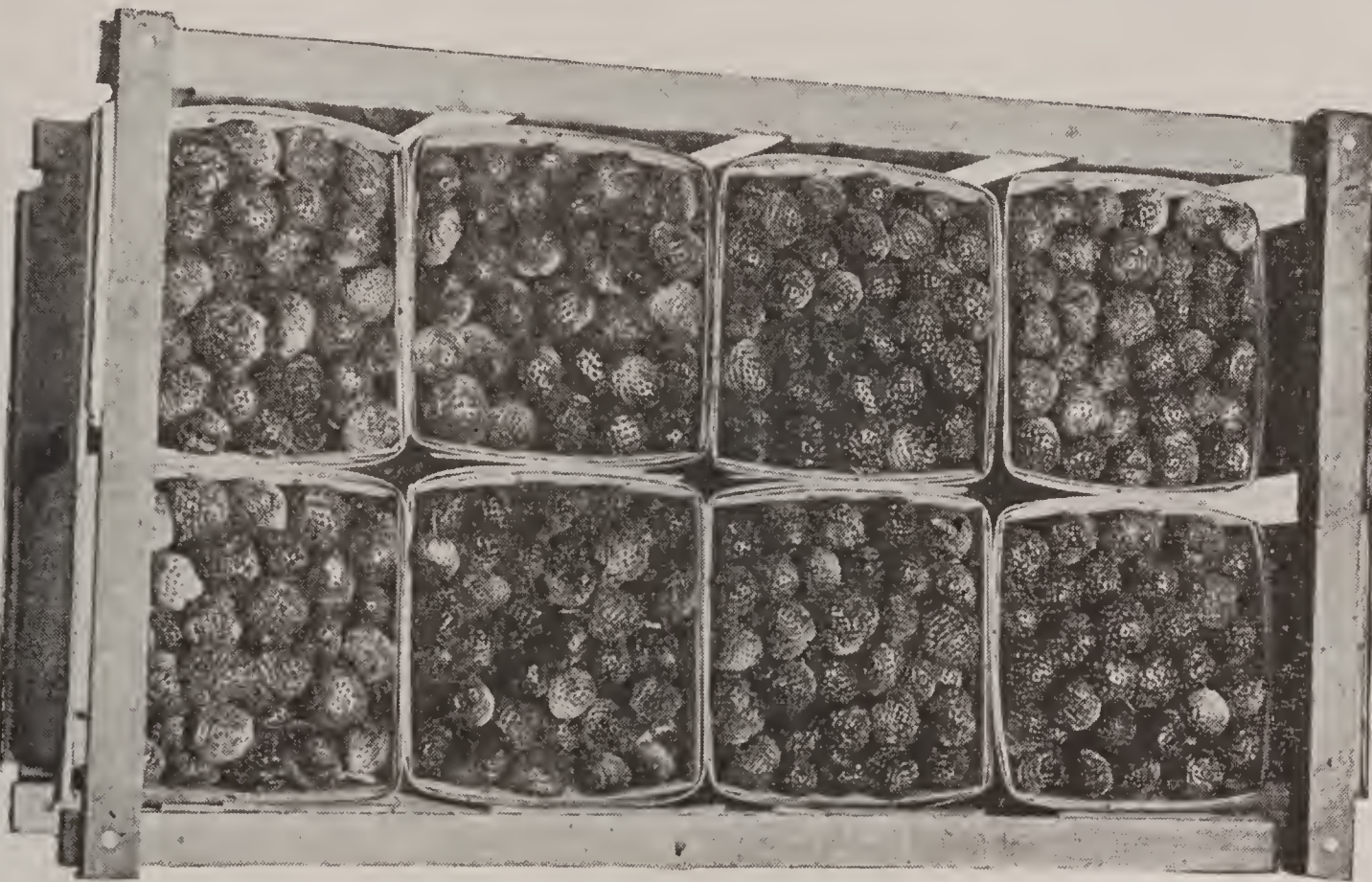
This is a house in which there has been contagious disease. The officers are burning sulphur to disinfect it. The men in the rear are repapering the walls as all the old paper has been torn off, because wall paper harbors a great many germs.

From the World Championship Hereford Herd



Herefords are beef animals as you will see by noticing their square, solid lines. The variety of grass crops which can be grown in winter as well as in summer in the South, thus greatly cutting down the cost of feeding them, makes the South an ideal locality for raising fine cattle. The owner of the cattle in the picture built up his herd of Herefords in about five years. When he exhibited them at the International Stock Show in Chicago they won the first prize. These cattle are a living demonstration that tick eradication and leguminous crops pay the southern stock farmer big returns.

The Old South and the New



Southern Strawberries for Northern Markets

It is no uncommon thing nowadays to see delicious strawberries like these in northern grocery stores in March—three months before the home grown crop can be obtained. That is due to careful picking and improved methods of shipping, for some of the early berries in northern markets travel over a thousand miles—from Florida, Louisiana and California. These berries are as clean as they can be made without washing them, which would make them spoil, for dirty, wet berries decay more quickly than clean, dry ones. And see how carefully they are packed in the boxes, not jammed in just as they happen to fall, but laid in even rows. Whole districts in the South are devoted to the raising of strawberries for northern markets and it is the careful handling which makes our early spring supply possible. And the southern strawberry farmer can soon lay by a tidy sum; for it is the early strawberry that catches the best price.

AT the beginning of the Civil War thirty-four states had been admitted to the Union. The twenty-three fighting for the Union had a population of twenty-two million, out of a total of thirty-one million for the entire country. In the eleven states that seceded—Arkansas, Tennessee and the coast states from Virginia to Texas—there were only nine million people. Of these, three and a half million were Negro slaves, who were not used for soldiers.

Thus the South was outnumbered nearly four to one. The only wonder is that it should have taken four years to conquer the Confederacy. To account for it we shall have to consider the advantages and disadvantages of both sides.

Difference Between the North and the South

In the North all the people were free, and fully ninety-five per cent of them were of the white

The Texas Steer



Stories of lawless cowboy days out West are full of accounts of the round-up, lassoing and branding cattle, and so forth. The Texas steer shown here is a sample of the breed that wandered over the western ranges fifty years ago and was rounded up, counted and branded only twice a year. As the density of population increases in the western and southern states, fewer and better cattle are kept, but they are fed regularly or kept in fenced pastures and are bred up to a certain standard for their meat or milk-giving qualities. Like the razorback hog, the Texas steer is small, swift, and bony. His horns are formidable weapons of defense, as you see. With the introduction of the dipping vat for eliminating cattle ticks, the South is forbidding the keeping of cattle on open range, and the picturesque Texas steer will soon be extinct for he is a nondescript and cannot hold his own in competition with the purebred Holstein or Hereford. He is profitable only when his food costs nothing at all, not even the labor of giving it to him. This one is kept in the Wichita National Forest, Oklahoma.

race, of every energetic and industrious nationality of northern Europe. Here, where every man took

Great Advantages of the North

pride in working with his hands and brain, were the manufacturing cities, the successful business men, the skilled mechanics and inventors, the most varied farm products, the iron and coal mines, the shipyards and hardy seamen, and the highly developed systems of transportation. As Napoleon said, an army "travels on its stomach." Soldiers must be well fed, well cared for in camp and hospital, and liberally supplied with munitions of war, if they are to do their work. These conditions of success attended the Union armies. Behind them crops were grown and harvested throughout the war, without interruption. Flour, cotton, woolen and steel mills, packing houses, clothing factories, machine shops, chemical, munition and gun works, coal mines,

blast furnaces, railroads and shipyards were in constant operation. No property was destroyed, nor the lives of civilians in danger, for only one great battle—Gettysburg—was fought on northern soil, above Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri.

The North was more than self-sustaining. It had a large surplus of wheat and other products to sell abroad. The seaports were open to trade, commerce was only spasmodically interrupted by Confederate raiders, and the credit of the national government was maintained in every foreign capital. Although conscription was resorted to, less than half the men of military age and fitness were drafted into the army. Plenty were left at home to conduct the greatly increased business of the nation, and also to work on the Union Pacific and other new railroads. The chief disadvantages of the federal government, in the early years of the war, was that it

was unprepared, and the people were divided. There were men of every shade of opinion, from Abolitionists to those who openly sympathized with the South. There were farmer boys in the army, but a large percentage of the soldiers were city clerks and mechanics. These were untrained, unused to out-of-door life and to the handling of horses and firearms.

Conditions in the South

Now let us consider conditions in the South. The region was purely agricultural, but limited to a few large crops that were grown for exportation. The southern states had enormous wealth in their cotton, rice, sugar and tobacco, and in the naval stores yielded by the pine forests. They produced one-fourth of the corn crop of the country, but this, with the other grains and forage, was consumed at home, by the slaves, the necessary farm animals, and by the many riding and driving horses that were kept for pleasure.

The South grew only a part of its food, and imported all the clothing for its population. Many planters found it more profitable to put all

Not a Manufacturing Section their land in cotton, the big money crop, and to buy the pork, meal and molasses, as well as the coarse cotton cloth, that was needed to feed and clothe their negro field hands. Clothing, furniture and books, building materials, carriages and wagons, locomotives, rails and cars, telegraph wire, steamboats and machinery, farm and building tools, saddles and harness, even horseshoes, nails and salt, were purchased in northern markets or abroad.

This made the South dependent on the outside world for almost every

necessity. In the entire region there were no coal or iron mines in operation, no blast furnaces, and only 20,000 miles of railroads. There were neither manufacturing cities nor the small factory towns that were so numerous in the North, and consequently, few skilled mechanics. There were cotton gins at the shipping points, and small saw and grist-mills, to supply local needs; but the necessary blacksmithing, carpenter work, brick laying and shoe and harness mending was done by negroes in plantation or village craft shops. The most serious defect of slavery was to make white men look down upon manual labor. Very few had great wealth or desired it. The independence and agreeable leisure secured by land and unpaid labor made men despise trade. Life was little changed from the time of Washington. Planters lived like the country gentry of England, managing their great estates and cultivating their minds and the social graces. Younger sons studied for the professions or the army, or went into politics.

The South's Military Advantages

Thus industrially and economically the South was hopelessly handicapped in the great war. Trade with the northern states was stopped at once, and immediate steps were taken to blockade the southern coast and capture the ports, in order to cut off trade with foreign countries. But in a military way the Confederate States were much better equipped than was the Union, in the first two years of the war. For one thing, they were "solid." The white people were all of old colonial stock, united in political opinions, feelings and interests. Then, all southern

men lived in the open. They spent their lives in walking, riding and hunting, and were skilled in the use of firearms. Besides, they were in their own country—knew every wood and stream and wild path in it. And they fought on the defensive. Nothing can equal the courage, determination, endurance and resource of men who fight to defend their families and homes against the invader. For three years Lee held the army of the Potomac in Maryland and northern Virginia; and for more than two years the forces in the West were kept as far north as Tennessee.

In the beginning the South was much better prepared for the war than the North. As fast as the states seceded they seized the government arsenals and the forts within their borders, and the state legislatures made large appropriations for the purchase of guns and munitions abroad. Although Virginia did not secede until after President Lincoln issued the call for volunteers, it secured more than \$10,000,000 worth of powder, balls, cannon and ships from the arsenal at Harper's Ferry and the Norfolk Navy Yard. When these supplies were exhausted, however, the South could get only what the blockade runners could manage to smuggle in.

The people suffered immediate distress in every comfort of living. The crops could not be sold, and money gradually disappeared. There was merchandise in the stores for only one season. The clothing of women, children and negroes could be made to last a long time, but the soldiers, in their rough campaigning, soon wore out their uniforms and were reduced to makeshifts.

*Then Came
the Time of
Suffering*

Back to Pioneer Conditions

Then women, unused to toil, had to begin home manufacturing with the crudest materials and tools. They learned to spin and weave on old colonial wheels and looms, brought down from garrets. They dyed their cloth with walnut hulls, indigo and swamp-maple bark. They roasted rye and wheat for coffee. And the men had to learn to mend the old muskets, rifles and shotguns that were pressed into use. Iron and steel of every description was gathered up, even fire pokers and hoes, and beaten into horseshoes and bayonets. Boxes and barrels, used in packing meat and fish, were soaked in water for the salt. With baled cotton rotting on decaying docks, curtains and bedding were made up into dresses for women and shirts for soldiers.

While the Union used only half its military strength, nine-tenths of all the white men between sixteen and sixty in the South were drafted into the Confederate army. And so that every soldier should count as a fighting unit, the camp cooking, team-driving, trench-digging, and the work on fortifications, was done by Negroes drawn from the fields. Only women, children and old men, black and white, were left at home, and the horses and cattle were taken for the army. The fields grew up to weeds. Fences fell, buildings decayed from neglect, business stopped and railroads were ruined for lack of repairs and coal. In the last year of the war the weight of twenty-three states fell on seven.

The work of ruin was completed when Union armies rolled across Georgia and Virginia, and emancipated slaves deserted the last camps and fields. Property of every

"Before and After" the Demonstrator Came



Since such a large part of southern agricultural land is cultivated by Negro farmers, it is very important that the Negroes learn how to farm efficiently. The pictures show the effect of a few lessons from the government demonstrator on a Negro's home and dooryard. Many of the demonstrators are themselves Negroes working under white supervision. In one Alabama community



the Negroes have formed a club, which requires every member to have an enclosed garden in which something is growing the year around; to keep one hog for each member of his family, not less than thirty hens, and one or more cows; to preserve or can fruits enough to last over the winter; to plant shrubs, whitewash the house and take an agricultural paper. Such movements among the Negroes themselves will do away with the time-honored charge of shiftlessness laid at the Negro's door.

description was destroyed wherever retreating or invading armies passed. Hundreds of miles of railroad were torn up and the bridges and ties burned. Of the South's million soldiers, three hundred thousand were dead or disabled. Those who survived returned to reduced families, in homes of desolation, to face starvation. The farm lands were laid waste, and there was no machinery to cultivate them, no seed for planting. Live stock had disappeared.

The Period of Reconstruction

Your history tells you of the "Reconstruction" period. This refers to the work of restoring the civil government, the readmission of the seceded states to the Union, and the securing to the freedmen of their new rights of citizenship. The work was not completed for ten years, and it was not done in the wisest, kindest ways. Never was Lincoln, "with malice toward none and charity for all," so much needed at the helm of state as in the years which followed the close of the war. Officials of the federal government, sent from the northern states, were long in control in the South—a political army of occupation in a conquered and devastated land. Then was an era of "carpet-bag" and Negro domination, of oppression and robbery; then another of revolt and terrorism on the part of the organized white population. Socially, industrially and politically the South was demoralized for a decade. Southerners speak of this period today as the "Era of Destruction."

For quite ten years the South steadily lost ground. Its property value of twelve billion in 1860,

dropped to three billion by 1870. The Negroes, very little exposed to the perils of war, had increased to four million, which was then more than half the total population. Uneducated and unused to responsibility, many of them became idle and shiftless, or so helpless without direction, that they were as dependent as in the days of slavery.

Upon the white owners of ruined properties was laid the burden of restoring the neglected soil, rebuilding what had been destroyed, paying the excessive taxes of corrupt government, adjusting their agricultural industries to new conditions of "paid" but undisciplined labor, and supporting the dependents of both races. So great was the poverty and wretchedness of the land that two and a half million people were forced to emigrate to northern or western states. Those who left were mostly the strong and ambitious young people, white and black. By 1875 the population had declined to seven million, and the property value to one-fourth of what it had been fifteen years before, while the northern states were increasing in wealth and numbers at an incredible rate.

In the School of Misfortune

Many people predicted that the South could never rise again. But one of the most inspiring things in history is to discover how the greatest of all countries have been built by people who have struggled up against overwhelming odds. Such people as the people of the South are not crushed, but strengthened, by misfortunes and hardships. The city of Venice, "Queen of the Adriatic," and ruler of a mighty republic of the Middle Ages, was built by a

The Razorback and the Thoroughbred



© Ginn & Co.

These two pictures of the "razorback" and the thoroughbred hog may well typify the difference between the farming methods of the Old South and the New.

The razorback or "piney woods" pig is the native semi-wild hog of the South. Allowed the run of the woods and fields, and seldom fed at the home barnyard, these animals have developed long, burrowing snouts and rangy legs which are capable of out-distancing the average dog. The razor-



© Ginn & Co.

back is usually left to forage for a living, so he hasn't acquired the fat-producing power of the more thoroughly domesticated hog and has remained muscular and bony like a wild boar, the ancestor of the swine family. Contrast the relative size of bone and amount of fat in the two animals shown here. The larger animal is a Chesterwhite, one of the best-known lard types of hogs.

Where Your Rice Pudding Starts



Louisiana has many acres of ideal rice land—low, moist, and rich—and it produces more rice than any other state. It now has almost 350,000 acres of rice. The picture shows you how it is cultivated—in high, ridged rows. Notice the reed-like character of the leaves, which is typical of plants that grow in very wet soil.

band of wretched fugitives on a cluster of marshy islands. And the Dutch spread their fields of bloom on barren sand dunes, which they walled from the sea. So the people of the southern states, through disaster, found in themselves powers which they had never used nor dreamed that they possessed.

The first and most important result of the disappearance of slavery was the breaking down of the prejudice against manual work in the white people. "Gentlemen," obliged to care for their families, put their skilful hands and trained minds to the hardest tasks, and slowly repaired their broken fortunes. With no money or credit to operate

The Great Lesson of Labor large plantations, many of the big estates were cut up into small farms. These were sold to poor whites, who had never been able to own anything before; or rented to former slaves,

who paid crop rent and worked their little holdings under the supervision of the owners. And, as every family was obliged to supply its own necessities as largely as possible, land was used to its full advantage. Crops became more diversified. Every negro cabin had its garden, its working mule, its cow, pigs and chickens. Waste lands were cleared and drained. Educated men very quickly became good carpenters, coopers, brickmakers, stock breeders, engineers and machinists. Saw and grist-mills multiplied, rice and sugar culture was extended, and modern farm and mill machinery and improved methods were introduced.

At the End of Twenty Years

By 1880, the South, while buying much less than in the old, lavish, wasteful days, was living in comfort and growing as much cotton and other export crops as in 1860. The

The Hidden Treasure in the Peanut Field



Southern farmers who have grown the same crop on the same land, year after year, are learning that changing the crops from year to year makes the land yield more and better crops. The picture shows a thriving field of peanuts in Oklahoma. Peanuts, like clover and cow peas, form little "nitrogen factories" in their roots and hence add fertility to the soil.

cities, docks and railroads had been rebuilt, emigration had stopped, and the white population was growing. As soon as a little spare capital was accumulated a few small cotton-mills were built at waterfalls, to supply the home market with the coarse cloth needed by field laborers.

This was, indeed, the only way in which the larger industrial development of the South could have been begun. The bitter animosities engendered by the war were long in dying out, and it was useless to try to borrow capital in rich northern cities, where sympathy was still all for the freedman.

But this feeling had become helpful in solving the labor problems of the South, to which skilled white workingmen refused to emigrate. The South was obliged to educate its mechanics. Benevolent organizations of the North had, at first, been

emotional and harmful to the black race. Negroes had been educated for the professions in which the openings for them were few. Now, education was aimed toward fitting the Negro into the great world of industry. Hampton Institute was established in Virginia, and its colored graduates went out as teachers among their own people. The most famous of these was Booker T. Washington, who, born in slavery, built up, almost unaided, the great Tuskegee Institute in Alabama. There, today, negro men and women are taught farming, housekeeping and the skilled trades. Its graduates are doing an important part in uplifting their race, and in building up the New South. One of the most interesting and inspiring autobiographies ever written is Washington's "Up From Slavery."

Aside from the unfriendly feeling caused by the war, northern

*Education
of the
Negro*

"New South" Farmer Girl in the Tomato Patch



Tomatoes are one of the chief crops of the truck farmers of the South. The girls' canning clubs which have been organized along the lines of the boys' corn clubs, teach the farmer's daughter to grow and can tomatoes for the market. This picture shows an energetic girl of the South at work in one of the southern fields after a bumper tomato crop.

manufacturers had, since the earliest colonial times, looked upon the agricultural South as their market; and they honestly doubted if southern men had the energy and ability to build and manage factories and to sell their product. History, you see, is an endless and complicated story of causes and their logical effects on every human activity. The South had to overcome, not only hostility, but its own reputation for lack of enterprise and practical capacity.

There was, however, by this time, not a little generous recognition of the heroic labors of southern men, who, with no outside help, were building a new and better prosperity on the ruins of the old. And a few men of clear vision, in both sections, realized that the development of varied industries in the South would not only enrich the

whole nation, but that it was necessary for the rebirth of that spirit of national patriotism and indissoluble union, for which the war had been fought.

Then the Situation Changed

Then, suddenly, the whole situation was changed. About 1885 the northern and western states began to fill up so rapidly that it was plain that the powers of all the people, and the resources of all sections, must soon be taxed to supply the needs of the population and to keep pace with foreign markets. A new generation having grown up, with no memories of the war, northern men began to seek opportunities for profitable investment in the South. Gradually the vast, unsuspected natural resources of the states that had formed

*Northern
Capital
Comes in*

What This Little Boy Taught His Father



The boys' corn club movement has taught backward, uninformed farmers that the government methods achieve results; it has driven home the lesson to the farmers in the most effective way—that of being beaten at their own game by their children. Under the direction of the government



demonstrator, many boys have produced crops several times bigger and better in quality than those raised by their fathers on adjoining acres of the same farm. One of these pictures shows a boy standing between the rows of his demonstration corn crop and the other shows him in a field of corn raised the same year on the same farm by a tenant farmer.

Putting the Early Vegetables to Bed



Truck gardening is intensive farming. No steam tractor plows and gasoline seed distributors can be used here, for the acreage is small and each plant has to be put through many careful operations to gain the best results. After the seeds for most truck garden vegetables are in the ground the soil is worked over by hand, as you see the two men doing here. Because truck farming is usually done on a small scale the greatest pains must be taken to get the most money possible out of the space available. That is why the farmers bend every effort toward making their vegetables mature early, before the market is oversupplied.

the Confederacy, or lain on its borders, were uncovered.

What was it that men looked for? What is it that makes countries rich and populous? Just a few fundamental things alone or in different

Foundations of Natural Wealth

combinations—iron and other useful minerals, oil and coal and a fertile soil, water-power and a good location—on the great highways of trade, a favorable climate, which affects the energy of people.

The wealth and power of England are due to her coal and iron mines, and to the cotton and other raw materials which her merchant fleets bring to her mills from every part of the world. New England, with nothing but a favorable location, timber for shipbuilding, and abundant water-power, was built up on the ease with which cotton, wool, leather, pig iron and coal could be

brought to her factory doors and railroads, and finished products distributed to the markets of the world. Pennsylvania found riches in its extensive coal fields, and in the cheap water transportation for the iron ore of the Lake Superior region, to keep its blast furnaces going. The wealth of some of our states rests on the products of the soil—wheat, cattle or cotton.

After the invention of the cotton gin, the southern states produced a large percentage of all the raw cotton in the markets of Europe and America. Their crops were so valuable that every other source of wealth was neglected, and they suffered from other disadvantages. An enervating climate and slave labor made the best part of the population indolent. But after the war white men of education and property were obliged to go to work, and their am-

Where the Cane Juice Is Turned to Sugar



This is a picture of a sugar mill in the South, surrounded by fields of sugar cane. You see the cane has been cut and the men are stacking it up, but because the cane is so coarse and not easily stacked like wheat, stakes driven into the ground form an inclosure for it. The cane is growing in rich swamp land which has been drained. Notice how level the ground is.

bition was aroused; they began to consider in what other profitable ways, besides farming, they could use their energies and the little spare capital that they began to accumulate. The most obvious thing to do was to work up some of their raw cotton at home.

Beginning of the New South

As an experiment a few cotton mills were built at the waterfalls that, just as in the middle states, were formed in every stream where it dropped from the piedmont belt to the coastal plain.

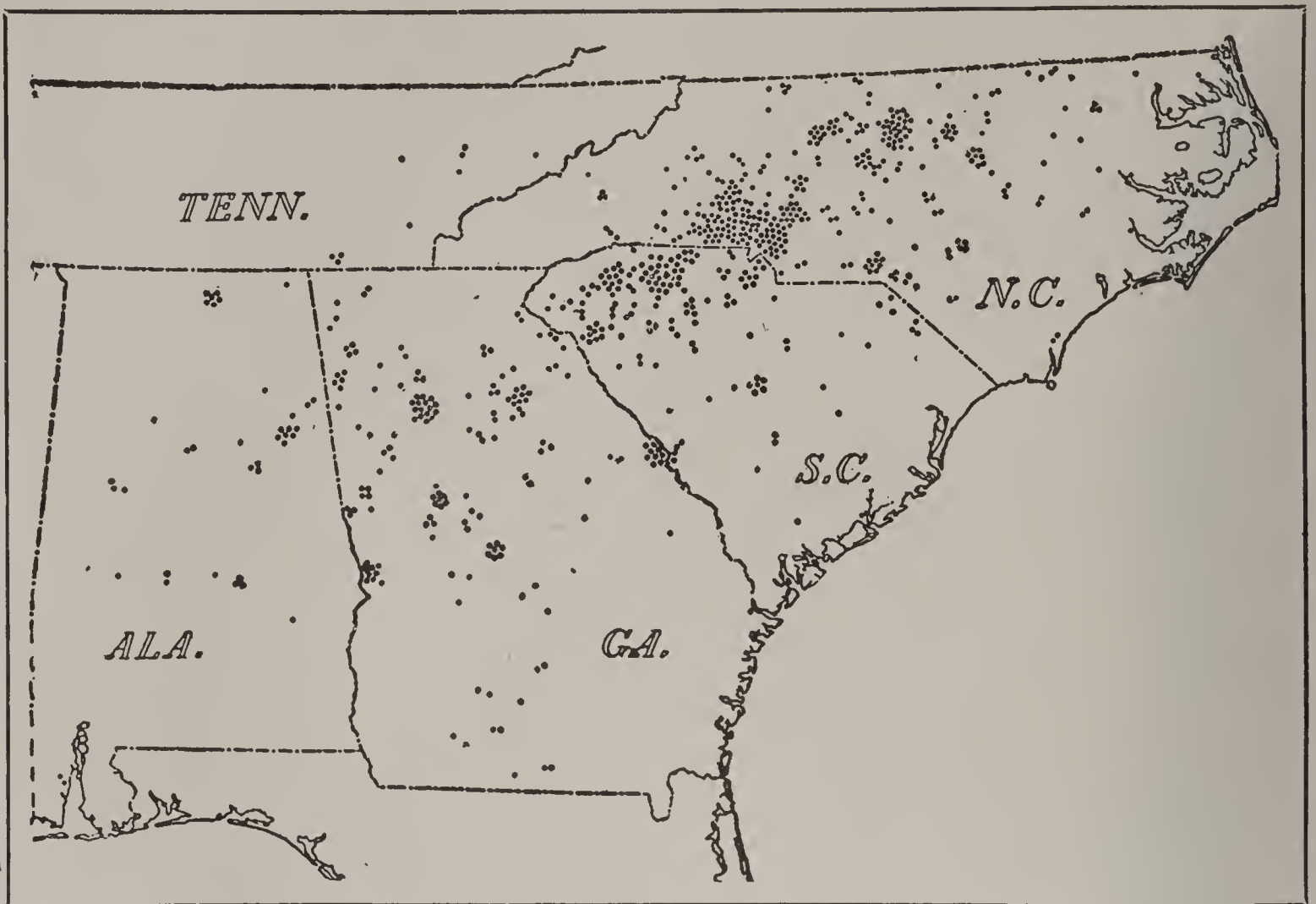
*The Fall Line
and the
Cotton Mills*

This is the famous "Fall Line," which runs midway between the mountains and the sea, from New Jersey to Alabama, and around the southern end of the Alleghenies. You can trace it on your map through Roanoke, Ra-

leigh, Columbia, Macon and Montgomery. Descending from a region of rough foothills, that had never been cleared of their heavy growth of pine and hardwood forests, these falls had never turned any wheels. There was a second line below these, too, for the piedmont belt, with the coastal plain, widens toward the South, and the land drops again when you find Spartansburg, Charlotte, Atlanta and Birmingham.

All of these places are, today, factory cities, as busy and noisy as the mill towns of New England. Lumber-mills were built also, to work up the timber. Then followed furniture and tobacco factories, and the cut over lands of the richest virgin soil were soon cleared for market garden and fruit farms, to supply nearby towns and the markets of northern cities. Then, to the amaze-

Each Dot Stands for a Cotton Mill



This map shows you how thickly the cotton mills have sprung up all over the South. By comparing it with the map showing the cotton regions in the article on the Southern States, you will see that most of these mills are located on the edge of the regions in which most cotton is grown, with the exception of the cotton regions in Texas. Then, if you will remember the location of the Fall Line, you will understand why Texas is not shown on this map.

ment and delight of the South, the whole western slope of the mountains, was discovered to be underlaid with coal. In West Virginia, eastern Kentucky and Tennessee and northern Alabama, sixty thousand square miles of coal lands were surveyed—five times the total area of England and Germany, and the coal lay in so many deep and continuous veins that it is estimated to contain 5,000 tons of fuel to the surface acre.

This was discovered just as some other great coal fields of the world were beginning to decline in their output; and enormous deposits of iron ore were found in Tennessee and Alabama, about the time it began to appear that the iron mines of the Lake Superior region were not inexhaustible. So, there, at the

southern end of the long Appalachian Highlands, where coal, iron and the limestone for purifying the ore in blast furnaces, occurred in vast quantities and in close proximity, stands Birmingham, the Pittsburgh of the New South, destined to be one of the greatest steel centers in the world.

The People of the Mountains

High up on both slopes was found still another source of wealth—the forgotten people of the mountain farms. Too poor to own lands or slaves in the tidewater region, in early days, they had gone to these wild uplands, and cleared and tilled their own rough acres. Many of the dauntless breed of Daniel Boone had started for the valleys of Kentucky or Tennessee, but had been stranded

Inside One of the Big Cotton Mills



Here we are inside one of the big cotton mills of the South. We see thousands of bobbins wound with the cotton threads that are afterwards to be woven into cloth. These bobbins are placed on machines called speeders which twist the fibers into yarn. There are two kinds of spinning machines: one is called the "ring spinner," the other "the mule." (Who would think of finding a mule in a cotton mill!) The mule winds the thread onto spools called cops, from which it is rewound on bobbins, long rows of which we see before us here. The bobbins are afterward arranged on frames from which the threads are passed into the warping machine which forms the "warp" across which the "weft" or cross threads are woven later, so making the cloth.

by accidents in the mountains. There they had lived like the earliest pioneers for quite a hundred years, and grown strong and hardy on toil, simple living and the pure, bracing air.

Some one has called these people our "contemporary ancestors." Certainly there is in them the best blood and highest courage of the seaboard colonies, and they have lost nothing in mental vigor by standing still for a century. Grasping the first opportunity to escape from their long exile from civilized communities, they eagerly flocked down into the foothills to work in the new lumber camps, mills and mines. It would be difficult to overestimate their value. Without this new source of superior

*New Source
of Brains
and Vigor*

labor, the South could never have been developed so rapidly. White emigrants have never been attracted to this section; and the negroes of the warm, moist coast do not thrive in the cool, dry mountains; and they are, besides, needed in the spreading fields of cotton, sugar and rice, and in the skilled trades in growing cities and towns.

Many of these mountain men, too, while rude and unlettered, had a quick grasp and native shrewdness. Refusing to sell their valuable timber and mineral lands, they permitted them to be worked under leases on a royalty basis. They used their big incomes to educate their children; and the second generation returned to manage their own mines and mills, and to enrich the South

by making use of their native ability, energy and capital.

In broad diversification of manufacturing, and in making the finer finished goods, the South is still, of course, far behind the northern states and western Europe. But it has unlimited quantities of the most essential raw materials—coal, water-power, oil, iron, timber and cotton. And it has made long strides in the production of coal, coke, pig iron, bar steel, crude petroleum, lumber, and the coarser grades of cotton cloth; in opening its fine quarries of building stone, granite and marble, and in developing its beds of phosphate. Side by side with this has gone the extension of the acreage and improvement of methods in cultivating the big export crops, and in truck gardening and fruit grow-

ing. Population and construction work have kept pace with the growing industries.

In 1875 the South had only seven million people, while the Japanese Empire, which is smaller than Texas alone, supports fifty million. Within forty years the population of the South has increased to nearly thirty million. Its wealth of three billion has been swelled to over thirty-seven billion. The capital invested in cotton mills in thirty years has multiplied tenfold, and so has the produc-

*Some
Striking
Figures*

tion of iron. The railroads have been rebuilt and re-equipped, and

have trebled in mileage. The big export crops have jumped from a value of \$650,000,000 to nearly \$2,000,000,000, of which one-third is for cotton. The lumber trade reaches the total of \$250,000,000 a year, besides what is used in home furniture factories and in making packing cases. The oil fields of Texas rank among the greatest in the world. Texas and Oklahoma grow enormous crops of wheat; and

as the western ranges disappear, it is to their ranches, and to the rough pasture lands of the southern states that we are beginning to look for future supplies of beef cattle.

This rapid, many-sided development has made the most extraordinary changes

A Business Street in Birmingham

This scene on a business street of the great and prosperous city of Birmingham, Ala., will give you an idea of the growth of the cities of the New South since their rich natural resources began to be developed.



OLD AND NEW SOUTH

Freight Yards at Nashville



This picture of railroad yards in Nashville illustrates how the growth of industry and the development of railroads in the South have gone hand in hand. Nashville, as you know, is built on hills and bluffs overlooking the Cumberland. The railroads follow the low river banks.

in the appearance of the whole country. Before the war the population was thin and scattered, and agriculture was the only industry. The coast lands and rich river bottoms alone were thickly settled and highly cultivated. Certain favored districts were taken up with big plantations, each with its fine old colonial mansion, its own wharf, negro quarters and craft shops. Poor whites, who owned few or no slaves, occupied the less desirable lands, and never prospered. The only towns were stagnant villages, the county-seats or "Court-houses," and the state capitals and seaports, that were social and political centers. These were reached by leisurely steamboats, or by slow trains, that rumbled over rusty, narrow-gauge railroads. The local travel of the wealthy was done in

*The South
as It
Was*

elegant carriages or on horseback; and carts, drawn by mules, were the means of locomotion and trade used by poor whites and Negroes. By far the larger part of the country was in pine forests, cypress swamps, canebrakes and sand barrens, and in unexplored, wooded mountains, whose wealth in timber, water-power, minerals and vigorous people was unsuspected.

Now the coast is a country of gardens and orchards, cotton, rice and sugar fields, and of winter resorts which vie with those of southern California in beauty and luxury. The piedmont belt is another region where a ribbon of truck and fruit farms lies between the hardwood forests of the higher slopes, and the factory cities of the Fall Line. Modern railroads skirt the coast, run along the foothills, come down the

*The South
as It Is
Today*

Louisiana's "Little Italy"



In the strawberry raising and truck-farming section of Louisiana, near Independence, large colonies of Italian immigrants have settled. They are thriftier than colored people and soon have all their land under cultivation and their little farms paid for. The Illinois Central, which runs through Independence, has built this fine depot to keep pace with the prosperity of the inhabitants.

old Shenandoah Valley, which Lee's armies used for a wild highway, and connect the Ohio River and Great Lakes with the Gulf. Steamboats ply on the tidewater rivers, and coastwise trading vessels touch at countless little harbors all the way from Baltimore to Galveston. From the seaport cities one can go in the finest ocean steamers to Panama, the West Indies, Europe and South America.

To most people it is surprising to hear that New Orleans ranks second among the seaports of the United States in the bulk and value of its export trade, although five other ports exceed it in population. And Galveston, Texas, ranks third, with its enormous exports of cotton, wheat, rice, lumber, oil and the cat-

tle of the Southwest. For hundreds of miles along that coast there is no other harbor. It is the converging point for nine railroads and fifty-three lines of ocean steamers. That is why it had to be rebuilt and protected by seventeen miles of concrete sea wall, after it was destroyed by a tidal wave and hurricane in 1900.

Probably no other city of equal size in the United States is so interesting from the standpoint of civic life as Galveston. Not only did it set an example to all cities in the astonishing rapidity with which it rose in new material strength from its great disaster, but in moral strength and efficiency in inaugurating a new era in the life of cities. It established what is widely known

*Great
Business of
the Ports*

The Old and the New in Southern Schools



The improvement in school conditions in the South and the great need for improvement is well illustrated in this and the following picture. Many southern children still get their education in a one-room country school of the type of the "Old Unity School." Untidiness, disorder, and dilapidation are to be found at the school, as well as in the homes of the poorer class of rural southern children. Add to these conditions the fact that in many of the rural schools the session



lasts for only five months or less, instead of nine as it does in the North, and that the teachers are too overworked and inexperienced to cope with their manifold difficulties, and you will understand something of the South's educational problem. The public school systems of the southern states are not thoroughly organized and are corrupted by politics. Money for the improvement of schools and the payment of a sufficient number of trained teachers is often lacking, so that whatever improvements are made must come from the localities themselves.

A School House of the New South



Yazoo City, Mississippi, is typical of the new spirit which animates the South. Mississippi used to be known as one of the most backward of southern states, with her large proportion of illiterate Negroes, sparse population and large areas of undeveloped land. But these conditions are changing, and Yazoo City is only one of the Mississippi towns that is waking up to a realization of the vast wealth they possess in their rich, black soil and long growing season. Yazoo City is a wide-awake, enterprising community as this fine schoolhouse shows. Notice the "dental work" that has been done on the trees near the school building. If you do not know how and why trees are treated in this way, read about it in the article on Forestry.

and practiced as the "commission" form of government or the "Galveston plan." By legislative act the ordinary method of government by mayor and council was abolished and instead there was created a board of commissioners, one member of which is president and all are elected by popular vote. One commissioner, a banker, with an expert accountant as city auditor under him, looks after the city's finances and in a similar way each department of the city's business is attended to by clean, able business men and experts. You see in this way the business of running a city is looked after just as any other business enterprise would be, instead of being regarded as one of the perquisites of party victory and given to men for their service to the

party rather than their ability and desire to serve the public. Galveston exports one-third of all the American wheat that is shipped abroad; Gulfport, Mississippi, leads in lumber shipments, and Mobile in bridge timbers and railroad ties.

Like a Work of Magic

It is a New South, in truth—sprung up like magic, in the course of one generation. The bitter memories of the war are dying out. As we have seen, North and South joined in celebrating the centenary of the birth of General Lee. Old soldiers in blue and gray, clasp hands on the battlefields of a half century ago; decorate the graves of each other's dead, and exchange captured flags and cannon. Thou-

sands of southerners, white and black, are now living happily in the North, and northern people are finding new homes and opportunities in Dixie.

The old South is gone, and no one

would have it back again. But its gracious memory is cherished in song and story; and the best of it survives in the gentle manners, and in the leisure for culture and hospitality in old southern families.



A Southern Hostess and Her Dinner Guests

Things "come easy" in the South, and that is probably one reason why this part of our country is only now beginning to realize its possibilities. The northern farmer has been developing prize milk and beef cattle by feeding them in the barn seven months in the year, while in the South they can be kept out of doors on green, instead of dry, food the year around. The result is that better calves can be raised in the South for about half what it costs to raise them in the North, and here is one of the farms on which they are doing it. The little girl in the picture is presiding over the dinner table of a small herd of young Louisiana Jerseys which are all her own.

To a Waterfowl

*Whither, midst falling dew,
While glow the heavens with the last steps of day,
Far, through their rosy depths, dost thou pursue
Thy solitary way?*

*Vainly the fowler's eye
Might mark thy distant flight to do thee wrong,
As, darkly painted on the crimson sky,
Thy figure floats along.*

*Seek'st thou the splashy brink
Of weedy lake, or marge of river wide,
Or where the rocking billows rise and sink
On the chafed ocean-side?*

*There is a Power whose care
Teaches thy way along that pathless coast—
The desert and illimitable air—
Lone wandering, but not lost.*

*All day thy wings have fanned,
At that far height, the cold, thin atmosphere,
Yet stoop not, weary, to the welcome land,
Though the dark night is near.*

*And soon that toil shall end;
Soon shalt thou find a summer home and rest,
And scream among thy fellows; reeds shall bend
Soon o'er thy sheltered nest.*

*Thou'rt gone, the abyss of heaven
Hath swallowed up thy form; yet, on my heart
Deeply hath sunk the lesson thou has given,
And shall not soon depart.*

*He who, from zone to zone,
Guides through the boundless sky thy certain flight
In the long way that I must tread alone,
Will lead my step aright.*

WILLIAM CULLEN BRYANT

Little Journeys to Historical Places



Plymouth Rock in Its Shrine

"The chief object of interest here is the granite boulder used by the exiles as a stepping stone from their row boats to the bleak shore of the New World. It lies today where it laid 300 years ago, on the edge of the water of a small bay that is still a harbor for fishermen. But the rock is sheltered now under the stone canopy of a small classic temple."

BEFORE the great European War of 1914, most Americans who had money and leisure for travel, turned their backs on the United States and went to Europe. It is true that our country is new and crude. We have nothing like the ancient cities, palaces, castles and cathedrals of the Old World. We cannot match its galleries filled with long accumulations of art; its buried cities, temples and sculptures that have been unearthed; its picturesque ruins, nor the quaint hamlets and national dress that are parts of a

storied past. And we very rightfully have a feeling of ownership in everything that has been preserved in the countries of our ancestry, for our forefathers had a hand in making and keeping whatever is cherished there today.

Seeing America First

Our mistake was in thinking that America has little of historic interest that is worthy of our love and pride. Then the war, by stopping tourist trips abroad, sent us on voyages of discovery, and on pilgrimages to forgotten

shrines of our own land. Many people from the East went to San Francisco's Panama Exposition and saw the old Spanish missions of the Pacific Coast for the first time. Others returned to their childhood homes "back East" and reexplored the "land of the Pilgrim's pride." Wedding journeys led to Washington, instead of to London and Paris. Thousands spent winter weeks along the old Spanish and French Gulf Coast; and entire populations in the Middle West revived memories of brave deeds in historical pageants.

We suddenly discovered what travelled foreigners have long declared, that we have a national capital as beautiful and interesting as any in Europe; that the Hudson River is as picturesque and almost as storied as the Rhine; and that there are few regions in the United States that lack their places of romantic and historic interest. We have a rock as celebrated, in its way, as Gibraltar; a bridge of world-wide fame; battlefields where heroes fell for noble causes; houses in which great men were born, or where they lived and died; old towns founded by early explorers, and mountain peaks and journeys' ends that mark the limit of human courage and endurance. We have a cracked bell that proclaimed liberty to a listening world; halls that once rang with patriotic eloquence, and mission churches planted by faith in the savage wilderness.

Let us begin with Boston. You could spend a month in this chief city and seaport of New England, and, unless you had a guide-book, and made the best use of your time, you could not see half the things and places connected with Colonial and

Revolutionary history. To see some of them you would have to take a short journey. Every year quite fifty thousand people visit Plymouth, the seaside village where the Pilgrims landed from the Mayflower in 1620. It lies thirty-seven miles south of Boston, and can be reached by train, boat, or by automobile.

Plymouth and Its Famous Rock

The chief object of interest here is the granite boulder used by the exiles as a stepping stone from their rowboats to the bleak shore of the New World. It lies today where it lay three hundred years ago, on the edge of the water of a small bay that is still a harbor for fishermen. But the rock is sheltered now, under the stone canopy of a small classic temple.

The rock, so honored, is of dark gray granite, flecked with mossy green and sparkling with particles of black mica, broken from some mountains of Northern New Hampshire, by the glacial cap that once covered New England. It was carried down to this sandy shore by the slowly moving flood of ice. It is only one, and probably not the largest, of many similar boulders and smaller rocks of the glacial drift that strew the soil of southeastern Massachusetts.

At the beginning of the Revolution that rock was taken to Liberty Pole Square. In hoisting it to a truck to be drawn by twenty decorated oxen, it fell and was broken in two. Daniel Webster delivered one of his most famous orations over it, at the celebration of the second centennial of the landing of the Pilgrims, in 1820. In 1834, it was removed to a place of special honor before the door of Pilgrim Hall.

School boys and girls who were descendants from the Pilgrims of the Mayflower, formed an escort of honor, in Puritan dress. Then in 1880, it was taken back to its old resting place on the shore. The two pieces were cemented together and the temple was built over it.

Lincoln's birthplace is the only other humble thing in America that has been so distinguished. In our sketch of Lincoln we told you about

the Memorial Hall of white marble, at Hodgenville, Kentucky, which encloses the decaying log cabin in which our great president was born. After returning from his tour of the world in 1877, General Grant stood uncovered before Plymouth Rock and said:

"This granite boulder is more inspiring than any National Monument I have ever seen. It marks the spot where religious freedom, foreshadowing political liberty, was brought to America."

No visitor to Plymouth leaves the town without seeing the beautiful Pilgrim Monument. It stands sixty feet high, and is surmounted by a figure of Faith. Around the base stand figures of Religion, Education, Morality and Law and one can spend hours in the museum of Colonial relics in Pilgrim Hall, and a summer afternoon in the old burying ground.

There under broken and mossy stones, lie those of the brave company who died in the first hard years of this first settlement in New England. Many names are familiar to you, for they are recorded in every school history. You are reminded by a pathetic inscription on one stone, that the Captain of the Pilgrim soldiers, Myles Standish, was



The Pilgrim Monument at Provincetown

The Pilgrim monument stands on the spot where the Pilgrims made their first, though not their permanent, landing in America. It is near Provincetown, Massachusetts. The monument is in the Italian Renaissance style. It is a little over 252 feet high, not counting the foundation, and is built of massive granite blocks. Each corner is reinforced by six twisted steel rods extending from the foundation clear to the top of the tower. Four stout steel bands are placed at intervals along the tower to strengthen it further.

The Bridge at Concord



It was at the point where this bridge stands that the English soldiers were halted by the Minute Men. The bridge, as you can see, has undergone a good deal of repair since that time. At the north end you can see French's statue of the "Minute Man"; a farmer boy in bronze who has dropped the plow handle and seized his gun.

soon bereft of Rose, his sweet English bride, and left a lonely, broken-hearted man.

The Bridge at Concord

Twenty miles north of Boston, between the villages of Concord and Lexington, a small wooden bridge, on stone piers, spans the Concord River. In appearance it differs very little from hundreds of other bridges in America, but it is one of the most famous little structures in the world. On a bronze tablet at the Lexington end, is recorded the fact that here, on April 19th, 1775, was shed the first blood of the Revolution.

The smallest history tells the story of how eight hundred British reg-

ulars were sent from Boston to capture, or destroy, the arms and ammunition collected by the Minute Men at Concord. By his midnight ride "through every Middlesex village and farm," Paul Revere alarmed the country. The Red Coats were halted at the bridge, and the stone walls that fenced the fields were soon lined with patriots. A third of the British were killed and the rest were chased back to Boston. So here is where:

*"The embattled farmers stood,
And fired the shot heard 'round the world."*

The whole neighborhood is historic. On the village Common of Lexington stands a beautiful monu-

ment which bears the names of the eighty-eight Minute Men who fell in the battle. And north of the bridge is Daniel Chester French's statue of The Minute Man. A farmer boy in bronze, he has dropped the plow handle and seized his gun. The town of Concord, also, is famous as the home of Emerson, Hawthorne, Thoreau and Louisa Alcott, and the houses where they lived and wrote their books are always pointed out to visitors.

You can return to Boston through Cambridge, a western suburb of the city, and see venerable Harvard University, and the historic elm tree, under which Washington took command of the Continental Army in June, 1775. He made his headquarters in a beautiful Colonial mansion—Craigie House. This, very wonderfully preserved, is now a literary as well as a historic shrine, for it was the Cambridge home of the poet Longfellow. A memorial filled with relics, it is open to the public. But Cambridge is so rich in associations that it needs a day to itself, and so does the old seaport city of Salem, with its customs house and the places made famous by Hawthorne's romances.

After seeing Concord and Lexington one should return to Boston over the road followed by the twenty thousand Minute Men who camped on the hills north of the harbor, and fought the battle of Bunker Hill.

The Minute Men and the Famous Hill

Bunker Hill Monument

General Gage had ten thousand British regulars in Boston, many cannon, and armed naval vessels in the harbor, while the patriots had only their old flintlocks and scant

supplies of powder. Nevertheless they fortified Breed's Hill, an eminence one hundred feet high, and connected with Bunker Hill by a ridge. General Gage decided to drive this "rabble," as he called them, from their earthworks. From hills, upper stories and decked house tops, all Boston watched the fight. Three times the British swept up the slope, only to be driven back by sheets of rifle fire. Then, their ammunition exhausted, the patriots retreated, with a loss of General Warren and four hundred and forty-nine men. The British did not pursue them for they had more than a thousand of their dead to bury.

The most conspicuous object in the landscape of Boston today is the tapering monolith of granite known as Bunker Hill monument, built to commemorate a lost battle that was a dear victory to our oppressors. All the colonies were soon in arms, rallying to the help of the patriots who, with their gunstocks, stones and bare fists, had defended their liberty against the King's cannon. The monument rises two hundred and twenty-one feet above the center of the earthworks that were thrown up on the hill. The corner stone was laid by the Marquis de Lafayette, on the fiftieth anniversary of the battle, and Daniel Webster was the orator of the day. Since its completion in 1842, there have been few days in which visitors have not toiled up the nearly three hundred steps within the tower. From that dizzy height there is a panoramic view of one of the most historic landscapes in America.

A Lost Battle that Helped to Victory

While these brave deeds were being done in Boston, events of equal importance were going forward in

Philadelphia. News of the battle of Lexington stirred all the colonies to action. Within three weeks the Second Continental Congress assembled in the old State House of Pennsylvania Colony, and declared war on England. And a few days after the battle of Bunker Hill Colonel George Washington was elected Commander in Chief of the Continental Army. History was made fast in those stirring days. A year later the Declaration of Independence was signed, and proclaimed.

Independence Hall and Liberty Bell

The building that had the honor of being the birthplace of our nation is still standing in the heart of the city of Philadelphia. It is a plain, two-storied, brick structure, of a good Dutch Colonial design, and so well built that it has a solid, dignified appearance today, although it was erected many years before the Revolution began. It was long the largest and handsomest public hall in America.

Broad steps lead up to a wide entrance door in the middle of the front. This is flanked by four windows on either side, fitted with many small panes of glass. A row of nine windows above lights the large rooms of the upper floor. The roof slopes gently up from the four sides to a flat, railed platform. Every colonial seaport had its decked housetops from which people watched arriving and departing sailing vessels. From the middle of this State House deck a square clock tower and bell cupola springs. This was built in 1752 when a bronze bell was brought from London to hang in it.

The Continental Congress held

its sittings in the east room on the main floor. The flooring of broad, white oak planks has had to be renewed, but the chairs and tables are historic relics, and around the exact copy of the Declaration of Independence on the wall hang the portraits of nearly all the signers of the famous document. The whole building is a historical American portrait gallery. Upstairs are pictures of many officers of the Continental Army, in their uniforms of blue and buff, some wearing cocked hats. There are portraits of distinguished foreigners who fought with Washington, and of members of the Constitutional Convention of 1787. "Lady" Washington smiles down from one wall, and the portrait of King George III, who lost this splendid colonial empire for England, hangs above a landing of the staircase.

There are, besides, many relics: a piece of William Penn's "Treaty Elm"; two of his chairs; Washington's sofa and the church pew that he used when president; Benjamin West's painting of Penn's treaty with the Delaware Indians; old books, newspapers, posters, letters, colonial costumes, the original rattlesnake flag, and Franklin's first lightning rod. And tucked away in a small hall at the rear of the stairs, where it can be rescued through a back door in case of fire, Liberty Bell stands on a truck.

It is a strange thing to find this inscription: "Proclaim Liberty Throughout the Land, and Unto all the Inhabitants Thereof," around the rim, for the prophetic legend was cast in the bell nearly a quarter of a century before its wild and joyous clamor called the people to In-

*Memories of
Continental
Congress*

*Where
Independence
Was Born*

*The Prophecy
in the
Old Bell*

Where the Great Declaration Was Signed



John Hancock sat in the high-backed chair behind this very table when he wrote his big, bold signature across the bottom of the Declaration of Independence. The table is Sheraton in design and has real drawers on one side, false ones on the other. It was made by an unknown cabinet-maker in Philadelphia about 1745, for the use of the Assembly of the Province of Pennsylvania. That body gave the Continental Congress, which drew up the Declaration of Independence, the use of its quarters in Philadelphia and that is how the famous document came to be signed on this table.

The high-backed chair is in the other famous English style of that period—Chippendale. It is hand-carved with designs which are typical of the future of this country—wheat stalks, waterfalls, horns of plenty, a sunburst and mushrooms. The two chairs at the sides have mahogany frames and were originally upholstered in horse-hide studded with brass tacks. Like the table, they are Sheraton, and have the graceful lines characteristic of that style. The legs of the high-backed chair show a little Chinese influence in the abundance of their decorations. This furniture is part of the collection of interesting historic relics in Independence Hall, Philadelphia.

The Famous Charge Across the Wheat Field



One old soldier sitting on the rocks at Gettysburg is pointing out where General Pickett made his famous charge across the wheat field, at the fiftieth anniversary of the great battle. One of the most touching sights at the celebration was that feature of the program when a number of the old men who took part in that charge came trotting over the same wheat field carrying umbrellas instead of bayonets as they did on that momentous third day in July, 1863. At what is known as the "Wide Angle," where so many brave soldiers fell, these survivors of Pickett's men were received with outstretched arms and cheers by the old survivors of the army and navy; "You Yankees," as the heroes of this second charge were called, had tears in their eyes.

dependence Square to hear the first reading of the Declaration of Independence. In tolling it for the death of Chief Justice Marshall in 1835, the bell was cracked, and it has not been rung since 1842. In 1876 it was lowered from the cupola, to be exhibited at Philadelphia's Centennial Exposition, and has never been rehung. The people of distant parts of the country were so eager to see the sacred old voice of liberty, that it was loaned several times. But hereafter it will remain at home. It is too precious a relic to run the risk of journeys by land and sea. Visitors to Independence Hall stand with hats off, and gaze with reverence upon the old cracked and time-blackened bronze bell that so strangely fulfilled its mission to "Proclaim Liberty."

On the Field of Gettysburg

If you should ever go through Philadelphia to Washington, take the longer route, southwestward, and break the journey at Gettysburg. This site of the most famous battlefield of the Civil War is now a national park, and the consecrated burial ground of the many thousand soldiers from seventeen states who perished there. It lies directly north of Baltimore, and just within the southern boundary of Pennsylvania.

Any history will give you an account of this terrible battle which raged during the first three days of July, 1863, over twenty square miles of a beautiful landscape of hills, woods and winding streams. The Confederate and Union Armies engaged each numbered about 80,000

*Where
Brave Men
Fell*

men; and when General Lee began his retreat, on the saddest Fourth of July our country ever experienced, he left 30,000 brave boys in gray, dead or wounded, on the field. The Union army suffered a loss of 23,000.

Immediately after the battle, Governor Curtin of Pennsylvania organized field hospitals to care for the wounded; and Mr. David Wills of Gettysburg marked the graves of the dead. Seventeen states hastened to appropriate money to buy a burial plot in the center of the battlefield. Standing on a beautiful eminence from which there was a wide view, it was named Cemetery Hill. A landscape gardener planned the grounds, and to the unknown dead was assigned a plot in a vast series of semi-circles, in which each grave was marked by a small head stone. A beautiful monument now rises above this city of the dead.

On November 19th, 1863, four and a half months after the battle, Gettysburg Cemetery was dedicated, and President Lincoln made his immortal address of fewer than three hundred words. The speech was

Lincoln's cast on a bronze tablet
Immortal and set on the face of
Speech the monument which, towering sixty feet above the graves, is surmounted by a statue of Liberty holding a flag and a laurel wreath.

It seemed that the country could never do enough to honor the fallen on this field of supreme sacrifice. When the war was over, southern states marked the Confederate lines of battle, and northern states the positions held by their regiments. Then Congress purchased 1380 acres, more than two square miles of country, covering every hotly contested point of the battle. Tablets were set up, bridges and steel observation towers were built, cannon

General View of the City of the Dead



This is a general view of the National Cemetery. It shows the New York State Monument in the background and the National Monument on the right. The National Monument is sixty feet high surmounted by a figure of Liberty. In the marble around the base are designs symbolizing war, history, peace, and plenty. This statue marks the spot where Lincoln delivered his immortal speech when the cemetery was dedicated in 1863.

PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

The City of Seven Thousand Tents



What a tremendous "City of Tents"! More than 7000 tents were pitched at the great Gettysburg anniversary, July 1st to 4th, 1913. This was done under the supervision of the War Department. As her share of the expense Pennsylvania appropriated \$450,000, and more than \$1,000,000 was spent by the National Government and states for the entertainment of the veterans.

Where Friend and Foe Drank Together



This is what is known as "Spangler's Spring" on the southeast slope of Culp's Hill on the Gettysburg field. Soldiers of both armies drank water here and mingled together freely during the night of July 2nd, a day which had seen some of the fiercest fighting of the three days' battle.

OUR NATIONAL SHRINES

General Warren Watching the Battle



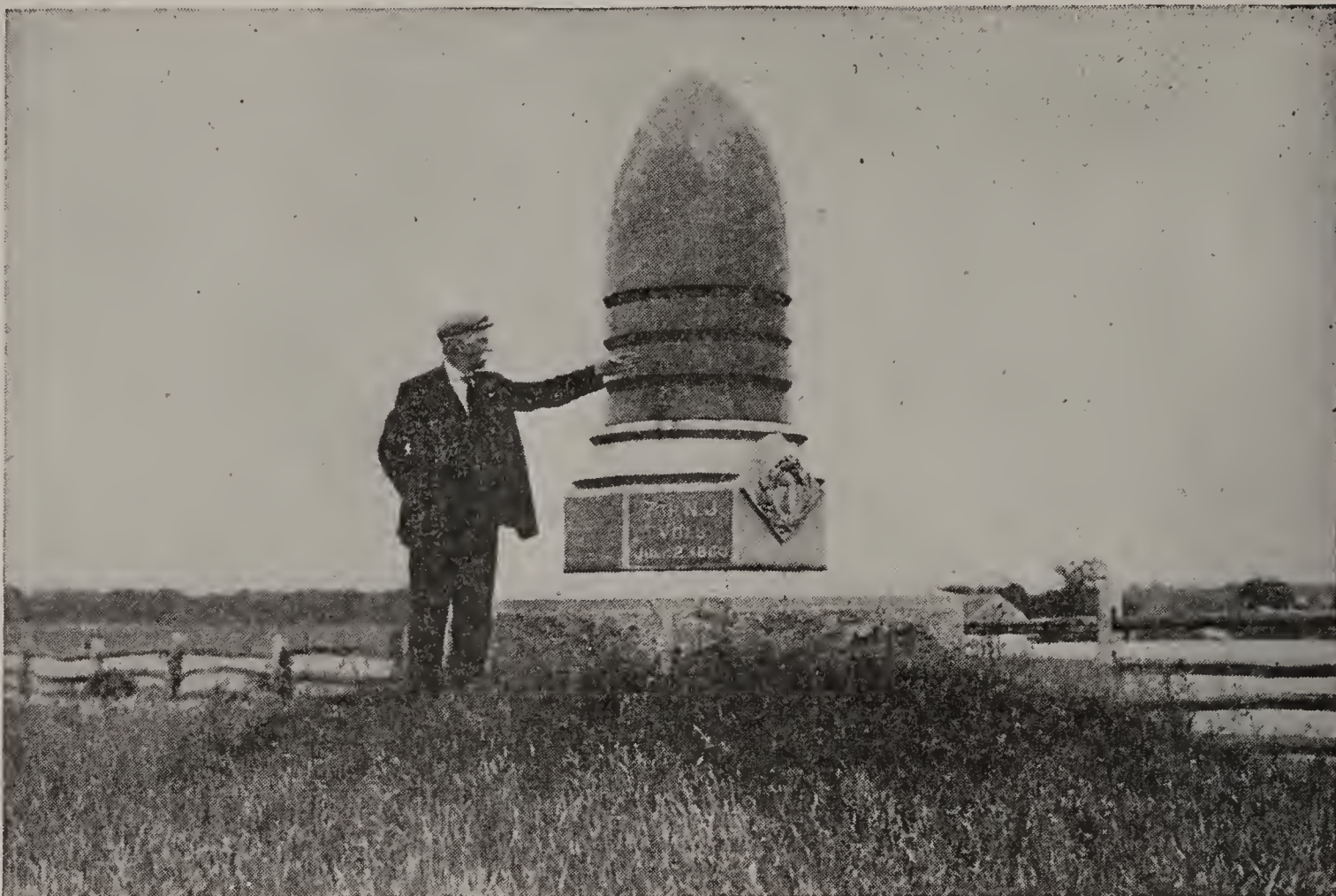
Don't you have to look twice to tell that one of these men is a statue? The man overlooking the field is General Warren, just as he stood watching the battle from Little Round Top. He is standing right on the spot from which he watched the battle. You can tell that he has a field glass in his hand—you can just see the edge of it—and on his right hip hangs the case that holds it. General Warren was Chief of Engineers of the Union Army when the Third Army Corps was attacked July 2nd. He rode Little Round Top and surveying the field, much as you see him here, saw at once the importance of holding this hill. He also saw a column of Confederates under General Law advancing to seize it. It was then occupied only by a signal corps.

How Little Round Top Was Held



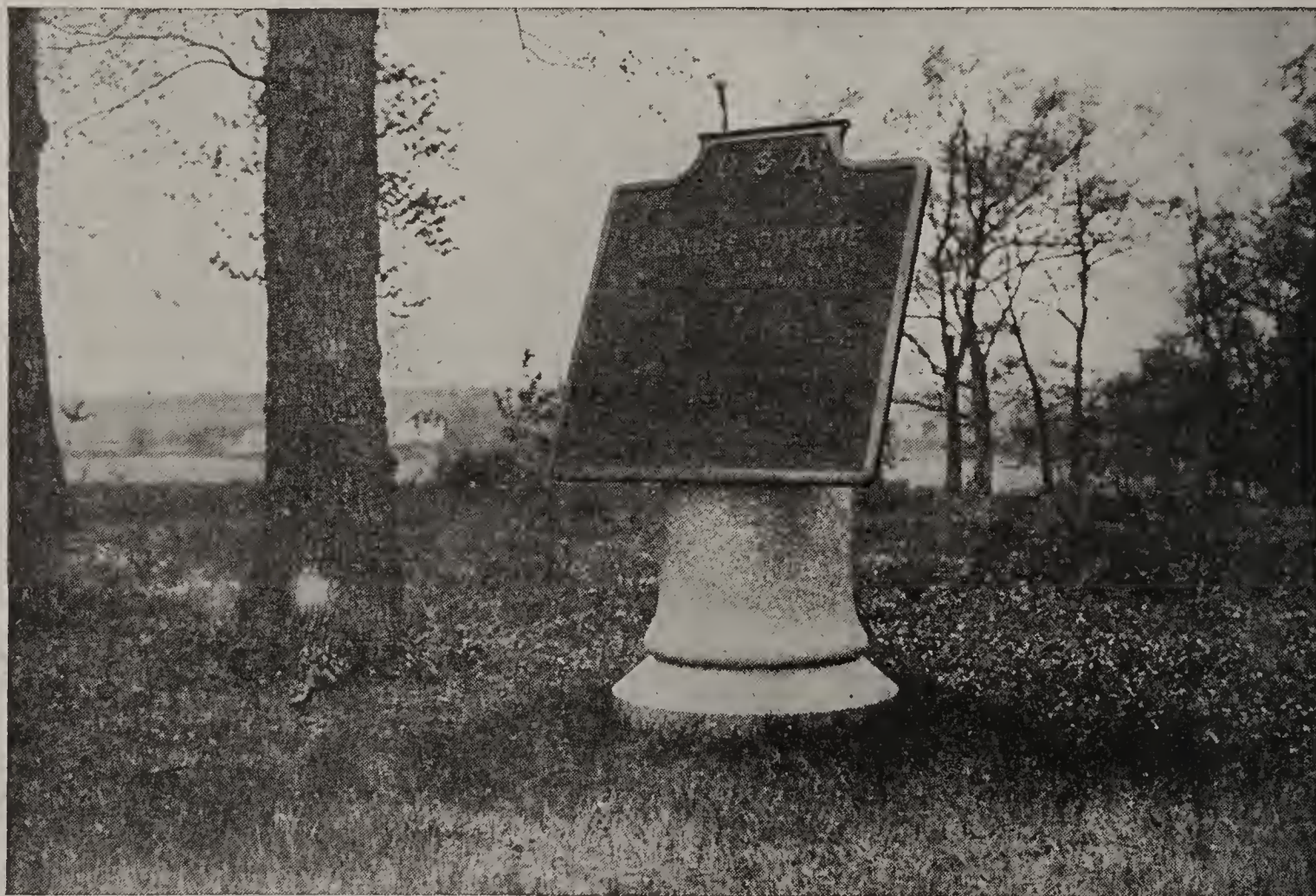
This shows the breastworks of the 95th Pennsylvania Volunteers and the 140th New York Volunteers on the front slope of Little Round Top. It was breastworks like this, and the advantages of the position, that enabled the Union soldiers to hold Little Round Top in spite of the desperate attacks of the Confederates.

The Minnie Ball Monument



This monument to the 7th New Jersey Volunteers is a reproduction in granite of the minnie ball used by the Union forces. Captain Geo. W. Zeigler, a noted Union veteran, is here pointing out the scene on the battlefield where the soldiers fell, to whose memory this monument is erected.

Monument to the Confederate Dead



This is one of the typical Confederate monuments to be seen in all parts of the Gettysburg field. The inscription you see here is to Scales's Brigade of North Virginia, and the 13th, 16th, 22nd, 34th and 38th North Carolina Infantry.

OUR NATIONAL SHRINES

One of Maryland's Tributes to Her Sons



This is a memorial of the members of the First Regiment, Eastern Shore, Maryland Volunteer Infantry, and shows the sharpshooter behind the breastworks. As the sharpshooters are famous for their marksmanship and were of more value than the average soldier, they did their shooting from hidden places, but they were really in quite as much danger as the men in the open field, for there were comparatively few of them and the enemy was apt to locate their hiding places and turn their fire upon them.

Monuments to the Cavalryman's Noble Friend



Here's another Pennsylvania monument, as you will see by the state coat-of-arms. It was erected to the 17th Pennsylvania Cavalry and stands on Buford Avenue in this great city of the dead. It is one of the most striking monuments in the field. Both the trooper and the horse are life size. You will notice in this cavalry monument, as in many others on the field, the noble horse is remembered as well as the man.

The most famous horse in the battle was General Meade's "Old Baldy," so called because he had a big white mark on his forehead and on down to the end of his faithful old nose. He was bought by General Meade in the fall of '61 and used continuously in all his campaigns. In the fighting of July 2nd he was seriously wounded and sent to the rear. He was slow in recovering and took no further part in the war, but was used by General Meade as a saddle horse for a number of years after the war. He survived his master many years and followed him in the funeral cortege to the grave.

The Garden at Mount Vernon



This is the part of the garden at Mount Vernon that contained the flowers. And it, no doubt, looks very much as it did in Washington's day, for the life of a country gentleman was his delight, and he kept a personal eye on every detail of the upkeep of his beautiful estate.

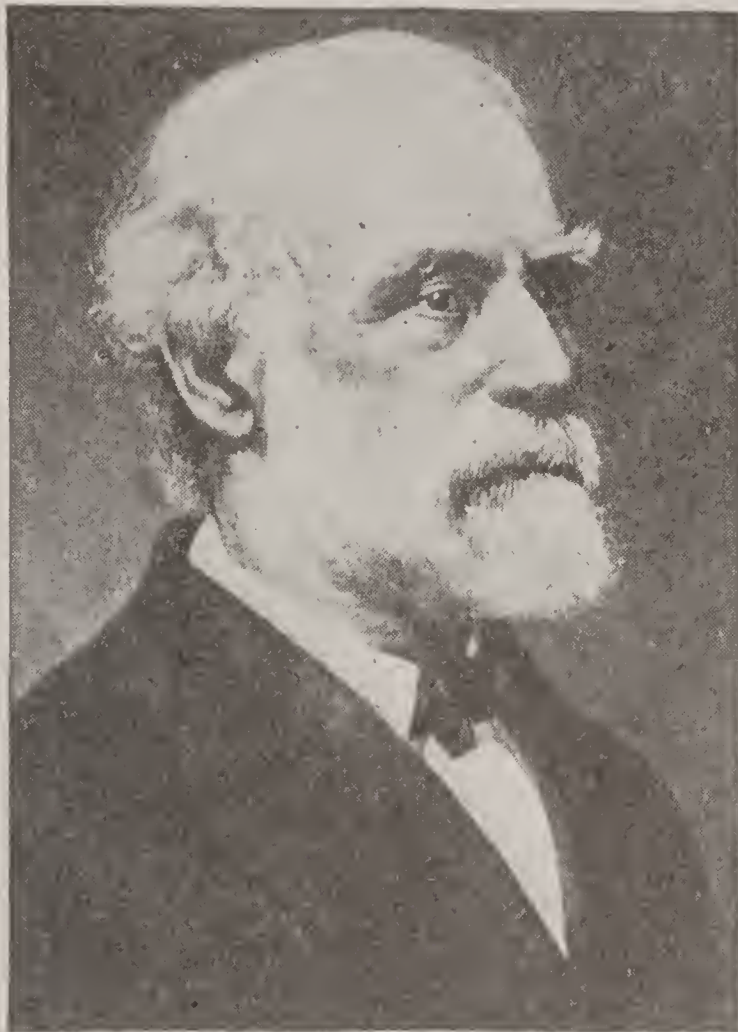
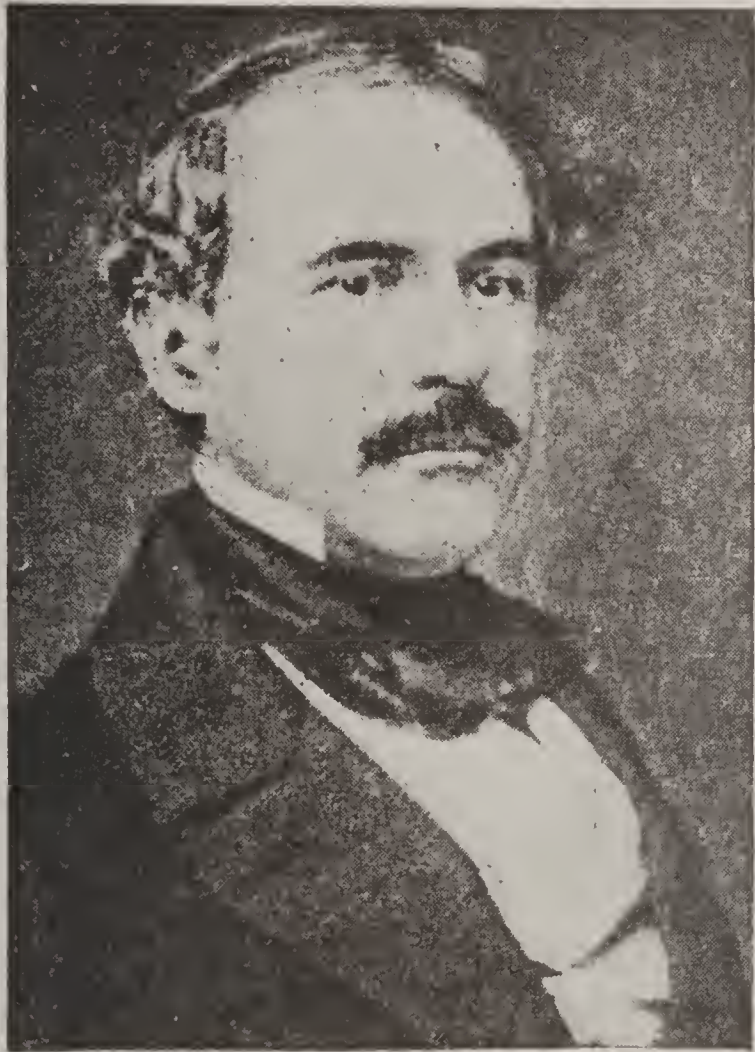
marked the positions of batteries and equestrian statues of the commanders were cast in bronze. Then Gettysburg was made a National Park, with an annual appropriation of \$75,000 for its care.

Today, seventeen miles of roads and winding avenues have been opened, three hundred and twenty monuments unveiled, and two hundred and fifty cannon mounted. The shattered stone walls have been rebuilt and the woods replanted. Military maps guide visitors to Little Round Top, the Peach Orchard and a dozen other famous spots. Old soldiers hold their reunions here; raise their tent cities and camp with their dead comrades. In all the world, perhaps, there is no other battlefield so reverently cherished as the field of Gettysburg.

The Home of Washington

Fifteen miles down the Potomac from the National Capital lies Mount Vernon, the plantation home of Washington. April or May is the best time to visit it, for then the valley wears its dress of tenderest green, the air is soft, and the sun shines warm on the rippling water of the historic river. For miles you can look back and see the dome of the Capitol Building lifted two hundred and sixty-eight feet in the air, and farther away still, on a clear day, the monolith of the Washington monument can be seen cleaving the sky to a height of five hundred and fifty-five feet. It brings a thrill to every American heart to think that the loftiest memorial ever erected to any man has been raised to the father of our country.

Two Portraits of General Lee



These two portraits of Robert E. Lee are very interesting. The first shows him as a young man in the days before the Civil War, and the other after he became President of Washington College, now Washington and Lee University. On graduating from West Point, which he entered at eighteen, he joined the United States engineering corps. He took part in the Mexican War and was repeatedly distinguished for his ability and courage. After the Mexican War, he resumed his work as engineer in Washington and in Baltimore. In both portraits we can see great force, intellect, and character. What he said to his son when he entered him at West Point in 1852, he had previously said to himself: "'Duty' is the sublimest word in the language; you can not do more than your duty; you should never wish to do less." It was his conception of his duty that led him to espouse the cause of his native state, rather than that of the nation at the beginning of the Civil War.

Trolley cars and boats always stop at Alexandria, Virginia, to give tourists time to see Christ Church, a quaint, old, ivy-covered Gothic structure of stone where Washington, and, after him, Robert E. Lee worshipped. Here, too, is Arlington, once the beautiful home and great estate of the Lee family, but now a national cemetery, where thousands of soldiers of the Civil War lie buried.

Mount Vernon has a pier of its own, just as in the days when the tobacco from the 8000 acre estate was shipped to London. The house, a plain wooden mansion a hundred feet long, and fronted by a two-

storied, pillared veranda, stands on a sloping lawn on a bluff that rises two hundred feet above the Potomac. This elevated situation gives it an extended view of the river, and the bordering hills and meadows of Maryland and Virginia. Washington loved this charming landscape which greeted his eyes every morning. But he left it at the call of duty, in May, 1775, and saw very little of it until after his retirement from the presidency twenty-two years later.

The great plantation was long ago cut up into numerous farms. The mansion and the two hundred acres around it were bought by the

ladies of the Mount Vernon Association, and restored to their old condition. The lawn is still shaded by trees planted by Washington and by distinguished guests; and every summer Mrs. Washington's flower garden is gay with her favorite blossoms.

The house never was as beautiful or impressive as Arlington, Westover, or many other colonial mansions of the Old South, but it was a well-built, commodious residence, and the eight tall and massive pillars that support the veranda roof were each squared from a single forest tree. And it was handsomely furnished, as was suitable to a family of wealth and position. Many of the fine pieces of mahogany furniture, and elegant appointments of living, have been found and restored to their old places.

If Washington had been as great an Englishman as he was an American he would have been buried in the chill splendor of Westminster Abbey, far from the home he loved and the wife of his youth. We are glad he lies here, in a tomb near the carriage gate, under the sun and stars and within sound of the rippling waters of the Potomac.

The Lincoln Home in Springfield

The only other house in our country that arouses the same sentiments as Mount Vernon, is the Lincoln Home in Springfield, Illinois. This is a plain, two-storied frame house of about ten rooms, such as any country town doctor or lawyer might own. It stands on the corner of Jackson and Eighth Streets, several blocks from the public square, and when built probably had plenty of open prairie around it. Now the

*Memories
of the
Great Man*

section is closely built up with modest homes, and the Lincoln house is crowded on its small frontage. The lot is a couple of feet higher than the sidewalk, the rise faced with stone and topped with a picket fence. Only a narrow strip of lawn separates the fence from the house, and a flight of steps leads up through the gate to the entrance door.

A connected parlor and library open from one side of the middle hall, and from the other a sitting room and dining room. There is nothing of intrinsic beauty or value in the house or its contents, as there is at Mount Vernon. But it is the place that sheltered our martyred president for many years, and now it is a museum of relics which recall him to our memories. The place is filled with the furniture he used, the books he read, the letters he wrote, his numerous portraits and photographs, the hundreds of books written about him, the tributes paid to him, and pictures of the many monuments, bas-reliefs and tablets that have been set up in his honor.

An endless procession of people sit at Lincoln's old walnut secretary, and inscribe their names in the visitors' book, and then spend hours studying the eloquent records of his simple, heroic life and tragic death. It brings one nearer to Lincoln to realize that he spent many obscure years of quiet devotion to ordinary duties in this plain American home in a small Western city. In striking contrast to the circumstances of his every day life is the splendid marble monument which towers above his tomb in Springfield cemetery.

A Visit to Old Jamestown

There are two comfortable ways of travel by which you can reach

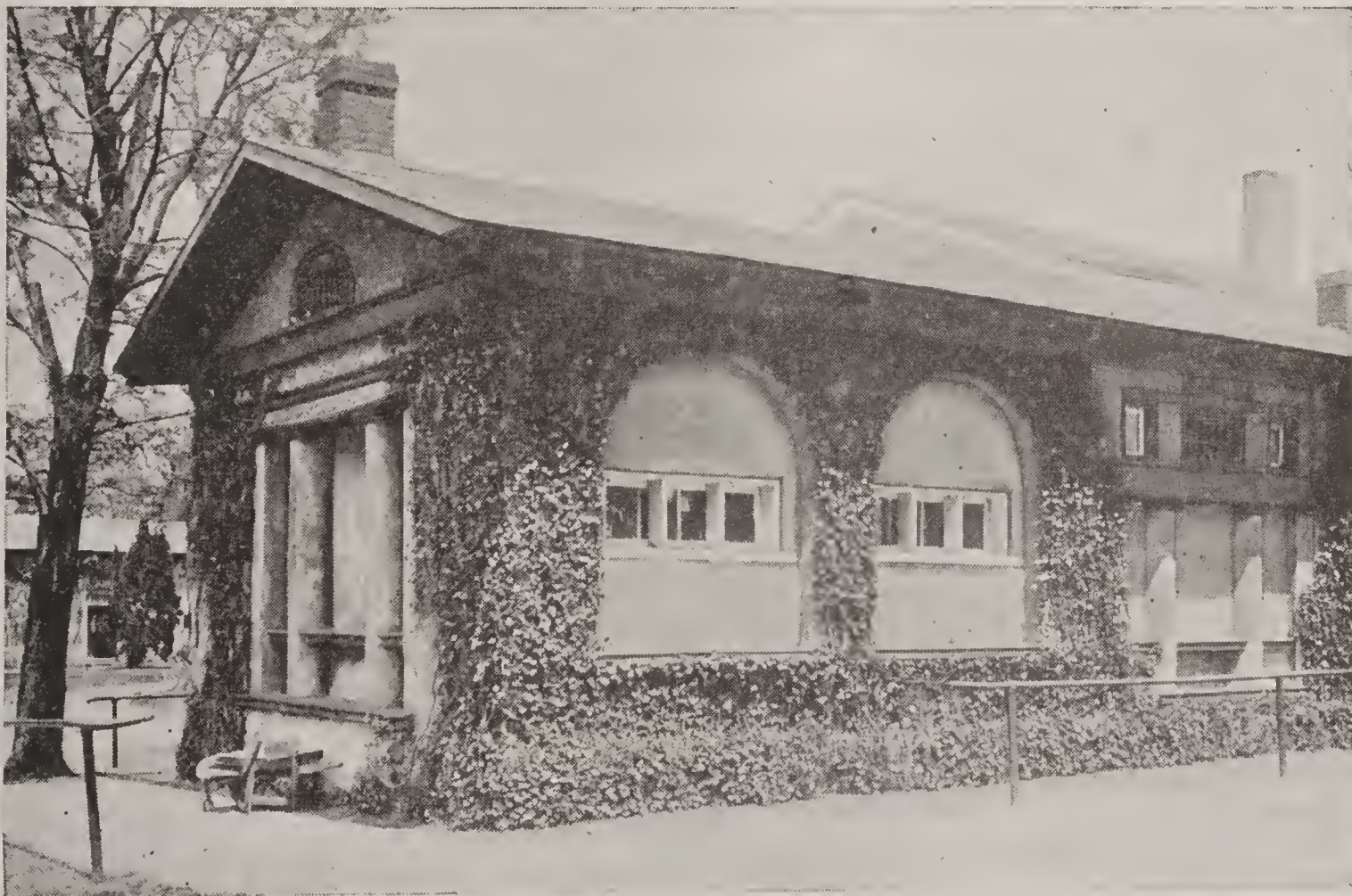
OUR NATIONAL SHRINES

Arlington, The Home of Lee



The home of the Lees at Arlington was, as you see, built in the colonial style with a high porch and Grecian pillars of the Doric order. Arlington was the beautiful estate of Mary Custis, great granddaughter of Martha Washington. It lies opposite the city of Washington on the Potomac and is now used as a national cemetery. There Lee lived for 30 years and until the outbreak of the Civil War. Being so near Washington, it was directly on the line of defense of the Capital and immediately fell into the hands of the North.

A Portion of the Servants' Quarters at Arlington



A regard for the comfort and well-being of everyone for whom he was in any way responsible, was one of the finest traits of Lee, and we can see here what comfortable quarters were provided for the colored people on the Arlington estate. The affectionate title, "Marse Robert," which they always used in speaking of or to their master, became the one which was applied to the great military leader by the people throughout the South.

the deserted site of this first English settlement in America. One is by railway through Richmond, Virginia. The other is to take one of

*Water Trip
to the His-
toric Site*

the excursion steamers which ply the historic waters of Chesapeake Bay, at Baltimore or Washington. The water route takes you to a number of places connected with the Revolution, the War of 1812 and the Civil War. And then, running thirty-five miles up the broad estuary of the James River, you can land on the same swampy peninsula, jutting from the north bank, on which the London Company landed its ill-fated colonists in May, 1607.

Jamestown Point is almost as wild and uninhabited today as it was more than three centuries ago, for the site is low and marshy. It was chosen for the settlement for the reason that a short stockade set up across the neck of the peninsula made it easily defensible against the Indians. It was convenient, too, to the sailing vessels of old days. So, although it was extremely unhealthy, The Point was occupied until 1700, when it was abandoned for the new capital at Williamsburg. Nothing marks the place now as the capital of Virginia colony for almost a century, except the fallen slabs in a weedy, briar-grown graveyard, and the crumbling tower of the little stone church in which the Princess Pocahontas was married to the English John Rolfe.

Williamsburg was the capital of Virginia until 1780, when, threatened by the army of Cornwallis at Yorktown, the seat of state government was removed to Richmond. The road northward to Williamsburg, from Jamestown landing, is lined with some of the oldest plan-

tations in America, with their colonial mansions and clusters of negro cabins. It is such a busy, modern little town of 2500 people, today, that it is difficult to imagine it the center of stirring Revolutionary days in Virginia. But its principal thoroughfare is still named Duke of Gloucester Street, and there are the venerable buildings of William and Mary College, whose doors were opened to students in 1693. Thomas Jefferson is numbered among its alumni, and in the ancient Hall of Burgesses the future author of the Declaration of Independence was stirred by the fiery eloquence of Patrick Henry.

But, somehow, when we think of the ivy-covered church tower, and the neglected graves on the desolate marsh of The Point, we wish all those brave things might have happened in Old Jamestown which, for nearly a hundred years, kept the lamp of civilization burning in the wilderness of Virginia.

St. Augustine and the First White Settlement

No tourist to the east coast of Florida misses seeing this picturesque Spanish city, where, in 1565, was made the first white settlement in the United States. A popular winter resort, on the way to Palm Beach and Miami, it stands on Matanzas Sound, two miles from the ocean, and thirty-seven miles south of Jacksonville.

The Spaniards were not concerned about clearing farms and making homes. It was soldiers, gold seekers and missionaries who penetrated each new colony and built a beautiful little walled capital in the wilderness. St. Augustine, like Havana, had its fortress, its governor's pal-

The Old City Gates at St. Augustine



These gates are the most picturesque of St. Augustine's ruins. The two pillars are in the Moorish style of architecture and are surmounted by what the architects call "pomegranates" because they are shaped like the fruit of that name. The wall once extended from the old fort, a short distance to the east, across the peninsula to San Sebastian on the west, thus fortifying the town against all approaches by land. These gates stand at the end of St. George Street, the principal avenue of St. Augustine.

ace, its church and monastery, and many handsome residences. Native quarries of coquina, or shell con-

How St. Augustine Was Built

crete, a very hard stone as white as marble, were worked by enslaved Indians for quite a hundred years, to build St. Augustine. The fortress of San Marco, completed in 1742, was so well built that it is used today as Fort Monroe. The Franciscan monastery serves as barracks for our soldiers, and the post office is housed in the governor's palace. The old gate pillars, twenty feet high, with fragments of the ancient wall are still standing; the Spanish coat-of-arms is emblazoned on the ends of the bridge, and there is the

black dungeon which, among its many prisoners, numbered the famous Seminole chief, Osceola.

The town is, today, as Spanish as any old city of Spain. Crowded, as it was, within stone walls, and at one time containing a population of twenty-five thousand people, it is full of narrow, cobble-paved lanes, overhanging balconies gay with blossoming plants, red-tiled roofs, patios filled with palms and oleanders, and tinkling with fountains. Many new buildings have been erected for the comfort and pleasure of the tourists who visit the place every winter, but hotels, casinos and the mile-long, seawall promenade, all built in the Spanish style.

Standing on the yellow sands, beside the blue water, drenched with sunshine, and shaded by dark magnolias and feathery palms, St. Augustine makes a strange, exotic

Spanish names on any map of the region. Santa Fe, settled in 1582, is the second oldest city in our country, and the mission of San Miguel there is the oldest church in

The "Oldest House" in St. Augustine



The framed statement on the right of the entrance to the garden tells you that this is the "oldest house" in St. Augustine. But it is a good deal like the boy's jack knife. You remember it had entirely new blades and a new handle. So, probably, if the house which used to stand on this spot was still there it would be the oldest house in St. Augustine, but, as you can see, the weatherboarding and shingles are very modern. This kind of "improving" was done a good many years ago when the rich people who built villas for their winter residences in St. Augustine were pulling down most of the old houses, and the people of humble means followed their example by "remodeling." One proprietor of a boarding house had a picturesque old coquina wall pulled down because it obstructed his view, and put up a picket fence instead. It was even proposed to pull down those old city gates for the stone that was in them, but fortunately, they stopped at that and now nobody values the relics of the old days more than the people of St. Augustine.

picture, a vision of a vanished past. Except in the tourist season, when it is filled with pleasure seekers, it seems silent and deserted, for, with only five thousand inhabitants, three-fourths of the old houses are empty. A charmed city of dreams, it sleeps in the sun beside a semi-tropic sea.

The "Independence Hall" of Texas

Coming up from Mexico, the Spaniards founded a number of towns in Texas, New Mexico and Arizona, as you can easily see by the many

America north of the Rio Grande. But the mission church of Del Alamo, in San Antonio, is the most famous, although it was not completed until 1744. It is the Independence Hall of Texas.

Any resident of the city will point out the plain, old building with its massive walls of adobe, or sun-dried bricks. Once, no doubt, it had a garden around it, kept green by irrigation, for "Alamo" is the Spanish name of the poplar tree, or the cottonwood so common in our Southwest wherever there is

water. But now the church stands in the heart of the city, shut in by streets of little shops and markets.

Texas, you know, was once a part of Mexico, and had to fight for its freedom from Spain. That was gained in 1821, but by that time a large part of the population of Texas consisted of emigrants from our southern states. These, used to the orderly, progressive government of the United States, found Mexican rule intolerable. So, in 1835, they began a revolution which lasted ten years. Then they set up a republic in Texas and asked for annexation to the United States. This involved our country in the Mexican War of 1845.

The most famous battle of Texas's long war for liberty was fought in San Antonio, and involved only one hundred and fifty of the bravest patriots of the state. Determined to hold the town

*The Brave
Fight at
The Alamo*

against an army of several thousands of Mex-

icans under General Santa Anna, this little band of defenders took refuge in the Alamo, mounted cannon on its thick walls, and raised a new flag—a big white star on a striped field. Texas, today, is called the Lone Star State. Singing a new song: "Up with your

banner, freedom," they waited for the attack.

One of the soldiers in this famous edifice turned into a fort was Davy Crockett, a frontiersman as bold and resourceful as Daniel Boone. His favorite phrase was: "Be sure you're right, then go ahead." Another was Colonel Bowie, after whom the Bowie knife was named. A third was the gallant young Colonel Travis. With such men the only answer to a demand for surrender was a derisive shout and a cannon shot. Through port-holes Crockett and other sharpshooters picked off Mexican gunners. The little garrison held out until food, water and powder were exhausted, and all but six men had been killed. When the Mexicans broke in, to put the rest to the sword, for they gave no quarter to prisoners, they found Crockett wounded but barricaded behind a heap of his fallen comrades, his sure finger on the trigger. Every one of that brave little band perished, but their souls went marching on. All Texas was roused to fight to the death for freedom from Mexican rule.

So this old mission church is the cradle of Texan liberty. Texas rangers went into every battle of the Mexican War with the rallying

Ruins of the Alamo at San Antonio

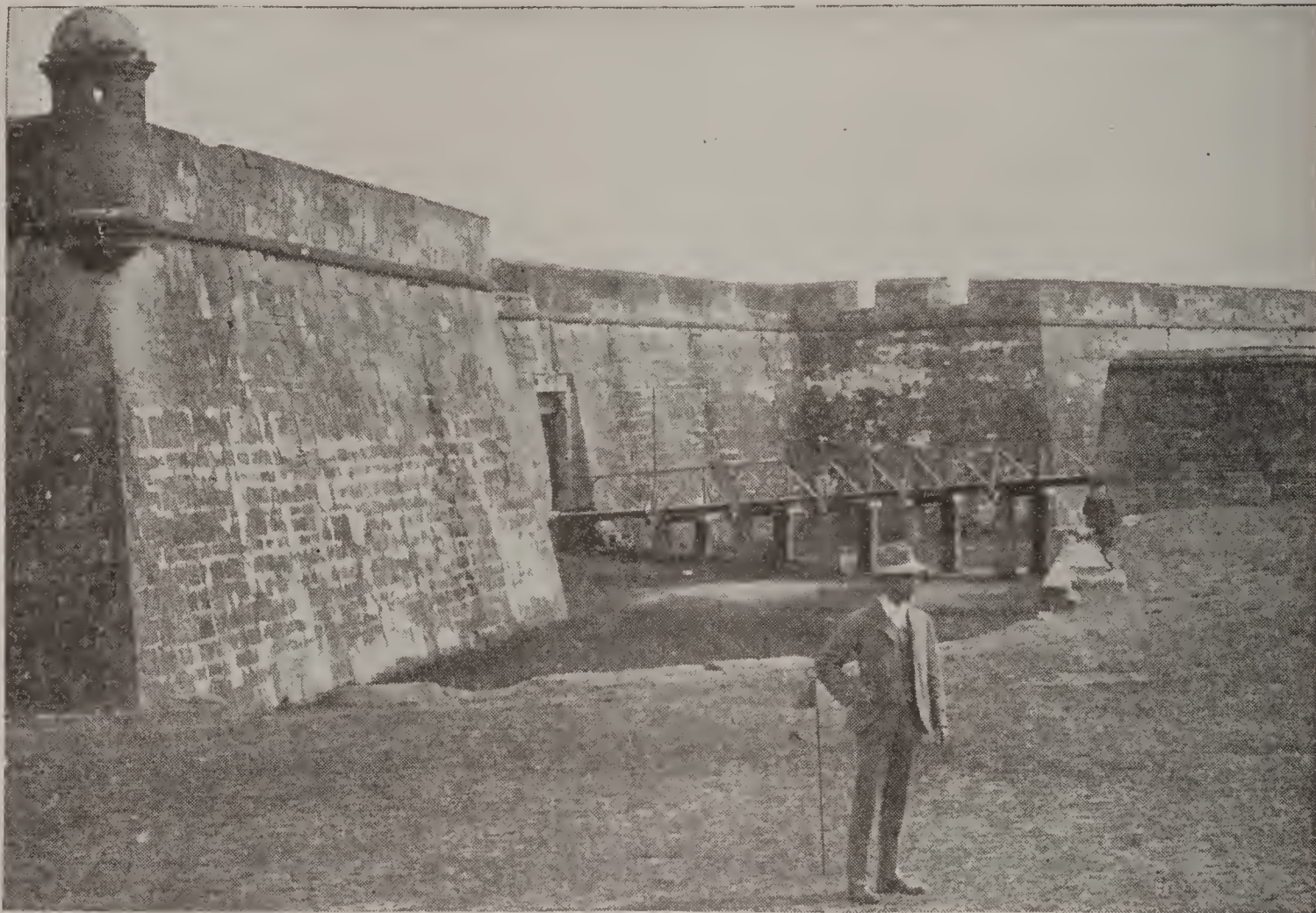


This is all that is left of the fort in which the men of Texas—only 150 of them, against 4,000 Mexicans—made their historic defense. The building was originally erected for a mission and was used for religious purposes until 1793. Then because its walls, as you see, were so thick and strong, it was converted into a fort.

cry: "Remember The Alamo!" The phrase is used in song and story, and wherever men urge one another to some supreme test of courage and lofty patriotism.

its cells for the Brothers, its guest rooms, workshops, store rooms and school rooms. The good, simple Mission furniture is made in many of them, and Indian and Spanish

The Old Spanish Fort



Here you see the walls and the moat of the old Spanish fort at St. Augustine. The bridge which now spans the moat is a modern structure of pine, but in the old days at the gate there, which was the only entrance, was a portcullis with machinery for hoisting and lowering the draw-bridge as they did it in Scott's poems and in story books of the Middle Ages. This bridge connected with another that extended part way across the moat. When you visit the old fort you can go through secret passages and into the dungeon just as you would in a story-book castle. And they show you the furnace for heating shot to make it as unpleasant as possible for an attacking party. The roofs and the floors of the fort are scored with the initials of the hundreds of tourists who have visited St. Augustine from time to time.

The Story of the California Missions

There are twenty-one Spanish missionary churches of varying size and beauty, and in various stages of preservation, scattered along the coast of southern California from San Diego to Sonoma, above San Francisco. They are all built as hollow squares, colonnaded or cloistered, with pillars supporting a series of round arches, and are roofed with tiles. All the rooms open on the patio, or inner court, with its garden and fountain. And each has

Mexican boys and girls are taught the useful trades and household arts. Each, too, is the center of a large, populous and prosperous district, long cultivated, and rich in flocks and herds, grain fields and fruit farms. This is their story:

Nearly a century after the settlement of Santa Fé, Fra Junipero Serra, a Franciscan friar, was sent from Mexico City with the magnificent plan of building this long chain of mission churches and converting

*Great Work
of Fra
Junipero*

One of the Ruined Chapels



What an air of sad reminiscence there is about this picture of the crumbling remains of a chapel of one of California's missions—that at San Juan Capistrano. As we look at it we think how all the good padres who were doing their noble work when this chapel was first built, have gone, and how many of their mission churches are crumbling back to earth. But their work still lives. Go into any Indian village in the region where these missions were established and you will see on the wall a cross, crudely fashioned of wood or woven of grass. You will also find this emblem of their faith on the high hills and at crossroads, planted in little heaps of stone; "water-stained and sun-cracked," says Dr. van Dyke, "but still the sign before which the Mexican peon and the Indian bow their heads and whisper words of prayer."

and civilizing the Indian tribes of the California coast. The Franciscans were not cloistered monks but working, teaching Brothers. They were skilled in engineering, building, agriculture, stock raising, and all the handicrafts, and were wonderful in organization and government. They knew how to select the most fertile land and to construct irrigation works to water it, and how to make their churches and monasteries social, industrial, and political centers.

Up and down the coast Fra Junipero journeyed, sometimes in boats, sometimes afoot, wearing a path with his sandaled feet that became a trail and then a wagon road. At last he reached the Bay of Monterey and built the mission of San Carlos. The founding of a mission at this point had been the subject of prayer in Mexico City for two centuries, ever since Francis Drake, the English explorer, touched the California coast. When news of Fra Junipero's arrival there reached Mexico City, the bells of the cathedral were rung as for a festival, and high mass was celebrated.

In the meantime the saintly missionary was living in a shelter of branches on the beach, where he had set up a cross, and hung a small bell to call his sailors and curious Indians to matins and vespers. There is

A Priest at the Window



Here we see a priest at the window of what is called his "cell," the small, simply-furnished room in which he lives. How picturesque is the whole effect; the scholarly face of the priest, the thick, clustering vines about the window, the sunlight and the clear-cut shadows of the warm, bright land of Southern California.

a beautiful church at Monterey today that is often pointed out as the one he built. It has a setting of great beauty among the hills and woods with the stretch of sandy beach along the bay and the town nestling in the lower folds of pine-clad hills. And in this Presidio Church are many relics and memorials of Fra Junipero's missionary labors. But they were probably recovered from the older mission of San Carlos.

This is still standing six miles from the town, to be reached by automobile or on horseback, over the rough hills. Think now, of that frail priest, for he was always lame, and often ill from the pain of an ulcerated leg, tramping in sandals and long gray gown, over those hills when they were covered with tangled forests. He found a site for his church in lovely Carmello Valley, and set his sailors and Indian

One of the Towers of Old San Marco



This picture shows one of the towers of the fortress of St. Mark or San Marco as it looked before the stronghold was taken possession of by Uncle Sam and converted into Fort Monroe. How picturesque this corner of the old castle looks with the weeds and lichens growing in the crannies of its walls and along its parapet! From this tower the sentinels kept watch and undertook to announce the approach of unwelcome guests, so that shot could be heated for their reception, as explained under the illustration showing other portions of the fort.

converts to work felling trees. It was only a simple log church and monastery that he built at first, roofed with thatch and enclosed in a stockade. But he set up a huge timber cross and hung bells from a

roofed with tiles. But population fell away from Carmello Valley and drifted to Monterey. In 1845 the old mission was abandoned. The roof fell in, and weeds and grass grew from every crevice. Then, in

Court of Santa Barbara Mission



This picture shows you the beautiful patio or inner court of the mission at Santa Barbara. The fountain at which the two brothers are standing was not playing when the picture was taken. Looking at the scene, we can with the help of the text form a very vivid picture of what life in one of these missions is like: "They are built as hollow squares. All the rooms open on the patio or inner court with its garden and fountain. And each has its cells for the brothers, its guest rooms, workshops, storerooms, and school rooms."

framework bedded in stones. Within ten years Monterey was a large and prosperous town and the capital of California. The twenty-one missions were established before Fra Junipero died, in 1784, and was buried under the floor of his little wooden church of San Carlos. The monumental task was finished in the short space of fifteen years.

After his death a new church of a yellow stone almost as soft as adobe, was built over his grave, and

1868, the work of restoration was begun, and today the mission church of San Carlos is the tomb and monument of California's saintly apostle. Enough people have been found among the hills to form a small congregation, and priests take turns in coming over from the Presidio Church of Monterey to hold occasional services.

On Monterey Point, where Fra Junipero first landed, Mrs. Leland Stanford has set up a white marble

statue of him, in the act of disembarking, one hand upraised, the other clasping his Bible. He greets every visitor who runs down from San Francisco to see the Bay, far famed for its beauty, and the town whose foundations he laid by setting up an altar on the beach. In the same way he appeared at every mission along the coast.

Except Pere Marquette, no other early missionary in the wilds of America presents himself to the imagination as such a heroic, devoted and appealing figure as Fra Junipero Serra. The Spanish Franciscan was, besides, a man of vision, and an organizer like La Salle. His life goes far to redeem Spain's long record of cruelty and greed.



Father Junipero's Monument at Monterey

On Monterey Point, where Father Junipero first landed, Mrs. Leland Stanford has set up a white marble statue of him in the act of disembarking, one hand upraised, the other clasping his Bible. The inscription on the marble block reads as follows:

"Here June 3, 1770, landed very Rev. Father Junipero Serra, O. S. F., and founded the following Missions: San Diego, July 16, 1769; San Carlos, Monterey, June 3, 1770; San Luis Obispo, Sept. 1, 1772; San Francisco de Los Dolores, Oct. 9, 1776; San Juan Capistrano, Nov. 1, 1776; Santa Clara, Jan. 18, 1777; San Buenaventura, Mar. 31., 1782. He died Aug. 28, 1784, in San Carlos Mission, Carmello Valley. 'As the Lord liveth, even what my God saith, that will I speak.'

"This monument erected by Jane L. Stanford in the year 1891, in memory of Father Junipero Serra, a philanthropist seeking the welfare of the humblest, a hero, daring and ready to sacrifice himself for the good of his fellow beings, a faithful servant of his Master."

Jacques Cartier

*In the seaport of St. Malo, 'twas a smiling morn in May,
When the Commodore Jacques Cartier to the westward sailed away;
In the crowded old Cathedral all the town were on their knees,
For the safe return of kinsman from the undiscovered seas;
And every blast that swept o'er pinnacle and pier,
Filled manly hearts with sorrows, and gentle hearts with fear.*

*A year passed o'er St. Malo—again came round the day
When the Commodore Jacques Cartier to the westward sailed away;
But no tidings from the absent had come the way they went,
And tearful were the vigils that many a maiden spent;
And manly hearts were filled with gloom, and gentle hearts with fear.
When no tidings came from Cartier at the closing of the year.*

*But the earth is as the future, it hath its hidden side,
And the Captain of St. Malo was rejoicing in his pride;
In the forests of the North—while his townsmen mourned his loss—
He was wearing on Mount Royal the fleur-de-lis and cross;
And when two months were over, and added to the year,
St. Malo hailed him home again, cheer answering to cheer.*

*He told them of a region, hard, iron-bound, and cold,
Nor seas of pearl abounded, nor mines of shining gold;
Where the wind from Thulé freezes the word upon the lip,
And the ice in Spring comes sailing athwart the early ship;
He told them of the frozen scene, until they thrilled with fear,
And piled fresh fuel on the hearth to make them better cheer.*

*But when he chang'd the strain—he told how soon are cast,
In early Spring, the fetters that hold the waters fast;
How the wintry causeway, broken, is drifted out to sea,
And the rills and rivers sing with pride the anthem of the free;
How the magic wand of Summer clad the landscape to his eyes,
Like the dry bones of the just when they wake in Paradise.*

*He told them of the Algonquin braves—the hunters of the wild;
Of how the Indian mother in the forest rocks her child;
Of how, poor souls! they fancy in every living thing
A spirit good or evil, that claims their worshipping;
Of how they brought their sick and maim'd for him to breath upon;
And of the wonders wrought for them, thro' the Gospel of St. John.*

*He told them of the river whose mighty current gave
Its freshness for a hundred leagues to Ocean's briny wave;
He told them of the glorious scene presented to his sight,
What time he reared the cross and crown on Hochelaga's height;
And of the fortress cliff that keeps of Canada the key;
And they welcomed back Jacques Cartier from his perils o'er the sea.*

THOMAS D'ARCY MCGEE

The Children and Their "Great Republic"

THE most fortunate children in the world are the boys and girls who live in America. This is partly, but not chiefly, because ours is a land of plenty, with rich valleys and broad prairies which "when tickled with a hoe, laugh with a harvest."

A stalwart immigrant on the dock at New York gathered in his arms four lads, his sons, just landed, whom he had left in Europe because he had no money to bring them with him. Now, after years of work and thrift, he had prepared a home and had sent for them. Leading them up from the dock, he halted, and pointing at the flag floating above them he said: "My sons salute your flag; this is your country, the land of the free," and with bared heads, father and sons saluted the Stars and Stripes.

Like them many millions of men, women, boys and girls, through the long years, have come from across the sea to free America. If at first they came to better their condition, they have lived here to learn that America is prosperous because she is free.

The charter of our freedom is found in our national constitution, the fundamental law of the land. You need to know what this constitution is, how under its provisions all citizens are free and equal before the law, equal in opportunity to secure education and personal advancement and to reap the reward of individual endeavor. You need to understand your responsibility as a citizen, for with your vote you help to elect the men who make and who administer our laws. You need to appreciate the fact that it is your government, that you are a part of it; that as a citizen you have a sacred trust, of which you should be proud.

You should also know how our nation has moved forward, how its mighty resources have been both conserved and developed. This splendid story you will find written in this book. You will read of how in the development of mines, the improvement of agriculture, the irrigation of arid plains, in free schools, and in a thousand ways, your government like a wise father, has nourished and promoted the welfare of its people. You should stand by it, and you should note thoughtfully that if there are defects in our laws, the remedy is in the hands of the people, and there is never an excuse to seek change by violence.

Chandler & Beach

The Soldier and His Country

WAR DEPARTMENT,
OFFICE OF THE CHIEF OF STAFF,
WASHINGTON.

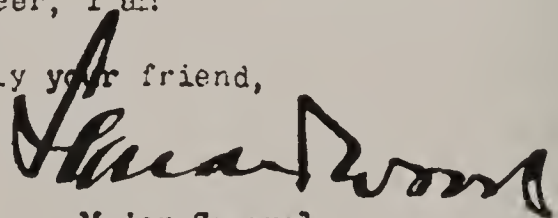
TO A BOY WHO WISHES TO ENTER THE ARMY:

I have been asked to write a few words to "A Boy Who Wishes to Enter the Army". This I gladly do, in the hope that what I write may be of some help to the boy who is anxious to become an officer, and may also be of benefit to the service by bringing into the Army the right kind of boy.

In making up your mind as to whether you wish to be an officer, an important thing to be remembered is that a career in the Army offers none of the pecuniary rewards that may be obtained in the other professions. The greatest reward to which you can look forward in the military profession is that which comes from the approval of your superiors and the consciousness of good conduct and efficient performance of duty. I cannot impress too strongly the fact that the idea of duty is the key-note of the military profession. The Military Academy at West Point, where so many of our officers are educated, has adopted for its motto; "Duty, Honor, Country;" and the cadets are taught that if they always do their full duty, the demands of honor and the obligation to serve their country faithfully will be fully met. By pointing out to you, however, that the Army affords only a reasonable living I do not want you to attach too much importance to the acquisition of wealth. There are a great many other things to which a right-minded boy should aspire and many of these things are found in the officer's career. It is an honorable profession, so much so that the terms "officer" and "gentleman" have come to mean the same thing; it is free from many temptations that in politics and business assail the ambitious young man and oftentimes destroy the high ideals with which he begins his career; it is a life position held subject only to good conduct and efficient performance of duty, a condition which enables you always to do your duty without fear or favor. The duties you will be called upon to perform, both in peace and war, demand the exercise of a high intelligence and an upright and resourceful spirit. And finally, in making up your mind on this important question, I ask you to remember this striking fact: that whenever the country is brought face to face with an emergency in which all the ordinary agencies fail--whether it is to establish stable government among a dependent people, or to help a community devastated by flood or earthquake, or to dig the Panama Canal--the work is entrusted to the officers of the Army with full confidence that it will be well and faithfully done.

With best wishes for a successful career, I am

Sincerely your friend,


Major-General

The Army and the World War



Studying the War Map

These two officers are studying war maps during a campaign.

CHILDREN who were old enough to be in the primary grades in school in 1917 will always remember the great war which the United States fought with England, France and their allies, against Germany and her allies. Presently we will tell you just what the little tots and older boys and girls did to help win that war. But first we must tell you what it was all about, and why our country took no part in it until other countries had been fighting for nearly three years.

Really to understand it you should know how differently from other great nations the people of the United States have always felt about war; and why we had no big, standing army and military supplies in readiness. When George Washington was living we

fought the Revolutionary War to win our liberty. In the next hundred years we fought four more wars. They were all on American soil, and to right some wrongs, or to protect our own country from danger. We had no big, quarrelsome neighbors to bring trouble upon us; and because we were so far away, across three thousand miles of ocean, and they were always busy fighting each other, the great nations of the Old World let us alone. Besides, as we had won all our wars with volunteer soldiers, we thought that we could always raise a large army quickly, if we had to defend ourselves.

We got that idea in colonial and pioneer days when most American men needed very little train-

*Why Our
Army
Was Small*

Beginning a Pontoon Bridge



© International News Service

It is important that soldiers should know how to build bridges. Pontoon bridges are hurry-up affairs and have been used by armies ever since Xerxes crossed the Hellespont on one, and probably before. In the picture the New York National Guard is building one.

ing to make good soldiers. Men who had fought Indians, hunted wild game, and chopped down forest trees to build cabins, were brave, hardy, and resourceful. They could shoot straight, make long marches, and stand all sorts of hardships. Then war was a simple matter when a block-house made a good fort, and soldiers fought with hand weapons. The older, experienced men were good leaders in the rough-and-tumble fights at Lexington and Bunker Hill. But there were so many things they did not know about drilling and commanding men, keeping them in good health, and winning big battles, that General Washington opened an officers' training school at West Point, on the Hudson River, in 1778.

There the new United States built one of the finest military academies in the world, for officers were needed for a small regular army of 50,000

men, whose chief duty was to keep the Indians in order. As a home guard, which the President could call upon to defend our country from attack, the states kept up the system of a partially trained militia of the old colonies. Before the War of 1812, we had a good, small navy, too, and an academy for training naval officers at Annapolis, Maryland.

Now the country grew and spread westward, and filled up with people very fast. By the time of the Civil War, in Lincoln's day, many of our soldiers came from shops, offices, and factories of cities and towns. Although they had never handled a gun, or slept out of doors in their lives, they made the best and bravest of soldiers. But we know now that if they had been properly trained and supplied in the beginning, the war could have been won sooner and with less loss of life.

THE ARMY

Almost Finished



Long timbers are fastened to floating supports or pontoons and covered with crosspieces that make a level board walk. Pontoon bridges are usually built as quickly as possible and are not expected to be permanent. Notice how the long timbers are fastened together.

A Bridge That Will Carry Big Guns



The upper bridge is made to furnish a safe highway across water for marching men, but this bridge has still greater burdens to bear. As you can see, it is also a pontoon bridge but it is built strong enough to sustain the weight of heavy guns. What do you suppose the sacks are for?

They are filled with sand and have been piled on the bridge as a test. The combined weight of the sacks and all the men shows that this bridge will safely carry artillery whose weight amounts to fifteen tons upon each axle.

Over the Ramparts



The soldiers are storming and taking mock fortifications in a sham battle given before a big audience.

After the short war with Spain in 1898, we doubled our regular army and began to build up a large, modern navy. With the Philippine Islands and the Panama Canal Zone to govern and guard, and Cuba to help become a peaceful little republic, we had become a world power. We had more police duty, some of it far from home; we could no longer say that nothing outside of America concerned us, or be sure that we could continue to avoid trouble. Many people, among them President Roosevelt, thought that if we should ever have a war with a big foreign power, our country might be invaded before we could get ready to defend ourselves, and that we should be better prepared.

You see, the Atlantic ocean was no longer the protection that it had been in early days. In 1620 it took the Pilgrims ten weeks to cross it, in a small sailing vessel that carried

only one hundred passengers and their goods. Now, huge ocean steamers that carry thousands of people and thousands of tons of freight, cross that ocean in five or six days. And fast railroad trains rush across continents. That makes Europe and America near neighbors.

Since travel and trade became so easy, the small crowded lands of the Old World stopped trying to grow all their food. By making goods in factories, to sell in far-away lands, they could buy bread-stuffs, meat, sugar, leather, oil, rubber, cotton, wool, and other things they needed. Many years ago it was known that if trade with western Europe was stopped, millions of people would be starved.

The New Method of Warfare

When Germany and Austria suddenly began a war of conquest against France, Russia, and Serbia

A Portable Telegraph Station



An army not only carries its telephone lines along with it nowadays, but its telegraph, too. The picture shows a wireless aerial mounted on a motor truck. By means of this the officers in charge can communicate with each other, the President at Washington and even ships at sea.

A Field Telephone



When the army is in action, wires are strung up connecting the commander with all parts of the battlefield. This is "central"—a soldier with a portable switchboard somewhere behind the battle front—connecting one of the commanding officers with a distant division of his force.

in 1914, it was the duty of the United States to be neutral—that is, friendly to both sides—and keep trade open on the sea.

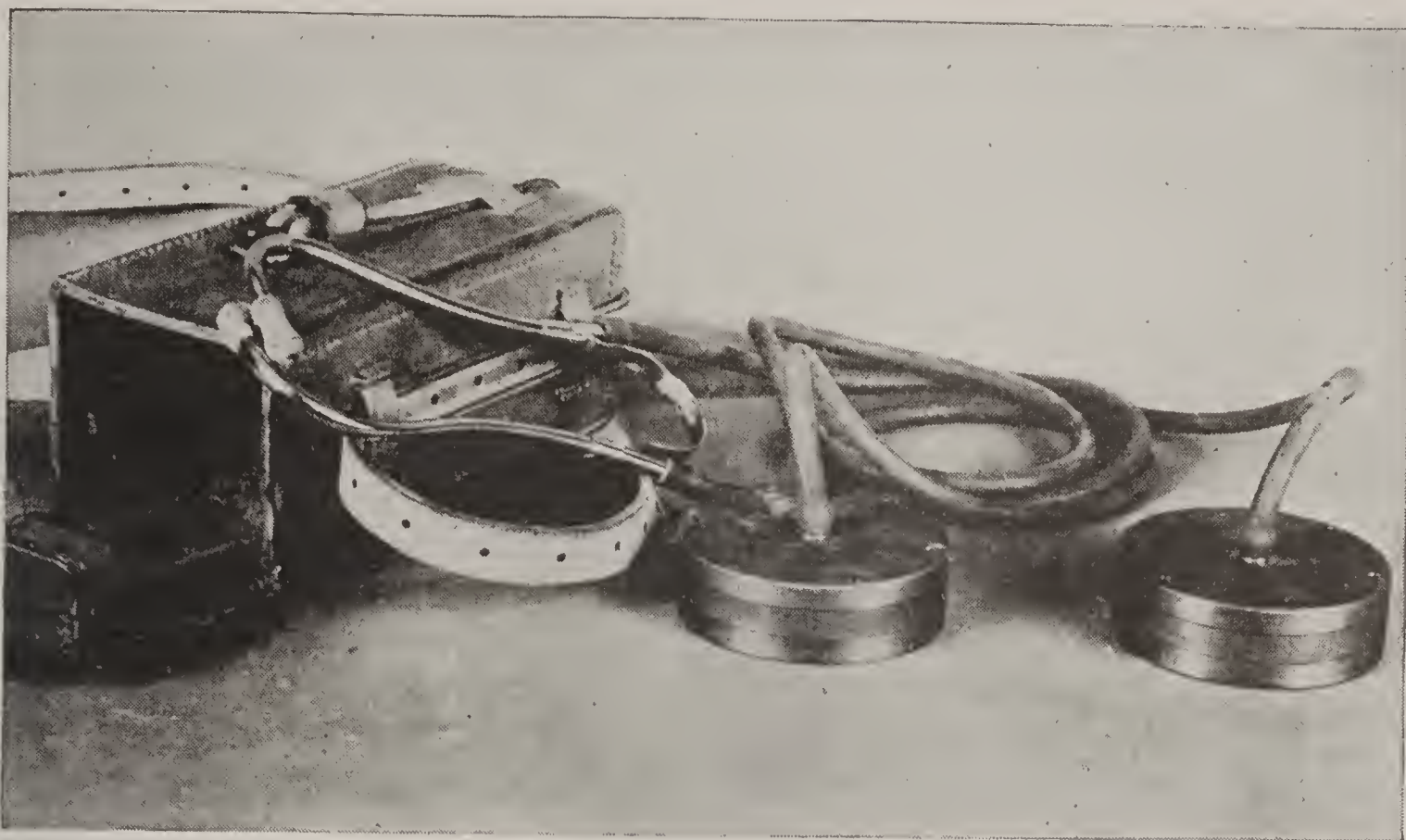
Then we saw what a swift, terrible thing war had become. There were no more long, slow marches. Millions of highly trained soldiers were rushed to the battle front in railway trains. Freight cars and motor trucks had taken the place of horse-drawn baggage wagons and gun carriages. Airships and balloons were used for scouting. Messages were carried, not by Paul Reveres, on horseback, but by wireless telegraph, telephone wires, wireless telephone, and by motorcyclists.

Soldiers, too, had to have a different sort of skill and bravery. They still had to be able to shoot, and use bayonets, but they had also to be machinists, electricians, and engi-

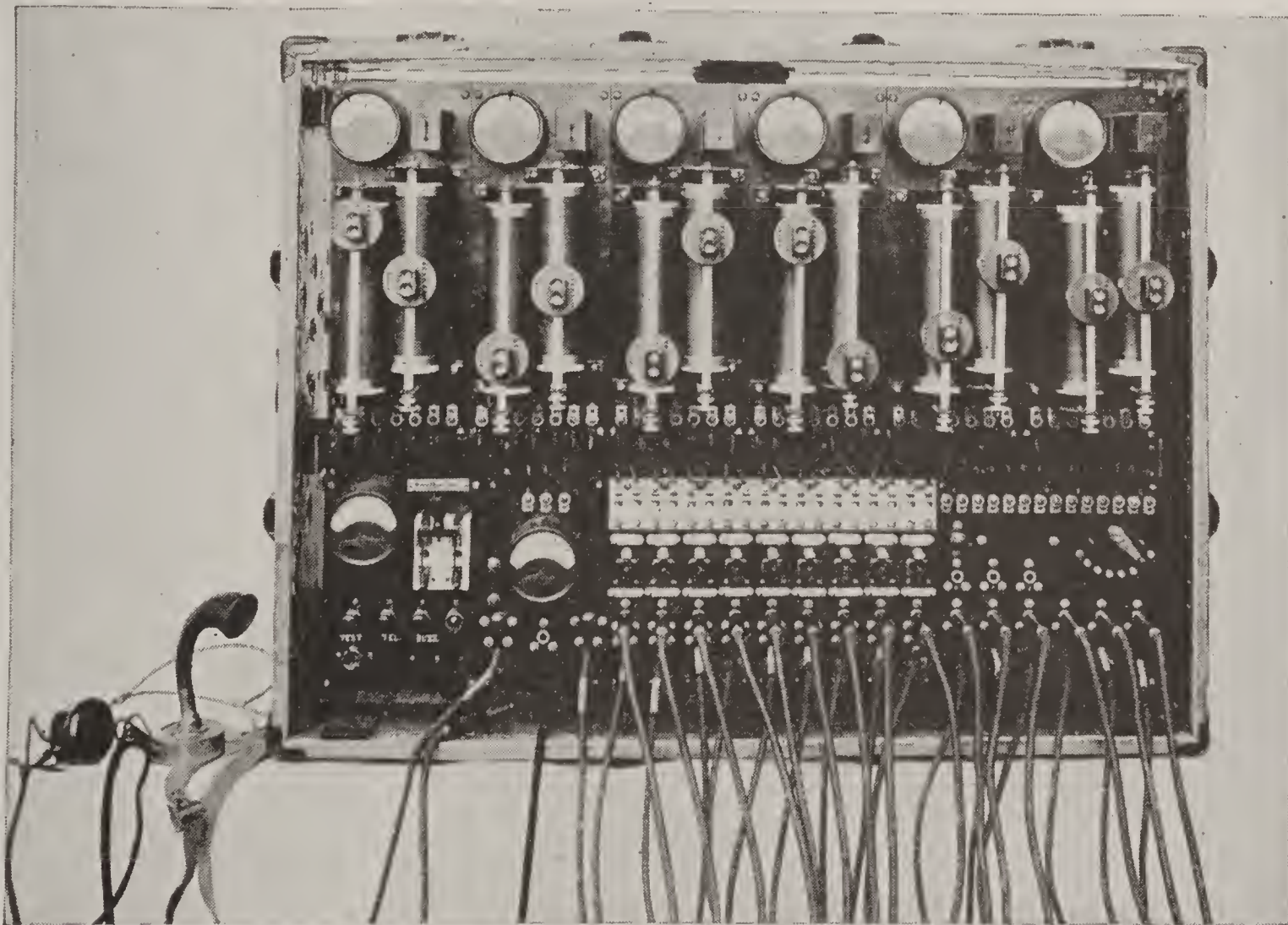
neers. They had to learn how to throw hand grenades, and how to live and keep in health in the foul mud of deep trenches. When they went "over the top" in attacks, they had to face the fire of self-feeding machine guns that spattered hail storms of bullets. They had to cut their way through electric, barbed-wire entanglements, and charge across fields planted with explosive mines. Since airplanes dropped bombs from the sky on trenches, marching columns and supply trains, they had to learn a new art of concealing roads, gun positions and defense lines. This was called by the French word "camouflage." They had to learn to mount and manage anti-aircraft guns, to shoot the bird-like airplanes on the wing.

Germany and her allies, Austria,

Talk About Sharp Ears!

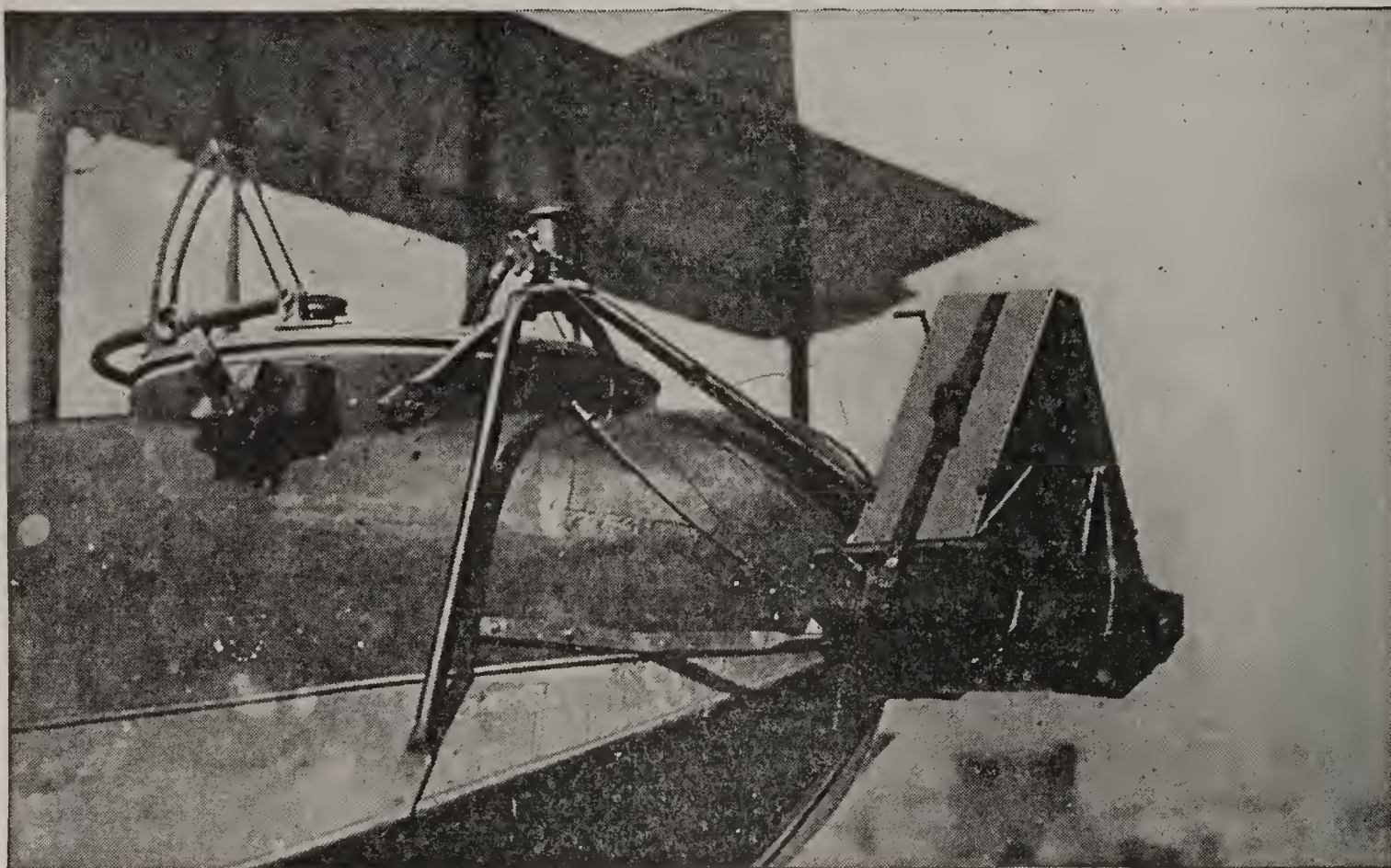


Even "little pitchers with big ears"—you know that's what they call small people who seem to hear everything that is going on around them—are not to be compared with the mechanical



listeners you see in these two pictures. The upper one is for listening to the enemy digging under ground and trying to lay mines to blow you up. By this device and others like it located at different points, skilled men are able to calculate the location of hidden guns by the difference of the length of time it takes the sound of the firing to reach these listening places. The hiding place of one of the "Big Berthas" that fired on Paris, seventy-five miles away, was so discovered.

Three Snap Shots in One



In warfare it is often quite important to take pictures from an aeroplane. Such pictures show the position of enemy defences, the disposal of bodies of men and give other information which it is very desirable to have. This picture shows one of the cameras used for this kind of work. It is called the Bagley Camera and its merit is that exposures made at intervals produce a continuous photograph.

Turkey, and Bulgaria, not only had the largest and best-trained armies, and vast stores of military supplies to fight with, but they broke all the rules of warfare which civilized nations had agreed to keep. To reach France quickly, Germany marched across Belgium, a small neutral country, and because the plucky and honorable Belgians delayed her, and defended their neutrality, German armies burned and looted her cities, churches, and farms. Hundreds of thousands of ruined people were driven from their homes, into Holland, France, and England. Thousands of others were killed, robbed, and enslaved. And when Belgium was shut away from trade, a little nation of seven million peaceable, hard-working people began to starve.

The first thing the children of America were asked to do was to

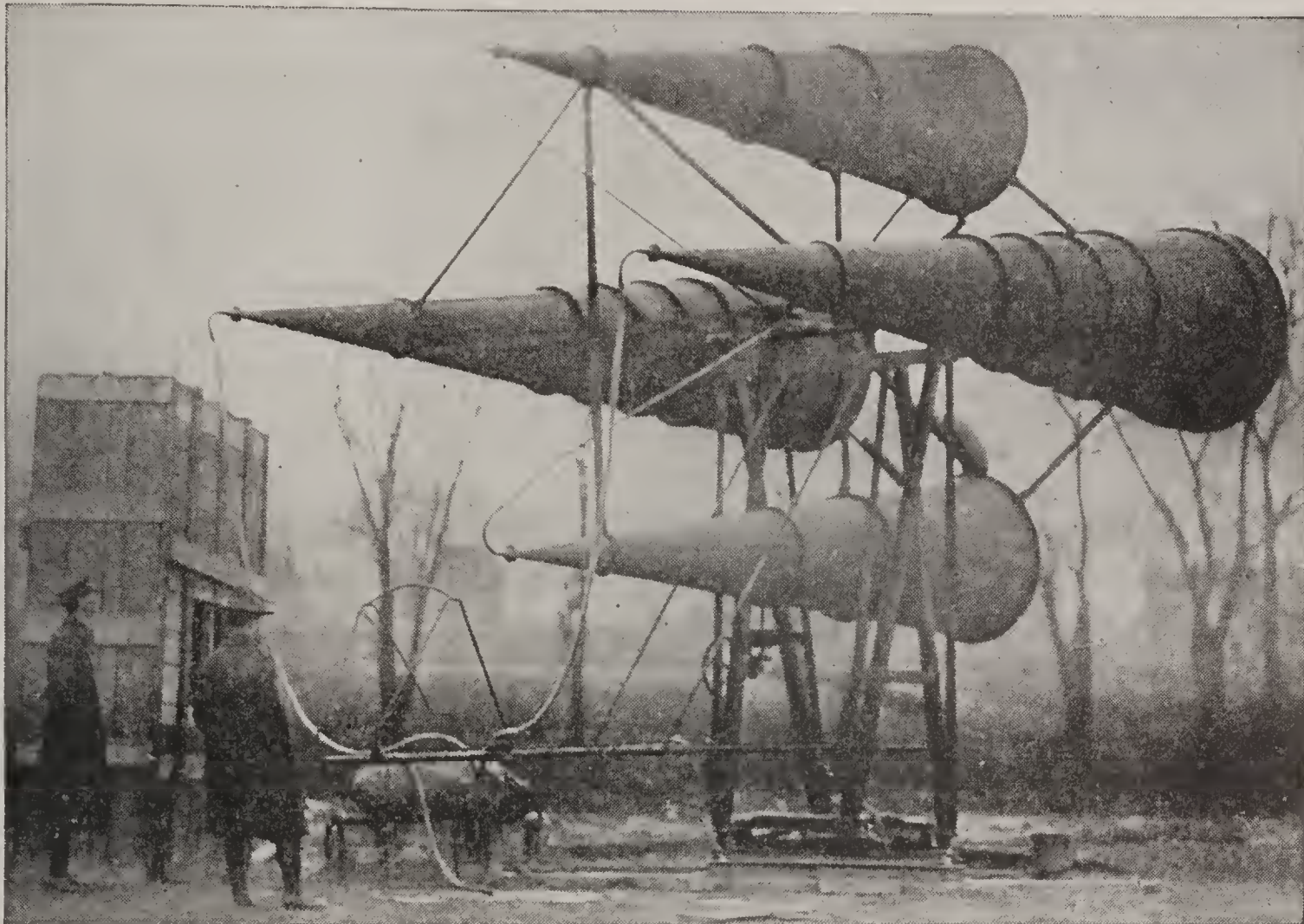
give their pennies to the Belgian Relief Fund. The United States and other neutral countries forced Germany to allow them to send food ships to keep the people of Belgium and northern France alive.

Not only did Germany invade Belgium without any other excuse than the fact that she could thus strike France to better advantage but, together with England and the other great powers of Europe, she was one of the signers of a treaty that guaranteed Belgium's independence. England was one of the guarantors of this treaty. Moreover, the defense of Belgium was an immemorial part of this policy. Germany knew this, but counted on England's internal difficulties to keep her out of the conflict.

So England declared war, hurried an army to France, and sent her

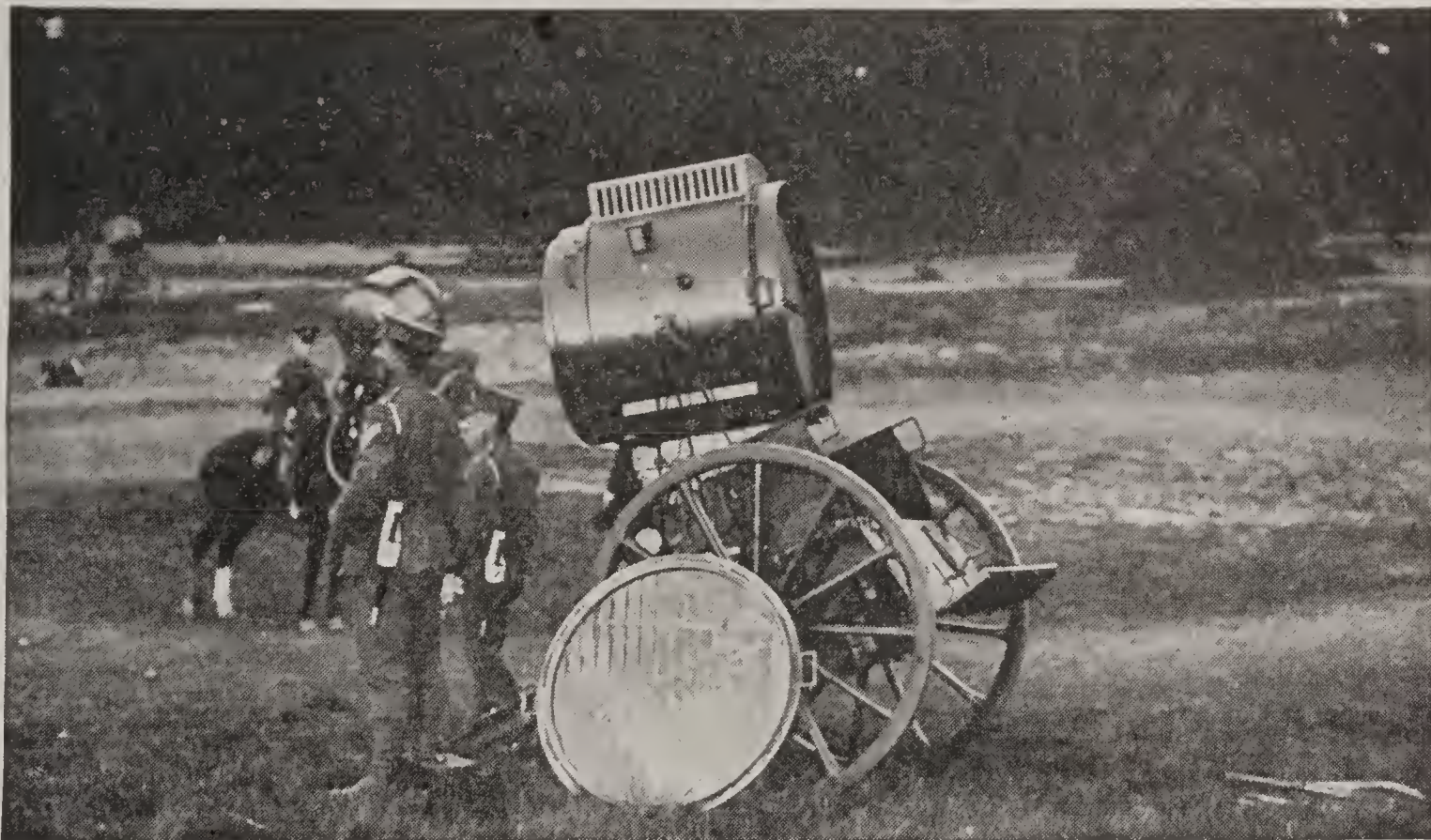
*How England
Came into
the War*

And These Are Ear Trumpets!



If you have ever heard a flying-machine you know it is like a big blue-bottle fly—it can't get on without making a lot of noise. But the great ear trumpets in this picture can not only "hear" the buzz of the aeroplane much farther than can the human ear, but by use of them the flying machines can be located. Then the gunners open up on these unwelcome visitors with the nearest anti-aircraft guns and some of your own airmen go up after them.

A Searchlight on Wheels



This is one of the searchlights used for throwing great beams into places which the enemy would like to keep dark, and finding out things the enemy doesn't want you to know. This particular type is very light, can be easily moved, is comparatively inexpensive, and throws a beam of large diameter a very great distance.

grand fleet of warships to cut off Germany's overseas trade. That was fair, between enemies, in war. Besides, Germany could manage to feed her own people. But it did prevent her getting cotton, rubber goods, war materials, and abundant foods from the United States, and so put her at a disadvantage.

In revenge for this blockade Germany did many forbidden and barbarous things. Her fleets of airships dropped bombs on London, Paris, and other open cities, killing women and children. She bombed hospitals, killing doctors, Red Cross nurses, and wounded soldiers. She mounted enormous cannon, far behind her own battle lines, and dropped explosive

shells on cities twenty, thirty, and then seventy-five miles away. In this way she destroyed towns, and beautiful old cathedrals that she could not capture. Then, to the horror of the world, Germany used clouds of poison gas, sending them on the winds to the trenches. Thus thousands of brave soldiers were killed with no chance to defend themselves. And at sea, Germany sank merchant ships with torpedoes fired from submarines. It would have been fair to sink the ships of

her enemies, after allowing passengers and crews time to take to the lifeboats and even to capture and take war materials on other ships that supplied enemy countries, if she

could. But Germany sank the ships of all nations, of those that were neutral, and even friendly to her, and often without warning. In six months she sank three hundred ships, with a loss of two thousand lives. One was the American steamer "Gulflight."

How We Were Forced Into the War

In May of 1915 the British ocean liner, the *Lusitania*, was torpedoed without warning. More than one thousand people, many of them women and children, were drowned. One

hundred and two were American citizens.

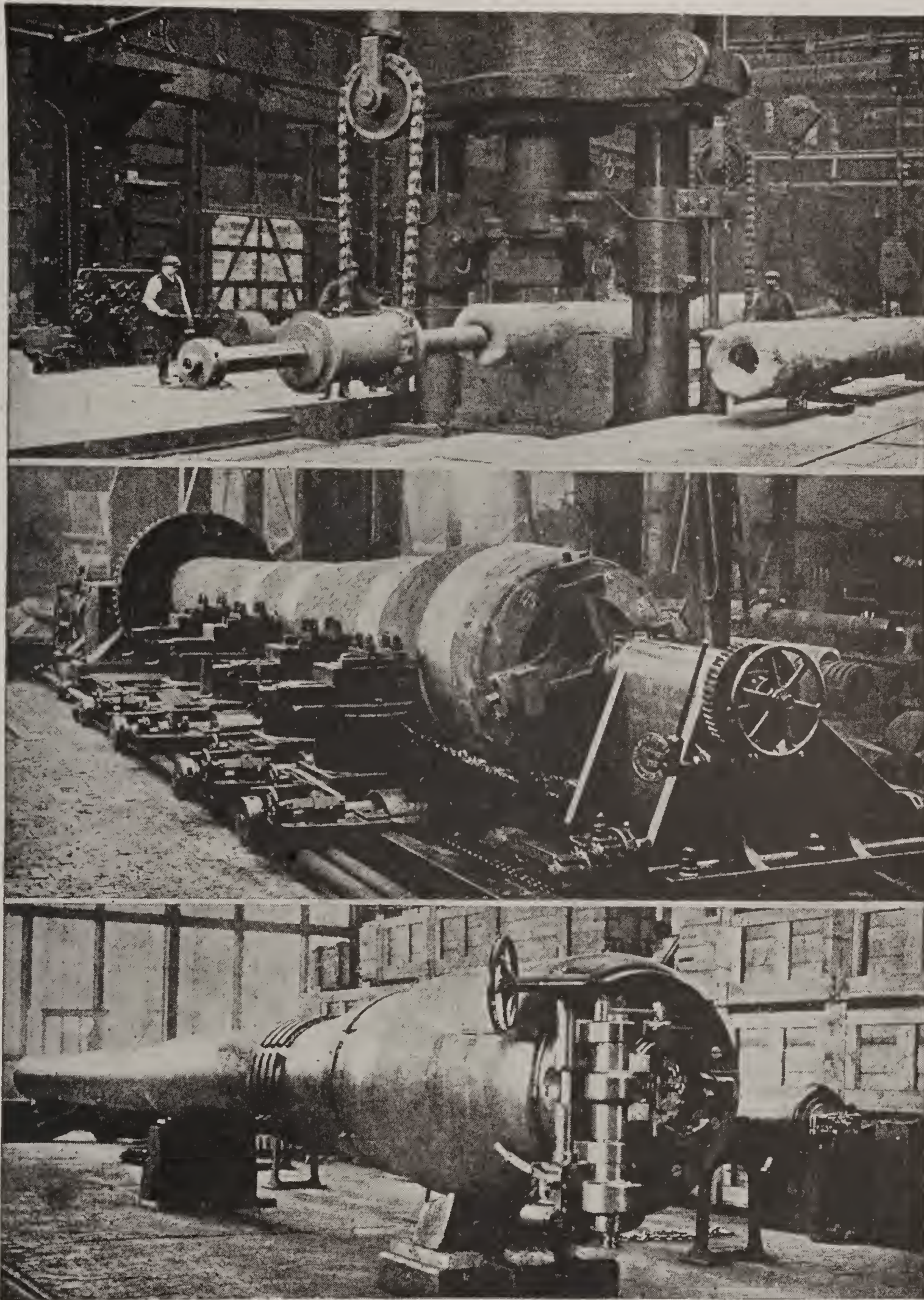
In spite of this unheard of outrage—without precedent in modern warfare—the United States still hoped to remain neutral; to be the one great nation not involved and thus, among other things, to help in bringing about peace. She could not, however, tolerate these lawless attacks upon the lives of her citizens and demanded that Germany enter into an agreement to stop such acts of piracy and make the usual pro-

The Beginning of a Big Gun



The barrel of a cannon begins as a solid steel ingot, and is trimmed, hammered and pared into a tube by huge cutting instruments. The steel of which the barrel is composed must be very pure and very strong. The picture shows the molten steel being poured from the caldron into the molds which shape it into ingots.

Three Stages in the Growth of a Big Gun



The upper picture shows the steel ingots, heated white hot and being worked upon by a hydraulic press, which shapes them roughly.

Next the big gun is turned and worked by eight cutting tools at once.

Last of all, the finished gun is sent to the examination shop, where it must pass severe tests before being declared fit for service.

A Fine Piece of "Camouflage"



Just compare the very artistic "camouflage" on this big gun with that on the dummy gun on page 1773. If you had never heard about "camouflage," and should see the two pictures, you would see that the artist—whatever he might have been up to—had taken a great deal more pains in this case than the other, wouldn't you? Don't you suppose it was because he wanted the dummy gun to be seen? You notice the bed of the car is "camouflaged" too. Such monster guns are for quick movement from place to place and so are mounted on cars, and these cars like the guns themselves are spotted in that irregular way so that they will not be so easily seen when moving across country with its various differences of surface and lights and shadows. And in passing through a wooded country you can see how these painted shadows on the gun and the car would mingle with the mottled shadows of the trees.

vision for the safety of the passengers and crew. Germany solemnly, and in due form, agreed to this, and so for a time we kept out of the dreadful conflict.

But it seemed inevitable that we should sooner or later be drawn into it. Among other things, it was learned that German spies were in this country plotting mischief and destroying property in order to stop our selling food, clothing and war material to the allies; as, of course, we had a perfect right to do. Moreover, Germany's violation of Belgium's neutrality and the sneering reference of Germany's foreign minister to the treaty guaranteeing the neutrality of Belgium, as "a scrap of paper," although she herself had signed it, made it seem very unlikely that she would hesitate to again break her word, and it was

felt that we should prepare for war. Among other things, the military and naval academies were enlarged and twenty-six big new war-ships and many destroyers and submarines were ordered. President Wilson made a speaking tour of the East and Middle West, during which he emphasized the danger that we might be drawn into the war. "Preparedness parades" were held in some of the chief cities of the country with a view to letting the President and Congress know that the people felt the necessity of increasing our means of defense. Twelve hundred business, professional, and public men volunteered to go to the army post at Plattsburg, New York, to begin the training of army officers.

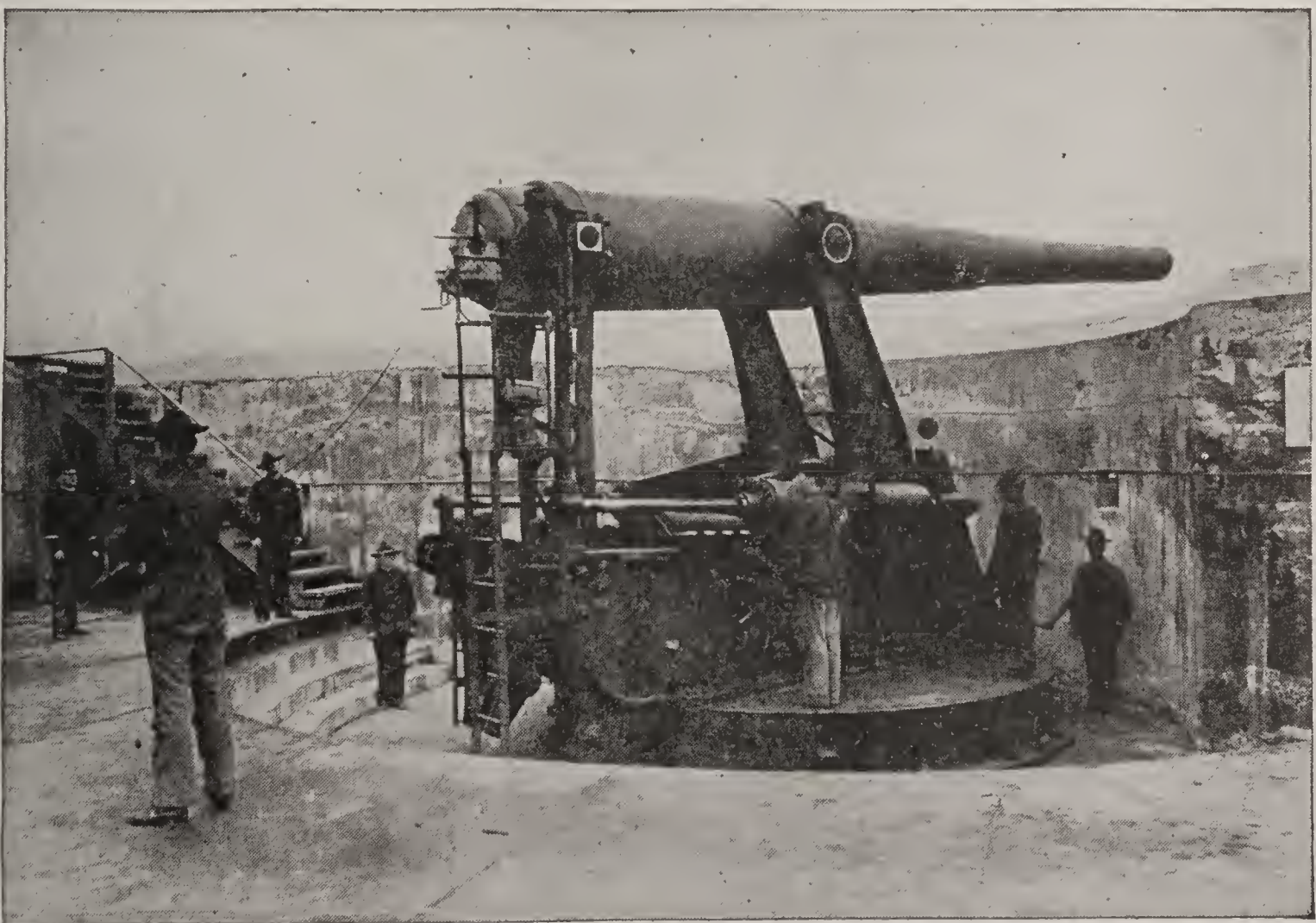
In February of 1917 Germany broke her promise, and began a new

Loading One of the Big Guns



Modern cannons are mounted so that they rest well down behind a parapet or other protection, but they can be raised by machinery and aimed over the wall. The man at the left is pointing the gun at the mark. See how many men are required to do the loading.

All Ready to Fire



This huge gun is part of our coast defense. The picture gives you a good idea of the foundation on which such guns rest—a steel standard riveted into solid masonry.

PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

A Caterpillar Traction Gun



This is one of a number of similar guns that was being built for the American Army when fighting in the World War was suddenly brought to an end by the armistice. It is called a traction gun because it is mounted on wheels and a "caterpillar" traction gun because these wheels have that steel belt with cleats on it, which enables them to climb up and down obstructions like a caterpillar. This gun and its carriage weighed fifty-five thousand pounds.

and merciless submarine warfare, sinking even hospital and Belgian Relief food ships. The United States put naval defense guns and gunners on our merchant vessels, but three were sunk in March.

President Wilson accordingly called a special session of Congress on April 2, and in the evening of that day delivered his historic message, asking that war be declared against Germany. Congress supported the course advised by the President, and on April 6 a joint resolution was adopted, formally declaring the existence of a state of war between the United States and Germany.

The navy alone was ready for duty. Our war vessels began to patrol the western Atlantic, for German submarines had crossed the ocean,

and sunk ships near our coast. And a fleet of our destroyers and submarines joined the British and French in European waters, to hunt and sink the enemy undersea craft.

But about our army everything had to be done. In June General Pershing went to France in chief command of the troops of the regular army that were in the United States. Volunteers flocked to the National Guard, or states militia, which were "federalized" so they could be sent abroad. Marines and civil and railroad engineers volunteered, too. Some of our soldiers were in the trenches of France in November, some driving ambulances, some in aviation camps learning to fly, and some building training camps, warehouses and railroads from seaports to the battle front.

The Grandfather of the Wonderful Caterpillar Tank



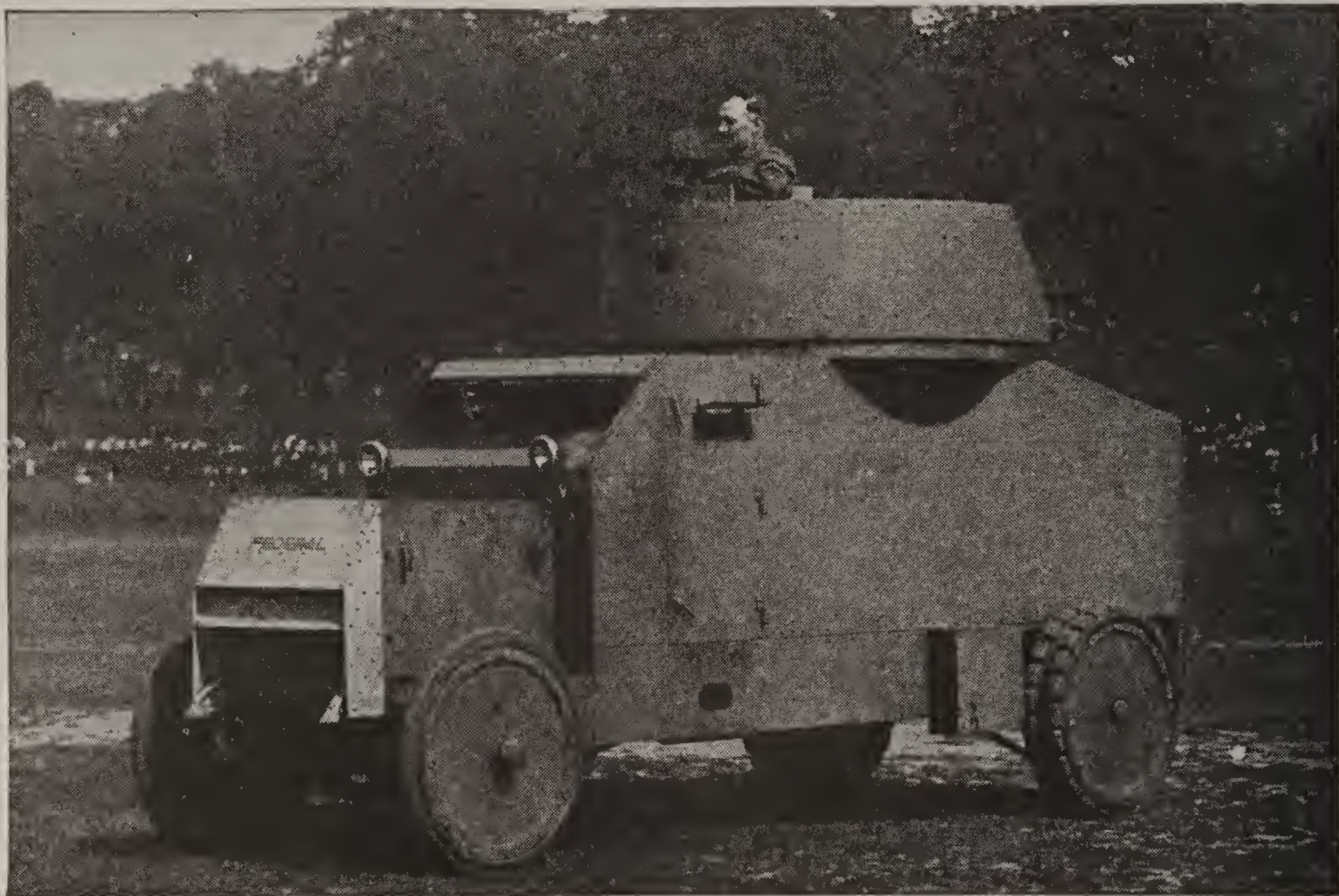
Little did His Majesty, King George of England dream, and little did any of his soldiers dream, when he inspected this queer mechanical monster in May, 1908, that he was looking at a device which, in another form, a few years later would prove one of the greatest weapons in the hands of his soldiers for helping to win the greatest of all wars. The two chief points about the "tank," which came as such a surprise to the Germans and did such frightful execution, were that the gunners were in a steel fort on wheels and that these wheels could cross ravines, go over boulders and rocks and fallen trees—in fact, any ordinary obstruction. It was the belting device over the wheels shown in this picture, that, somewhat modified enabled them to do this. This machine is for carrying guns into action in rough country.

Abandoning the Volunteer System

But that, of course, was only "a drop in the bucket." To get a big army of the best material, quickly, the old volunteer system was

turn sewing machine and automobile factories and steel mills into plants for making guns and flying machines. Spruce trees had to be cut in the forests for lumber for flying

Like a Traveling Fort



© International News Service

Here is an automobile carrying a machine gun. Its sides are armored like a battleship.

dropped. All the young men between 21 and 30 were required to register, and be examined for the "selective draft." Later the ages were lowered to 18 and raised to 45. Nearly seventeen million men were registered, and plans were made for an army of four or five million. Thousands were in training in the sixteen new encampments by September, and by January ships began to carry United States troops to France for further training.

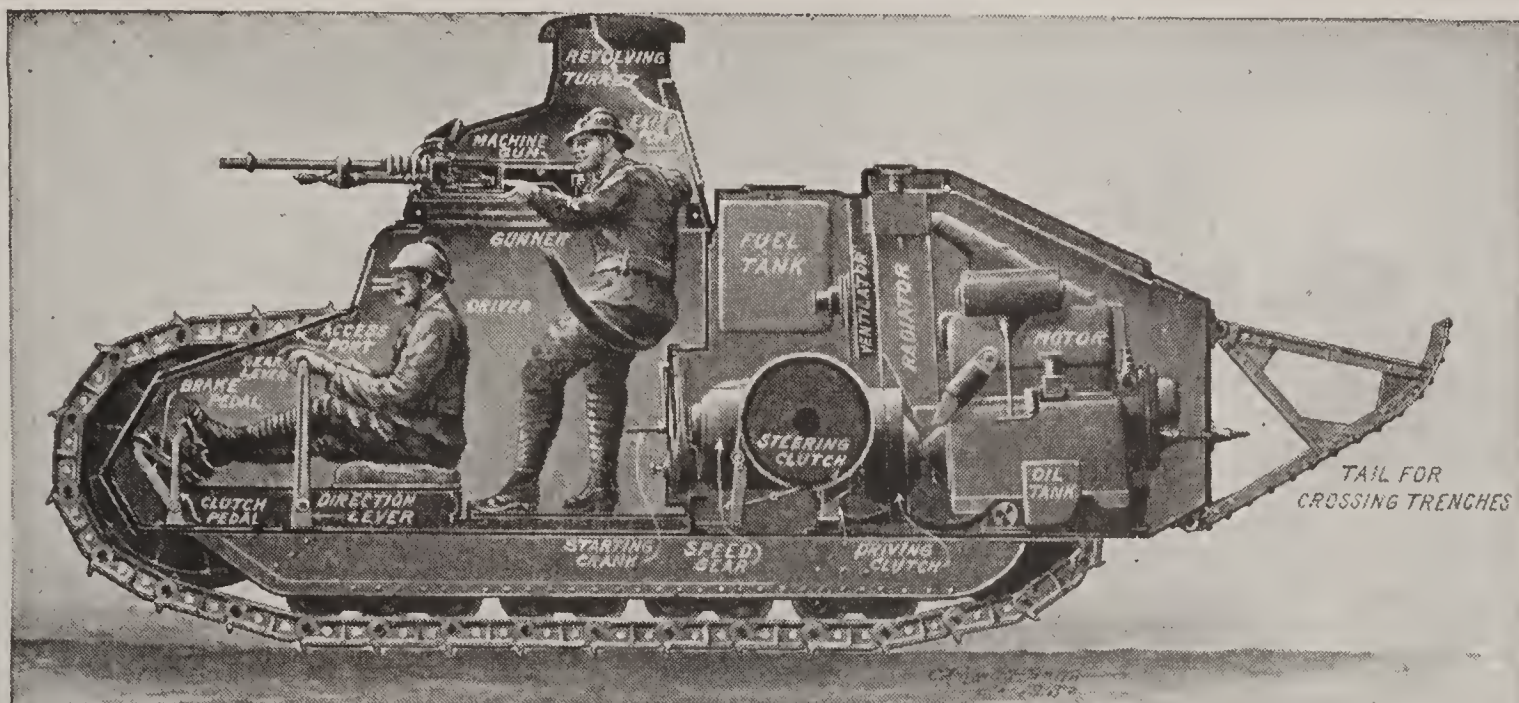
It was not only soldiers that were needed, but rifles, bayonets, machine guns, artillery, grenades, airplanes, "tanks," uniforms, shoes, blankets, gas masks, food, medical and hospital supplies, and ships. We had to

machines, and castor beans planted for oil for lubricating them. Then ten camps were opened, to train the thousands of officers that would be needed.

Congress had to pass a great many laws in haste, but its biggest task was to raise money to pay the enormous cost of the war. The United States had been spending about one billion—that is, one thousand million—dollars a year for all public expenses. Before January of 1918, Congress had spent twenty-one billion! Part of this was raised by taxes on incomes and other things, and part by the sale of government bonds. Nearly every family in America bought "Liberty Bonds."

THE ARMY

Inside One of the "Tanks"



"Tanks," as they were called, were entirely new machines of warfare introduced for the first time by the British in the European War. They proved to be one of the most important things in winning the war for the Allies. This picture shows you the inside of one of them. The gunner sat inside a revolving turret so that he could turn his attention to any point. Sitting in that belt-like device or narrow hammock, he operated his machine-gun. In front of him sat the driver with his hands on each of two levers, and his feet on the clutch pedals. The driver's work was like that of chauffeur on an automobile, but it was much rougher riding and a good deal more exciting.

A Fleet of Whippets



In the lower picture you see a row of small "tanks" drawn up, not near the field of battle but on historic Boston Commons. These small "tanks" were called "whippets." Notice the "V" on the sides. It was placed there because these particular whippets were used in stirring up people to do their full duty in subscribing for the Victory Loan. All the soldiers you see on these whippets—as you can tell from their jaunty little caps—had been over where the real fighting was going on.

Roman Methods in the World War



This page shows you, among other things, how the idea of the engines used by the ancient Romans for hurling stones and other missiles was adapted to modern conditions in the great World War. All other devices represent ways employed in the great war for throwing bombs.

Field-Guns in Action and in Hiding



These two pictures show two interesting things about field-guns; the upper picture, a field-gun in action, the lower, a field gun being so placed that it can be fired without being seen. In the upper picture the gunner on the left does the sighting, and by the turning of a wheel with one hand elevates or lowers the gun, while by turning another with the other hand, he



moves it to right or left. Back of him sits another gunner whose business it is to open the breach so that the third artilleryman can slide the shell into place. He then closes the breach lock and the gun is ready to be fired. Such a big gun, as you may easily suppose, has a lot of "kick" to it, so it is provided with a device for taking up the recoil. In the rear you see the word "trail-spade," indicating a pointed projection at the end of the gun. This "trail-spade" digs into the ground, since the gun recoils somewhat (in spite of the recoil device), so that on the next recoil it can not back up any farther. The second picture shows where a gun is concealed and the limber or carriage equipment, some shells and baskets of shell cases.

The Place of the Central Brain



Underneath that crude shelter, with his maps and military plans spread on the plain little camp table before him, sat and planned the central brain of the Allied armies in the great World War, General Ferdinand Foch, Commander-in-Chief of the Allies on the Western Front. The shed was covered with a canvas curiously cut up in irregular openings and this so blended with the foliage around it that at a distance it was not observed.

We are proud that every one of the five loans, each for several billion dollars, was over-subscribed. Even the children bought savings stamps.

"War to victory!" was the cry, and everyone did what he could to win it. Men who were too old to fight and who had enough money to live on, worked for the government for a dollar a year. Men dropped their business to sell bonds. Women did, too, and they worked in army canteens and the Red Cross rooms. Eight million women knitted socks and sweaters, rolled hospital bandages and made clothing for the wounded. An army of Red Cross nurses and canteen workers went to France. In the first year three hundred million dollars were collected for the Red Cross, Y. M. C. A., Sal-

*Work of
America's
Women*

vation Army, Knights of Columbus, and other welfare workers, besides the big sums of money and the car loads of clothing that were given to the Belgian Relief Fund and the French Orphans.

The Children and the Red Cross

The children gave all their spending money, and proudly wore the Red Cross badges. In school they learned to knit warm scarfs and wristlets for the soldiers. They sold savings stamps on the streets, and Boy Scouts sold bonds. The older girls worked in the Red Cross rooms or munitions factories; and college and high school boys worked on the farms so there would be more food to send abroad. And everyone, big and little, lived in cooler houses to save coal for the railroads and war

A Case of Camouflaged Camouflage



When a goat moth looks so much like the bark on which it is resting that its bird enemies don't see it, we call this "protective resemblance." When in war things are made to resemble other things for the purpose of deceiving the enemy, such deception is called "camouflage." For instance, that isn't a cannon at all, but a big piece of wood and the two figures beside it are dummies. Notice the difference between them and the real soldiers who happened in when this photograph was taken.



The object of this dummy gun and its dummy gunners was to draw attention away from the real gun at some other point not far away. In such cases the real gun was much more thoroughly concealed and more skillfully painted up to blend with its surroundings. You see the wooden gun is "camouflaged" in an unskillful way that would really not help to hide the gun; "camouflaged camouflaging," so to speak. They wanted to pretend they were trying to hide the gun when they really weren't!

The second picture seems to be a dilapidated old windmill but it was built that way on purpose. Inside of it are huge anti-aircraft guns.

Look Out! That Isn't a Stump



There is a man inside that queer looking thing. It is simply a piece of canvas shaped and painted to represent the stump of a tree. The man is a sharp-shooter on the watch.

factories, and cheerfully ate plain food they did not like, so there would be more white bread, meat, and sugar for the armies and for the hungry nations that were fighting beside us.

Early in the spring of 1918, soldiers, money, food, and military supplies began to pour out of the United States. England had to send transports and warships to help us get our armies overseas; and France had to supply us with the guns, airplanes, and "tanks" that we still lacked. And in return we sent them

Two Millions of Our Boys in France food, and loaned them billions of dollars of money. But best of all were our soldier boys. Two million of them were sent to France before the war was over.

England, France, and Italy had used up nearly all their able men, and Germany, having made peace with Russia, had fresh armies to hurl against them. She hoped to

win by great, smashing drives before the American soldiers could be trained and taken to France. Her submarines waited in the sea lanes to sink the transports that carried our brave boys. But our transports went in fleets that were guarded by British and American warships. And they got there in time! Just one year after the United States entered the war, American soldiers fought in their first big battle.

It would take a book to tell you about all the hard fighting of the next six months. The battle line, stretching from sea to sea, across eastern France and northern Italy, was hundreds of miles long. The

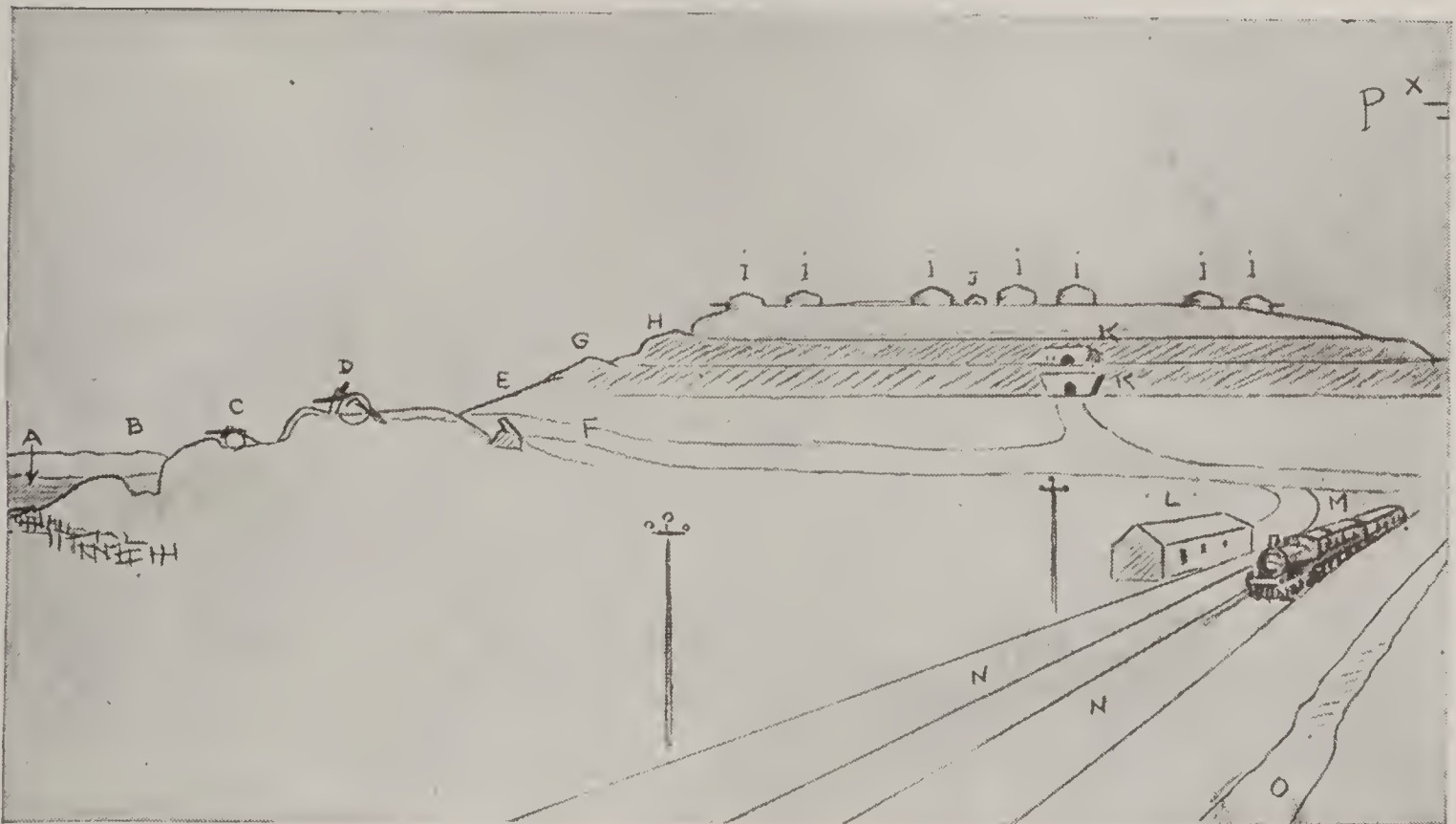
In the Far-Flung Battle Land soldiers from the United States were commanded by General Pershing.

But all the allied armies—Belgian, English, British Colonial, French, Italian, and American—were under the command of General Foch, the military genius who was made Mar-

Landscape Art and the Art of War



If you met a stranger with a sketch like this, you might not think he was much of a landscape artist, but you certainly never would think his picture wasn't a landscape at all, but a picture of a fort to help aim big guns at it. Just look at the next picture and you will see!



The trees stood for gun turrets, gun positions, and so on; the gates for the entrances to the fort, the lines of bushes for ditches and the fences for a wire entanglement. In the use of such "landscape art" in war there is a regular code, so that when the picture is safe within the enemy lines it can be read just as easily as you can read a puzzle after you know all about it. One kind of tree represents an army gun turret; other forms of trees, gun positions, and so on.

shall of France. American soldiers were in several places, sometimes fighting with the English or French, sometimes alone.

We heard of them at Schieperay, in the Belleau Wood, in the cham-

paign country, at St. Mihiel, which the Germans had held for four years, and at last in the wire-strung ravines and machine-gun nests of the Argonne forest. Fresh and strong, where others were tired and

It Meant All This When Our

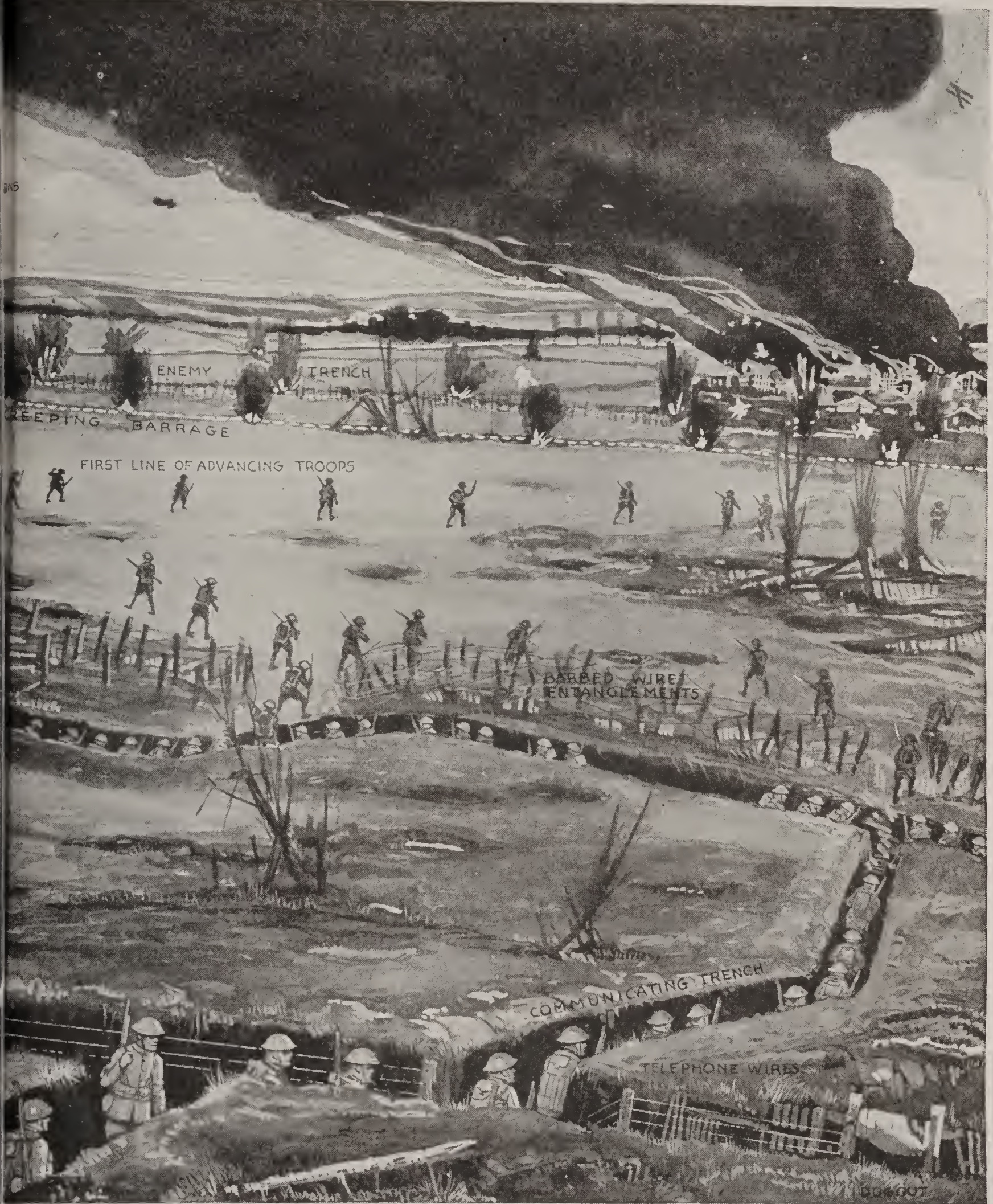


This picture shows what a soldier-boy in the World War meant when he wrote home that he had been "over the top." He meant "over the top" of the trenches. This is a trench system of the Allies and an attack is being made on the enemy trenches. Such trenches run zigzag, so that the positions of the men going through them will be constantly changing, thus

making it more difficult for enemy gunners to hit them. "Traverses" are sudden angles, making projections behind which men can retreat in case of need when the trenches are invaded. "Duck-boards" were for use of the men in crossing, and protected the wires of the field telephone running under them.

Ahead of the advancing men you note a dotted line

Soldier-Boys Went "Over the Top"



marked "creeping barrage." A "creeping barrage" was a device for protecting advancing troops, and consisted in throwing a rain of shells ahead of them. Such a barrage was called a "creeping barrage" because it moved just fast enough to keep in advance of the men who went forward at a moderate rate of speed.

Back of the first line of advancing troops you notice men going through a region of entanglements of barbed wire, woven around posts. These entanglements are to check the attacks of enemies. When the men in the trenches wished to advance, however, paths were opened at intervals by removing rolls of barbed wire so placed as to serve for gates.

worn, they fought with a dash and bravery that won the admiration and gratitude of the world. They furnished just the added force and spirit that were needed to push Germany and Austria out of France and Italy, and make them sue for peace.

And Then Came the Victory

No matter how small you were you never will forget the wild joy of November 11, 1918, when news came that Germany had signed the armistice, and Emperor William had fled to Holland. Bells rang and whistles blew, and people stayed up all night to sing and shout and celebrate the great peace. We were glad, and sad, too, when our soldiers began to come home, for fifty thousand were left behind in their graves in France, and many more had suffered life-long injuries.

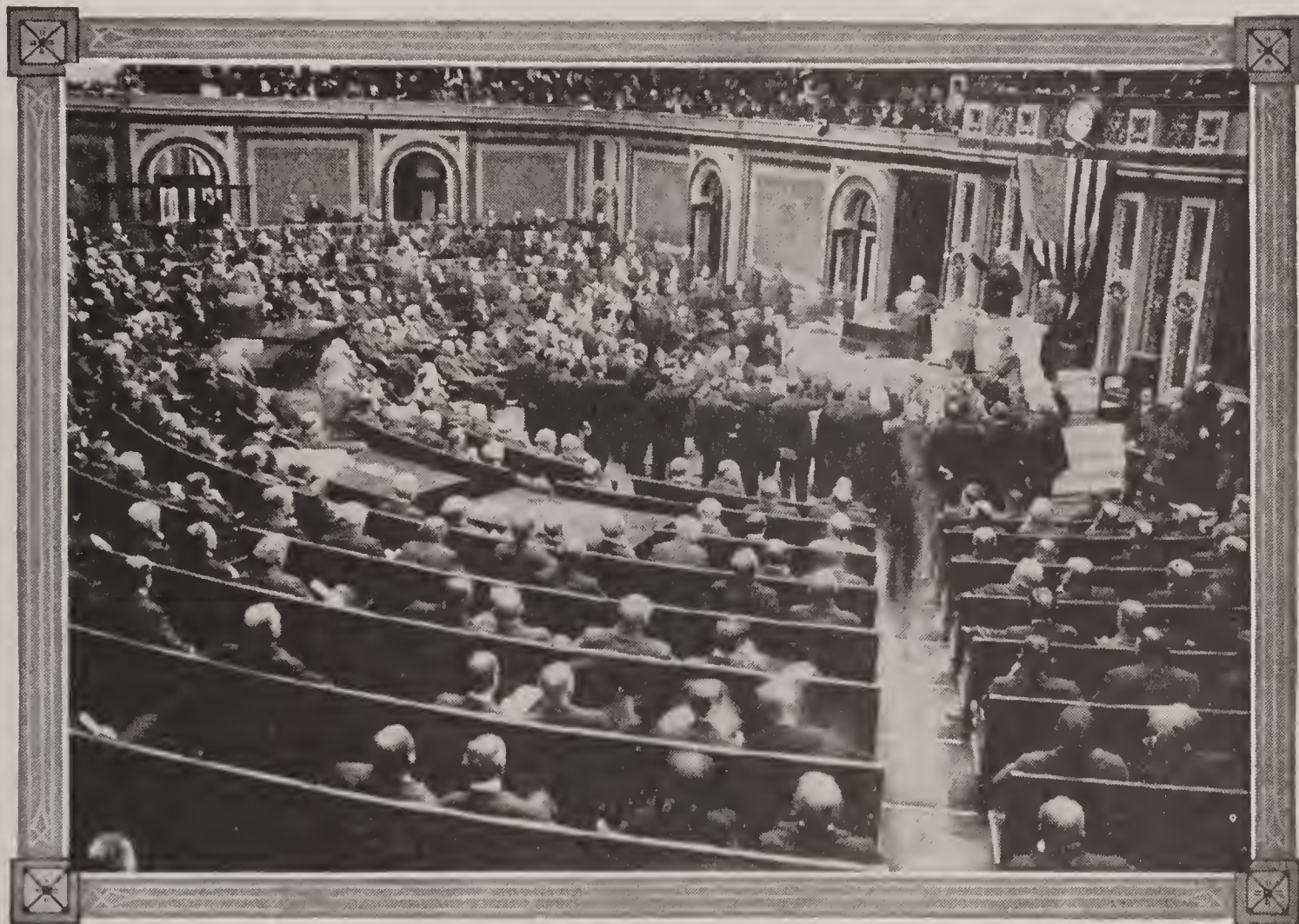
The treaty of peace which formally ended the war was signed at Versailles, June 28, 1919. Includ-

ed in this treaty was the constitution of the League of Nations. This provides a new form of international organization which by means of conferences, tribunals and arbitration seeks to prevent war and to punish any nation or combination of nations which in future attempts to disturb the world's peace.

This Peace Conference stands alone in history, not only because it ended the greatest of wars but because of this plan for bringing all peoples into one brotherhood of peace. It was also unique in the fact that for the first time in the history of the United States its chief executive left American soil to take part in it. President Wilson not only represented the Great Republic at the Peace Conference but was recognized as the chief advocate of the plan for the League of Nations and the greatest force in bringing about its inclusion in the peace treaty.

*The League
of the
Nations*

How a Law Is Made



On the First Day of the Session

After a Congressional election the Speaker of the House of Representatives must first swear in the new members before Congress can take up any business. Here is the Speaker with his right arm uplifted, administering the oath to the new members who stand in a body, facing him, with their right hands also uplifted. You can get a glimpse of the gallery, packed with people who have come to witness the ceremony.

THIS is all about "Bill," and his adventures on the way to growing up to be a law.

In a republic like ours, where people can speak their own minds, every one may have something to do with bringing Bill up. This is how it is. One day a train runs into a street car. The newspapers tell a horrible story of people who were killed and wounded. People who read about it say: "Grade crossings are dangerous. There should be a law to make

railroads elevate their tracks so collisions won't occur."

They talk to their neighbors about it. The newspapers talk about it. In some states, where there is what they call the "Initiative," anybody can get up a petition for such a law, and send it to the legislature. If enough people sign it, the legislature must pass it. If the legislature is not in session or refuses to pass the law that is wanted, a special "referendum" election is held, and the people pass it themselves.

The Beginning of a Bill

LAW

The Introduction of "Bill"

But in most cities, an alderman is asked to introduce such a bill in the city council. A group of citizens may employ a lawyer to draw the bill up in proper form, or the corporation counsel may do it for an alderman. Then, one night, "Bill's" father stands up in a council meeting. Recognized by the presiding officer, the mayor, he says: "I move to introduce an act to compel the railroad companies to elevate their tracks within the city limits."

Bill is born; but he can't walk. A boy page takes the folded, typewritten paper up to the clerk's desk. The clerk reads the title again: "An act, etc." in a voice like a megaphone, so that everyone may hear what it is all about. Then he stands and reads the entire bill aloud. Some one moves that the bill be sent to the Committee on Railroads. This is a small group of members that holds special meetings to talk over railroad bills. Citizens can appear before the committee and say why the bill should or should not be passed. Railroads may say they need five, not two years, to complete the work, as the bill requires.

The committee may report that the bill should be passed as it is; or that it should not be passed at all; or that it should have certain changes made in it. Changes are called amendments. When reported back to the council, the amendments must be read three times, and be voted on separately. Then the entire bill must be voted. If a majority is in favor of it, the bill is said to be "passed." It then goes to the mayor to be signed.

In a state legislature, or the na-

tional congress, a bill must be passed by both the house of representatives and the senate, and then be sent to the governor or president. Sometimes a house bill is amended in the senate. Then it must go back to be voted on again. Poor Bill! Trotting back and forth, hustled about, doctored, battered, punched, mended and talked to death, and then started on another weary round, he must get as tired as an office boy. Then he may have to lie for days smothered under a pile of other bills, waiting to be signed. Even then the mayor, governor or president may not like Bill's looks, refuse to sign him and send him back to be altered.

If the law-makers decide to have nothing more to do with Bill, they drop him in the waste basket and he goes to feed the furnace; or they may set him up on their shoulders and, with shouts, carry him right over the chief executive's veto. That means they do not agree that the bill ought to be changed.

But when he is safely "passed," and has grown a downy mustache under his nose, Bill has to stand up and be enrolled. You know what that is like in school. You tell your name and age, where you live, your father's nationality and what he does for a living, when you were vaccinated and how it "took." Teacher writes it all down in a book. There's a committee, and a clerk whose sole business it is to enroll Bill in the law books. Any tiny mistake in writing it down, and Bill's ambition to be a grown-up Law is smashed as flat as the pin you lay on a rail for a train to run over. Haven't you done it?

*The
Day of
Enrollment*

OUR GOVERNMENT

THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT

We See the Wheels Go 'Round



© Horace K. Turner

This painting forms part of the wall decoration of the Congressional Library in Washington. It is over a doorway and is one of a series by the eminent American artist, Elihu Vedder.

DID you notice how the three departments of government work together? A well-managed country is like a watch with three big wheels. Each wheel is independent, but all of them fit together and turn on each other.

The mayor is head of the executive department of a city. It is his business to see that the laws are obeyed. Yet he has something to say about what the laws should be. His police, health, fire and other officers are always

Things a Good Mayor Does going about the city. They see things that should be done, or forbidden. They report these to the mayor, and the mayor reports to the city council, and advises

the members. Sometimes the council takes his advice and sometimes it doesn't. But if the council passes a law of which the mayor disapproves, he can refuse to sign it. This is called the veto power. He sends the bill back with his reasons for not signing it, in writing. If two-thirds of the members still think the proposed law good, they can pass the bill over the mayor's veto.

Governors, Mayors and Presidents

The governor of a state is in the same position toward the state legislature as the president toward congress or the mayor toward the council. It is the duty of the governor to advise the leg-

islature as to what new state laws are needed. But as he does not preside over the meetings he sends his advice in a long public letter, or message. A state legislature is divided into two bodies. The house of representatives chooses a speaker from their own number, to preside. The lieutenant governor acts as president of the state senate. All bills must pass both branches and be signed by the governor. The governor, like the president and the mayor, has the right of veto; and a bill can be passed over his veto, if enough members vote for it. Usually two-thirds is necessary.

You would find the same thing true of the national government in Washington. When a new president comes into office, and every year, when congress meets, he sends a long message to the law-makers. He reviews every important work of the government, and every question that people are talking about, and says

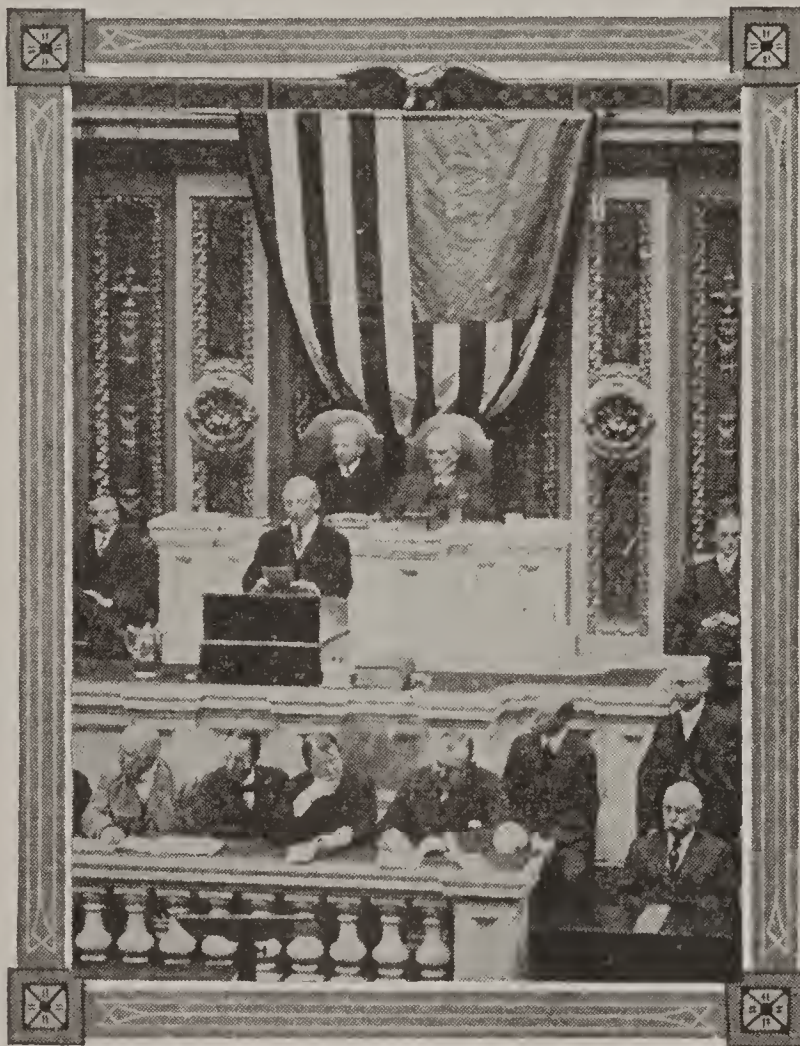
what he thinks should be done about them. The newspapers always print the president's message in full, and citizens everywhere talk about it. Mayors, governors and the president save us from bad laws by vetoing them, and sometimes they delay or prevent the passage of good ones. They make mistakes, but we have found that the veto power is a good thing for them to have. It gives our lawmakers a chance to think again, and second thoughts are often best.

The judges have something to say about some laws. As a city is governed under a charter, which says exactly what it is allowed by the state to do, so the states and the nation are governed under written constitutions, which say what they may do. Our

United States constitution was adopted by the thirteen states when the government was formed; and the other states had their constitutions approved by congress, when they

*Executives
and the
Veto Power*

The President Addressing Congress



© Harris & Ewing

Here you see the President delivering an address to Congress. Who are the men seated behind him? You guess that one is a presiding officer, which is quite right, but what office does the other hold? Since the President is addressing Congress, that is, both the Senate and the House of Representatives, the presiding officers of both bodies are there. The one on the left is the Vice-president who presides in the Senate, and the other is the Speaker of the House. Which branch of Congress, the Senate or the House, is host on this occasion? Another question will tell you the answer. Which branch meets in a room large enough to accommodate both? The men with notebooks before them are reporters, taking down the President's speech for tomorrow's newspapers. Why aren't they facing the President? See if you can tell. These seats are reserved for reporters at all meetings of the House and in the regular sessions they will get more of what is going on by facing the members instead of the Speaker. Why? Who does most of the talking in a legislative body, the "Speaker" or the members?

THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT
The President's Private Office



© Underwood & Underwood

Here is the room in which the President discusses business of a confidential nature. It is his private office in the White House. It is roomy and comfortable, you see, but no more elaborate than the offices of hundreds of successful business men. The piles of paper waiting for the President's attention give you a hint of what a busy man he is, how many things have to be attended to every day.

The President's Door Guards



© Underwood & Underwood

This is the reception room leading to the President's office in the White House. The two guards are always here to protect the President from anarchists and other troublesome people who may get into the White House, pretending to have business with the President.

Where the Cabinet Meets



© Underwood & Underwood

When a full Cabinet meeting is called to discuss some question of importance, it takes place in this room. The President sits at the head of the table facing his Cabinet. The three maps illustrate phases of the European war, which the cabinet was discussing at the time this picture was taken. Under one of them is a whole rack of other maps, you see.

were admitted to the union. These can be changed only by amendment, on which all the citizens must vote. A legislature or congress cannot pass any law that is forbidden by the constitution. For instance, every one who is accused of a crime has the right to a trial by jury. That right cannot be taken away from him by a new law. There are so many things in the constitution that few can remember all of them. So, blunders are made and the courts set a law aside, as unconstitutional.

How Law Makers Check Executives

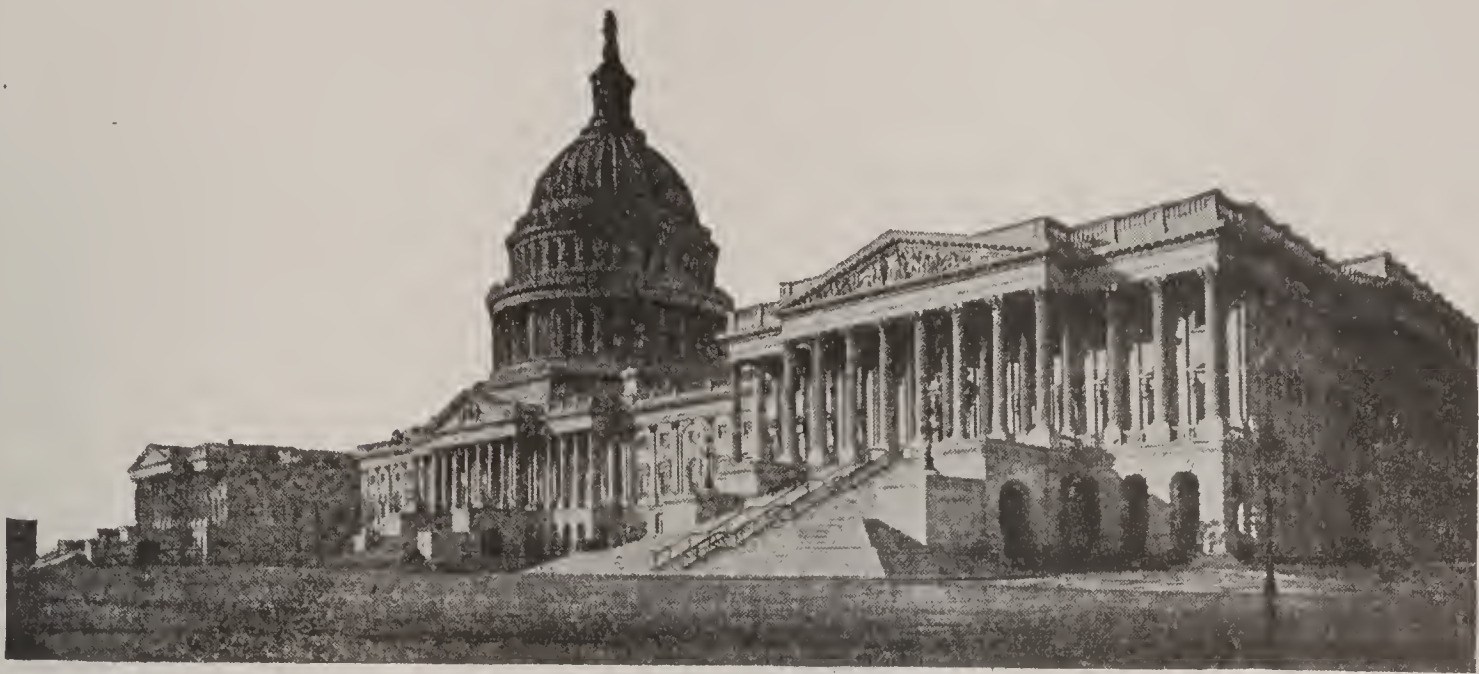
But if the mayor can advise the council and veto bills, the council

can act as a check on the mayor. He appoints the chiefs of police, fire, health and hundreds of other officers, but he must send the names of the people he appoints to the council. Usually they are approved, but sometimes they are criticized and thrown out. The council can refuse to give him all the money he wants, to do the work of the city. And if a mayor or city court judge neglects his duty or breaks the law, the council can turn itself into a court and try him. If guilty it can turn him out of office. This is called impeachment.

A governor, too, must send the list of his appointments to the legisla-

THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT

Where the Biggest Wheel Is



The wheel that sets all the other wheels to going is in this building, the Capitol at Washington. It is the office building of the United States. In it Congress meets to pass laws, the President transacts official business and the various departments have their headquarters

ture. That law-making body can impeach the governor, other state officers and state court judges. The president, vice-president, federal and supreme court judges and other officials can be impeached by the senate, or upper house of congress. The president must submit the names of cabinet members, foreign ambassadors and consuls and federal and supreme court judges and other officials to congress, for its approval. Legislatures and congress hold the purse strings. It is the law-making bodies that say how much money is spent and what it is spent for.

*A Watch
That
Keeps Watch*

Isn't that like a watch? Here are three wheels, each doing a lot of work by itself, but if they did not move with the others, and turn on them smoothly, they would all come to a stop. When you come to study the government of a big city you will also see dozens of little wheels. But they are all connected with one of the big ones. In any government, either of a small town or the greatest empire, there are only three departments. There are the men who make the laws, the men who see that the laws are obeyed, and the men who settle disputes between citizens and punish law breakers.

The Ship of State

*Thou, too, sail on, O Ship of State!
Sail on, O Union, strong and great!
Humanity with all its fears,
With all the hopes of future years,
Is hanging breathless on thy fate!*

LONGFELLOW

How Courts Settle Disputes



© Underwood & Underwood

This picture shows the Supreme Court of the United States in session. The Chief Justice sits in the center, under the eagle's spreading wings, and the eight other judges making up the court are ranged on each side. The lawyers are sitting at the tables below and one of them is addressing the court.

“THOSE marbles belong to me.”

“No, they don't. They are mine.”

Marbles look much alike, and each boy may honestly think the ones in dispute are his. Savage people settle such questions by fighting. The stronger always has his way whether he is in the right or not. In civilized countries, when men cannot settle their disputes peaceably, they ask a court of law to do it for them.

If you have a school city the two boys to a dispute should go before the judge and tell their stories. Others who know any-

thing about the matter should be called as witnesses. Whichever one proves ownership should have the marbles.

*In a
Case of
Marbles*

Either boy may ask a jury trial. In that case the judge is obliged to call in six or twelve boy and girl citizens to decide the case.

There is a way to settle such disputes out of court. Each boy may chose a friend to act as his lawyer. The lawyer of the boy who has the marbles may say to him: “This is going to be pretty hard to decide. Why not offer the other boy part of the marbles? If you take the case into court, he

may get all of them." The other boy's lawyer advises his client to accept the offer, because the court might decide that none were his.

The Different Grades of Courts

In a real city or town, a legal dispute would be heard in a justice,

or police

court. No

place is so

small but it

has a jus-

tice of the

peace, who

decides

disputes

involving

small

amounts,

and fines

people who

are disorderly.

Dis-

putes about

larger

amounts

of money;

the distri-

bution of

property

underwills;

the guar-

dianship of

orphan

children

and the

care of

their prop-

erty; and

serious crimes, such as burglary, are

settled in higher courts. In every

county seat there is a courthouse for

these higher courts, and a state

supreme court in the state capital.

Then, there are United States, or

Federal courts, which hear disputes

between states, between citizens of

different states, and where those who break government laws are tried. Anyone who robs a post-

office, who breaks the

national banking laws,

who smuggles goods

into the country without paying the

tax on them; who sells government

secrets to

foreign

countries;

who de-

serts from

the army

or navy, or

attempts

to kill the

president,

is tried in

a Federal

court. Big

cities have

all three

kinds of

courts. The

highest

court of

all, the Su-

preme

Court of

the United

States, sits

in Wash-

ington, and

the jus-

tices are

appointed

by the pres-

ident.

Let us

see what happens when a case

gets into court. Any civil suit

can be settled out of court, as the

boys settled about the marbles. But

a charge of crime must be tried. A

civil suit is decided sometimes by a

judge, sometimes by a jury. Every

man accused of a crime, for which

Our Greatest Chief Justice



John Marshall became Chief Justice of the Supreme Court a few years after government under our constitution began. By his wise decisions and his thorough knowledge of the law, John Marshall gave people confidence in the new government and established the constitution on a firm foundation.

he may have to go to prison or forfeit his life, has the right to demand a jury trial.

The jury system was begun hundreds of years ago by the Saxons in Germany, to protect innocent people from persecution by enemies, kings and nobles. The Saxons took their jury trials to England, and English colonists brought them to America. When our government was formed, this precious right of trial by jury was put into the Constitution. Even the government cannot take this right from its citizens. It is the duty of every voter to serve upon a jury when he is called upon to do so, unless he is ill or has some other good excuse. Great care is taken by the court, to select a jury of six or twelve "good men and true" who will give the accused a fair trial. It is a solemn moment when the judge says: "Stand up and be sworn, gentlemen."

The jury must listen to the arguments of lawyers, and to the sworn testimony of witnesses on both sides, and make up their minds from the evidence. The judge instructs them in the law. In a room by themselves they talk the case over and vote upon it. When they have made a decision they return to the court room and the foreman hands in the verdict. That is another solemn moment when the judge inquires "Guilty" or "Not guilty."

Rights of New Trial and Appeal

If a jury disagrees, a new trial is ordered. And if either party to a suit is dissatisfied he can demand a

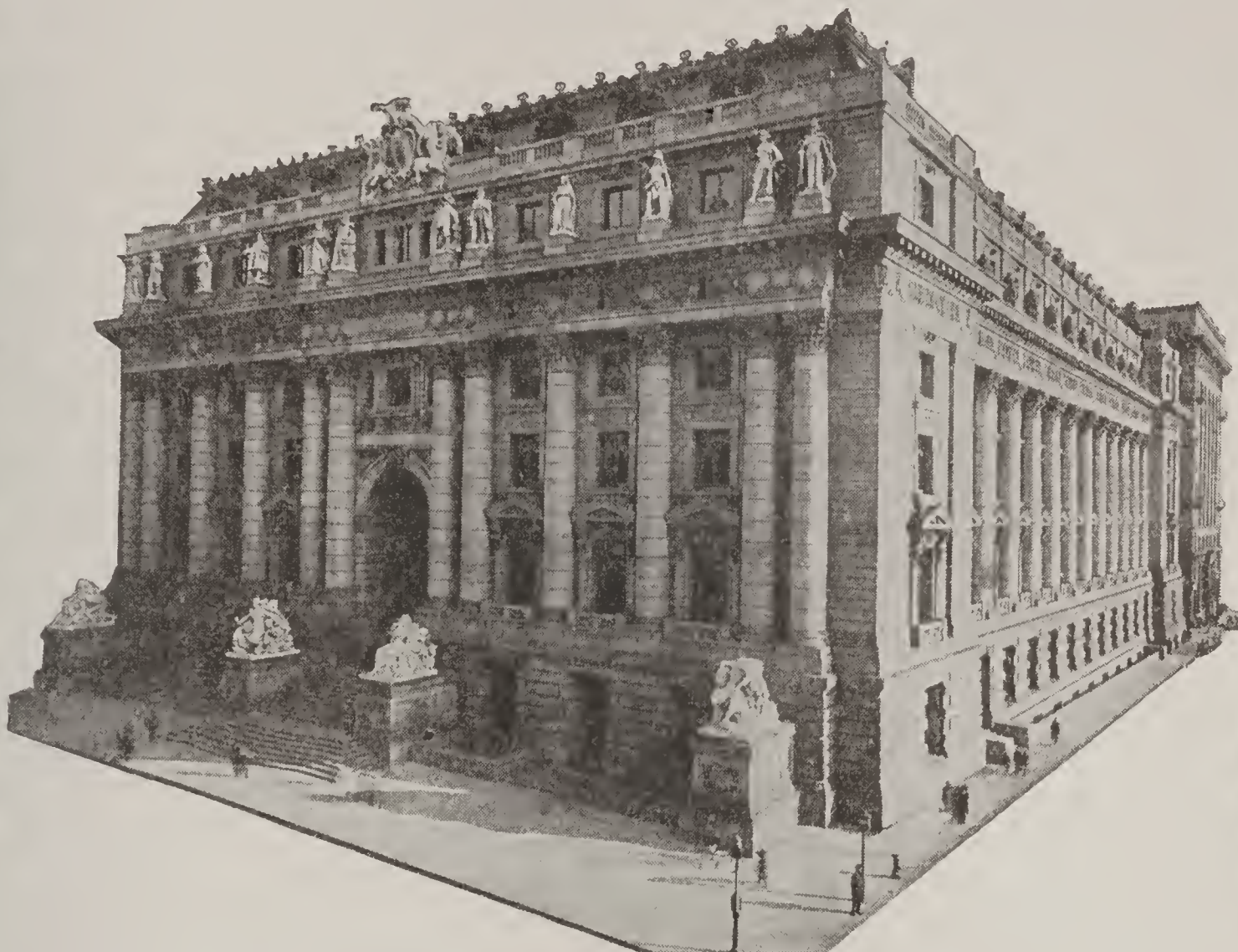
new trial. In criminal trials, the state or the United States is one party, and is represented by a prosecuting attorney. The decision of a justice court can be appealed to the state courts, up to the state supreme court. A case begun in a federal circuit court can be carried up to the United States supreme court. Many decisions of the lower courts are over-ruled or sent back for retrial by the upper ones. Great civil and criminal cases are often taken from one court to another for years. But they are settled at last, and everyone concerned is obliged to abide by the decision. Around our entire system of local, state and federal courts, countless safeguards are set, to secure justice for everyone.

Quarrels are settled by law, not by using fists. And people charged with crimes are not punished by the angry victims, or by mobs, but by the courts, after fair trials.

The judge is the presiding officer in a court. He sees that all the requirements of the law are observed in the selection of the jury, the examination of witnesses, and everything else that goes on in court.

After all the testimony has been given he reads, and afterwards turns over to the jury, a written statement called the "charge," which tells the jurymen what the law is with regard to the points in controversy in the case. The jury decides what the facts are, according to the testimony, and then gives a verdict for the plaintiff or the defendant in accordance with these facts and the law as laid down for them by the judge.

How Uncle Sam "Makes Money"



The U. S. Customs House in New York City

In large cities, in various parts of the country, Uncle Sam has offices for the men who attend to the collection of the internal revenue and the tariff on articles imported into the country. In the very largest cities, like New York, he has buildings of his own for these offices. This is a picture of the U. S. Customs Office in New York City. The sculpture groups in front of the building are by Daniel C. French. One of them, "America," we have reproduced as the tail piece to the Geography article on America. You can tell where it is by comparing the two pictures. The other three groups represent Europe, Asia and Africa. You see, we import things from all over the world. Uncle Sam's revenue officers know a great deal about Geography and it's as interesting as a story book.

YOUR "Uncle Sam," or the United States, has to spend hundreds of millions of dollars every year. But before he spends it he must earn it, just as your father earns his money. He does many things for all of us that no one could do for himself. So every one must pay him something, even children.

You think you don't give him any money? Why, every time you mail a letter you must pay Uncle Sam's postoffice two cents for a stamp. It goes to pay for the mail service. The tax on incomes is another source of revenue. There are many things you use, upon which you pay what is called an "indirect" tax, which

Inspecting Imports



These men are U. S. revenue officers, and they are examining imported goods to see whether the proper amount of duty has been levied on them. Sometimes the men who import the goods have different opinions from Uncle Sam's officers as to the value of the goods, what class they come under, and so on, and the officers have to look into this. Duties, as you know from your Arithmetic, are either levied according to the class in which the goods belong, or according to their value—"ad valorem."

goes into Uncle Sam's savings bank. On coffee, rubber, watches, dolls, and other things grown or made in foreign lands, a customs duty, or tariff, must be paid at the seaport, before they are admitted to be sold in our country. This tax is added to the selling prices of the articles.

Another form of indirect tax is the revenue tax on such things as cigars and tobaccos. Did you ever notice a long, green stamp around one end of a box of cigars? That is an "internal revenue" stamp that the manufacturer is obliged to buy of Uncle Sam. The stamps on packages and bottles are cancelled, as they are on letters, so they cannot be used twice.

Uncle Sam gets some money by selling his public lands, by renting coal and other mineral lands to min-

ing companies, by selling timber from forest reserves, and water from irrigation ditches; and he charges a toll on the tonnage of ships passing through the Panama Canal. But for many years most of his money came from the tariffs on imported goods. When it was decided to let in necessary articles, such as sugar, free, or at lower rates, Uncle Sam had to look about to see where he could get enough money to keep the country going. By an amendment to the Constitution, which was voted on and accepted by the states, congress was allowed to put a direct tax on the incomes of citizens.

How Uncle Sam Spends His Money

What does he spend all this money for? Well, he has to pay the

expenses of congress, of the president's department, of the federal courts, of the ambassadors and consuls who take care of our interests in foreign countries, and of the army and navy. He has to improve rivers and harbors, build postoffices and other government buildings.

He can pay for all these things without much trouble. But when he has a war on his hands, or a big piece of work like irrigating desert lands or digging the Panama Canal, he is obliged to borrow money. People of our own and of foreign countries are glad to loan money to Uncle Sam. They take his promissory notes, called Government Bonds. These draw interest every year and are payable in a certain number of years. Uncle Sam is such "sure pay" that his bonds draw a low rate of interest. They are as good as cash and the owner of one can sell it any day.

Now, you know, Uncle Sam runs a printing office to make paper money, and several mints for coining gold and silver. Wouldn't you think he could take what he needed, and not have to collect it from the people, in taxes, and borrow? But the money he makes isn't his. He is only the people's agent and treasur-

er, to supply a safe medium of exchange for carrying on the business of everyone.

Just What is Money?

What is money, after all? Why, it is what you buy things with. But

real money must have value in itself. Gold and silver have value. Coins can be melted and sold. But a paper dollar has no real value. It simply stands for money. People use it for buying and selling things because it is more convenient than a coin and they can always exchange it for coin. On a two dollar bill is printed these words:

"This certifies that there have been deposited in the treasury of the United States of America, two silver dollars."

The real money is the silver. The paper money is Uncle Sam's promise to pay its face value. Green bills are silver certificates; yellow bills, gold. National banks are allowed to issue paper notes by depositing government bonds with the treasury. Uncle Sam cannot make as much paper money as he pleases for himself or for the banks. He can make only as much as he has gold, silver and bonds in his treasury to redeem them with.

Money is printed on a special

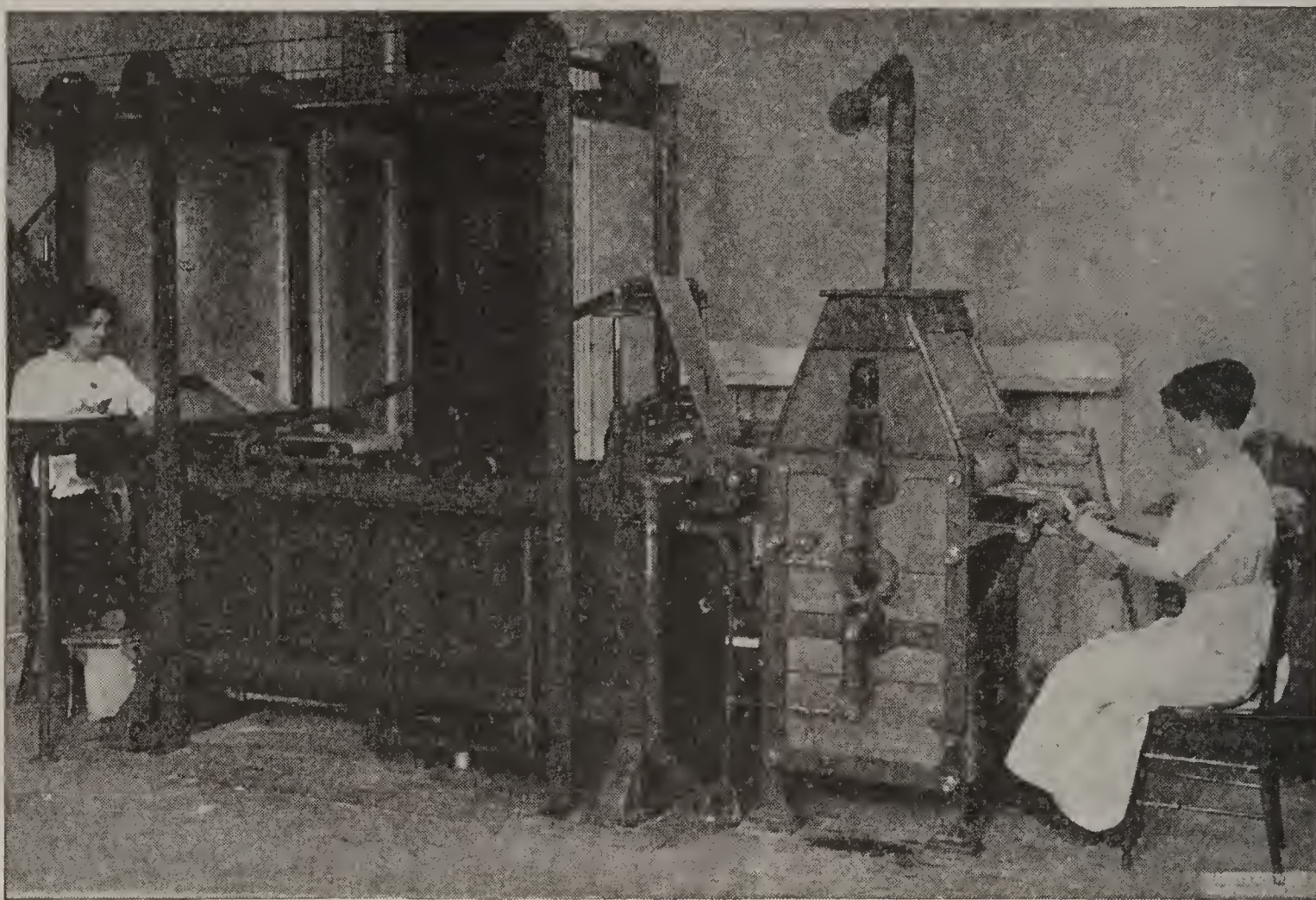
Uncle Sam's Pockets



Uncle Sam cannot put all his money in his pocket for two reasons: one reason is that there isn't any "Uncle Sam," really, and another is that there is so much of this money that it would not go into anybody's pocket. So they have a lot of "pockets" for it in the shape of stout canvas bags like these. The bags, when they are filled, are put away in the vaults of the Treasury at Washington. Each of the bags you see here has a thousand dollars in it.

PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

In the Money "Laundry"



Every day is "wash day" in the Bureau of Printing and Engraving in Washington, where Uncle Sam makes his paper money. Paper money is handled so much that it is likely to carry disease germs, and before being sent out it is run through this machine which cleans and sterilizes it. Notice that the girl on the left is feeding the money into the machine which carries it along and passes it through the sterilizing apparatus until it comes out "spick and span" at the other end.

kind of paper that only one factory is allowed to make, and for one customer, and that is Uncle Sam. It is very tough and smooth, and has little red and blue silk threads scattered all through it. The bills are printed from plates of steel, beautifully engraved by hand. Each bill is numbered and is signed by the secretary of the treasury and the registrar. The seal is stamped on last. See how many things you can find on a dollar bill.

The owners of mines are willing to exchange gold and silver bars, at the mints, for these paper promises to pay, of Uncle Sam's, because his promise is "as good as gold" and the paper is convenient. The metals are melted, rolled into strips, cut into round blanks by steel dies,

weighed, stamped with the designs and "milled" about the edges.

The greatest care is taken with the paper, engraving, inks, printing, numbering, signing and sealing of paper notes; and with the minting of coins. That is done so that not one can disappear while being made; and to make it difficult for any one to alter or copy them. But clever criminals sometimes counterfeit both paper notes and gold and silver coins. Uncle Sam has secret service men, or government detectives out all the time, hunting for counterfeiters. A bad coin is duller in color than a good one, usually weighs less, the design is not so sharply cut, and when dropped it does not give the "ring" of gold and silver. Bad paper money has a different feel to

*Paper Money
and the
Coinage*

*To Prevent
Counter-
feiting*

The Paper that Stands for Money

the touch. It lacks the little colored silk threads, and the engraving is not so carefully done. Often something will be missing—a number or signature.

If you should get a piece of counterfeit money, do not try to buy anything with it, as that is against the law. Ask the person who gave it to you to take it back and give you good money. He probably did not know it was bad. If



Paper money isn't real money at all, you know. It's either Uncle Sam's promissory note, or it is a certificate, saying that so much gold or silver has been placed on deposit with him. He has to have the real money in the shape of gold and silver, such as you saw in the bags, to "back up" these promises and these certificates. The colored man you see here is putting the seal on paper money done up in packages.

you don't know where you got it take it to the nearest bank to be sent to Uncle Sam in Washington. That will help him catch the man who made it. And that is one big item of expense, to Uncle Sam—to guard our money, to make sure that every dollar paid to every citizen, for work or goods, is worth one hundred cents.

Don't you think he earns all we pay him?

The Sweetest Lives

*The sweetest lives are those to duty wed,
Whose deeds, both great and small,
Are close-knit strands of an unbroken thread
Where love ennobles all.
The world may sound no trumpets, ring no bells;
The Book of Life the shining record tells.
Thy love shall chant its own beatitudes
After its own life-working. A child's kiss
Set on thy sighing lips shall make thee glad;
A poor man served by thee shall make thee rich;
A sick man helped by thee shall make thee strong;
Thou shalt be served thyself by every sense
Of service which thou renderest.*

ELIZABETH BARRETT BROWNING.

Where We Got Our Dollar Sign

IN every German speaking country there is a coin called the thaler—pronounced tah-ler. The people of Holland and the other low German countries say dah-ler. The coin and the name were brought to America by the Dutch who settled New York. The English colonies of New England and the South used the English coins of pounds, shillings and pence. As there were so many more English than Dutch settlers

Some History Back of the Dollar in America the name would have disappeared if it had not come to us again from Spain. The Spanish people, from a long period of fighting and trading in the Netherlands, had found it necessary to coin the thaler. They called it a "peso," but other trading nations called it the Spanish "dollar." In 1750 Great Britain sent nearly a million Spanish dol-

lars to Massachusetts to pay war expenses. The coin was worth four shillings sixpence, or one dollar and eight cents. After the Revolution the United States adopted its own decimal system of coinage, making the dollar of one hundred cents the unit of value.

When this American money first came into use it was always referred to as United States, or "U. S." currency. Some authorities think the dollar sign (\$) is an abbreviation, the S being written over the U. Others think it an abbreviation of the Spanish *pesos*. But it may also be a short form of 8/8. As our dollar is ten dimes, so the Spanish dollar was eight *reals*, a *real* being a small coin worth ten or twelve cents. The Spanish dollar was often called "a piece of eight."

Working for Uncle Sam in the Civil Service

THE United States has more than one hundred thousand "jobs" for those who want to work for him. They are in the Civil Service, which includes every department of the government under the President's office, except the army and navy. When you are seventeen years old you could get one of these places—one of the lowest clerkships to begin with, and a chance to work up, if—

Just like any other employer, Uncle Sam wants to know some things about the people he hires. He will give you a trial if you are honest and in good health and if you can get an average of 70 in reading, writing, spelling and arithmetic. One who expects to get into the post-office service must be good in geography; one with business college training or office experience, should ask for a bookkeeper's or stenographer's position in Washington, or a local government building. And there are a number of fine places for teachers, electricians, engineers, surveyors, chemists, draftsmen, foresters, mineralogists and specialists in plant and animal life. These are sent to the Philippine Islands, Panama and Alaska, into the irrigated lands and national parks, to agricultural colleges, and to do expert work for Uncle Sam in Washington.

*Character
of the
Work*

Under the Old "Spoils" System

All these places used to be given to men who worked to put some party in power. After every election, when the party changed, thousands of government employes were discharged. Members of the winning party took their places, often not to do the work, but to draw the salaries. No one was examined for fitness to do the work, or discharged for incompetence.

That was not business-like. As the people of the United States were paying the bills they insisted upon a change. Now, under the civil service law, government employes must pass examinations. No employe is asked about his politics, nor can he be asked to give either time or money to political work. The positions to be filled are divided among all the states according to population, and examinations are held twice a year in each state. Anyone can learn about the times and places of examination by writing to the Civil Service Commission in Washington.

The questions are prepared, not by the commissioners, but by boards of examiners made up from among employes of the departments. It was found that men in the postoffice department, for instance, know best just what a beginning mail clerk or letter carrier should know. Those who

get the highest marks are put at the head of the list, and are offered the first vacancies. Physical fitness is considered too. Crippled people often have bright minds and can do office and laboratory work well. But a forest ranger must be able to tramp and ride in all weathers, camp out, and endure many hardships. A railway mail clerk must be at least five feet six inches tall, weigh one hundred and thirty pounds and be quick of eyesight, hearing and movement. Mail cars are sometimes attacked by robbers, and the safety of money and valuables depends upon the quickness, strength and courage of the clerks.

*Getting
Marks Under
Uncle Sam*

Trying Out the Applicants

When a vacancy occurs in a department of the government the chief in charge sends word to the Civil Service Commission. Three names that stand highest, on the list of the kind of place to be filled, are sent. The first is notified to report for a six months' trial. If his work is satisfactory he has a permanent position. He cannot be discharged except for good reasons that must be reported in writing to the commissioners. Anyone who gets a place under Uncle Sam not only has a life job if he does his work well, but he can win promotion. Mr. George B. Cortelyou started as a stenographer in a de-

*The Case
of
Cortelyou*

partment. He was such a good one that he was sent to the White House, to write President Cleveland's letters. He became private secretary to President McKinley, filled three cabinet secretaryships under President Roosevelt, and was made chairman of the Republican National Committee.

There are other chances in the Civil Service besides those of promotion. Washington has good schools of law, medicine, engineering and other professions. The hours in government offices are short. Young men and women earn money to finish their education. After graduation they go into other businesses for themselves. Forty thousand vacancies are made every year, in this and in other ways, making room for a new lot of ambitious young people who want to work their way through college.

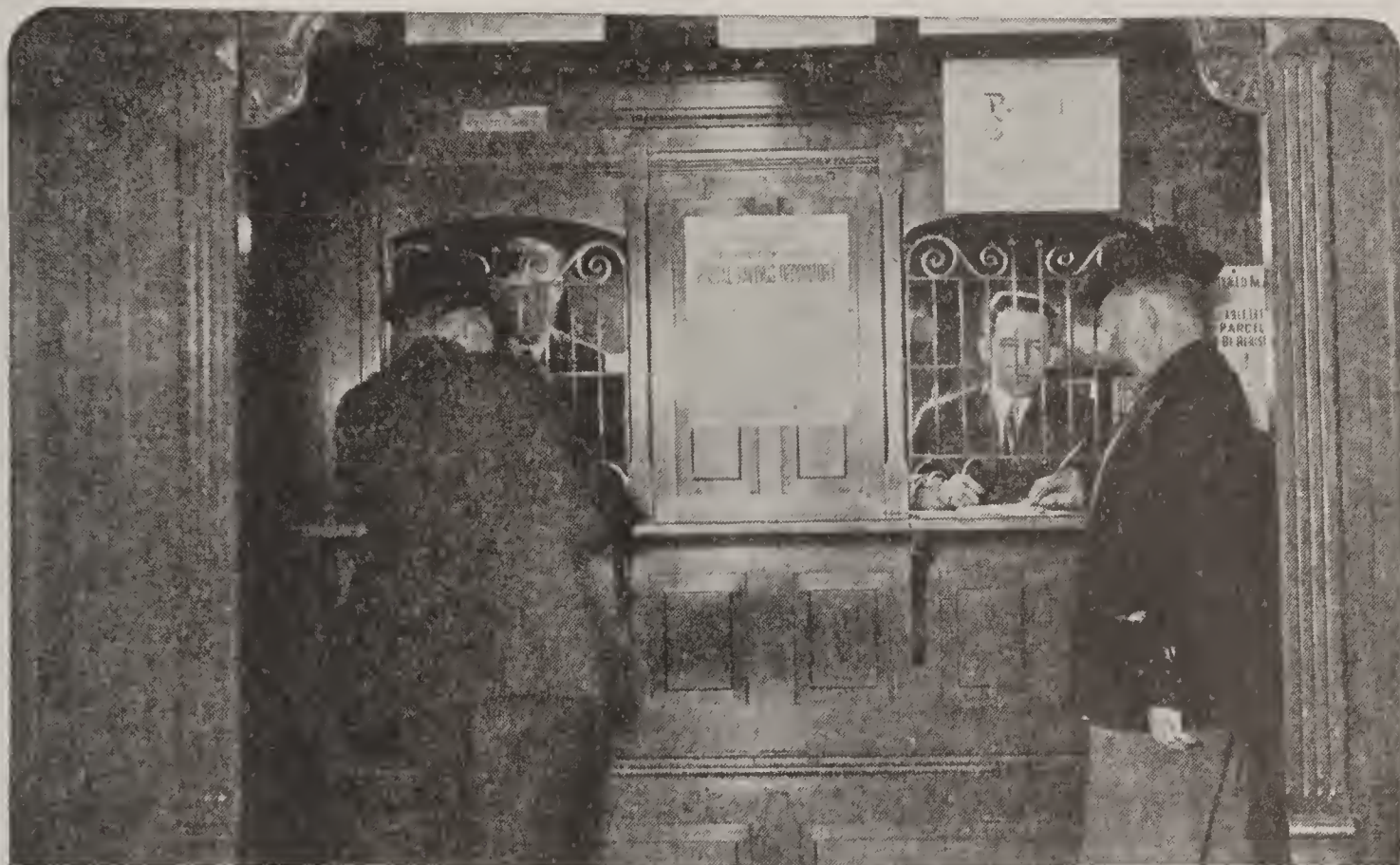
Many states and cities now have their own civil service systems for state and city employes. Citizens saw how much better the work of the schools, libraries and postoffice was done, under the merit plan. They are now insisting that policemen, firemen, health officers, managers and attendants in institutions and hospitals, and all public employes, except those who are elected, should come under civil service rules.

What do you think about the civil service idea?

OUR GOVERNMENT

POSTAL SAVINGS BANKS

How Uncle Sam Helps Us Save Money



A Postal Savings Bank

It's just as it says on that notice between the two windows: "This Postoffice is a Postal Savings Depository." The reading matter on the notice tells just what to do in putting money into a postal savings bank and taking it out. The man on the left is putting money into the bank, and the one on the right is taking it out. You know—or will know when you have read this story on how Uncle Sam helps us to save money—that "to get money out you write on the back of the certificate the amount you want to draw, and sign your name."

UNCLE SAM has been peeping around corners for years, watching big people and little ones spend pennies, nickels and dimes for foolish things. "Dear, dear! This won't do, at all," he said, and sometimes he whispered in their ears:

"Why don't you put the money you don't need to spend into a savings bank?"

"There is too little of it; the bank is away down town; and besides, banks sometimes break. Besides, I have an old stocking, or

a hole in the ground, for my savings."

"And never earning a penny! At Washington I have a silver dollar that was buried fifty years, and is green with mold. In a savings bank it would have earned two dollars in that time. The banks do care about pennies, for they grow into dollars, if put to work. And it is not the amount of money saved that is so important, as the habit of saving, and the business training of keeping accounts, and counting the cost."

Establishment of the Postal Banks

So Uncle Sam thought he would better help his boys and girls, and people who haven't the banking habit, to save money. You can open a savings account with a ten cent piece, at a postoffice. The postmaster will give you a card with spaces to stick nine ten cent savings stamps on. When you present the tenth dime he will take your card up, and make out a postal savings certificate for one dollar. He will write your name and address, and the date. If you keep that certificate a year, you could draw out one dollar and two cents. The postmaster keeps a copy of the certificate, so if you lose yours he will give you another one. To get money out, you write on the back of the certificate the amount you want to draw, and sign your name. If you have saved \$10 and want to use \$1, the postmaster will give you the dollar and a new certificate for \$9, bearing the same date as the one he takes up.

What does he do with your money? He puts it into a bank, and

draws three per cent interest on it. The extra one per cent pays him for the trouble of taking care of your money. When you have saved one hundred dollars, you should draw it, after an interest date, and put it into a bank, where it will earn more money. Uncle Sam will not let you leave more than \$500 with him. He does not want to go into the banking business, but to get people into the habit of saving.

Uncle Sam can tell you a lot about saving money and investing it, and how it grows. One hundred dollar boxes of candy are eaten up, and earn nothing but headaches and bad teeth. But a one hundred dollar bond, that can be turned back into cash any day, earns from two and a half to five dollars a year. It would pay for your tuition and books for a year, in a business college, or give you a start in life when you grow up. And you would have the saving habit, instead of the spending habit.

This saving habit is one of the most important things you can learn.

What the Government Does for the Farmer



West Wing of the U. S. Department of Agriculture Building.

NO OTHER person has so many different kinds of things to do as the farmer—and Mrs. Farmer; so many hours of work. Up at four o'clock in the morning in summer, he feeds the farm animals, milks the cows, doctors a sick horse, sprays the fruit trees to kill insects, hoes the garden, and “bugs” the potatoes. He plows and sows and reaps, cares for his machinery, hauls his crops to market, and looks at the weather reports in the postoffice. Then, when everything on four legs has gone to bed, he reads the farming papers and the crop and market reports.

You won't be surprised, then, to learn that one of the busiest men in the President's cabinet in Washington is the Secretary of Agriculture, who is the govern-

ment farmer. Just to name the departments under him, each with its chief and hundreds of employes, makes an ordinary man's head swim. Two of them, the Weather Bureau, and the Bureau of Forestry, we have told about in separate articles. There is, besides, a Bureau of Animal Industry, a department devoted to grasses, grains, fruits, flowers, and truck gardening. The Bureau of Chemistry studies fertilizers. The Soil Survey has mapped the country, according to what each of over four hundred different soils will grow. The Bureau of Biology collects information about useful and harmful wild birds and animals. The Bureau of Entomology does the same with insects, and the Bureau

*A Bee
Hive of
Bureaus*

of Statistics gathers and publishes reports on the condition of crops.

"Unhired" Help From Washington

Any farmer can get any kind of help he needs in managing his farm.

ment advised the farmers to breed muskrats for the fur. They did so and are now prosperous.

Government experiment farms are conducted, often in connection with state agricultural colleges. The pu-

TICK ERADICATION PAYS.

After being freed of ticks, this Mississippi steer gained 285 pounds in 2 months, an average daily gain of 4½ pounds, under the same feeding conditions.



TICK-INFESTED STEER.
August 12, 1911. Weight, 730 pounds



SAME STEER FREE OF TICKS.
October 12, 1911. Weight, 1,015 pounds.

The Federal Government, in cooperation with State and local authorities, is engaged in eradicating ticks which infest cattle and transmit disease. Individuals can help by freeing their own cattle of ticks, and by urging their neighbors to do likewise. The ticks are usually destroyed by dipping. Literature and information may be obtained from the—

BUREAU OF ANIMAL INDUSTRY, UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE,
WASHINGTON, D. C.

How Uncle Sam Makes the Ticks Stop Ticking

Nothing "talks" like a picture. So the Department of Agriculture—the division of it called "The Bureau of Animal Industry"—sends out posters like this into the cattle regions where cattle become infested with ticks, to teach the stock raisers how well tick-eradication pays, and how to make the ticks stop ticking! This picture tells at once the results of doing it, and the reading matter under it tells you how to get full information about tick-eradication by writing to the Bureau of Animal Industry. These posters are displayed in the local postoffice and other public places.

The Department of Agriculture will tell him what is the matter with any field and how to remedy it. It will send him printed bulletins of directions to cure all plant, and animal, and soil diseases. It will tell him why ichneumon flies and moles are friends. It will send him samples of seeds suited to his farm, tell him how to test and select seeds, and what other crops he could grow to make more money. In one swampy district in Maryland the govern-

pils analyze soil, test seed and fertilizers, and attack insect enemies and plant diseases. The healthiest plants are marked and the seeds saved for replanting. Strong plants are vaccinated with disease, so they won't catch it. The same attention is given to farm animals, to breed the biggest and strongest. Just as malaria and yellow fever were caused by certain mosquitoes in Panama, so investigation by Uncle Sam's great farming

*Vaccination
to Keep Plants
Healthy*

An Arizona Date Orchard



As we have seen, it has been proved that dates will thrive in this country. This scene is in the hot, dry Arizona climate. The picture shows date trees three years after transplanting.

department proved a "tick" caused Texas fever in cattle. By studying the habits of Mrs. Tick, and protecting cattle from her, Texas fever is being stamped out.

By giving plants certain foods and exposing them to heat, cold, drier and moister air, they are trained to stand new climates, so they can be grown more widely. And new seeds are brought from other countries and "naturalized." A fine rice was introduced from Japan into Louisiana; a dry-

A Bit of Egypt in California



This date palm does not seem to know it is not in Egypt, for it goes right on producing dates in California as its parent tree used to do in the Land of the Nile. It was imported by the Department of Agriculture because the experts of the "Division of Pomology" thought it ought to grow in our own beautiful "lands of Egypt," like southern California.

region wheat from Asia Minor; a seedless grape from Italy; the olive tree from Spain; a hardy peach tree from China, and a fig tree from Smyrna. At first the fig tree did everything it should but grow figs. To fertilize the blossoms a certain wasp, with a long honey tube, was needed. So fig wasps were brought over, too, to California.

Any man who thinks of buying a farm, anywhere in the United States, should write to the department in

PICTURED KNOWLEDGE

A Chrysanthemum Show



A chrysanthemum show of the Agricultural Department. Compare the development of the chrysanthemums on the right with the seedlings on the left.

Vegetable Trial Grounds



Here we are in the vegetable trial grounds of the Office of Seed and Plant Introduction. This big garden is on the flats of the Potomac. Here, experiments are made with different kinds of vegetables, and those that prove the most satisfactory have their seeds sent out for use of farmers and gardeners all over the country.

THE AGRICULTURAL DEPARTMENT

How the Date Palms Got Here



This picture shows how slips—scions, they are called—from all kinds of fruit trees are brought from different parts of the world for introduction in this country. These packages are called "mailing cases."

Washington. It will analyze the soils of the farm, give him reports of the climate, the crops and markets of the region, what fertilizers to use, and what other things of greater value he could grow.

It will tell him the rations and treatment of animals, how to run a market garden, a fruit, dairy, poultry or timber tract. It will tell him where to put his house and stable, how to dig a dry cellar, a pure water well, drain a wet field, build a silo, to "pickle" green fodder. It will tell him what machinery to buy and how to take care of it. And it will tell the farmer's wife and children many ways to lighten toil.

Our government likes to catch its farmers young, and train them. That is because boys and girls take to new ideas quicker than older people. There are many

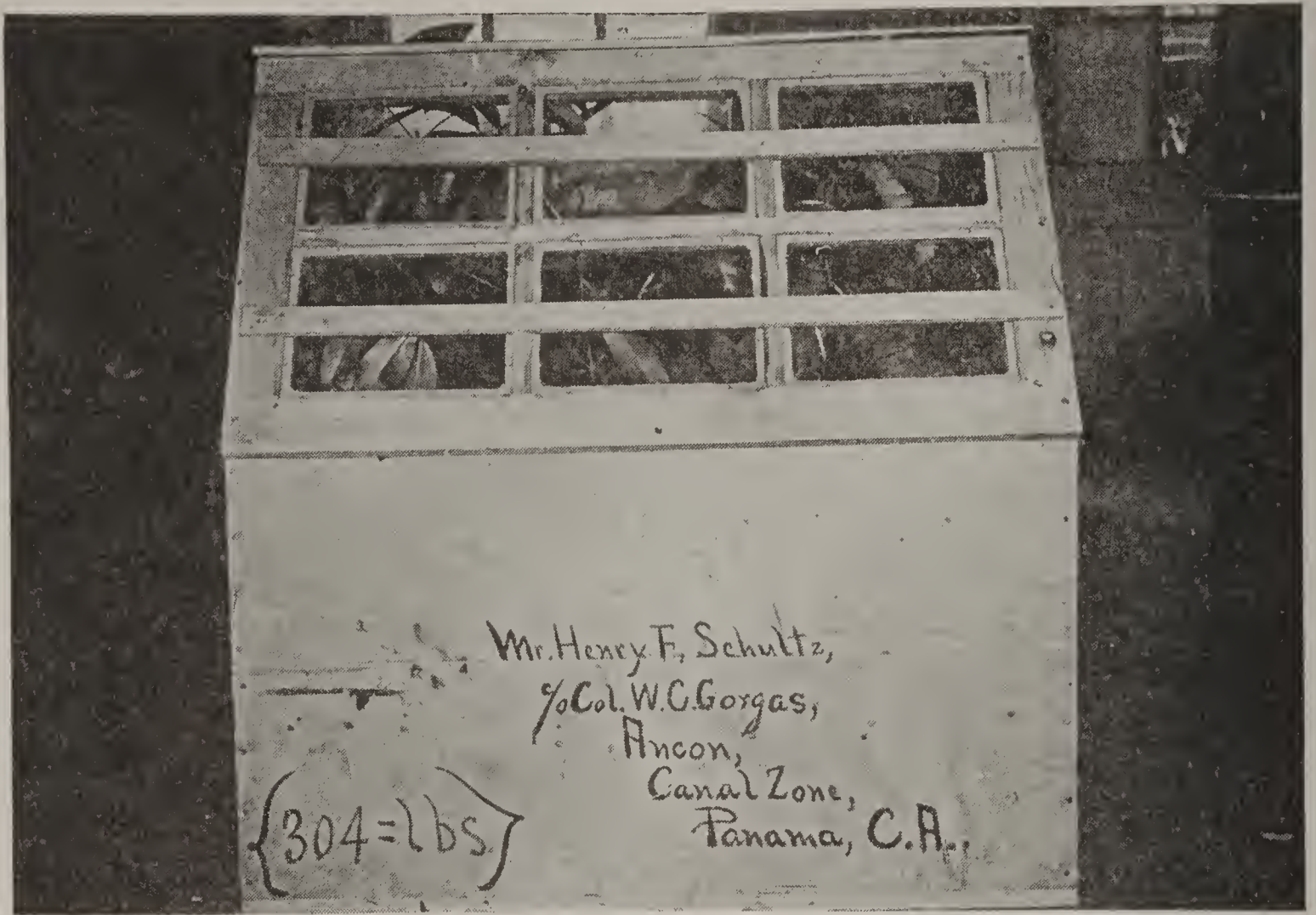
*Catching
the Farmer
Young*

thousands of boys in Uncle Sam's Corn Club. One boy in South Carolina is the champion corn grower of the world. In the Canning Club are thousands of girls. Farm girls are making money by canning fruits and vegetables that once went to waste.

Getting Rain When You Want It

One of the greatest things the Agricultural Department has done is to water the rainless deserts. The

How Young Plants Are Shipped



Here is one of the boxes in which plants are shipped. It is really a little house, isn't it? You see where these plants were going, don't you?

dry regions often have rich soil. With water they grow enormous crops. Often, right above them, the mountains are snow covered. But the melting snows made floods in the spring and left the land to parching suns. Only Uncle Sam had money enough to build great dams across the outlets of mountain valleys, to hold the waters back until needed, and to dig miles of irrigation ditches. Now, whenever a farmer needs rain, he opens a water gate and fills the little ditches that cross his fields with water.

The government helps the farmer at the "business" end of his business. It tells him how and when to market his crops; how to keep books, figure labor cost and interest on the value of his property. It advises him to keep separate accounts of each field and animal, so that he can tell which

is making a profit and which is not. Many farmers never realized that it costs the same to till a poor field, feed a "scrub" cow, and grow a worthless apple tree, as to care for a good one, until Uncle Sam proved it to him over and over.

Everybody is glad to see all this help given to the farmer, because the more he knows and grows, the more and better foods we will all have to eat. But it is just as important that everything offered in the market should be pure and wholesome. So the Agricultural Department has a pure food bureau to inspect oyster beds, packing houses, creameries, canneries, and storage houses. Manufacturers who adulterate foods or put false labels on packages can be prosecuted in the courts.

It costs millions of dollars to run

THE AGRICULTURAL DEPARTMENT

Establishing Grades of Cotton



This is the laboratory in which official grades of cotton are prepared. Cotton of a certain quality is designated by names which are understood by the trade, such as: "Fair"; "Strict Middling Fair"; "Middling Fair"; "Strict Good Middling," etc. The trouble is that when men sell cotton to one another they may dispute, when the cotton is delivered, whether it is up to grade or not, so the government establishes grades and sends samples of these grades to the various cotton exchanges.

Uncle Sam's big farming department, and it doesn't make a penny—it gives everything away. But don't you think, like Little Orphant Annie, that it "earns its board and keep" and a good deal more?

A Pleasant Home for Beautiful Sheep



This is a scene on a government experiment farm at Middlebury, Vermont. It shows a group of Southdown sheep. On these experiment farms the government finds out about animals as well as plants, and gives the benefit of this information to the farmer and stock raiser.

Uncle Sam's Best Customers

BY "UNCLE SAM" you know, is meant the people of the United States. All together we are a sort of storekeeper, buying goods of other countries and selling them. We grow more wheat, corn, cotton, and other farm products, *How We "Swap" with Other Nations* and make more oil, iron, flour, machinery, and other manufactures than we can use. And other countries have things to spare that we need. We grow no coffee or tea, but think how much we use. We do not make enough linen or silk goods, nor certain kinds of cotton and wool fabrics. All of our spices, many tropical fruits, diamonds, laces, ostrich feathers, sugar and countless other useful and beautiful things come to us from far away lands. Thousands of ships are on the oceans, carrying goods back and forth. Trains take them to and from the seaports.

You and Your Papa and Uncle Sam

If your papa is a storekeeper, how much business does he do in a year, and how much money does he make? Buying and selling, Uncle Sam does a business of over several billion dollars a year. You know, *A Billion Dollar Business* if you earn a dollar and spend a dollar and five cents, you are in debt, but if you spend only ninety-five cents you have a nickel to put in your toy bank. Uncle Sam usually buys less than he sells. That is what makes ours a rich country.

England buys the most from us. Before the dreadful European War she bought over \$478,000,000 worth of goods in nine months, and sold us over \$234,000,000. Canada bought *Some of Our Best Customers* \$300,000,000, and sold us \$90,000,000; Germany bought \$268,000,000, and sold us just half as much; France bought \$120,000,000 and sold us \$113,000,000. Our next best customers were Holland, Italy, Belgium, Cuba, Japan and Mexico. As you see, in some countries we sell a great deal more than we buy. But in Brazil we bought \$104,000,000 worth in the same nine months, and sold that country only \$32,000,000. We spent two and a half times as much money in China, and twice as much in Cuba and Japan as those countries spent with us, and the same was true of all the countries of South America. Now that the Panama Canal is opened we are selling more in South America and Asia.

How Uncle Sam's Business Grows

Our trade is growing larger every year. That gives railroads and ships more goods to carry. Our trade is *Using Up Our Raw Materials* changing, too. To feed our increasing population, and give work to more men, we have to keep more of our foodstuffs and raw materials of manufacture at home. Sixty per cent of what we sell is manufactured, only 40 per cent unprepared foods and other raw materials.

What Our Government Is Doing for the Children

UNTIL 1912 the government did nothing for the children.

If a cow had Texas fever, a chicken the pip, a hog cholera; if corn, wheat, potatoes or apple trees had some disease or insect enemy, Uncle Sam could tell the farmer exactly what to do about it. He even counted every bushel of the grain crops and every domestic animal, and reported their market value. But of the farmer's or townman's children he kept no account and he gave the mothers no help in bringing them up. Poor baby was born to troubles, as sparks fly upward. He scrambled up or gave up the struggle with no help, without even the knowledge of good Uncle Sam.

Oh yes, he cared. But it didn't occur to him that anything more could be done about it. He just



Julia Lathrop, Chief of the Children's Bureau

seemed to think that as every child was born with two loving parents he would be provided for properly. It was the business of each county and state to care for its own orphaned, blind, deaf and feeble-minded children. In early days, when healthy liv-

ing was easier and cheaper in our country, most children did grow up naturally, into useful, happy men and women. But even then all mothers were not wise, and all fathers did not do their duty.

The Cry of the Children

And now, thousands of babies are born every year in the crowded quarters of big cities. Their parents love them, but they are poor, ignorant and helpless. The food and air of the little ones are poisoned. Their bodies and minds are stunted by too early

toil in factories, mines and shops. Their innocent hearts are poisoned in alley and gutter playgrounds.

Cruel Waste of Childhood Child offenders were judged by the same hard codes as grown-up criminals. In jails and prisons and poorhouses they mingled with adult law-breakers, paupers and the feeble-minded.

A few such people as Jane Addams and Julia C. Lathrop of Hull House, Chicago, Judge Lindsey of Denver, and Nathan Strauss and William George of New York found all these things out, and told the public.

*"Do you hear the children weeping,
oh my brothers,
With a sorrow not of years?
They are laying their young heads
against their mothers,
And that cannot stop their tears."*

Just as Mrs. Browning got the factory laws of England changed long ago by writing the poem from which this verse is taken, these social missionaries in American cities got the first pure milk depots, day nurseries, fresh air homes, public playgrounds, vacation schools, juvenile courts and better

Beginning of Reform child labor laws. It was Miss Lathrop who, for a dozen years, insisted that this waste of childhood was Uncle Sam's business. The babies of today are the citizens of tomorrow. They must do the work, bring up the next generation, invent, discover, keep our liberties, and preserve the home. What kind of citizens was the government allowing to grow up?

Miss Lathrop knew exactly what she was talking about. As a member of the Illinois State Board of

Charities for twelve years, she had visited every poorhouse, jail, factory, orphanage and institution in Illinois. She had secured the civil service law and helped Miss Addams establish the first juvenile court in the world. She insisted that every child born has a right to be registered, his food and air, education, morals and work guarded and regulated. He has a right to have his mother taught how to care for him and to have his father punished when he deserts the family.

In April, 1912, President Taft approved an act of congress creating the Bureau of Child Welfare under the Department of Commerce and Labor, in Washington. Miss Lathrop's appointment as the first chief of the bureau was widely approved.

Just what does this bureau do? It cannot make laws for the nation, state or city. Its duty is to collect and publish facts of every kind that relate to the well-being of children, and give information and advice on the best laws and methods. It studies the birth rate, death rate, the causes and prevention of children's diseases. It tells people the weight and measurements of a physically perfect child, how to tell mental and moral qualities and to correct defects. It reports the records and results of schools, institutions, juvenile courts, apprenticeships, healthful and harmful first occupations; and how to get and enforce good child labor laws and to punish those who corrupt or exploit children for profit.

In a word, Uncle Sam has gone into the business of giving the children a "square deal" and of making better and more useful citizens for the future.

OUR GOVERNMENT

NATURALIZATION

How a Foreigner Becomes a Citizen



Two Little Newcomers from Holland

Hans and Gretel have arrived at Ellis Island, the gateway through which all European newcomers must pass. Gretel's one-legged dollie must be clasped tight by two chubby arms for it is very precious, and Hans is ready to defend his small fat sister most valiantly in the new strange land. America may some day be proud of this adopted son of hers who stands so staunch and scowling in his two wooden shoes.

IN the United States you can live and work where you please. You can think and speak your mind freely. You can send your children to public schools."

Something like this is printed in newspapers, all over the world, in many strange languages. We

are so used to having these blessings that we think little about them. But to many foreign people who come to America, to make new homes, they seem too good to be true. They are not here long before they learn that they can become citizens, and

help manage the affairs of our great country. A newcomer sees the happy excitement and the feeling of responsibility of his neighbors over an election. His fellow workmen will tell him that when he has lived here

of good character and is not an anarchist—that is, a disbeliever in all governments. He is given his “second papers” and is told to appear in court at the end of ninety days to be examined.

Just from Holland



Here is the whole family for three generations—a baby, his young mother and father, and his grandmother. They are strong, clean and intelligent-looking and will probably make good citizens.

three years he can get his “first papers” of citizenship. He should go before a judge and take a solemn oath that he intends to live in the United States and become a citizen. The clerk of the court writes out his declaration and gives him a copy.

Two years later he must take his “first papers” into court. It may not be before the same judge, nor even in the same city or state. Two citizens must go with him as witnesses.

To his petition for full citizenship they must sign their names to the statement that the man has lived in the state at least a year, that he is

*First Steps
Toward
Citizenship*

*What the
Witnesses
Are For*

Could You Answer Such Questions?

This time he must prove that he can speak and read English, and that he understands our system of government. Questions are asked him about our history, and the government of cities, states and nation that would puzzle some of our

native born voters to answer. If the judge is satisfied that he will make a good and useful citizen, a “certificate of naturalization” is made out. That is the foreigner’s diploma. It makes not only the father, but the mother and the children still under age who were born abroad, citizens. Children

*Children
Are Citizens
Too*

NATURALIZATION

born here are citizens whether the father is or not.

It used to be easier for a foreign born man to become a citizen. But then it was unfair to make a boy born here, of American parents, wait

tion and civics, or practical government. In Massachusetts, when a class of aliens is graduated, a meeting is held, with the mayor as chairman. A judge makes a speech on

*Graduating
into
Citizenship*

Only One Shipload of Immigrants



Most of the immigrants to this country come in the steerage of the big Atlantic liners because the fare is cheapest. This is just one shipload. It gives you some idea of how fast foreigners pour into "The Promised Land," and how important it is they should learn about our institutions.

until he was twenty-one to vote, while aliens were allowed to vote within a year or so. Besides dishonest politicians used such voters to cheat in elections. Honest but ignorant foreigners were paid for voting as they were told. They were made to understand that vote buying was a good American custom.

*Corrupt Use
of the
Foreign Vote*

Naturalization Night Schools

In some big cities there are now "naturalization" night schools. The pupils are men who have taken out their "first papers." They study speaking, reading and writing English, American history, the constitu-

good citizenship, and bearded men sing: "My Country 'tis of thee" with proud hearts.

One of the first things many foreign born Americans do, when they get their citizenship papers, is to pay visits to their old homes. Some of them come to us upon reaching the age when they would be obliged to serve in the standing armies of Russia, Germany, Italy and other countries. If they went back before becoming citizens of the United States, they would be arrested and punished, and then be made to serve as soldiers. But with their "naturalization" certificates, they can come

*Our Con-
sular Courts
Abroad*

At Ellis Island



This man has gone to sleep on a bench at Ellis Island while waiting his turn to be examined. Since people from other lands began to come to this country in such numbers, we have gained some very undesirable citizens as well as some good ones, and have become more careful about the kind of immigrants we admit. We don't want those who are diseased, insane or feeble-minded, criminals or anarchists, so all immigrants are stopped at Ellis Island, just outside of New York Harbor. There they are examined and tested, and sent back to their own country if they are found to be unfit.

and go as they please. If molested in any way, they can appeal to the nearest American consul. It is one of the duties of our consuls and ambassadors in foreign countries to protect traveling Americans in their rights, and to assist them in their troubles. When a man can say: "I am a citizen of the United States," he is treated with every consideration.

Americans who are living or traveling in other countries must, of course, obey the laws of those countries. Uncle Sam will not defend his citizens who commit crimes elsewhere. But, in very backward nations, where there are half-barbarous punishments, and imperfect means of getting justice, American consuls keep the right of judging

*Work
of the
Consuls*

Americans in their districts, and do not leave them to the mercy of native courts. They settle disputes of captains and crews of American merchant vessels, and they take charge of the body and property of any American who dies. If a citizen of the United States is imprisoned unjustly in any foreign land, the whole department of state is set in motion to secure his release. If necessary, Uncle Sam's soldier boys would go to his defense.

Every boy and girl should read Edward Everett Hale's story of "The Man Without a Country," to learn just what it would mean to have no native land; to be a homeless wanderer, like poor Phillip Nolan. And then read the story of the author's ancestor, Nathan Hale,

*The Man
Without
a Country*

Schoolfellows in New York City



The upper row of boys are: James Radin—Swedish, Nicholas Vasbaro—Greek, Max Rose—German, Samuel Blickman—Russian, Chin Chung—Chinese, and Philip Adler—Scotch. The boys in the lower row are: Israel Hellman—from Austria, William Kleinberg—from Australia, Samuel Blum—from Canada, William Simon—from England, Michael Iorio—from Italy, and Philip Rotter—from Roumania.

who was captured by the British in the Revolutionary War, and hanged as a spy. His statue stands today in a crowded quarter of New York City. On the pedestal is one of the

first English sentences foreigners learn. It is what this young American patriot said on the scaffold:

"I regret that I have but one life to lose for my country."

How a Big City Is Managed

IF a country boy had but one wish, wouldn't it be this, to visit a big city?

A boy who is born in a city and who grows up there, never sees it as a country boy does. It's like that story of Christ-
The Pro-cession and the Policeman mas every day in the year. Even the animals in the park zoo are an old story to the city boy. But to a country boy, a city is a fresh wonder. Such a maze of tall houses and endless streets! Rivers of people, automobiles, cars. From the top of a skyscraper they look like distracted ants. But it would look rather terrifying to the boy if he wanted to cross the street.

"Want to get across, sonny?" A blue policeman, six feet high and two wide, speaks to him.

"I—I was waiting for the procession to go by."

"You'd stay there long enough to grow a gray beard." The policeman laughs like good old St. Nick. He lifts his hand, and the procession stands as stock still as grandfather's clock.

To a stranger it looks as though a city is wound up and stopped by policemen. But the officer on the crossing has his orders from the Chief of Police. The mayor appointed the chief, and got his power to appoint from the city charter. The charter was granted by the state legislature and approved by the people. The people elected the mayor. If that

procession does not stop, when the policeman tells it to, disobedient ones can be arrested and taken before a judge of the city court. The law was made by the city council. Isn't that exactly like your school city, with the three departments, or wheels of governments, turning on each other and working together?

And just as in your little government, the work of the council and the courts is done in quiet rooms, out of sight. But the mayor's work of enforcing the laws is public. You run into his army of helpers everywhere.

Division of Duties in a Big City

On any street you may see a police patrol wagon, a fire engine, a street sweeper, a city hospital ambulance, a park water or oil sprinkler, or a
Departments of a City's Work school-board automobile truck. A "Measles Here" card on a door, or "No Spitting Allowed" sign in a street car, shows where a health officer has been. A wagon loaded with garbage or ashes is driven by one of the street-cleaning brigade. Then, in every elevator, a sort of diploma looking paper is neatly framed. It is the inspector's certificate of safety. Butchers' refrigerators are inspected for cleanliness. Weights and measures in stores wear the city sealer's little honesty pasters. Dogs wear license tags, and automobiles and peddlers' carts are numbered.

There are police, fire and health departments, school and library boards, park commissioners. Any boy would find a lot to interest him in the engineering department. That builds and repairs bridges, viaducts, water-works and harbor improvements. There is a building bureau, a water bureau, a bureau of streets, a bureau of sewers, a board of examiners of stationary engineers and plumbers. Nearly every department issues licenses and permits of some sort. Ignorant people could endanger others and damage property, in many occupations. Every engineer, plumber, chauffeur, operator of a moving picture machine, bridge tender, seller of fireworks and oils, and many others must have licenses. And special permits must be got to hold parades, put up circus tents, build a house, and lay a sidewalk.

To carry on the business of a large city takes millions of dollars every year. In a family, father earns and collects the money, and mother may be treasurer for the household. The city gets its money from taxes, licenses, permits, inspectors' fees, water charges and court fines. All money goes first to the city collector. He gives it to the city treasurer who puts it in banks, and sends receipts for money paid out to the city comptroller, or bookkeeper. The comptroller and treasurer sign checks, or city warrants, for all money paid out. That is how the policeman gets his salary.

A city has a lot of work for law-

yers to do. There is a corporation counsel to draw up bills properly for the law-makers, and to advise every department in disputed questions. The prosecuting attorney is really a state officer. He sees that criminals are punished in the local courts, but under the state laws. The city attorney defends the city against damage suits.

The City Hall is a big building, several stories high, and often covering a block of ground. Sometimes the courts have a separate building. In the City Hall is the council chamber with its committee rooms, the mayor's office, the offices of various chiefs and boards. Some departments take a whole floor. With several thousand school-teachers and more policemen, you can imagine that the city's employes would make a good-sized town. People having business with the city, come and go all day at this City Hall.

Even when you are in bed, the patrolman's footsteps by your door, the measured toll of the fire alarm, and the clamor of horses and engines, remind you that the city government never sleeps. By a telephone call you could get a policeman, a fire company, or a hospital ambulance any hour of the night. A park squirrel in its bark house in an oak tree, or a bird on its nest in the shrubbery could get help, too. No one is allowed to hurt these little creatures. It is the duty of park policemen to see to that.

OUR GOVERNMENT

PUPIL SELF-GOVERNMENT

A Little City in a School



This picture shows an Indian reservation school in which a pupil government is being organized. One of the boys is reading aloud the constitution, upon which the other fathers of this new republic will vote, section by section. The self-government idea makes a strong appeal to our young red brothers.

THERE is one story that is in every school history. It is the story of the Charter Oak. The charter was a written permission from the King of England, for the people of the Connecticut Colony to govern themselves. Afterwards the king changed his mind. He sent a royal governor to rule the colony. But the charter was safely hidden in a hollow oak tree in Hartford. The governor went away in a

great rage, and the colony continued to govern itself.

City charters are given today by the legislatures of the states. If you want to form a school city the first thing to do is to hold a mass meeting, and get up a petition to the principal, asking for a charter. It should be signed by as many as possible of the upper grade pupils, who would become citizens. The principal may want

*The Granting
of the
Charter*

PUPIL SELF-GOVERNMENT

you to go to the superintendent. Read the article on "The Children's Club." It will tell you how to get things started, and then how to carry on your government properly.

proper form. It should state: first, the name of the proposed city; second, its purpose; third, what powers the city is to have; fourth, who are to be citizens. In our real gov-

Swearing in the Officers



Here is a group of the officers of a school city being sworn in. They are declaring that they will faithfully perform their duties, and from the look of them I believe they will. Don't you? Everybody is holding up his or her right hand except the boy on the left. I wonder why that is? You notice, also, that "Siberia" is in the northern part of Asia, and other things that make the schoolroom look so nice and "homey." This is a school in Newark, New Jersey.

A committee on the charter should present the petition, and tell the principal or superintendent why they want self-government, and why they think they can keep order and get the school work done properly. Do not complain if your charter is limited to one term, at first. Remember, you are on trial and may fail. But won't you work to show that you can be trusted!

Planning the Form of Government

You would better write out the kind of charter you want. By studying the United States Constitution in the back of your school history, upper grade pupils could put it in

ernment a young man cannot vote until he is twenty-one, nor hold important offices until he is older. The pupils of the three higher grades should be full citizens. Those of the Fourth and Fifth Grades could have the right of applying to the court for citizenship papers. But before admission to citizenship they should be examined in reading and writing and tell what they understand about the charter. Pupils in the "baby" grades are minors. They must obey the laws, but must be protected from bullies on the playgrounds, from dangers at street crossings, and be helped in other ways. Fifth, your constitution should name the offices

to be filled, times of elections, and duties and terms of officers should be stated. The principal looks the charter over, and perhaps suggests some changes. When the charter is

sides over the council meetings but has no vote. Any citizen may attend a council meeting, but can take no part in the debate. He should watch the member from his ward,

A Trial in School



Of course, school is full of trials—we all know that—but this is a court trial. The scene is in a school in Cuba where they have pupil self-government. The culprit looks very sorry and the jury looks as if it would not be severe. But the law must be obeyed! Notice the banner, "Cuerpo de Policia." That is the way they say "chief of police" in Spanish.

signed it is adopted by the vote of citizens at a mass meeting.

Exactly as in a real city, state, or nation, the government of a school city is divided into a legislative, or law-making department; a judicial, or law-judging department, and an executive, or law-enforcing department. In a city the council, or board of aldermen, makes the laws.

The Wards and the Town Councils To elect a council the city must be divided into wards. There should be a ward for each class. Each ward elects a member to represent it in the council. The mayor and judges are elected by popular vote of all the citizens. The mayor pre-

however, and see that he is doing his duty. When the council passes a law it should be signed by the mayor. A copy is written out by the clerk and sent to the court. Judges must know the laws and the penalty for breaking them, so that they can settle disputes and punish law breakers. The mayor appoints policemen and health officers, to help him enforce the laws. Guardians of younger children are appointed by the court.

Laws to Be Enacted and Obeyed

A school city should have laws forbidding fighting, bad language, bullying younger children, truancy

and tardiness; sauciness to teachers; the marking of buildings, sidewalks and fences and littering of the school grounds or streets with rubbish; personal untidiness and rude manners.

stay in your seat for two days at recess, and think it over. I am sorry to say it, but if there are any more complaints about you, you must have a guardian to call for you and

This Comes of "Playing Hookey"



Here a little truant has been arrested by one of the school city policemen. The boys on either side of the doorway seem to be enjoying it. It's all good-natured, of course, but experience shows that when boys themselves start out to stop truancy they do it. This is a scene in a New York City school.

There should be, for a truant officer, a boy who is big, kind, and firm enough to go out and arrest those who "play hookey." The culprit should be brought before the court which sits every day at three-thirty.

"Stand up, prisoner," says one of the judges severely, although she may be a dimpled girl. "You are charged with playing truant. Are you guilty?"

"Y-yes ma'am."

"What a dreadful thing to be an idler and shirker. Do you want to

The Judge grow up that way? Id-
Passes lers are no credit to this
Sentence school, and you interfere
with the work of other pupils and
of teacher. You are sentenced to

see that you come to school."

The sentence is written out and signed by the judges, and the truant officer takes it to the boy's teacher. That boy finds public opinion against him. If he wants to have a good time in that school he must mend his ways.

If a boy or girl comes to school unwashed and uncombed, with dusty shoes or without a necktie, a health officer is after him. A tardy pupil is shamed out of his loitering by having a guardian. A bully is hustled from the playground by a squad of police, and made to stay away until he promises to behave. A pupil who falls below a certain standard of conduct and scholarship may

be deprived of his citizenship. This is fair, for one who cannot govern himself must be governed by others. Our big United States does not allow a tramp, a criminal or a pauper to vote. But it is seldom necessary to be as severe as that

Plenty of Work for Citizens

But you must not think that all the business of pupil government is the punishing of offenders. As you know, a real city provides parks and playgrounds, and policemen to help children and old people over bad crossings. So, in the school, the big

*Helping
One
Another*

boys and girls protect the little ones, and teach them new plays. They tie neckties, hair ribbons and shoe strings, loosened in play; they scrub grubby little faces and hands. Each room tries to see which can keep its wards the cleanest. There are ink-well, coat closet and blackboard

squads to help the teacher. If a pupil is puzzled about arithmetic, the teacher asks for an older pupil from another room to help him after school hours. Everyone is ambitious to be among the best and most helpful citizens. An election comes around every term, and any one may be chosen mayor, a judge or councilman, or be appointed a police or health officer.

When this story was read to a Seventh Grade girl in a city school, she said: "Any school children who could do all that would have to be 'angels bright and fair.'"

Wasn't she surprised to learn that one of the most successful pupil cities is in a big building on the lower East Side of New York? The little citizens are poor Italian immigrants, who come from crowded tenements. Don't you think they will understand how to be big citizens when they grow up?

OUR GOVERNMENT
THE GEORGE JUNIOR REPUBLIC

A Republic of Boys and Girls



Taking the Oath of Office

The President of the George Junior Republic takes an oath similar to that taken by the President of the United States when he goes into office. Here you see him taking his oath, his left hand on the Bible and his right hand uplifted. He is elected by all citizens (both male and female) who are fifteen years old and have lived in the Republic one week or more. He has the right to veto laws, so he must be some one in whom the citizens of the Republic have confidence, some one who will have the best interests of the community at heart.

YOUR dictionary will tell you that "junior" means a younger person. Then this must be about a young people's republic, and that is a spic-and-span, brand new kind of a story, isn't it? Mr. William George thought it out. First of all, he bought a pocket-handkerchief-sized country—very likely at a bargain sale—for he had almost no money at all. He just had an o-rig-i-nal idea. All he needed to work it out was a farm of two hundred and forty acres at Freeville, New York.

And several hundred neglected and naughty boys and girls. He needed them, too.

It is a tiny copy of a city government—this George Junior Republic. The citizens are from sixteen to twenty-one years of age. They hold town meetings, as the Puritans did in old colonial days. They elect a president, or mayor, and a judge. They make their own laws. To help him make people obey their laws, the president appoints policemen and

*Little Nation
on a
Big Farm*

Citizens at Work



The citizens of the Republic who are most interested in farming, can earn their living there in that way. Besides the boy with the team in the foreground, two more boys can be seen in the background, hoeing a field planted in garden truck.

health officers. The judge tries anyone accused of breaking a law, and fixes his punishment. Everyone who is well is obliged to earn his living. He is paid, and he buys what he needs, in George Junior Republic money. There is a lot of fun, too, and that is free; the citizens are as busy, happy and well-behaved as the people of any grown-up country in the world.

That government is something like Topsy in "Uncle Tom's Cabin." It wasn't born, it "jes' growed." Mr. George didn't start out with the idea of founding a republic. All he meant to do was to give a vacation in the country to some of the poorest children in New York. He had been a country boy himself. He felt sorry for children who had never tramped over fields and through the woods, gone fishing, dived into the

"ol' swimmin' hole," gathered wild flowers and petted farm animals. He was so happy when a big newspaper got railway tickets for fifty children, a relative loaned him an old house, and farmers offered him wagon loads of food free of charge.

A Fine Time for Two Weeks; and Then—!

The children had a fine time for two weeks, and went home in good clothing and with baskets of country dainties.

But they had behaved dreadfully. They had fought and used bad language. They had trampled gardens, broken fences and robbed orchards. They were untruthful, disobedient and ungrateful to Mr. George. Wouldn't you think he would give up in discouragement?

But he *didn't*!

Next year he took more children to the country. In a few years he

How

Our U. S.

Was Born

The Village of the Republic

was running a camp all summer, his boy and girl guests coming in relays, for two weeks each. But they seemed to grow worse. They began to criticize their food, and to ask what they were to get to take home.

"There, that's enough. You will work for your gifts, or get no more," said Mr. George. He felt he had been doing them more harm than good. They were getting to be lazy, thankless, saucy beggars.

That summer a garden was put in, a road graded, fences and buildings painted and repaired. When busy they were happier and they behaved better. Besides they were proud of what they earned. The farm began to look so nice, that everyone "pitched in" to make it still nicer.

Discovering the Joy of Work Some pigs and chickens were bought and cared for. A cow was given them, then a rattly old spring wagon, and a tired horse that those boys



Notice how neat everything looks, from the straight furrows of the plowed field at the left to the barnyard in the distance at the right.

fed and groomed and soon had as frisky as a colt. How each set of children did hate to go home! Never before had they had such good times. One thing troubled Mr. George. Some of them still misbehaved. Punishment did no good. A few boys stayed with him on the farm, all winter, and he thought and thought until his head ached.

The George Washington of the Juniors

"I have it," he said, one night. "I can't manage these unruly children, so they must manage themselves. I'll found a republic of boys and girls."

Wasn't that a funny idea? To let children govern themselves because they were unmanageable? But the Junior Republic was a success, from the word "go!" That was in 1895. There is a village of buildings on the farm, now, and many live there all the year around. A big boy meets

One of the Cottages



At first the citizens lived in boarding-houses, but now they live in cottages like this one, at the head of which is a "house-mother." The house-mother here is standing on the steps.

Where Visitors Are Entertained



This is G. J. R. inn, where visitors are received, served, and entertained by the citizens of the Republic. The citizens are proud of it, and take pains to keep its lawn well trimmed and the premises clean, that the visitor's first impressions of the Republic may be good ones.

visitors at the trains with a carriage. He slaps his sleek horses with the reins and says, "Gid-dap!" like a real farmer. They go at a spanking trot over a half-mile of fine road that was made by the boys. The visitor registers in a cottage hotel, and tidies up in a room made neat by a sixteen year old chamber maid. Then he goes out to see the farm village that is governed by children.

There is a schoolhouse, a post-office, a bank, a department store, a laundry, a carpenter shop, a bakery and kitchen, a dressmaking and millinery, and a tailor and shoe-repair shop. The sleeping-rooms and dining-room are in cottages, each with a house-mother. Work is being done in fields and shops, stables and kitchen. In the evening there is fun. The girls give a party, or the boys a show, with such funny "stunts" that people come miles, and pay to see it. Saturday afternoons

there is a ball game and a picnic.

Governing is going on, too. A health officer directs the work of cleaning stables, pens, poultry yards, and the carrying away of kitchen garbage. A policeman arrests boys who quarrel or use bad language, or anyone who throws paper or other litter about. In the court-house a judge fixes the punishment, according to law. A very unruly boy may be locked up all day to think things over, or be made to wear a suit of striped bed ticking and work under police guard. To rebel does no good. He has no one to sympathize with him. Everyone knows his punishment is just, and public opinion is against him, as a bad citizen. The president of the republic lives in the village, and he has the right to veto unwise laws.

Why the Girls Wouldn't Get Supper

One evening, at a town meeting in the schoolhouse, an eight-hour labor

*Business
and
Picnics*

law was proposed. The girls voted against it. They said they could not get three meals a day, when they were wanted, and clean up after meals, in eight hours. But there were more boys than girls, so the law was passed. The boys went to work gaily, the next morning. They thought how fine it would be to quit early and have a long evening for play. But—

"Where's supper?" they asked. The girls were dressed up, playing tennis and croquet, reading in shady porches or taking naps in hammocks. They were *very* sorry, but it was unlawful to work more than eight hours. They had got up at half past five to prepare breakfast. They had put in *their* eight hours long ago.

Another American Revolution—Almost!

"But we've *got* to have supper!"

"Now see here," said the girls. "If this law can be broken, so can

A Cottage Living-Room



This is the living-room in a girls' cottage. Simplicity, cheeriness, comfort and good taste are to be found here. Don't books and magazines give the room a home-like look?

The Boys' Hotel



Not so fine as the one provided for visitors, but very comfortable, is this boys' hotel.

others. Then where would this fine government be? And if you think eight hours for boys and fourteen for girls is right, why you are going to have a first-class revolution to deal with. So there!"

A town meeting was called at once, and the eight-hour law was repealed. But that night the boys had to help get supper and wash the dishes.

A Republic of "Bad Citizens"—Made Over!

The citizens of the George Junior Republic are those Mr. George invites, and those that are sent by the courts and by parents. The first week a newcomer is a visitor. After that he is a citizen, and the first law is: "No work, no grub." Time spent in school counts, for work—which may seem rather odd, because it's so much fun to go to school, isn't it?—and the younger ones spend more time in school than at work, but they have to behave and attend strictly to business, or a guardian is

A President and His Cabinet



Citizens of G. J. R. believe that the government can best be carried on with the help of women, as you see by the fact that the President has chosen two to serve in his Cabinet.

A Court Trial in the Republic



Trials are carried on in the Republic in the regular way. The responsibility of governing themselves and punishing fellow-citizens who break the law, develops respect for law in the young people of the George Junior Republic. They make good citizens when they grow up. Here you see a boy witness being sworn in.

In the Bakery



The girls of the Republic do the sewing, laundry, cooking and other housework, but the boys bake the bread and cakes.

The Boys' Furniture Shop



Besides farming and baking, the boys of the Republic do carpentering, plumbing and printing. These are three busy workers in the furniture-making and repairing shop.

The Schoolhouse



There is a good school in this little nation. Besides the grammar grades it has a good high school, the graduates from which can enter the best colleges in the country, without examination.

sent for. Each younger child has an older one for a guardian, appointed by the court.

things to buy a new suit for his adopted brother of ten. A big girl will wear a shabby dress because she

A boy of eighteen will do without

knows her baby sister will look "so

The Gymnasium Building



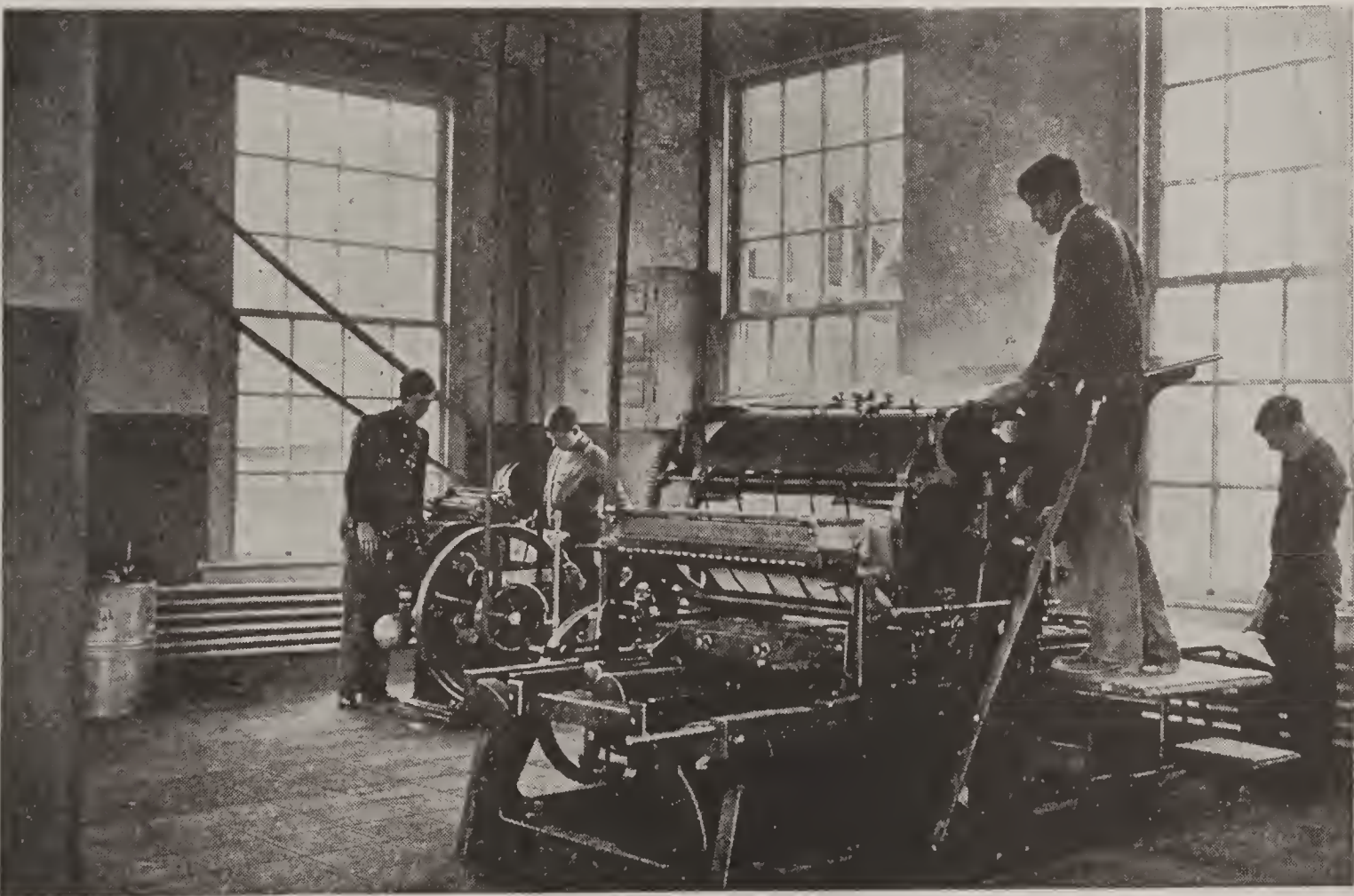
Among other attractions that the Republic has to offer is the well-equipped gymnasium shown here.

A REPUBLIC OF BOYS AND GIRLS
A Boy Storekeeper and Some of His Customers



A store where the citizens of the Republic learn the value of money, a thing which many grown-ups have to learn by sad experience after they have passed entirely beyond parental guidance and control.

Where the Boys Learn Printing



This is the George Junior Republic printing shop and some of the citizen printers at work.

sweet" in new pink hair ribbons.

When a boy leaves he can change his G. J. R. money into United States money at the bank, and take his savings home. Life, in this little republic, is as much like the grown-up world outside as possible.

There are now Junior Republics in other places. Besides this, many other institutions

for young people have adopted some of the George Republic meth-

The Chapel



Since the citizens of the Republic are of all nationalities and creeds, the religious services of the Republic are of no particular denomination. Besides the general services there are Jewish and Catholic meetings for the children of those faiths. Going to church is not required of citizens, but it is compulsory for prisoners and convicts.

ods. And in some of the penitentiaries the methods of reforming young people in the George Republic have been successfully applied in making better men out of adults who have been sent to pris-

on for offenses against the law; so it helps men as well as boys.

Democracy in Schools

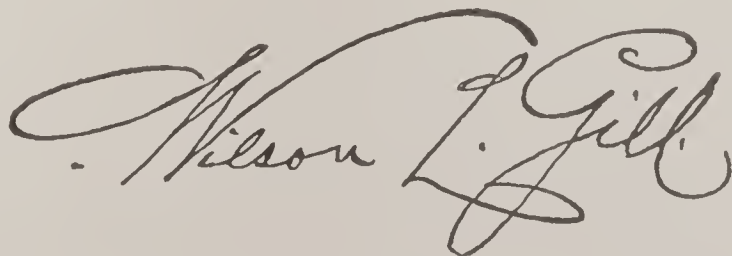
Various elements of the laboratory method of training in citizenship have been used by isolated teachers, for hundreds of years. These elements were for the first time assembled, used systematically, and persistently advocated and developed for use in all schools, to raise the level of civilization throughout the world, in 1897, in New York City.

There were then organized eleven hundred children from five to fifteen years of age as citizens of a democratic government, in the form of a city with a school city charter. They elected a mayor, president and members of a city council, a judge and minor officers in these three divisions of government. The mayor appointed health, police and other officers, whose appointments were confirmed by the council, which consisted of girls and boys, one of each from each room.

They made laws and performed the various functions of citizenship and government, under the instructions of the principal of the school, who was not a part of this republic, but teacher, guide and friend, encouraging the citizens to think and act independently and in co-operation for the defense and development of their personal and collective rights and duties. Every act of the republic was subject to his approval. He did not relinquish any part of his authority, but a new authority—that of the children—was established, which co-operated with him for every good purpose, strengthened his authority and broadened his view as well as the view of the pupils.

When the principal died, or for any other reason was replaced by another principal who did not appreciate the method, it was dropped. To meet this defect, schools are organized as a village, town or city, the teacher having the same relations to the schoolroom government as the principal had to the school republic for the entire school. The whole body of children in the schoolroom may act as their legislative body, and this is better than for them to elect a representative legislative council. If the teacher fails to maintain her teaching standards, the children's interest ceases. It is the same in teaching the practice of citizenship. For this and other reasons every state legislature should include the teaching of correct practices of citizenship in its list of compulsory subjects. Every scrap and crumb of responsibility in the school and community that can be handed over to the pupils as citizens or officers should be conserved for this moral, civic, educational purpose. It should be recognized that the use of the Golden Rule, in all of the affairs of life, personal and public, is necessary for the full success of any democracy, and that fully ninety-nine per cent of all normal boys and girls are essentially good, even if some of them by their environment have become wrongfully mischievous or even dishonest. Any reasonable appeal to them to take up the responsibilities of citizenship will be responded to earnestly, but the teacher must help them to maintain their interest, as I have already said.

Several schoolroom governments may form a state. And several states, a school federal government. This method has been promoted by the United States government and by the governments of several other countries, and is used by schools in constantly increasing numbers in our own and other countries.



Caring for His Iron Horse



© Underwood & Underwood

"The engineer 'must really love his iron horse,' and see that it is cared for. After a fast run his engine is as tired as he. It must be cooled, cleaned, oiled, and rested in its stall in a round-house."

EVERYDAY HEROES

THE FIREMAN

The Driver of the Iron Horse



"Tested in thousands of midnight battles, always in front, on the firing line, the engineer of the 'limited' is one of the great heroes of peace."

EVERY little boy thinks he would like to do something exciting and dangerous when he grows up. He wants to be a trapeze performer, an animal trainer, a balloonist or birdman. At least *most* boys do. Don't you? He wants to be the engineer on the "limited."

Oh, *I* know; *I* know a boy who used to do it. Every day, when the "flier" "*toot-too-toos!*" a warning from the crossing, he used to rush to the station to see the train thunder by, the engineer's head out of the cab window, the fireman throwing coal

under the boiler, and the bell clanging!

How You Climb into the Engineer's Cab

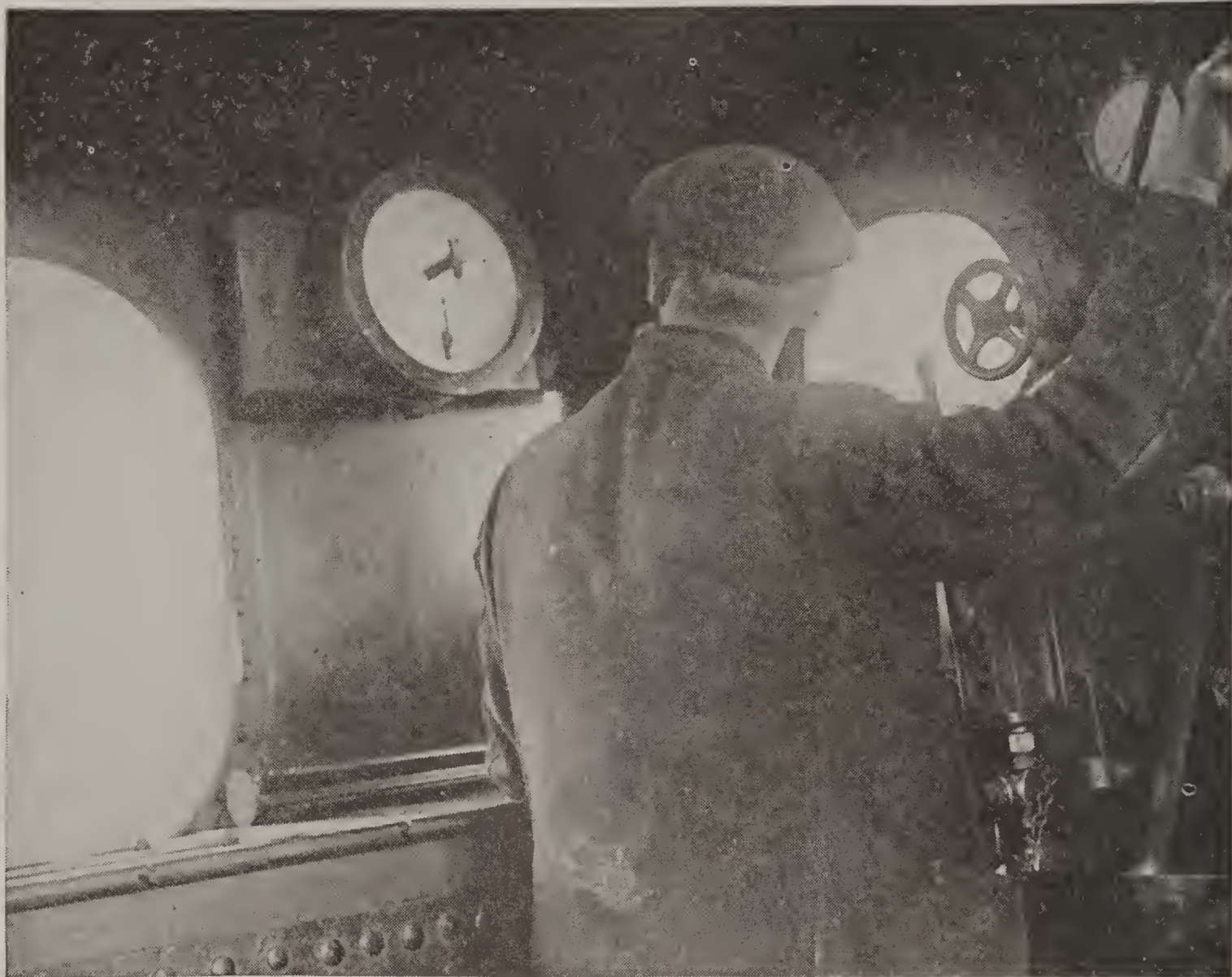
You would like to be that engineer? Let's see if you would. It isn't all "peaches and cream"—this being an engineer. It takes a man of long training; one who has climbed slowly from train boy or yard helper, to brakeman, fireman, freight and local passenger engineer. It takes a man who can keep his mind, his eyes, ears, nose, and hands "on the job" for hours at a time; one who can

think and act as quickly as a boy in a match game of baseball.

To be such an engineer you would have to give up a lot of things. The driver of the night express must sleep when other people are awake, and often away from home. He

in a roundhouse, and then be properly watered and coaled. Trusting no one else, he goes about with torch and oil can, filling the cups and polishing the brass work of his snorting steed. Climbing to the cab he tests the air-brakes.

In the Engineer's Cab



© Brown Brothers

"You know how still an engineer stands at his post. One hand grips the throttle, the other is above the air-brake. He looks at the steam gage, then out of the window. He slows the train to round a curve, opens the throttle to climb a grade, shrieks a warning before every turn and crossing; watches for semaphore lights at stations and switches."

must not drink liquor, for railroads have found out that drinking men cannot be trusted with engines. He must love his iron horse, and see that it is cared for. Engineers love their engines as if they were alive.

And the Iron Horse Gets Tired!

After a fast run his engine is as tired as he. It must be cooled, cleaned, oiled, and rested in its stall

"*Fs-s-s-sss!*" goes the air. The air-brakes are the hard bits to pull the fastest train up standing in a quarter of a minute. The train is off on the second, with its sleeping, dining, and chair cars filled with travelers, and its mail and express cars filled with valuable property. Hundreds of lives are in the care of the man whose hand is on the throttle.

Until the train is out of the station yards there is a confusion of red and green signals and glaring headlights, plumes of steam and smoke and caverns of black shadows. Up in a tower, a switchman pulls levers and guides the train through a tangle of switches, standing engines, and cars. Such a noise of bells, whistles, hisses, clatters, crashes—like artillery on a battlefield! Then the “limited” is out in the open country, rocking a mile-a-minute over a slender ribbon of steel rails.

You know how still an engineer stands at his post. One hand grips

Around double curves, over rocking bridges, along rails glazed with ice and heaped with snow, in wind and rain and fog, darkness and blinding storm he must “make time.”

Any minute he may face death. A loose spike, a spread or cracked rail, a landslide or washout, a bridge weakened by flood, an open switch, a wrong or mistaken signal, a lost minute or an accident to another train, may cause a terrible wreck.

Often he might save his own life by jumping, but the engineer sticks to his post. The work is a terrible strain. For fifteen or twenty years,



Clear the Track

“At night, with the one huge eye of his iron horse, the engineer can see the track ahead almost as well as in the daylight. Imagine yourself with the engineer on a night run. This is how the track would look ahead of you. That streaming light falls in the track from above you, as you sit in the cab and look out. Those little streamers hanging from the projecting arm to warn brakemen, who may happen to be on top of a freight car, that the train is about to run under something, and they must get down.”

the throttle, the other is above the air-brake. He looks at the steam gage, then out of the window. He slows the train to round a curve; opens the throttle to climb a grade; shrieks a warning before every town and crossing; watches for the semaphore lights at stations and switches.

Steady!

Look Out

Mr. Engineer

a man trains for it. Then in five, ten, or fifteen years he must go back to slower engines, giving place to a younger man. Tested in thousands

*But He Never
Thinks of His
Own Life*

of midnight battles, always in front, on the firing line, the engineer of the “limited” is one of the great heroes of peace.

The Spring Walk

These simple verses, as will be seen, are not written in model English but they are interesting, not only because of the picture they give of the attractions of a country walk, but because they were written by a Scotch basket maker who learned to read and write in order that he might express himself about the things in Nature that so appealed to him.

*We had a pleasant walk to-day,
Over the meadows and far away,
Across the bridge by the water-mill,
By the woodside, and up the hill;
And if you listen to what I say,
I'll tell you what we saw to-day.*

*Amid a hedge, where the first leaves
Were peeping from their sheaths so shy,
We saw four eggs within a nest,
And they were blue as the summer's sky.*

*An elder-branch dipp'd in the brook,
We wondered why it moved, and found
A silken hair'd, smooth water rat
Nibbling and swimming round and round.*

*Where daisies open'd to the sun,
In a broad meadow, green and white,
The lambs were racing eagerly—
We never saw a prettier sight.*

*We saw upon the shady banks
Long rows of golden flowers shine,
And first mistook for buttercups
The star-shaped yellow celandine.*

*Anemones and primroses,
And the blue violets of spring,
We found whilst listening by a hedge
To hear a merry ploughman sing.*

*And from the earth the plough turned up
There came a sweet refreshing smell,
Such as the lily of the vale
Sends forth from many a woodland dell.*

*We saw the yellow wallflower wave
Upon a mouldering castle wall,
And then we watched the busy rooks
Among the ancient elm-trees tall.*

*And leaning from the old stone bridge,
Below we saw our shadows lie,
And through the gloomy arches watch'd
The swift and fearless swallows fly.*

*We heard the speckle-breasted lark
As it sang somewhere out of sight,
And we tried to find it, but the sky
Was fill'd with clouds of dazzling light.*

*We saw young rabbits near the wood,
And heard a pheasant's wing go "whir";
And then we saw a squirrel leap
From an old oak-tree to a fir.*

*We came back by the village fields
A pleasant walk it was across 'em,
For all behind the houses lay
The orchards red and white with blossom.*

*Were I to tell you all we saw,
I'm sure that it would take me hours;
For the whole landscape was alive
With bees, and birds, and buds, and flowers.*

THOMAS MILLER

The Structural Iron Worker



© Underwood & Underwood

An Iron Worker's Bird's-Eye View of New York City.

ONE of the greatest pieces of work to be seen in a city is the putting up of the steel skeleton of a skyscraper. Just as great a sight is the building of a high steel bridge across a river,

*Dizzy Work
at Dizzy
Heights*

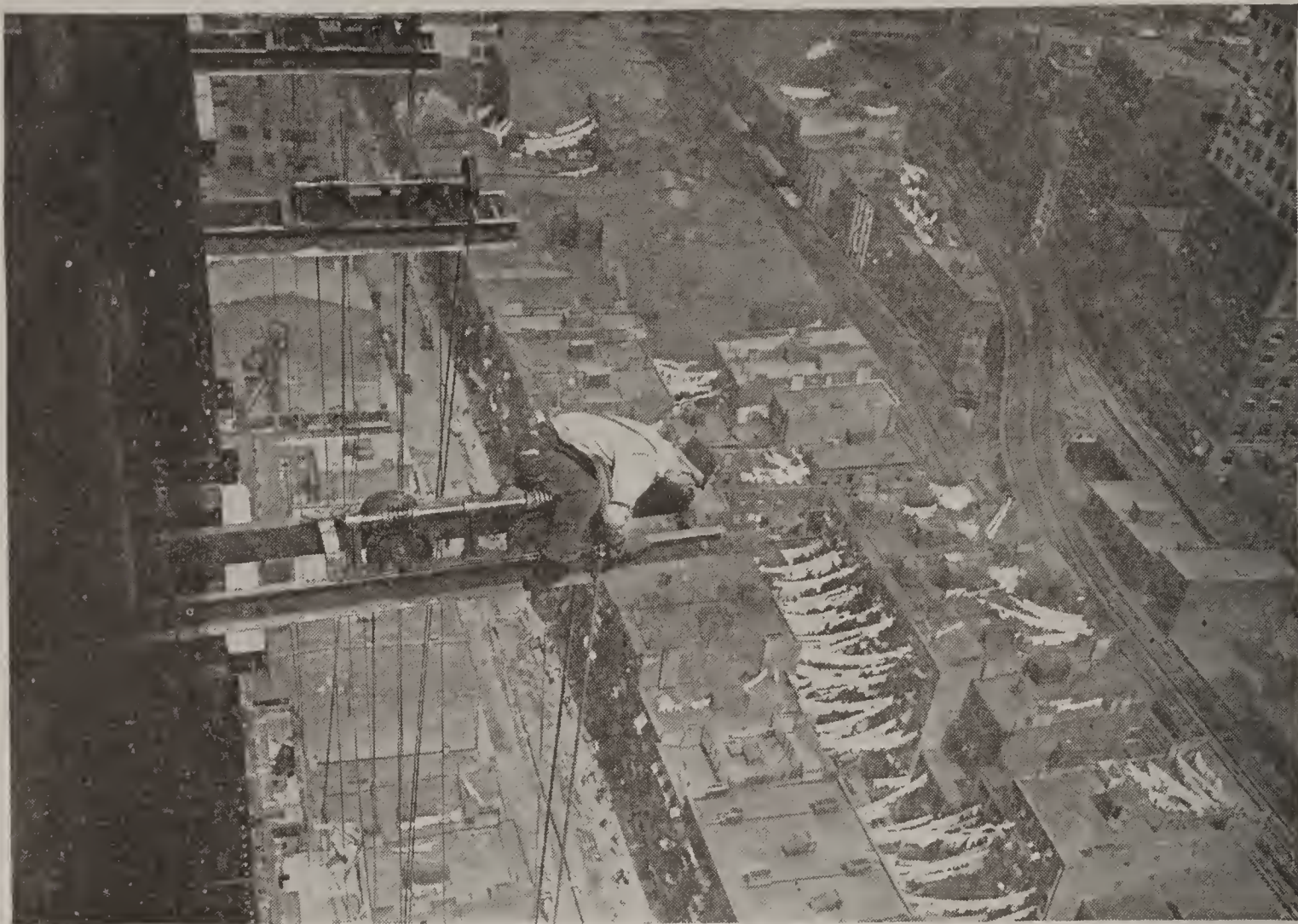
or a mountain gorge. People stop in crowds to watch girders and beams that weigh tons being lifted four hundred feet in the air. Often a workman rides on the foot-wide iron "timber" that seesaws in the air and swings in slow circles. He holds lightly to the lifting chain with one hand. As he nears the top he waves signals to men on the dizzy iron

spider web. They pull on guide ropes and swing the clanging monster to its lofty bed.

Building and the Builders

The skyscraper deserves to rank among the greatest engineering achievements of mankind. The "cloud-capped towers" which were merely a poetic dream with Shakespeare have become a reality and it has been well said that since the Egyptians built the pyramids, nothing so astonishing, so daring in conception and execution has been raised by the hand of man as these giant buildings of our great cities.

The Skyscrapers and the Tenements



You often see these magnificent office palaces going up alongside the most squalid tenements. The ground which is so valuable for business buildings for that very reason becomes undesirable for residences, and so the old rows of tenements are allowed to stand and are rented to the poor until it is desired to clear the land for some big building like that on which this man is at work.

"To France is conceded the palm in modern architecture," said a distinguished Frenchman as he looked out over New York City from the tower of the Singer Building shown in our first illustration, "but France must yield to America in architectural engineering. What gigantic structures and yet you build these great edifices of steel more rapidly than we build cottages of wood."

Since the possibility of such buildings was first conceived, a special school of architects and architectural engineers has developed, and everything down to the minutest details is planned before the foundation is begun. As soon as the plans are completed, orders are sent to the steel mills, the beams are rolled and punched and in part riveted, blocks of stone for the foundation are or-

dered from the quarries, brick and terra cotta baked for the outer shell of the building and floors, and within an incredibly short time after the material arrives, a building of fifteen, twenty, twenty-five or more stories springs up as if by magic.

But with all the brains and skill that have been applied to the skyscraper, no one has yet thought of a device or invented machinery that will do away with the perils to which men must daily expose themselves in putting the building together; and the wonder of the building as an engineering achievement is less than the wonder of the skill and daring of the builders.

The life of the structural iron worker is one of constant danger. He must climb up and down criss-crossed iron shapes, at all angles,

STRUCTURAL IRON WORKERS

Riding on the Pulley Block



Photos by Brown Bros.

"He must ride girders, pull guide lines, hitch the loads along to balance them and lower pulley blocks."

Passing the Monkey-Wrench



A man clambering about in these skeletons of buildings that are to be, frequently has occasion to borrow tools from a fellow workman. "Jack, let's have your monkey-wrench," says Bill; as you might say to a chum, "just let me have your knife a minute."

Matching the Girders



This picture shows two workmen matching girders; that is, getting them ready to fasten together. While one of them holds the girder in place, the other drops a "pin"—as the iron workers' long handled steel bar is called—into the rivet hole to hold it. When the ends of the girder are properly adjusted, a bolt is driven into each end until the riveters appear on the job.

walk beams from $3\frac{1}{2}$ to 6 inches wide and 30 feet long, like a tight rope walker. He must ride girders, pull guide lines, hitch loads along to balance them, and lower pulley blocks. Workmen swarm all over the dizzy tower. Away up so high that they look like dolls, painters perch on scaffolding; riveters and scrapers straddle beams; smiths heat rivets on tiny platforms and toss them up twenty feet into riveter's iron buckets. You can hear the ring of hammers, the hiss of steam, the crash of steel, the *brrr-rr-rr!* of the compressed air riveters, for all the world like so many giant woodpeckers. And you can see men scrambling up and down like acrobats, eating their lunches and smoking pipes in their airy arbors.

Many of these iron workers were

sailors and used to climbing masts, but many began in machine shops, and are just such men as your village blacksmith. They are in danger all the time and they know it. A misstep, a sudden noise or silence, a gust of wind, a crack to catch the foot, an inch of ice and one may lose his footing. Some loose bit of iron is always falling. A shed is built over the sidewalk below to protect passersby, but the workman has no protection. A workman above him may upset a keg of rivets, or drop a bolt, plate or hammer. There is no moment when a shot may not fall from the sky.

Very few men can do this work, and it is not always the big, strong men who have the steadiest nerves. A coal heaver may turn sick as death and hurry down again; a pale

STRUCTURAL IRON WORKERS

"Plenty of Ground in the Sky"



"There's plenty of ground in the sky!" said the architectural engineers who first proposed skyscrapers. The phrase was so convincing and the business value of the idea has been so fully demonstrated that capital is readily secured for such building enterprises. But if you were either of these two men setting up the steel frame-work for the windows of an office building in New York City, you would think there was precious little ground in the sky, and that the nearest ground to your feet was dreadfully far away.

Like An Ancient Battering Ram



Here some bridge builders are working what may be called a "ready made" hammer for driving into place a part of the Blackwell's Island Bridge, New York City.

Just a Few Moments to Rest



No matter how tired you were it isn't likely you would choose such a perch on which to rest, is it? This man is waiting for the next piece of steel to be hoisted up.

little printer or tailor go about jauntily. Many follow the trade for the big wages, are always afraid,

Where the Iron Workers Come From but they have the grit to stick. It is like that story of Lord Nelson. As a thirteen-year-old "middy" in the British navy he was ordered up the main mast, which is like a rocking flagpole. Asked if he was afraid

to go, he answered, with chattering teeth: "Ye-e-es Sir! But I'm going up!"

Greater than these lofty buildings and bridges, with their steel skeletons bolted together, is the spirit of the brave men who raise them to such dizzy heights. There are many dangerous tasks that men are afraid to do, but they "go up."

Lighthouses and Their Keepers



The Voice of the Siren

OF course, when there is such a fog that you can hardly see your hand before you, as frequently happens on the sea coast, the signal from a lighthouse or light ship would be of no use. At such times trumpets like those in our first picture call out to the ships to steer clear of the dangerous shores near which these signals are located. These fog signals are called "sirens." That seems a queer name, doesn't it, when we recall that in the myth stories, "sirens" were the cruel sea nymphs who lured mariners to the rocks by their beautiful sing-

ing. Ulysses, you remember, escaped them by filling the ears of his sailors with wax and having himself tied to the mast. While the sirens sang beautifully but acted very badly, the fog sirens are just the other way; they do a beautiful service but they make a queer noise. This is how Kipling describes it in "Many Inventions": "From the land the song resembles the bellowing of a brazen bull; but off shore they understand and the steamers grunt gratefully in answer."

Mr. Kipling is here describing the fog signal at the lighthouse

of St. Cecelia-Under-the-Cliff. It has the most powerful light on the south coast of England, and also a powerful fog signal, for it guards a very foggy coast.

The "breath" with which these sirens call out their kindly warning is often real breath, just like yours; that is to say, air which is compressed by engines in the plant. Other sirens, like that shown here, are operated by steam. Notice the siren's breath as it strikes the cold air. It condenses just as yours does on a frosty morning. The trumpets

But When the Winds Are Bitter—!

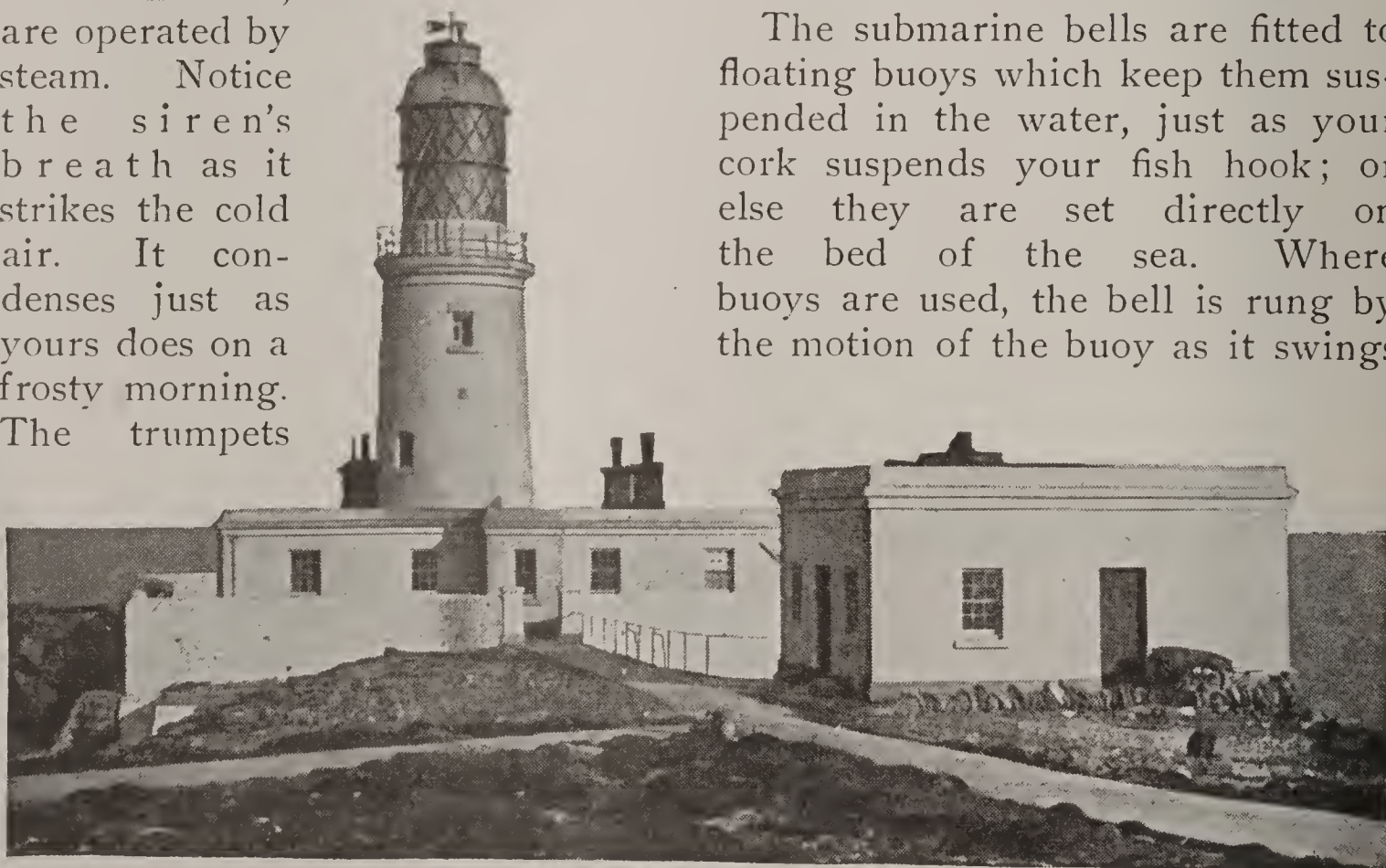


Cleaning the lantern of a lighthouse on a pleasant day like this when you can work in your shirt sleeves is a light occupation compared to what it is in the winter time when the lights become coated with ice, as you will see.

are curved down to prevent sand drifting into them. Other kinds of fog signals employed are whistles, reed trumpets, bells rung in the air and bells rung under the sea. These fog bells are very large affairs, some of them weighing 4,000 pounds. The hammers of the land bells are driven by a weight and clock work.

Work of the Bell Buoys

The submarine bells are fitted to floating buoys which keep them suspended in the water, just as your cork suspends your fish hook; or else they are set directly on the bed of the sea. Where buoys are used, the bell is rung by the motion of the buoy as it swings



The Round Island Light Plant

This picture shows you the whole plant of the lighthouse where you have just seen the man cleaning the lantern. It is called the "Round Island Light" and stands on one of the Scilly Isles off the coast of England.

The Eye of the Lighthouse

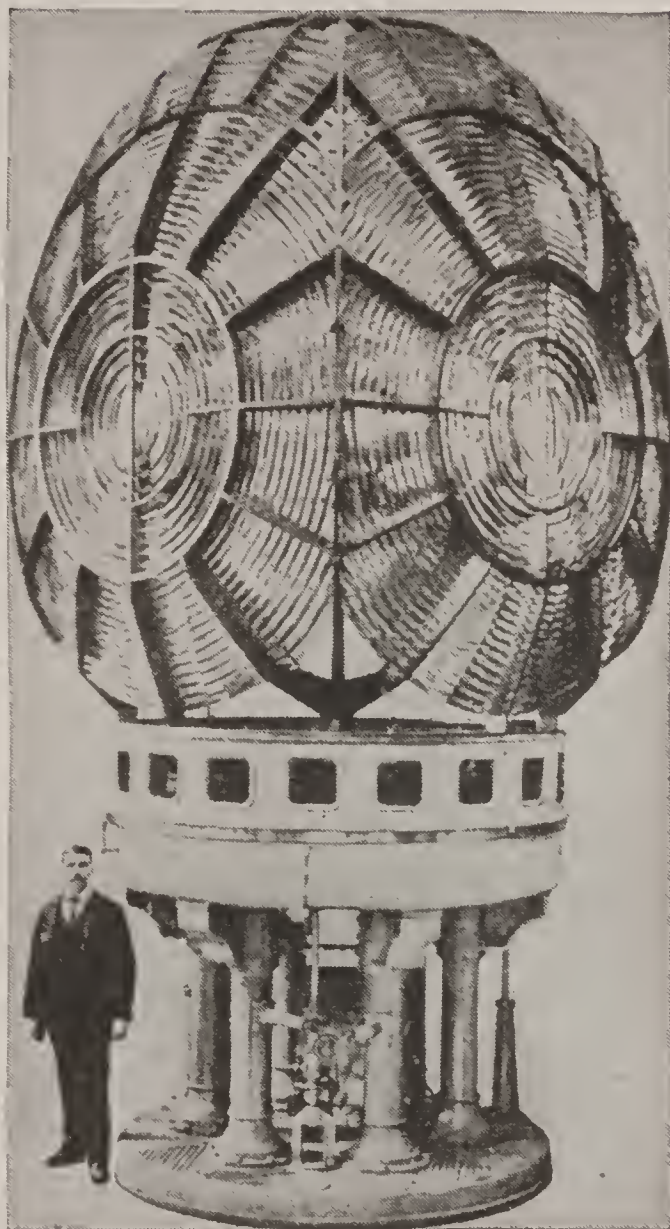
back and forth with the waves. Those on the bottom of the sea are rung by electric current carried by a cable from the shore.

But only ships that have "ears" can hear these submarine signals; that is to say, the ships must have a kind of a telephone in them below the water line and connected with the metal plating of the hull. Through this plating the sound vibrates after it has been transmitted from the bell through the water. If you have ever held your head under water while some other boy at a distance knocked two stones together, you know how much better sound

carries under water than in the air. These submarine bells can be heard at a distance of fifteen miles by properly equipped vessels.

The Ancient Beacon Lights

The sirens and the bells are a modern invention, but ever since men began to go down to the sea in ships there have been lighthouses. Even before the building of the fa-



Doesn't that look like the eye of some great insect, with its many facets? It's the lens of a great lighthouse light and inside of it is the light. While the great glass as a whole is called a "lens," those ridges on its surface are the lenses. They gather the light rays and concentrate them into a great beam of light which is thrown out upon the water. You will notice also that the whole affair rests on a kind of turntable. This is because the lens keeps revolving constantly so that the light is thrown out in a series of flashes. This is done so that it will not be confused with other lights on the shore. The machinery as it turns makes a rumbling noise that has been compared to the humming of a bluebottle fly under a glass tumbler. (Of course it would have to be a very big bluebottle fly and a very big tumbler.)

mous lighthouse at Alexandria on the Island of Pharos, which was one of the Seven Wonders of the World, there were light towers along the Lower Nile and it was part of the religious duty of the priests of Egypt to tend their beacon fires.

For centuries men did not devise anything to take the place of these beacon fires. As late as the seventeenth, yes, and the eighteenth century, grated braziers holding fires of coal and wood warned the sailors off dangerous rocks, or guided their way along the coasts of Europe and America. Beacon Island, near Boston, gets its name from a lighthouse built nearly three

centuries ago, which was a beacon for sailors in times of peace, and a watch tower and signal station in times of war.

Uncle Sam's Great Lighthouse System

The need for lighthouses has grown, of course, with the spread of civilization and the growth of commerce. Their maintenance is one of the most important functions

To Save Her Sister Ships



This picture shows a light ship in a storm. You can see in what a dangerous place it is; for there is a shoal where the vessel is anchored by that chain. This vessel is lighted by electricity. In lighthouses electricity is not used on account of the expense, since lighthouses are in isolated places and would require an electric plant of their own, which would be too expensive for the amount of light required. But where the water is too deep, or there are other reasons why a lighthouse cannot be erected, light vessels are used. They also have the advantage that they can be moored in different places as needed.

of government, and their construction and equipment one of the most interesting and important features of modern engineering. The United States has lighthouses along 48,000 miles of its coasts that front the sea, 4,000 miles of the shores of the Great Lakes, and 5,000 miles of rivers. This, you will see, if you stop to figure it, is twice the circumference of the earth. It is the most extensive lighthouse service in the world.

Lighthouses are broadly divided into two classes: those on land, where waves cannot reach them; and those on lonely little islands, on isolated rocks and shoals and other situations exposed to the blows of the waves. These lighthouses that breast the sea are called "wave-

swept towers," and their construction calls for as much fine courage as does the life of the sailors which these wave-swept towers are intended to protect.

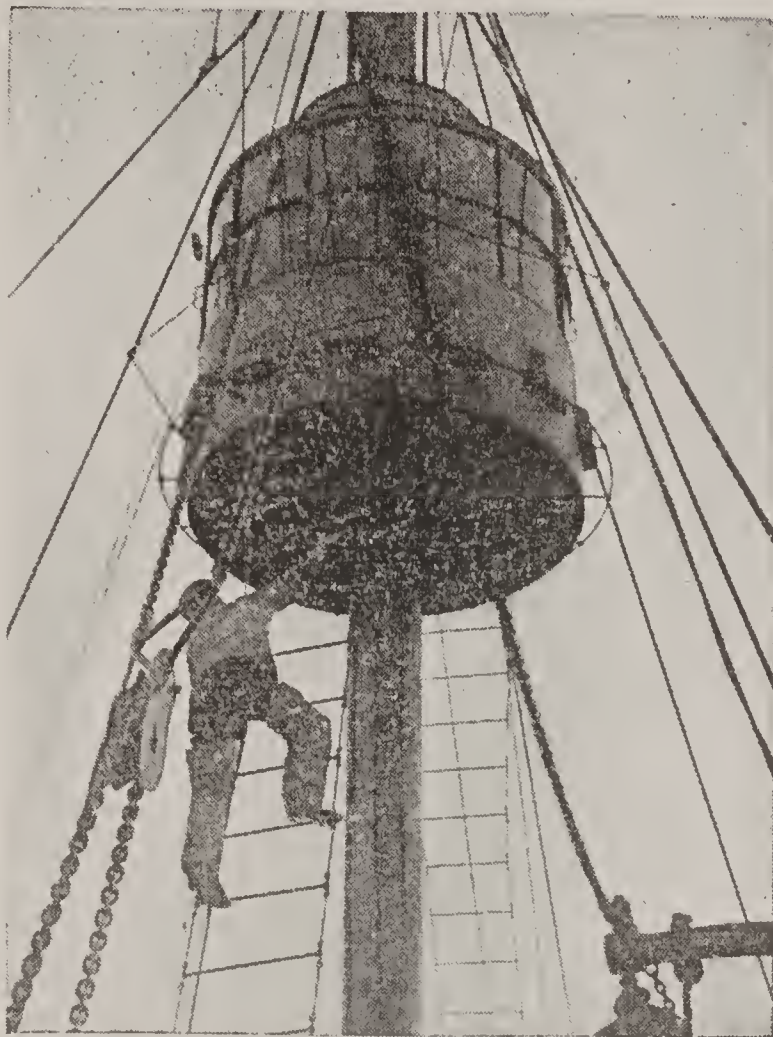
The Building of a Lighthouse

If you should watch from an adjoining shore cliff the first steps in the building of a lighthouse on some dangerous rock off the coast, you would first see a few men—often not more than two or three, because there is no more room on the rock—scraping off the seaweed. (Seaweed will grow, even on these storm-beaten rocks. It cares nothing for the blows of waves, provided they don't throw stones.) The men do not scrape off all the seaweed, for while they are drilling the rock for a foun-

THE LIGHTHOUSE KEEPER

dation, the wind is apt to rise and tremendous waves dash over them. Then they throw themselves flat, grip the seaweed, hold their breaths until the wave has passed and get up and go to work again. This is only what these brave men would call "ordinary weather." On some coasts the weather is so wild that men can work at all only at long intervals. On one light-

Lighting the Light on a Light Ship



Not all light ships are lighted by electricity. Here is one that uses oil so that it is necessary for a man to light it every night as you do the oil lamp at home.

house, work was only possible for 30 hours in a whole year. Such lighthouses, you may imagine, go up very slowly.

The Life of the Brave Keepers

At all important stations there are from two to five keepers. At lighthouses on routes of less traffic there may be only one keeper, and sometimes one keeper to

several lights. The pay is not

The Light Ship at "Seven Stones"



Here is a light ship which is located off the coast of England at a point known as "The Seven Stones," from seven dangerous rocks in the vicinity.

A Lighthouse in the Thames



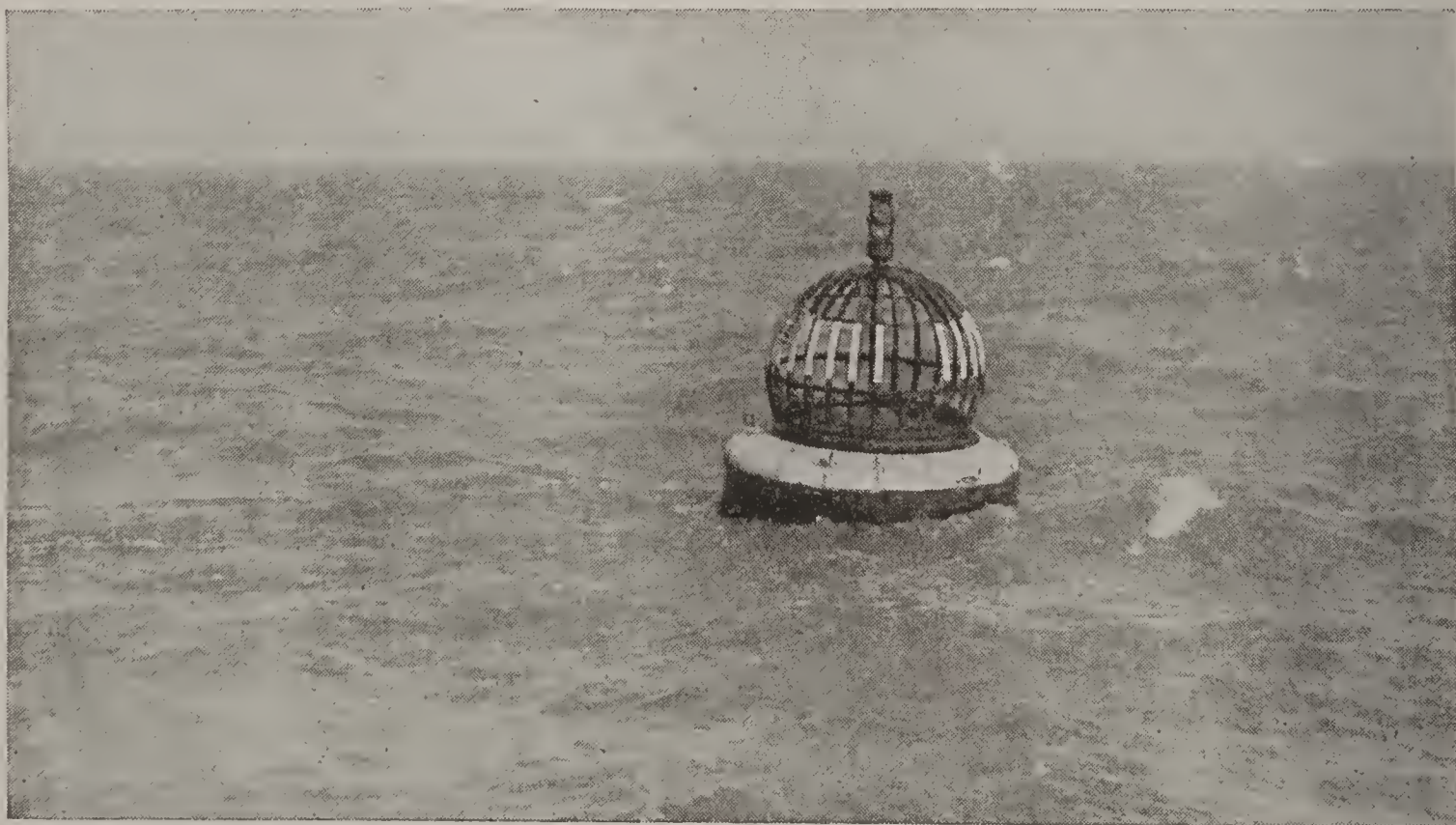
The Thames, which is the great waterway to London, is the busiest river in the world, and this is one of the lighthouses that guide ships into port.

On the right is a lighthouse keeper on the Scilly Isles, operating a semaphore signal in conversation with an approaching vessel.

large and you don't have any company but the sea gulls and the winds, and the chant and thun-

der of the waves. At the most distant light, on the coast of Alaska, for instance (it looks dreadfully

A Gas-Lighted Buoy in the Thames



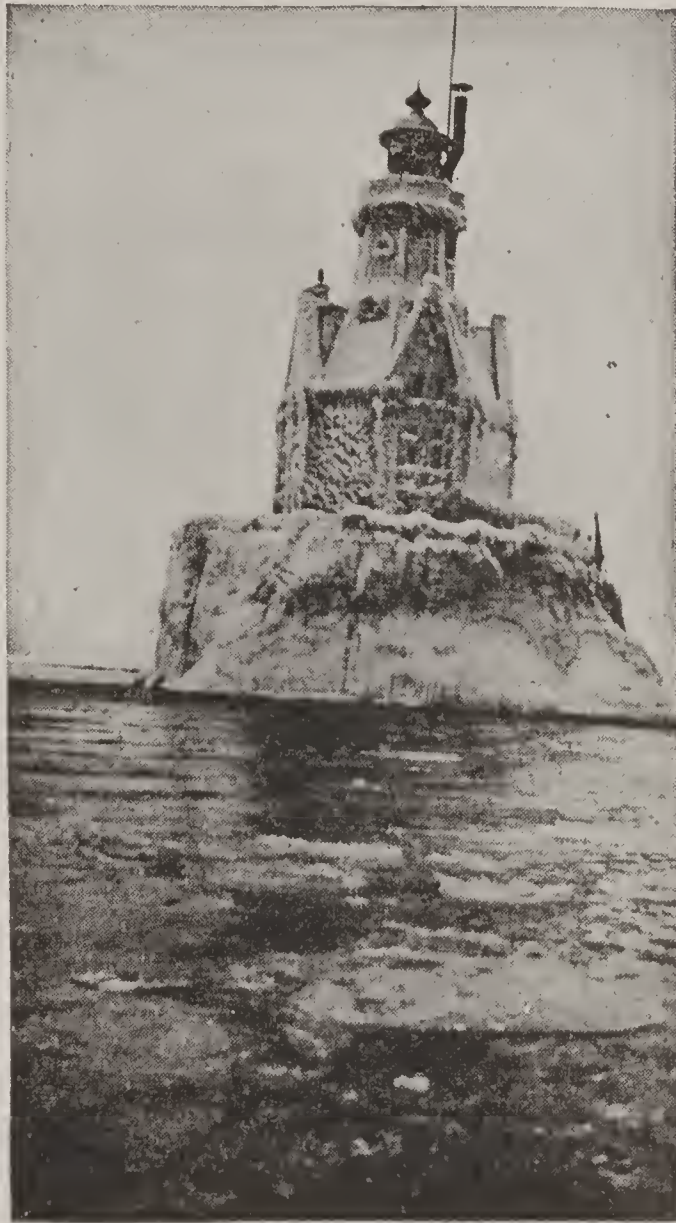
This is another one of the devices for the guidance of ships up and down the Thames—a buoy lighted by gas.

THE LIGHTHOUSE KEEPER

lonesome even on the map!) it is sometimes five months between mails and the nearest neighbor is a trapper ten miles away. The records at Washington show that the keeper of the lighthouse near the mouth of the Columbia River has been absent only two days in twenty-three years, and one of these absences was for the purpose of getting himself a wife. Don't you think she was a brave woman?

Yes, and there are women lighthouse keepers, too; and like the faithful men who guard these dangerous and lone-

This is What Happens in Winter



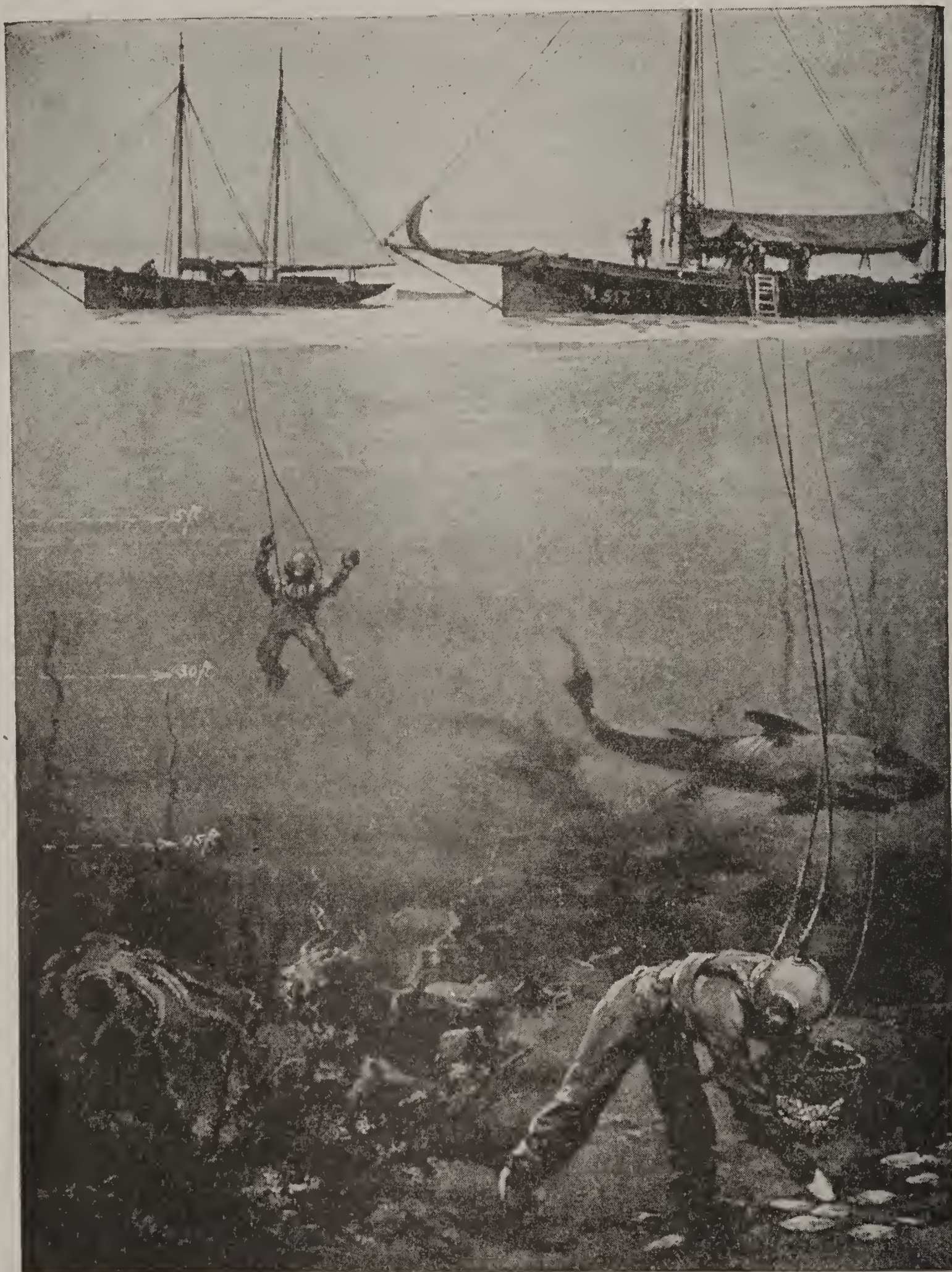
How would you like to keep that lantern clean, as the man is doing in our second picture? This is the Racine Reef Lighthouse in Lake Michigan. In winter the spray and sleet freezes on the lantern so that it shuts out the light almost entirely and the man in the lighthouse must see that it is kept clear.

some coasts, they take great risks and endure great hardships to do their duty. One of these women is the keeper of the Angel Island lighthouse on San Francisco Bay. There is also a fog signal at this lighthouse and once when the machinery that sounds the warning bell was out of order, she struck it by hand for 20 hours, standing all night on the platform outside until the fog lifted.

In her brief official report of it to the government—it was only four words long—she said, “the fog was dense.”

That was all!

Divers Gathering Pearls

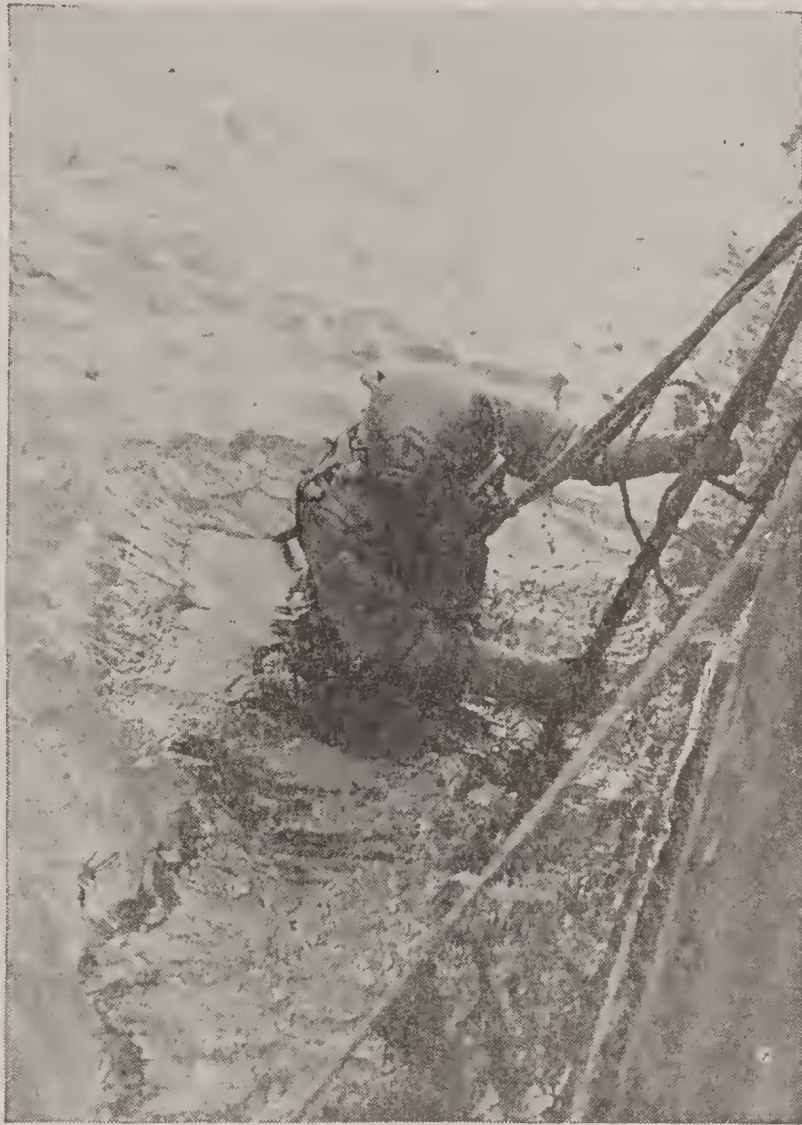


In our story about pearls you can see one kind of a pearl diver at work. His only equipment is a basket, nose clamp, and a stone to make him sink. Here are divers in regulation diving dress gathering pearl oysters. One of them is putting the oysters into a basket let down by a rope from the ship above; the other is being hauled up to the surface. See how he is kicking. That is to quicken his circulation, which the pressure of the water and the cold have retarded.

EVERYDAY HEROES

THE DIVER

The Man Who Works Under Water



"Like the pilot and the fireman, he takes fearful risks as a matter of duty."

DID you ever hear the story of the brave little Dutch boy who saved a great valley, with towns and farms, from being destroyed by flood? He found water trickling through a small hole in the dyke that walled out the sea. It was nightfall and no help was near. So he pushed his arm in the hole and held it there all night, keeping the break from getting larger. Such a boy, to-day, would get a Carnegie medal,

be educated from the hero fund, and become famous.

There is another story much like that, but few people have ever heard it. The hero was a diver, and what he did was simply his duty—just a part of his everyday work. There was a break in a great dam of a reservoir, far below the water line. On the lower side, the water spouted out in a big stream. One diver was sent down to fix a steel

plate over the break so the hole could be filled from the lower face. But in a moment he pulled frantically on the life line and was hauled up. He said any man who went down would be sucked into the hole.

goggle eyes screened with wire was screwed to his collar. Air was pumped in, swelling his suit out like a balloon and roaring in his ears like a railroad train. Before he could signal, air and life lines

Getting Into His Working Clothes



A diver's suit is so clumsy and heavy that he can neither put it on nor take it off alone. He has to be "buttoned up" like two-year-old baby brother.

The Brave Captain and His Fate

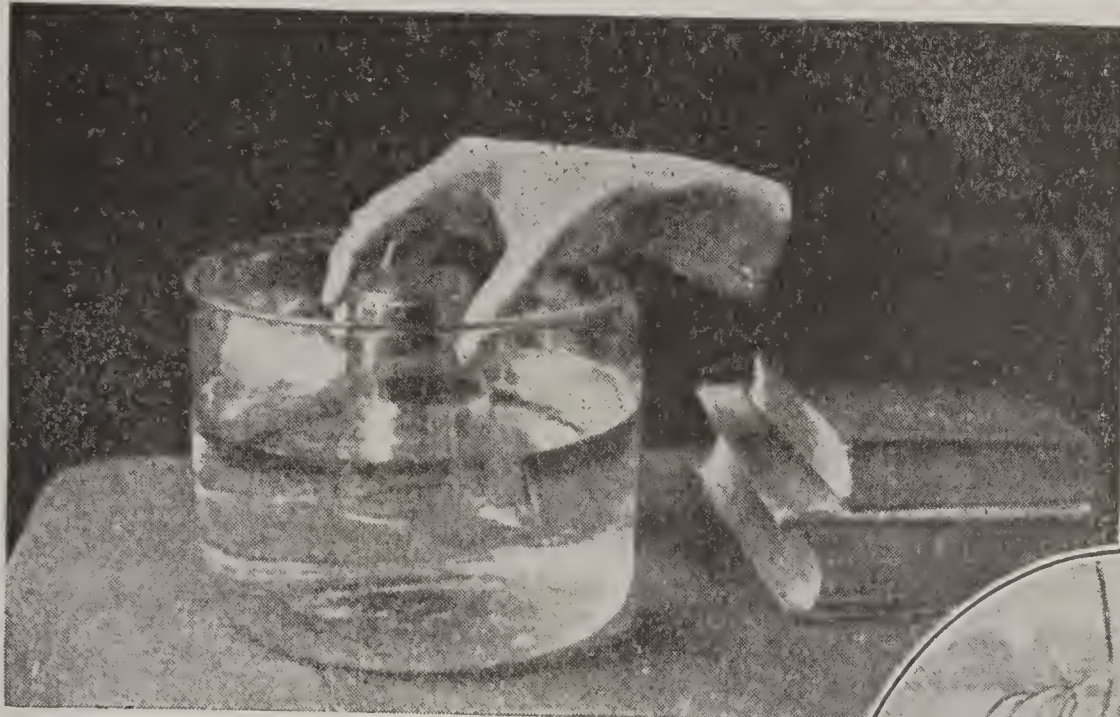
The captain of the wrecking boat said, no matter, the work must be done. He would go down. He put on the diver's rubber suit that is in one piece to the chin and wrists. He put on a copper collar, iron shoes that weighed thirty pounds, and a hundred-pound lead belt with life lines. After he stepped onto the ladder, a copper helmet with big

*Strange Suit
That the
Divers Wear*

snapped. His body stopped the leak. It could never be got out. There he was, walled in.

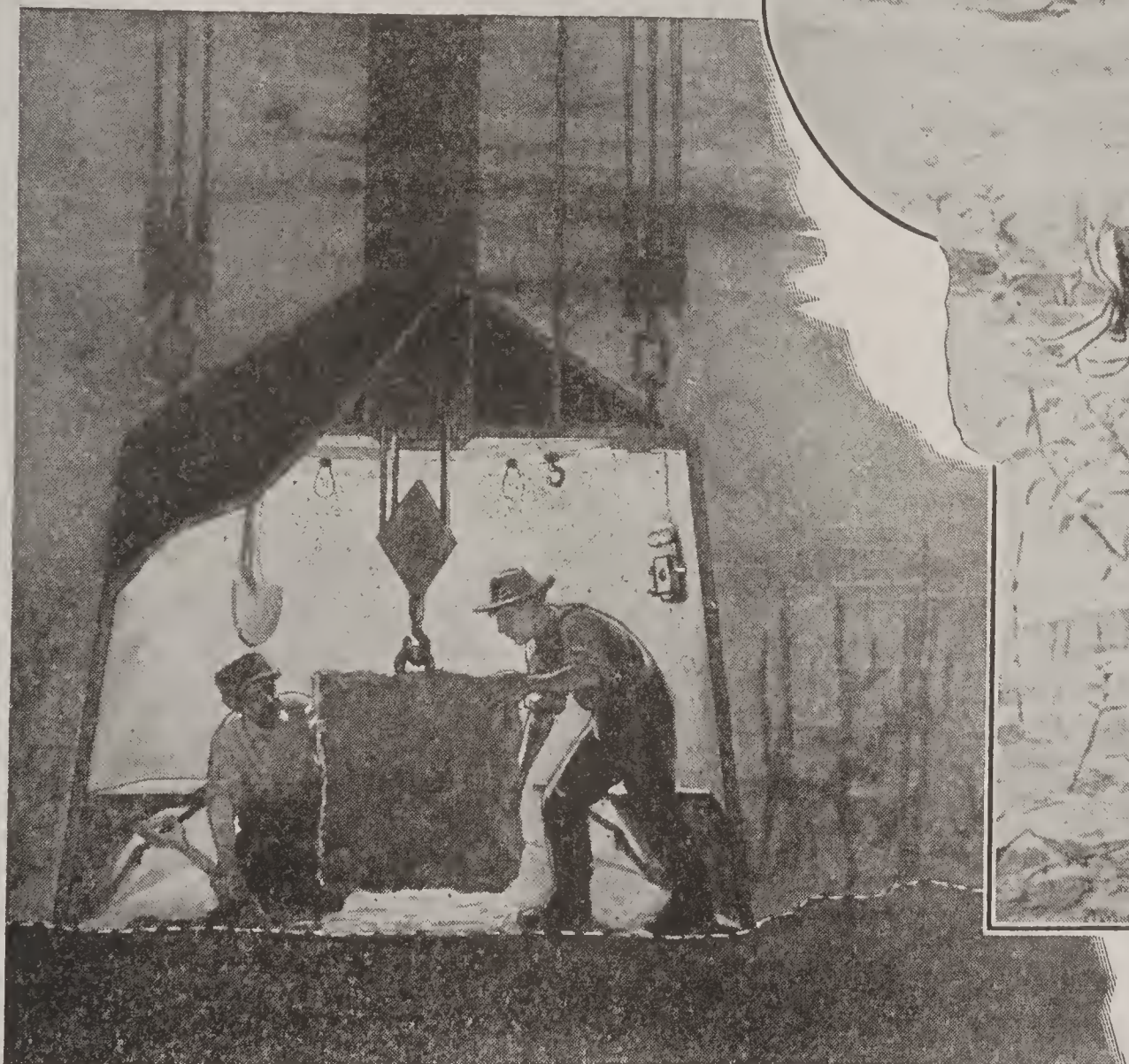
Much necessary work must be done under water by divers, in the deep sea and in rivers, harbors, and reservoirs. Sometimes ships are wrecked where they are as dangerous as rocks to other ships. If they cannot be pumped out and raised, they must be broken up with dynamite. From wrecking boats that

Three Kinds of Diving Bells

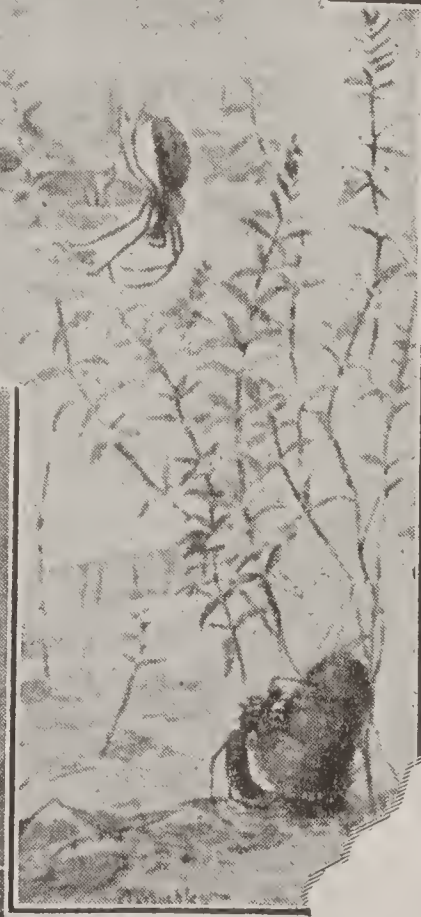


Force an inverted, empty tumbler down into a pail of water and you have a diving bell—air under water, held in place by the sides of the tumbler and the pressure of the water below it. The air keeps the water from rising beyond a certain point.

The picture below shows fresh water spiders at work on their home which is another kind of a diving bell. The spiders spin a bell-shaped cocoon attached to some plant growing on the bottom of a lake or pond. Then they fill their home with air by carrying down a bubble of it at a time, using the plant as a stairway. When the home is full of air, held in place just as that in the tumbler is, they set up housekeeping and raise a family in their snug little home under the water.



Here is the diving bell which men have built. It is simply a bell-shaped, metal-covered house which is lowered evenly into the water. The metal makes it heavy enough to sink. When it reaches the bottom, the men can work and breathe in it. You see it is fitted out with a telephone and electric lights. It has an arrangement for keeping the air fresh, too. The men are placing one of the foundation stones for a big bridge. If they wish to move over to another part of the river bottom, they will sit on the little seats attached to the sides of the bell and then men, air, bell, stone and all will be swung the proper distance through the water by machinery above.



are just mud scows with steam pumps and hoisting tackle, and a machine shop full of tools, the divers go down into the water on ladders.

*Various
Work the
Divers Do*

They do every sort of work under water, just by feeling, for they can see little or nothing. They go all over sunken ships; get papers, money and jewels out of captains' safes. They put in pipes for pumping; patch holes with iron plates, or cement; nail down hatches; fasten cables so a wreck can be dragged from a bar; and plant dynamite to blow up hulls. They cannot stay down more than half an hour and must work very fast.

Something different happens every time. Divers for pearl oysters

in tropic shore waters are chased by sharks. All the weapons they have are the air bubbles they can let out in a rapid fire of silver bullets from the wrist bands, but those scare the

man eaters away. Ship timbers often break loose from a wreck and stun the diver. Sand slides carry them down. A leak or break or tangle in the hose cuts off the air. If the life line is caught, the diver cannot signal. A diver cannot lift himself, but has to be pulled up. He wears a small telephone system by which he can talk with the man above. For the air he breathes he must depend on the man at the pump

An Exhausted Diver



This man stayed down as long as he could. He could barely climb up the ladder. Here you see him having the heavy helmet taken off before he is helped over the rail, so that he can get a breath of good, fresh air as soon as possible.

above, and on a small rubber tube. Like the pilot and the fireman, his duties involve fearful risks.

EVERYDAY HEROES

LIFE SAVERS

Life Savers and the Beach Patrol



The Breeches Buoy

When a line is shot to a ship in distress the first thing to go over it is a packet of instructions telling how to make the rope fast to the mast or some other suitable part of the wreck. Then the breeches buoy is unloosed and begins the work of carrying people ashore in safety. It is a cork life-buoy with canvas breeches attached to it and usually carries only one person at a time. The picture shows how it works.

IF YOU have ever been to a seaside or Great Lakes resort, you may have seen a tall lighthouse, on a green lawn, out on the farthest point of land. At its foot is the keeper's neat dwelling, and nearby the comfortable quarters and boat house of the Life Saving Station. Along the most dangerous parts of the

*Lighthouses
and Life-
Savers*

Atlantic coast there is a government station every five miles. They are farther apart on the Gulf coast, and fewer still on the less dangerous Pacific coast. On the Lakes nearly half of the stations are on the populous shores of stormy Lake Michigan.

In the winter, almost surrounded by dreary wastes of water, the life is lonely. But the life-saver

A Life-Boat and Its Crew



© Underwood & Underwood

Modern life-boats are self-righting; that is, they are constructed with air-chambers and are ballasted so that if tipped over, even with their crews in them, they will quickly turn right side up again. Valves automatically bail out the boat. The life-boat in the picture is a rowboat. There are also gasoline and steam life-boats for the coasts where they can be used. Notice the clothing of the men—cork jackets, rubber gloves and mittens.

is a soldier. Every hour has its hard duty. The crew are drilled daily in handling the heavy beach-wagon; in running the life-boat off its rollers into smooth and rough water; in swimming in cork jackets; in signaling with the Coston light; in firing the life line; building bonfires on the beach; pulling in the breeches buoy and the life-car over the cable, and in restoring the half-drowned and frozen. And then, as policemen patrol the city streets, so life-savers patrol the beaches, day and night, in six-hour watches.

The night march is the hardest. At sunset two men leave each station, and walk in opposite directions, half way to the next station. In wind and rain, snow and sleet, bitter cold and flooding tide, thundering combers and heavy sand they walk,

*Kept
Constantly
in Training*

*Night March
on Stormy
Coasts*

with only a lantern or a dog for company. The first man to see a vessel in distress burns a Coston light. This is a torch that, on being struck, leaps into scarlet flame. It can be seen for miles. From man to man the signal is passed, as fast as a telegraph message. Every station on the coast to windward keeps a lookout. When the ship grounds on a bar, it may not be seen for fog or storm, but it blows a fog horn and sends up rockets.

They're Off to the Rescue!

"All hands!" bellows the captain of the station nearest the wreck. It is like the striking of the fire gong in an engine house. Men jump into cork jackets and oilskins, grab their lanterns, run out the beach wagon on its broad trucks, and the life boat. They slip into the rope harness and run. On the beach wagon are the ropes and buoys, shovels, picks, sand anchors, shot-line box and cannon,

Life Savers at Work

**Launching the Life-Boat**

Because of the dashing of the waves and the roaring of the wind, the captain gives his commands through a megaphone. Launching the life-boat and handling it after it is launched, besides being dangerous work, must be done quickly. All the men work together like a well-trained team of football players. At such times each man knows what his share of the work is and does it quickly and well, because he is drilled at this work like a soldier, every day he is in the service. In the lower picture the two life-boats are trying to get alongside the injured vessel, whose shadow can be seen at the left.



© Illustrations Bureau

Rescue Work in a Choppy Sea



© Illustrations Bureau

The picture shows a man being brought ashore by an apparatus similar to the breeches buoy in operation, from the steamer Gradac, which was grounded off the coast of Northumberland, England.

"All Hands Saved"



Everyone on board has been rescued and the ship is sinking rapidly. Two weary life-savers are hauling in an empty buoy.

LIFE SAVERS

When the Breakers Are Too High



© Illustrations Bureau

On steep, rocky coasts it is hard and dangerous for a boat to land. In the picture the difficulty is being overcome by a crane on the landing stage of a lighthouse. Instead of taking each boat-load of passengers through the pounding breakers in which their boat is liable to go to pieces, the life-savers are coming as close as possible to the lighthouse and hoisting them on to it with the crane.

When There is a Sandy Beach



Where the water is shallow and the beach sandy, the people rescued can be landed on shore at once, for, though the waves may be high, they are not so dangerous as on rocky coasts.

and material for a bonfire if one can be kept burning. If the sea is high the first thing tried is to tie a cord about the shank of a bullet and shoot it to the wreck. But if several shots miss the deck, or the survivors are helpless, the life boat must be launched. It may be beaten back, overturned or spun about. If it can be got beyond the half-mile wall of surf, a strong swimmer may drop overboard and carry a line to the wreck. He battles with smashing waves and climbs by the anchor cables, perhaps to a deck as steep as a roof, whose rails have been swept away.

He drags half frozen people from the rigging, pulls in his line, rope

and cable. "Women and children first" he puts into the breeches buoy, or closed life car, and starts over that sagging "trolley" line. The captain comes out to help him. Not until the last passenger, sailor and rough coal heaver are safe on land does the life-saver come ashore. And then it is often with a shivering dog or kitten in his arms.

Then it is thawing and drying by the bonfire, wrapping in oilskins and running up to the station, and hot coffee, blankets and beds for the rescued. But for the life-savers—they have merely done their duty. Some of them can turn in to rest, but two, at least, get into dry clothing and go out again to patrol the beach.

"IN THE PAGES OF GOOD BOOKS
LIES THE MAGIC TO INSPIRE OUR
DREAMS AND THE POWER TO MAKE
THOSE DREAMS COME TRUE"





LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 021 866 786 7